SAN DIEGO INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
LET'S GO.

San Diego County Regional Airport Authority
BMP Design Manual
For Permanent Site Design and Storm Water Treatment

February 2016

amec foster wheeler

Prepared by:

Geosyntec consultants

RICK ENGINEERING COMPANY

project clean water

San Diego County Regional Airport Authority BMP Design Manual

The Airport Authority BMP Design Manual conforms significantly to the Model BMP Design Manual developed by the following San Diego Region Municipal Copermittees:

City of Carlsbad
www.carlsbadca.gov

City of Chula Vista
www.chulavistaca.gov

City of Coronado
www.coronado.ca.us

City of Del Mar
www.delmar.ca.us

City of El Cajon
www.ci.el-cajon.ca.us

City of Encinitas
www.ci.encinitas.ca.us

City of Escondido
www.ci.escondido.ca.us

City of Imperial Beach
www.imperialbeachca.gov

City of La Mesa
www.ci.la-mesa.ca.us

City of Lemon Grove
www.lemongrove.ca.gov

City of National City
www.ci.national-city.ca.us

City of Oceanside
www.ci.oceanside.ca.us

City of Poway
www.ci.poway.ca.us

City of San Diego
www.sandiego.gov

City of San Marcos
www.ci.san-marcos.ca.us

City of Santee
www.santeeh2o.org

City of Solana Beach
www.ci.solana-beach.ca.us

City of Vista
www.ci.vista.ca.us

County of San Diego
www.sandiegocounty.gov

San Diego Unified Port District
www.portofsandiego.org

San Diego County Regional Airport Authority
www.san.org

February 2016

Summary

The San Diego County Regional Airport Authority (Authority) Best Management Practice (BMP) Design Manual (Manual) addresses post-construction urban runoff pollution from new development and redevelopment projects. This Manual provides airport tenants and Authority staff with information on how to comply with the urban runoff management requirements for development projects at the San Diego International Airport (SAN). This Manual guides the project manager or engineer through the selection, design, and incorporation of storm water BMPs or storm water treatment control/management facilities into project design plans. This Manual also provides information on the Authority Alternative Compliance Program regulating post-construction storm water discharges offsite.

In May 2013, the California Regional Water Quality Control Board for the San Diego Region (SDRWQCB) reissued a municipal storm water, National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System permit (Municipal Separate Storm Sewer Systems [MS4] Permit) that covered its region. The San Diego Region comprises San Diego, Orange, and Riverside County Copermittees. The MS4 Permit (also referred to as the Municipal Permit) reissuance to the San Diego County Copermittees went into effect in 2013 (Order No. R9-2013-0001).

The reissued MS4 Permit updates and expands storm water requirements for new developments and redevelopments. In February 2015, the MS4 Permit was amended by Order No. R9-2015-0001, and again in November 2015 by Order No. R9-2015-0100. As required by the reissued MS4 Permit, the Copermittees prepared a Model BMP Design Manual to replace the current Countywide Model Standard Urban Stormwater Mitigation Plan (SUSMP), dated March 25, 2011, which was based on the requirements of the 2007 MS4 Permit. The effective date of this Manual is **February 16, 2016**.

Each Copermittee was required to update the Model BMP Design Manual with jurisdiction-specific information. This Manual represents the Authority's update to the Authority SUSMP Requirements for Development Applications (Authority, 2011) to conform to the Model BMP Design Manual and comply with requirements of the MS4 Permit.

What this Manual is intended to address:

This Manual addresses updated onsite post-construction storm water requirements for Standard Projects and Priority Development Projects (PDPs), and provides updated procedures for planning, preliminary design, selection, and design of permanent storm water BMPs based on the performance standards presented in the MS4 Permit.

The intended users of the Manual include project applicants, for both Authority and tenant developments, their representatives responsible for preparation of Storm Water Quality Management Plans (SWQMPs), and Authority Environmental Affairs Department (EAD) personnel responsible for review of these plans.

The following are significant updates to storm water requirements of the MS4 Permit compared with the 2007 MS4 Permit and 2011 Countywide Model SUSMP:

- PDP categories have been updated, and the minimum threshold of impervious area to qualify as a PDP has been reduced.

- Many of the low impact development (LID) requirements for site design that were applicable only to PDPs under the 2007 MS4 Permit are applicable to all projects (Standard Projects and PDPs) under the MS4 Permit.
- The standard for storm water pollutant control (formerly treatment control) is retention of the 24-hour 85th percentile storm volume, defined as the event that has a precipitation total greater than or equal to 85 percent of all daily storm events larger than 0.01 inch over a given period of record in a specific area or location.
- For situations where onsite retention of the 85th percentile storm volume is technically not feasible, biofiltration must be provided to satisfy specific "biofiltration standards." These standards consist of a set of siting, selection, sizing, design, and operation and maintenance (O&M) criteria that must be met for a BMP to be considered a "biofiltration BMP" – see Section 2.2.1 and Appendix F.
- Alternative (offsite) compliance approaches are provided as an option to satisfy pollutant control standards if a Copermittee implements an alternative compliance program. Copermittees are given discretion by the MS4 Permit to allow the project applicants to participate in an alternative compliance program without demonstrating technical infeasibility of retention and/or biofiltration BMPs onsite.

What this Manual does not address:

This Manual does not directly discuss the requirements of the NPDES General Permit for Storm Water Discharges Associated with Construction and Land Disturbance Activities (Order No. 2009-0009-DWQ, as amended by Order Nos. 2010-0014-DWQ and 2012-0006-DWQ) (the Construction General Permit [CGP]). These requirements are provided in Section 5 of the Authority's SWMP, available for download at www.san.org/green. This Manual is not intended to serve as a guidance or criteria document for construction-phase storm water controls. This Manual does not substantially address hydromodification management requirements or protection of critical coarse sediment yield areas, as drainages from the Authority's jurisdiction are generally exempt from hydromodification management requirements. Section 1.6 of this Manual provides further details of this exemption.

Disclaimer

Currently, some of the Copermittees are pursuing a subvention of funds from the State of California (State) to pay for certain activities required by the 2007 MS4 Permit, including activities that require Copermittees to perform activities outside their jurisdictional boundaries and on a regional or watershed basis. Nothing in this Manual should be viewed as a waiver of those claims or as a waiver of the rights of Copermittees to pursue a subvention of funds from the State to pay for certain activities required by the MS4 Permit, including the preparation and implementation of the BMP Design Manual. In addition, several Copermittees have filed petitions with the State Water Quality Control Board (State Board) challenging some of the requirements of Provision E of the MS4 Permit. Nothing in this Manual should be viewed as a waiver of those claims. Because the State Board has not issued a stay of the 2013 MS4 Permit, Copermittees must comply with the MS4 Permit's requirements while the State Board process is pending.

This Manual is organized in the following manner:

An introductory section entitled **"How to Use this Manual"** provides a practical orientation to intended uses and provides examples of recommended workflows for using the Manual.

Chapter 1 provides information to help the Manual user determine which of the storm water management requirements are applicable to the project, and addresses source controls/site design, and pollutant controls. This chapter also introduces the procedural requirements for preparation, review, and approval of project submittals. General Authority requirements for processing project submittals are provided in this chapter.

Chapter 2 defines the performance standards for source control and site design BMPs, and storm water pollutant control BMPs, based on the MS4 Permit. These are the underlying criteria that must be met by projects, as applicable. Hydromodification management BMPs do not apply to Authority projects, because of the MS4 Permit exemption for projects discharging runoff to existing underground storm drains discharging directly to an enclosed embayment (MS4 Permit Provision E.3.c(2)(d)(ii)). This chapter also presents information on the underlying concepts associated with these performance standards to provide the project applicant with technical background; explains why the performance standards are important; and gives a general description of how the performance standards can be met.

Chapter 3 describes the essential steps in preparing a comprehensive storm water management design and explains the importance of starting the process early during the preliminary design phase. By following the recommended procedures in Chapter 3, project applicants can develop a design that complies with the complex and overlapping storm water requirements. This chapter is intended to be used by both Standard Projects and PDPs; however, certain steps will not apply to Standard Projects (as identified in the chapter).

Chapter 4 presents the source control and site design requirements to be met by all development projects and is therefore intended to be used by Standard Projects and PDPs.

Chapter 5 applies to PDPs. It presents the specific process for determining which category of onsite pollutant control BMP, or combination of BMPs, is most appropriate for the PDP site and how to design the BMP to meet the storm water pollutant control performance standard. The prioritization order of onsite pollutant control BMPs begins with retention, then biofiltration, and finally flow-through treatment control (in combination with offsite alternative compliance). Chapter 5 does not apply to Standard Projects.

Chapter 6 applies to PDPs that are subject to hydromodification management requirements. No Authority Standard Projects or PDPs are subject to hydromodification management requirements. As such, this section is significantly abbreviated from the Model BMP Design Manual.

Chapter 7 addresses the long-term O&M requirements of structural BMPs presented in this Manual, and the mechanisms to ensure O&M in perpetuity. Chapter 7 also addresses Authority-specific O&M requirements. Chapter 7 applies to PDPs only and is not required for Standard Projects; however, Standard Projects may use this chapter as a reference.

Chapter 8 describes the specific requirements for the content of project submittals to facilitate the Authority's review of project plans for compliance with applicable requirements of the Manual and the MS4 Permit. This chapter is applicable to Standard Projects and PDPs. This chapter pertains specifically to the content of project submittals, and not to specific details of Authority requirements for processing of submittals; it is intended to complement the requirements for processing of project submittals that are included in Chapter 1, and as described in Section 4 of the SWMP.

Appendices to this Manual provide detailed guidance for BMP design, calculation procedures, worksheets, maps, and other figures to be referenced for BMP design. These appendices are not intended to be used independently from the overall Manual – rather they are intended to be used only as referenced in the main body of the Manual.

This Manual is organized on the basis of project category. Requirements that are applicable to both Standard Projects and PDPs are presented in Chapter 4. Additional requirements applicable only to PDPs are presented in Chapters 5 through 7. While source control and site design BMPs are required for all projects inclusive of Standard Projects and PDPs, structural BMPs are required only for PDPs. Throughout this Manual, "structural BMP" refers to a pollutant control BMP.

Chronology of Storm Water Regulations
and San Diego Region Model Guidance Documents

Date	Document	Notes
July 16, 1990	MS4 Permit	The SDRWQCB issued general storm water requirements to all jurisdictions within the County of San Diego via the MS4 Permit
February 21, 2001	MS4 Permit	Land Development SUSMP requirements were written into the MS4 Permit during permit reissuance
February 14, 2002	Model SUSMP	Countywide model guidance document was issued for implementation of the 2001 MS4 Permit requirements
January 24, 2007	MS4 Permit	LID and HMP requirements were written into the MS4 Permit during reissuance
July 24, 2008	Model SUSMP	Countywide model guidance document for implementation of the 2007 MS4 Permit requirements, including interim HMP criteria, was prepared
March 2011	Final HMP	Final HMP addresses HMP requirements of the 2007 MS4 Permit
March 25, 2011	Model SUSMP	Countywide model guidance document for implementation of the 2007 MS4 Permit requirements, including final HMP, was completed
May 8, 2013	MS4 Permit	Storm water retention requirements and requirements for protection of critical coarse sediment yield were written into the MS4 Permit during reissuance
February 11, 2015	MS4 Permit	Amends 2013 MS4 Permit and provides clarification on water quality equivalency and provides other technical revisions Permit coverage extended to Orange County Copermittees
June 27, 2015	Model BMP Design Manual	Countywide model guidance document for implementation of the MS4 Permit requirements "Model BMP Design Manual" updates former "Model SUSMP"
November 18, 2015	MS4 Permit	Amends 2013 MS4 permit and provides clarification on Prior Lawful Approval requirements Permit coverage extended to Riverside County Copermittees
December 17, 2015	Water Quality Equivalency Guidelines	Draft Water Quality Equivalency Guidelines (WQE) accepted by the SDRWQCB WQE provides the basis for determining approval of Alternative Compliance projects
February 16, 2016	Model BMP Design Manual	Updates to June 2015, version, including updated PDP definitions and definition of redevelopment, updates to storm water requirements applicability timeline, and updates to hydromodification management performance criteria and procedures

This page intentionally left blank

Table of Contents

Appendices

Figures

Tables

List of Acronyms and Abbreviations

303(d)	Refers to Clean Water Act Section 303(d) list of impaired and threatened waters
ADC	San Diego County Regional Airport Authority Airport Design and Construction
ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials
Authority	San Diego County Regional Airport Authority
BF	Biofiltration (BMP Category)
BMPs	Best Management Practices
CGP	Construction General Permit
CIC	Airport Capital Improvement Committee
CEQA	California Environmental Quality Act
DCV	Design Capture Volume
DMA	Drainage Management Area
EAD	San Diego County Regional Airport Authority Environmental Affairs Department
ESA	Environmentally Sensitive Area
FAA	Federal Aviation Administration
FDD	San Diego County Regional Airport Authority Facilities Development Department
FMD	San Diego County Regional Airport Authority Facilities Management Department
FT	Flow-through Treatment Control BMP (BMP Category)
ft^3	cubic feet
GLUs	Geomorphic Landscape Units
GR	General Requirements
HMP	Hydromodification Management Plan
HSPF	Hydrologic Simulation Program-FORTRAN
HU	Harvest and Use
HVAC	heating, ventilation, and air conditioning
INF	Infiltration (BMP Category)
LEED	Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design
LID	Low Impact Development
Manual	Authority BMP Design Manual
MEP	Maximum Extent Practicable
MS4	Municipal Separate Storm Sewer System
NRCS	Natural Resource Conservation Service
NPDES	National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System
O&M	Operation and Maintenance
PDP	Priority Development Project
POC	Point of Compliance
PR	Partial Retention (BMP Category)
SAN	San Diego International Airport
SC	Source Control
SCCWRP	Southern California Coastal Water Research Project

SD	Site Design
SDHM	San Diego Hydrology Model
SDRWQCB	San Diego Regional Water Quality Control Board
SIC	Standard Industrial Classification
State	State of California
State Board	State Water Quality Control Board
SUSMP	Standard Urban Stormwater Mitigation Plan
SWMM	Storm Water Management Model
SWMP	Storm Water Management Plan
SWQMP	Storm Water Quality Management Plan
TN	Total Nitrogen
TSS	Total Suspended Solids
USEPA	United States Environmental Protection Agency
USGS	United States Geological Survey
WMAA	Watershed Management Area Analysis
WQIP	Water Quality Improvement Plan

This page intentionally left blank

How to Use This Manual

This Manual is intended to help a project applicant/proponent, in coordination with Airport Authority Environmental Affairs Department (EAD) staff, develop a Storm Water Quality Management Plan (SWQMP) for a development project that complies with local and MS4 Permit requirements. Most applicants will require the assistance of a qualified civil engineer, architect, and/or landscape architect to prepare a SWQMP. The applicant should begin by checking specific requirements with EAD storm water program staff, because every project is different.

As described in the Authority's Storm Water Management Plan (SWMP), the Authority is a special government entity, created in 2003 by the California legislature and granted responsibility for managing the San Diego International Airport. Several tenants and subtenants operate businesses at SAN under the Authority's jurisdiction. In addition, the Authority operates its own "municipal" facilities, including the terminals, parking lots, and other support buildings.

Article 8 of the Authority Code, referred to as the Storm Water Code, consists of its storm water management and discharge controls. Section 8.74(a)(3) addresses New Development and Redevelopment and states that "the Executive Director may establish controls on the volume and rate of storm water runoff from new developments and redevelopments as may be reasonably necessary to minimize the discharge and transport of pollutants." The Authority BMP Design Manual represents one mechanism by which the Executive Director has established such controls in order to comply with the MS4 Permit.

New development and redevelopment projects are conducted by two major categories of project proponents: projects conducted by tenants of the airport (hereafter referred to as "tenant projects") and projects conducted by the Authority itself (hereafter referred to as "capital projects"). The Authority has a different project approval process for each of these two project proponent categories and these differences are reflected in the Authority BMP Design Manual project review and approval processes. The Authority BMP Design Manual approval process, including roles and responsibilities of Authority departments, is described below for both tenant and capital projects.

Tenant Projects

Whenever an airport tenant desires to make surface or subsurface improvements or perform new construction, reconstruction, modification, or demolition, the tenant must submit a request for approval to the Terminals & Tenants Department prior to commencing work. The request must be accompanied by plans and specifications that indicate the nature and extent of the proposed work and conform to Authority policies and all relevant laws, ordinances, rules, and regulations. The plans may include references to specific sections or parts of the Uniform Building Code or other applicable codes, ordinances, or laws. The Terminals & Tenants Department, in conjunction with the Facilities Development Department (FDD), assigns a project manager to evaluate the project application for completeness and to coordinate technical review with the other Authority departments. EAD must determine whether the current BMP Design Manual requirements are applicable to the project, as described in Section 1.2 of this Manual. For both Standard Projects and PDPs, in order for the project application to be considered complete, the project proponent must submit a Storm Water Quality Management Plan (SWQMP) with the project application in accordance with the Authority BMP Design Manual describing how the project will meet the Manual requirements. EAD reviews the finalized project plans and documents to ensure that all environmental requirements are met.

The approval of a SAN tenant project becomes part of the lease or part of a use and occupancy permit once all documents in the project application have been approved. Any California Environmental Quality Act (CEQA) mitigation measures or conditions of approval required by the review process of these departments become part of the lease or use permit and may be adopted by the Airport Authority Board (Board) as a CEQA Mitigation Monitoring and Reporting Program. Sustainability and Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED) criteria commitments are also incorporated. Authority review does not substitute for any other required applicable city, county, or federal development permits. Written approval must be obtained from the Authority before development may begin, regardless of the scope of work.

Capital Projects

Development projects at the airport that are carried out by the Authority itself are considered Capital Projects or Major Maintenance Projects.

Whenever an Authority department desires to make surface or subsurface improvements or to perform new construction, reconstruction, modification, or demolition, the project sponsor, proponent, or manager must submit appropriate information to the Authority's Capital Improvements Committee (CIC). The CIC evaluates each development project on the basis of its financial funding capacity, and prepares a development program with the accepted projects. The Airport Planning & Noise Mitigation Department and EAD assess the environmental impacts of the program. EAD must determine whether the current BMP Design Manual requirements are applicable to the project, as described in Section 1.2 of this Manual. For both Standard Projects and PDPs, in order for the project submittal to be considered complete, the submittal must include Storm Water Quality Management Plan (SWQMP) in accordance with the Authority BMP Design Manual describing how the project will meet the Manual requirements. Once reviewed by the relevant Authority departments, the development program is submitted to the Board for approval. The Board evaluates the development program and determines whether the program will be included as part of the Authority's budget. Any mitigation measures or conditions of approval required by the review process of these departments become part of the project design, contract, and/or implementation and are formalized, as necessary, as a CEQA Mitigation Monitoring and Reporting Program adopted by the Board at the time of project approval. Again, commitments to sustainability or LEED initiatives are also incorporated into the project design and contracts

Departmental Responsibilities

The general responsibilities of those departments involved in the implementation of the Authority's process to implement the BMP Design Manual are listed in the following table. The inspectors of FDD ensure that structural BMPs are installed according to approved plans. The Business & Financial Management Department and EAD are responsible for ensuring that tenants properly operate and maintain any storm water pollution control measures that were required as part of the project approval. The Facilities Maintenance Department (FMD), the Airside Operations, Security, & Public Safety Department, and the Terminal & Tenants Department staffs are involved with the operation and proper maintenance of BMPs installed for capital projects and major maintenance projects.

Department	Education	Tenant Project Review	Tenant Project Approval	Capital Project Planning	Capital Project Review	Capital Project Approval	Construction Inspection	Capital Project Operations and Maintenance	Enforcement
Airport Planning & Noise Mitigation Department	O	O		X					
Airside Operations, Security, & Public Safety	O						O	X	O
Environmental Affairs	X	X	X	O	X	X	O	O	X
Facilities Development	O	X	X	X	X	X	X		
Facilities Maintenance	O							X	
Terminals & Tenants	O						O	X	O
Business & Financial Management	X	X	X				O		X
X – Primary Responsibility O – Secondary Responsibility									

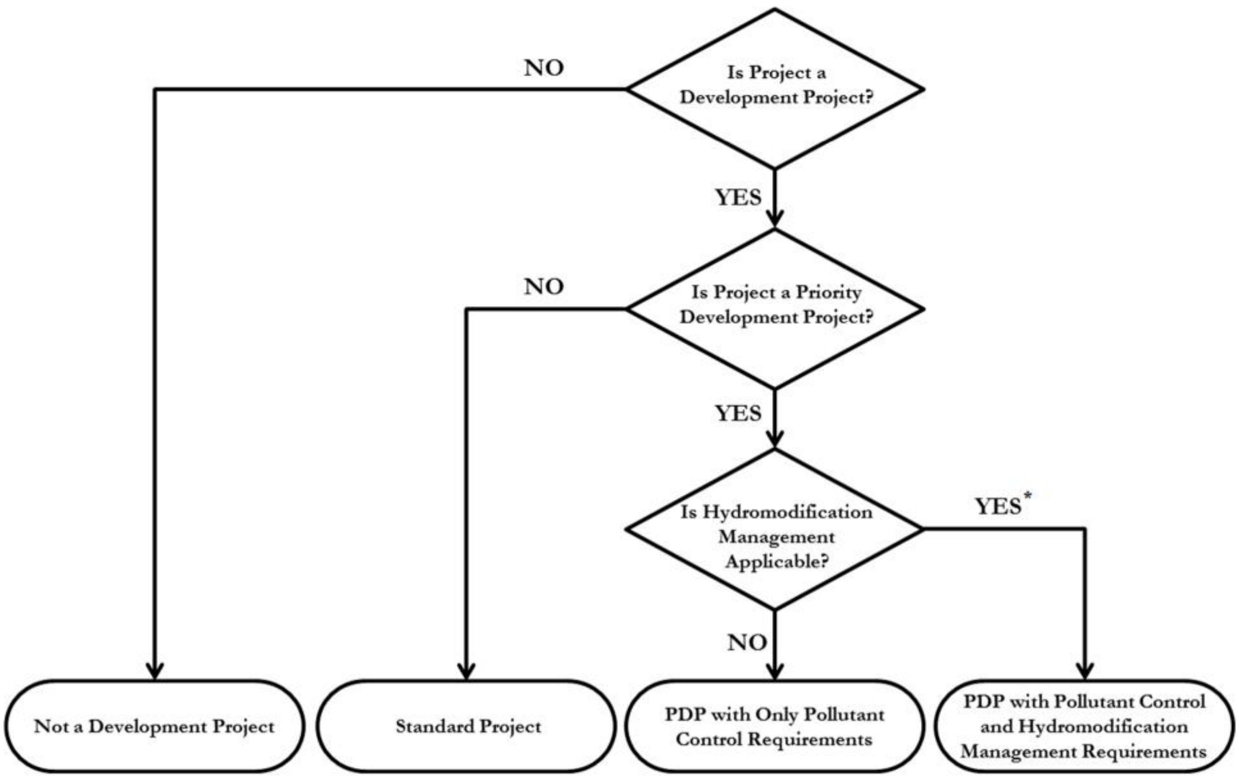
Adequacy of Proposed Plans

EAD will review SWQMP documents and other relevant plans for compliance with the applicable BMP Design Manual requirements. EAD may approve proposed alternatives to the BMP requirements in the Authority BMP Design Manual if they are determined to be applicable and equally effective. Additional analysis or information may be required to enable staff to determine the adequacy of proposed BMPs and will be requested following the conclusion of a staff review cycle. The SWQMP will be deemed complete once EAD determines that the project's compliance with the Authority BMP Design Manual is adequately described in the SWQMP and related plans.

Beginning Steps for All Projects: What requirements apply?

To use this Manual, start by reviewing **Chapter 1** to determine whether your project is a "Standard Project" or a "PDP" (refer also to local requirements) and which storm water quality requirements apply to your project.

Not all of the requirements and processes described in this Manual apply to all projects. Therefore, it is important to begin with a careful analysis of which requirements apply to Authority projects. Chapter 1 also provides an overview of the process of planning, design, construction, operation, and maintenance, with associated Authority review and approval steps, leading to compliance. A flow chart that shows how to categorize a project in terms of applicable post-construction storm water requirements is included below. The flow chart is followed by a table that lists the applicable section of this Manual for each project type.



*Note: Hydromodification management requirements do not apply to Authority projects.

Project Type	Applicable Requirements		
	Source Control and Site Design (Chapter 4)	Storm Water Pollutant Control BMPs (Chapter 5)	Hydromodification Management BMPs (Chapter 6)
Not a Development Project (without impact to storm water quality or quantity – e.g., interior remodels, routine maintenance; refer to Section 1.3)	Requirements in this Manual do not apply		
Standard Projects	X		
PDPs With Only Pollutant Control Requirements	X	X	
PDPs With Pollutant Control and Hydromodification Management Requirements	Requirements do not apply to Authority projects		

Once an applicant has determined which requirements apply, **Chapter 2** describes the specific performance standards associated with each requirement. For example, an applicant may learn from Chapter 1 that the project must meet storm water pollutant control requirements. Chapter 2 describes what these requirements entail. This chapter also provides background on key storm water concepts to help understand why these requirements are in place and how they can be met. Refer to the list of acronyms and glossary as guidance to understanding the meaning of key terms within the context of this Manual.

Next Steps for All Projects: How should an applicant approach a project storm water management design?

Most projects will then proceed to **Chapter 3** to follow the step-by-step guidance to prepare a storm water project submittal for the site. This chapter does not specify any regulatory criteria beyond those already specified in Chapters 1 and 2 – rather it is intended to serve as a resource for project applicants to help navigate the task of developing a compliant storm water project submittal. Note that the first steps in Chapter 3 apply to both Standard Projects and PDPs, while other steps in Chapter 3 only apply to PDPs.

The use of a step-by-step approach is highly recommended because it helps ensure that the right information is collected, analyzed, and incorporated into project plans and the plans are submitted at the appropriate time in the Authority review process. It also helps facilitate a common framework for discussion between the applicant and the reviewer. However, each project is different and it may be appropriate to use a different approach as long as the applicant demonstrates compliance with the MS4 Permit requirements that apply to the project.

Final Steps in Using This Manual: How should an applicant design BMPs and prepare documents for compliance?

Standard Projects	PDPs
Standard Projects will proceed to **Chapter 4** for guidance on implementing source control and site design requirements. After Chapter 4, Standard Projects will proceed to **Chapter 8** for project submittal requirements.	PDPs will also proceed to **Chapter 4** for guidance on implementing source control and site design requirements. PDPs will use **Chapters 5 through 7** and associated Appendices to implement pollutant control requirements (hydromodification management controls are not required) for the project site, as applicable. These projects will proceed to **Chapter 8** for project submittal requirements.

Plan Ahead to Avoid Common Mistakes

The following list identifies some common errors made by applicants that delay or compromise development approvals with respect to storm water compliance:

- Not planning for compliance early enough. The strategy for storm water quality compliance should be considered before completing a conceptual site design or sketching a layout of project site or subdivision lots (see Chapter 3). Planning early is crucial under current requirements compared to previous requirements; for example, LID/site design is required for all development projects and onsite retention of storm water runoff is required for PDPs. Additionally, collection of necessary information early in the planning process (e.g., geotechnical conditions, groundwater conditions) can help avoid delays resulting from redesign.

- Assuming that proprietary storm water treatment facilities will be adequate for compliance and/or relying on strategies acceptable under previous MS4 Permits. Under the MS4 Permit, the standard for pollutant control for PDPs is **retention of the 85th percentile storm volume** (see Chapter 5). Flow-through treatment cannot be used to satisfy permit requirements unless the project also participates in an alternative compliance program. Under some conditions, certain proprietary BMPs may be classified as "biofiltration" according to Appendix F of this Manual and can be used for primary compliance with storm water pollutant treatment requirements (i.e., without alternative compliance).

  Not planning for ongoing inspections and maintenance of PDP structural BMPs in perpetuity. It is essential to secure a mechanism for funding of long-term O&M of structural BMPs, select structural BMPs that can be effectively operated and maintained by the ultimate property owner, and include design measures to ensure access for maintenance and to control maintenance costs (see Chapter 7)

Chapter

1

AUTHORITY BMP DESIGN MANUAL

Policies and Procedural Requirements

This chapter introduces storm water management policies and is intended to help categorize a project and determine the applicable storm water management requirements as well as options for compliance. This chapter also introduces the procedural requirements for preparation, review, and approval of project submittals.

1.1 Introduction to Storm Water Management Policies

MS4 Permit Provision E.3.a-c; E.3.d.(1)

Storm water management requirements for development projects are derived from the MS4 Permit and are implemented by local jurisdictions.

On May 8, 2013, the SDRWQCB reissued a municipal storm water permit entitled "National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System Permit and Waste Discharge Requirements for Discharges from the MS4s Draining the Watersheds Within the San Diego Region" (Order No. R9-2013-0001, as amended by Order Nos. R9-2015-0001 and R9-2015-0100; referred to as MS4 Permit) to the municipal Copermittees. The MS4 Permit was issued by the SDRWQCB pursuant to section 402 of the federal Clean Water Act and implementing regulations (Code of Federal Regulations Title 40, Part 122) adopted by the United States Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA), and Chapter 5.5, Division 7 of the California Water Code. The MS4 Permit, in part, requires each Copermittee, including the Authority, to use its land use and planning authority to implement a development planning program to control and reduce the discharge of pollutants in storm water from new development and significant redevelopment to the maximum extent practicable (MEP). MEP is defined in the MS4 Permit.

Different requirements apply to different project types.

The MS4 Permit requires all development projects to implement source control and site design practices that will minimize the generation of pollutants. While all development projects are required to implement source control and site design/LID practices, the MS4 Permit has additional requirements for development projects that exceed size thresholds and/or fit under specific use categories. These projects, referred to as PDPs, are required to incorporate structural BMPs into the project plan to reduce the discharge of pollutants, and, for those jurisdictions where it applies, address potential hydromodification impacts from changes in flow and sediment supply.

1.2 Purpose and Use of the Manual

This Manual presents a "unified BMP design approach."

To assist the land development community, streamline project reviews, and maximize cost-effective environmental benefits, the regional Copermittees have developed a unified BMP design approach[1] that meets the performance standards specified in the MS4 Permit. By following the process outlined in this Manual, project applicants (for both capital and tenant developments) can develop a single integrated design that complies with the complex and overlapping MS4 Permit source control and site design requirements, and storm water pollutant control requirements (i.e., water quality). Figure 1-1 presents a flow chart of the decision process that the Manual user should use to:

1. Categorize a project;
2. Determine storm water requirements; and
3. Understand how to submit projects for review and verification.

This figure also indicates where specific procedural steps associated with this process are addressed in Chapter 1.

Alternative BMP design approaches that meet applicable performance standards may also be acceptable.

Applicants may choose not to use the unified BMP design approach present in this Manual; in this case, they will need to demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Authority, in their submittal, compliance with applicable performance standards. These performance standards are described in **Chapter 2** and in Section E.3.c of the MS4 Permit.

[1] The term "unified BMP design approach" refers to the standardized process for site and watershed investigation, BMP selection, BMP sizing, and BMP design that is outlined and described in this manual with associated appendices and templates. This approach is considered to be "unified" because it represents a pathway for compliance with the MS4 Permit requirements that is anticipated to be reasonably consistent across the local jurisdictions in San Diego County. In contrast, applicants may choose to take an alternative approach where they demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Authority, in their submittal, compliance with applicable performance standards without necessarily following the process identified in this manual.

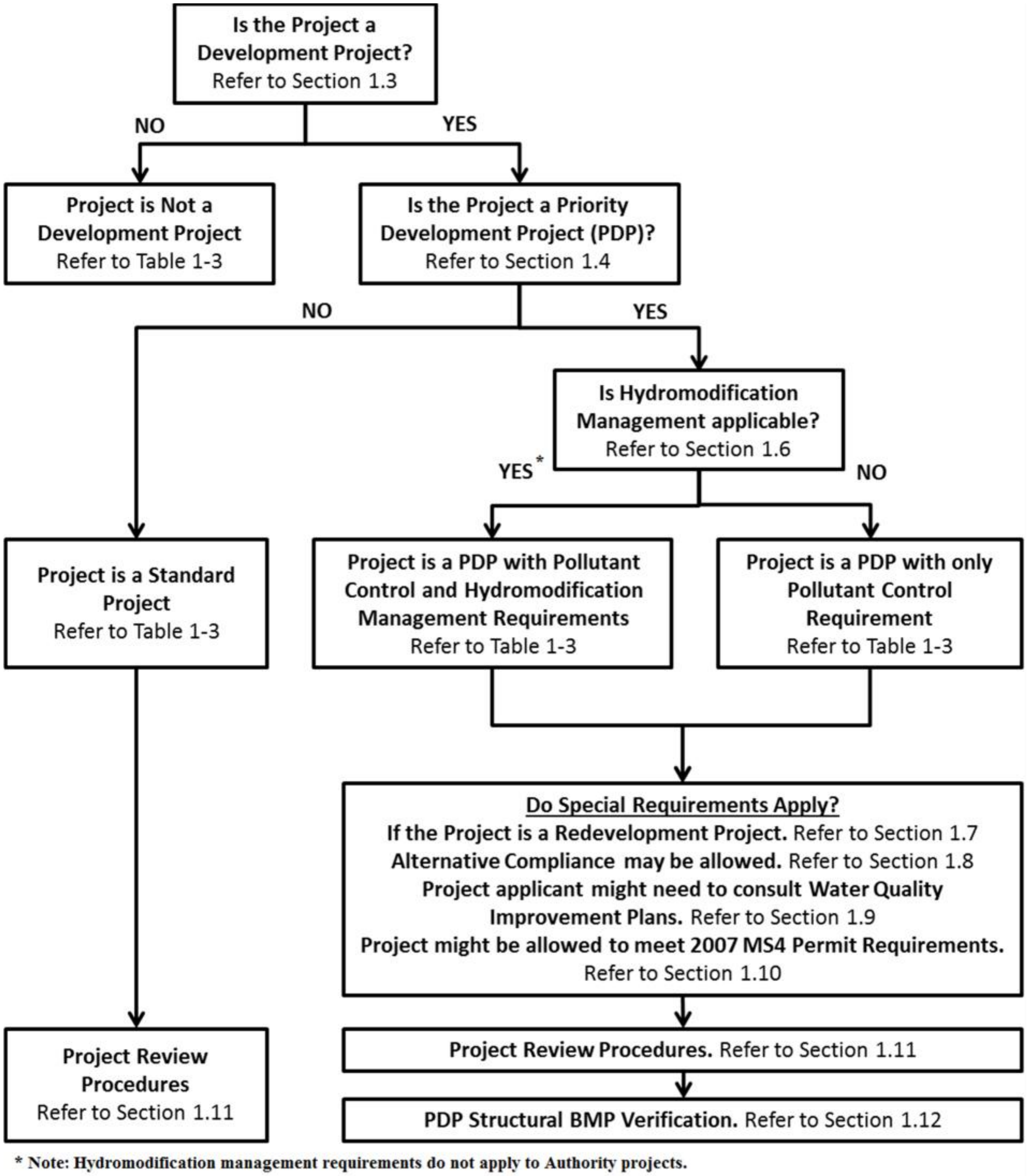


FIGURE 1-1. Procedural Requirements for a Project to Identify Storm Water Requirements

1.2.1 Determining Applicability of Permanent BMP Requirements

Table 1-1 reiterates the procedural requirements indicated in Figure 1-1 in a step-wise checklist format. The purpose of Table 1-1 is to guide applicants to appropriate sections in Chapter 1 to identify the post-construction storm water requirements applicable for a project. Table 1-1 is **not** intended to be used as a project intake form. Applicability checklist of permanent, post-construction storm water BMP requirements that may be used as a project intake form is provided in Appendix A.

TABLE 1-1. Checklist for a Project to Identify Applicable Post-Construction Storm Water Requirements

Step 1. Is the project a Development Project? See Section 1.3 for guidance. A phase of a project can also be categorized as a development project. If "Yes" then continue to Step 2. If "No" then stop here; Permanent BMP requirements do not apply; i.e., requirements in this Manual are not applicable to the project.	☐ Yes	☐ No
Step 2. Is the project a PDP?		
Step 2a. Does the project fit one of the PDP definitions a-f? See Section 1.4.1 for guidance. If "Yes" then continue to Step 2b. If "No" then stop here; <u>only</u> Standard Project requirements apply.	☐ Yes	☐ No
Step 2b. Do any of the exceptions to PDP definitions in this Manual apply to the project? See Section 1.4.3 for guidance. If "Yes" then stop here; Standard Project requirements apply, along with additional requirements that qualify the project for the exception. If "No" then continue to Step 3; the project is a PDP.	☐ Yes	☐ No
Step 3. Do hydromodification control requirements apply? See Section 1.6 for guidance. All Authority projects to say "No" then stop here; PDP with only pollutant control requirements, apply to the project.	☐ Yes	■ No

1.2.2 Determine Applicability of Construction BMP Requirements

All projects, or phases of projects, even if exempted from meeting some or all of the Permanent BMP Requirements, are required to implement temporary erosion, sediment, good housekeeping and pollution prevention BMPs to mitigate storm water pollutants during the construction phase. See the Authority SWMP Section 5 and Appendix B (www.san.org/green) for detailed information on these requirements.

1.3 Defining a Project

Not all site improvements are considered "development projects" under the MS4 Permit.

This Manual is intended for new development and redevelopment projects, inclusive of both private- and public-funded projects. Development projects are defined by the MS4 Permit as "construction, rehabilitation, redevelopment, or reconstruction of any public or private projects." Development projects are issued local permits to allow construction activities. To further clarify, this Manual applies only to development or redevelopment activities that have the potential to contact storm water and contribute an anthropogenic source of pollutants, or reduce the natural absorption and infiltration abilities of the land.

A project must be defined consistent with the California Environmental Quality Act (CEQA) definitions of "project."

CEQA defines a project as a discretionary action being undertaken by a public agency that would have a direct or reasonably foreseeable indirect impact on the physical environment. This includes actions by the agency, financing and grants, and permits, licenses, plans, regulations or other entitlements granted by the agency. CEQA requires that the project include "the whole of the action" before the agency. This requirement precludes "piecemealing," which is the improper (and often artificial) separation of a project into smaller parts to avoid preparing EIR-level documentation.

In the context of this Manual, the "project" is the "whole of the action" that has the potential for adding or replacing or resulting in the addition or replacement of, roofs, pavement, or other impervious surfaces and thereby resulting in increased flows and storm water pollutants. "Whole of the action" means the project may not be segmented or phased into small parts either onsite or offsite if the effect is to reduce the quantity of impervious area and fall below thresholds for applicability of storm water requirements.

When defining the project, the following questions are considered:

- What are the project activities?
- Do they occur onsite or offsite?
- What are the limits of the project (project boundary)?
- What is the whole of the action associated with the project (i.e., what is the total amount of new or replaced impervious area considering all of the collective project components through all phases of the project)?
- Are any facilities or agreements to build facilities offsite in conjunction with providing service to the project (street widening, utilities)?

Table 1-2 is used to determine whether storm water management requirements defined in the MS4 Permit and presented in this Manual apply to the project.

If a project meets one of the exemptions in Table 1-2, then permanent BMP requirements do not apply to the project; i.e., requirements in this Manual are not applicable. If permanent BMP requirements apply to a project, Sections 1.4 through 1.7 will further define the extent of the applicable requirements based on the MS4 Permit. The MS4 Permit contains standard requirements that are applicable to all projects (Standard Projects and PDPs), and more specific requirements for projects that are classified as PDPs.

TABLE 1-2. Applicability of Permanent, Post-Construction Storm Water Requirements

Do permanent storm water requirements apply to your project?
Requirements DO NOT apply to:
Replacement of impervious surfaces that are part of a routine maintenance activity, such as: • Replacing roof material on an existing building • Rebuilding a structure to original design after damage from earthquake, fire or similar disasters • Restoring pavement or other surface materials affected by trenches from utility work • Resurfacing existing roads and parking lots, including slurry, overlay, and restriping • Routinely replacing damaged pavement, including full depth replacement, if the sole purpose is to repair the damaged pavement • Resurfacing existing roadways, sidewalks, pedestrian ramps, or bike lanes on existing roads • Restoring a historic building to its original historic design **Note**: Work that creates impervious surface outside of the existing impervious footprint is not considered routine maintenance.
Repair or improvements to an existing building or structure that do not alter the size: • Plumbing, electrical, and heating, ventilation, and air conditioning (HVAC) work • Interior alterations, including major interior remodels and tenant build-out within an existing commercial building • Exterior alterations that do not change the general dimensions and structural framing of the building (does not include building additions or projects where the existing building is demolished)

Please note that EAD may choose to designate a project that is not defined within any of the categories in Table 1-2 as a standard project or PDP, based on the project's potential impacts to storm water quality.

1.4 Is the Project a PDP?

MS4 Permit Provision E.3.b.(1)

PDP categories are defined by the MS4 Permit, but the PDP categories can be expanded by the Authority, and the Authority can offer specific exemptions from PDP categories.

Section 1.4.1 presents the PDP categories defined in the MS4 Permit. Section 1.4.2 presents additional PDP categories and/or expanded PDP definitions that apply to the Authority. Section 1.4.3 presents specific Authority exemptions.

1.4.1 PDP Categories

In the MS4 Permit, PDP categories are defined on the basis of project size, type, and design features.

Projects shall be classified as PDPs if they are in one or more of the PDP categories presented in the MS4 Permit, which are listed below. Review each category, defined in (a) through (f), below. A PDP applicability checklist for these categories is also provided in Appendix A. If any of the categories match the project, the entire project is a PDP. For example, if a project feature such as a parking lot falls into a PDP category, then the entire development footprint, including project components that otherwise would not have been designated a PDP on their own (such as other impervious components that did not meet PDP size thresholds, and/or landscaped areas), shall be subject to PDP requirements. Note that size thresholds for impervious surface created or replaced vary on the basis of land use, land characteristics, and whether the project is a new development or redevelopment project. Therefore, all definitions must be reviewed carefully. Also, note that categories are defined by the total quantity of "added or replaced" impervious surface, not the **net change** in impervious surface.

For example, consider a redevelopment project that adds 7,500 square feet of new impervious surface and removes 4,000 square feet of existing impervious surface. The project has a net increase of 3,500 square feet of impervious surface. However, the project is still classified as a PDP because the total added or replaced impervious surface is 7,500 square feet, which is greater than 5,000 square feet.

"Collectively" for the purposes of the Manual means that all contiguous and non-contiguous parts of the project that represent the whole of the action must be summed. For example, consider a residential development project that will include the following impervious components:

- 3,600 square feet of roadway
- 350 square feet of sidewalk
- 4,800 square feet of roofs
- 1,200 square feet of driveways
- 500 square feet of walkways/porches

The collective impervious area is 10,450 square feet.

PDP Categories Defined by the MS4 Permit:

(a) New development projects that create 10,000 square feet or more of impervious surfaces (collectively over the entire project site). This category includes commercial, industrial, residential, mixed-use, and public development projects on public or private land.

(b) Redevelopment projects that create and/or replace 5,000 square feet or more of impervious surface (collectively over the entire project site on an existing site of 10,000 square feet or more of impervious surfaces). This category includes commercial, industrial, residential, mixed-use, and public development projects on public or private land.

(c) New and redevelopment projects that create and/or replace 5,000 square feet or more of impervious surface (collectively over the entire project site), and support one or more of the following uses:

(i) Restaurants. This category is defined as a facility that sells prepared foods and drinks for consumption, including stationary lunch counters and refreshment stands selling prepared foods and drinks for immediate consumption (Standard Industrial Classification [SIC] code 5812).

<u>Information and an SIC search function are available at</u> <u>https://www.osha.gov/pls/imis/sicsearch.html.</u>

(ii) Hillside development projects. This category includes development on any natural slope that is 25 percent or greater. <u>This category is not applicable to SAN.</u>

(iii) Parking lots. This category is defined as a land area or facility for the temporary parking or storage of motor vehicles used personally, for business, or for commerce.

(iv) Streets, roads, highways, freeways, and driveways. This category is defined as any paved impervious surface used for the transportation of automobiles, trucks, motorcycles, and other vehicles.

(d) New or redevelopment projects that create and/or replace 2,500 square feet or more of impervious surface (collectively over the entire project site), and discharge directly to an Environmentally Sensitive Area (ESA). "Discharge directly to" includes flow that is conveyed overland a distance of 200 feet or less from the project to the ESA, or is conveyed in a pipe or open channel any distance as an isolated flow from the project to the ESA (i.e., not commingled with flows from adjacent lands).

<u>Note: ESAs are areas that include, but are not limited to, all Clean Water Act Section 303(d) impaired water bodies; areas designated as Areas of Special Biological Significance by the State Board and SDRWQCB; State Water Quality Protected Areas; water bodies designated with the RARE beneficial use by the State Board and SDRWQCB; and any other equivalent environmentally sensitive areas that have been identified by the Copermittee (see Section 1.4.2 below to determine whether any other local areas have been identified).</u>

<u>For projects adjacent to an ESA, but not discharging to an ESA, the 2,500 square-foot threshold does not apply as long as the project does not physically disturb the ESA and the ESA is upstream of the project. Drainage from SAN discharges to San Diego Bay, which is designated as an ESA,</u>

as portions are contained in the 303(d) list. Certain areas of San Diego Bay are also subject to TMDLs; however, SAN does not directly drain to these areas.

(e) New development projects, or redevelopment projects that create and/or replace 5,000 square feet or more of impervious surface, and that support one or more of the following uses:

(i) Automotive repair shops. This category is defined as a facility that is categorized in any one of the following SIC codes: 5013, 5014, 5541, 7532-7534, or 7536-7539.

Information and an SIC search function are available at https://www.osha.gov/pls/imis/sicsearch.html.

(ii) Retail gasoline outlets. This category includes retail gasoline outlets that meet the following criteria: (a) 5,000 square feet or more, or (b) a projected Average Daily Traffic of 100 or more vehicles per day.

(f) New or redevelopment projects that result in the disturbance of one or more acres of land and are expected to generate pollutants post construction.

Exclusions that apply to this category only: Projects creating less than 5,000 square feet of impervious surface and where any added landscaping does not require regular use of pesticides and fertilizers, such as a slope stabilization project using native plants, are excluded from this category. Calculation of the square footage of impervious surface need not include linear pathways that are for infrequent vehicle use, such as for emergency or maintenance access or for bicycle or pedestrian use, if they are built with pervious surfaces or if they sheet flow to surrounding pervious surfaces. See Section 1.4.2 for additional guidance.

Area that may be excluded from impervious area calculations for determining whether the project is a PDP:

(a) Consistent with Table 1-2, areas of a project that are considered exempt from storm water requirements (e.g., routine maintenance activities, resurfacing, etc.) shall not be included as part of "added or replaced" impervious surface in determining project classification.

(b) Decorative ponds with adequate freeboard or an overflow structure that does not release overflow to the MS4 are not considered PDPs.

Redevelopment projects may have special considerations with regard to the total area required to be treated. Refer to Section 1.7.

1.4.2 Local Additional PDP Categories and/or Expanded PDP Definitions

The Authority has not designated additional or expanded PDP categories, but may choose to designate a project that is not defined within any of the categories in Section 1.4.1 as a PDP, based on the project's potential impacts to storm water quality.

1.4.3 Local PDP Exemptions or Alternative PDP Requirements

The following types of development projects may be exempt from being defined as a PDP by the Authority if they meet the following conditions. Projects seeking PDP exemptions will be reviewed by EAD for eligibility.

1) New or retrofit paved sidewalks that are:
   - Designed to divert storm water runoff to vegetated or permeable areas;
   - Designed to be hydraulically disconnected from impervious streets or roads; or
   - Include permeable pavement or surfaces in accordance with USEPA Green Streets Guidance (Appendix I).
2) Retrofitting or redevelopment of existing paved alleys, streets or roads that are:
   - Designed in accordance with USEPA Green Streets Guidance (Appendix I).

1.5 Determining Applicable Storm Water Management Requirements

MS4 Permit Provision E.3.c.(1)

Depending on project type and receiving water, different storm water management requirements apply.

New development or redevelopment projects that are subject to this Manual requirement pursuant to Section 1.3, but are not classified as PDPs based on Section 1.4, are called "Standard Projects." Source control and site design requirements apply to all projects, including Standard Projects and PDPs. Additional structural BMP requirements (i.e., pollutant control) apply only to PDPs. Storm water management requirements for a project, and the applicable sections of this Manual, are summarized in Table 1-3.

TABLE 1-3. Applicability of Manual Sections for Different Project Types

Project Type	**Project Development Process** (Chapter 3 and 8)	**Source Control and Site Design** (Section 2.1 and Chapter 4)	**Structural Pollutant Control** (Section 2.2 and Chapter 5 and 7)	**Structural Hydromodification Management** (Section 2.3, 2.4 and Chapter 6 and 7)
Not a Development Project	The requirements of this Manual do not apply			
Standard Project	☑	☑	NA	NA

PDP With Only Pollutant Control Requirements*	☑	☑	☑	NA
PDPs with Pollutant Control and Hydromodification Management Requirements	Hydromodification management requirements do not apply to Authority projects.			

1.6 Applicability of Hydromodification Management Requirements

MS4 Permit Provision E.3.c.(2)

As allowed by the MS4 Permit, projects discharging directly to enclosed embayments (e.g., San Diego Bay or Mission Bay), by either existing underground storm drain systems or conveyance channels whose bed and bank are concrete-lined all the way from the point of discharge to the enclosed embayment, are exempt. This exemption applies to all discharges from SAN, which discharges only to San Diego Bay. Development projects are to confirm within their SWQMP that this exemption applies.

- This exemption is subject to the following additional criteria defined by this Manual:
  a) The outfall must not be located within a wildlife refuge or reserve area (e.g., Kendall-Frost Mission Bay Marsh Reserve, San Diego Bay National Wildlife Refuge, San Diego National Wildlife Refuge).
  b) A properly sized energy dissipation system must be provided to mitigate outlet discharge velocity from the direct discharge to the enclosed embayment for the ultimate condition peak design flow of the direct discharge.
  c) The invert elevation of the direct discharge conveyance system (at the point of discharge to the enclosed embayment) should be equal to or below the mean high tide water surface elevation at the point of discharge, unless the outfall discharges to a quay or other non-erodible shore protection.
- Exceptions to criteria b and c may be allowed on a case-by-case basis at the discretion of EAD.

1.7 Special Considerations for Redevelopment Projects (50% Rule)

MS4 Permit Provision E.3.b.(2)

Redevelopment PDPs (PDPs on previously developed sites) may need to meet storm water management requirements for ALL impervious areas (collectively) within the ENTIRE project site.

If the project is a redevelopment project, the structural BMP performance requirements apply to redevelopment PDPs as follows:

(a) Where redevelopment results in the creation or replacement of impervious surface in an amount of less than 50 percent of the surface area of the previously existing development, then the structural BMP performance requirements of Provision E.3.c [of the MS4 Permit] apply only to the creation or replacement of impervious surface, and not the entire development; or

(b) Where redevelopment results in the creation or replacement of impervious surface in an amount of more than 50 percent of the surface area of the previously existing development, then the structural BMP performance requirements of Provision E.3.c [of the MS4 Permit] apply to the entire development.

These requirements for managing storm water on an entire redevelopment project site are commonly referred to as the "50% rule." For the purpose of calculating the ratio, the surface area of the previously existing development shall be the area of <u>impervious surface</u> within the previously existing development. The following steps shall be followed to estimate the area that requires treatment to satisfy the MS4 Permit requirements:

1. How much total impervious area currently exists on the site?
2. How much existing impervious area will be replaced with new impervious area?
3. How much new impervious area will be created in areas that are pervious in the existing condition?
4. Total created and/or replaced impervious surface = Step 2 + Step 3.
5. **<u>50% rule test</u>**: Is step 4 more than 50% of Step 1? If yes, treat all impervious surface on the site. If no, then treat only Step 4 impervious surface and any area that comingles with created and/or replaced impervious surface area.

<u>Note</u>: Step 2 and Step 3 must not overlap because it is fundamentally not possible for a given area to be both "replaced" and "created" at the same time. Also, activities that occur as routine maintenance shall not be included in Step 2 and Step 3 calculation.

For example, a 10,000-square-foot development proposes replacement of 4,000 square feet of impervious area. The treated area is less than 50 percent of the total development area and only the 4,000-square-foot area is required to be treated.

1.8 Alternative Compliance Program

MS4 Permit Provision E.3.c.(1).(b); E.3.c.(2).(c); E.3.c.(3)

PDPs may be allowed to participate in an alternative compliance program.

The Authority has the discretion to independently develop an alternative compliance program for its jurisdiction.

Participation in an alternative compliance program would allow a PDP to fulfill the requirement of providing retention and/or biofiltration pollutant controls onsite that completely fulfill the performance standards specified in Chapter 5 (pollutant controls) with onsite flow-through treatment controls and offsite mitigation of the design capture volume (DCV) not retained onsite.

PDPs may be allowed to participate in an alternative compliance program by using onsite BMPs to treat offsite runoff. PDPs must consult EAD for specific guidelines and requirements for using onsite facilities for alternative compliance.

The PDP utilizing the alternative compliance program would (at a minimum) provide flow-through treatment control BMPs onsite, and then fund, contribute to, or implement an offsite alternative compliance project deemed by the Authority alternative compliance program to provide a greater overall water quality benefit for the portion of the pollutants not addressed onsite through retention and/or biofiltration BMPs. Offsite alternative compliance program locations for the purpose of this Manual are defined as locations within the Authority's jurisdiction, but offsite of the PDP project area. Due to Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) funding restrictions, the Authority cannot fund or sponsor programs outside of its jurisdiction.

Figure 1-2 generally represents two potential pathways for participating in alternative compliance (i.e., offsite projects that supplement the PDPs onsite BMP obligations).

- The first pathway (illustrated using solid line, left side) ultimately ends at alternative compliance if the PDP cannot meet all of the onsite pollutant control obligations via retention and/or biofiltration. This pathway requires performing feasibility analysis for retention and biofiltration BMPs prior to participation in an alternative compliance project.
- The second pathway (illustrated using dashed line, right side) is a discretionary pathway along which jurisdictions may allow for PDPs to proceed directly to an alternative compliance project without demonstrating infeasibility of retention and/or biofiltration BMPs onsite.

Participation in an alternative compliance program also requires onsite flow-through treatment control BMPs.

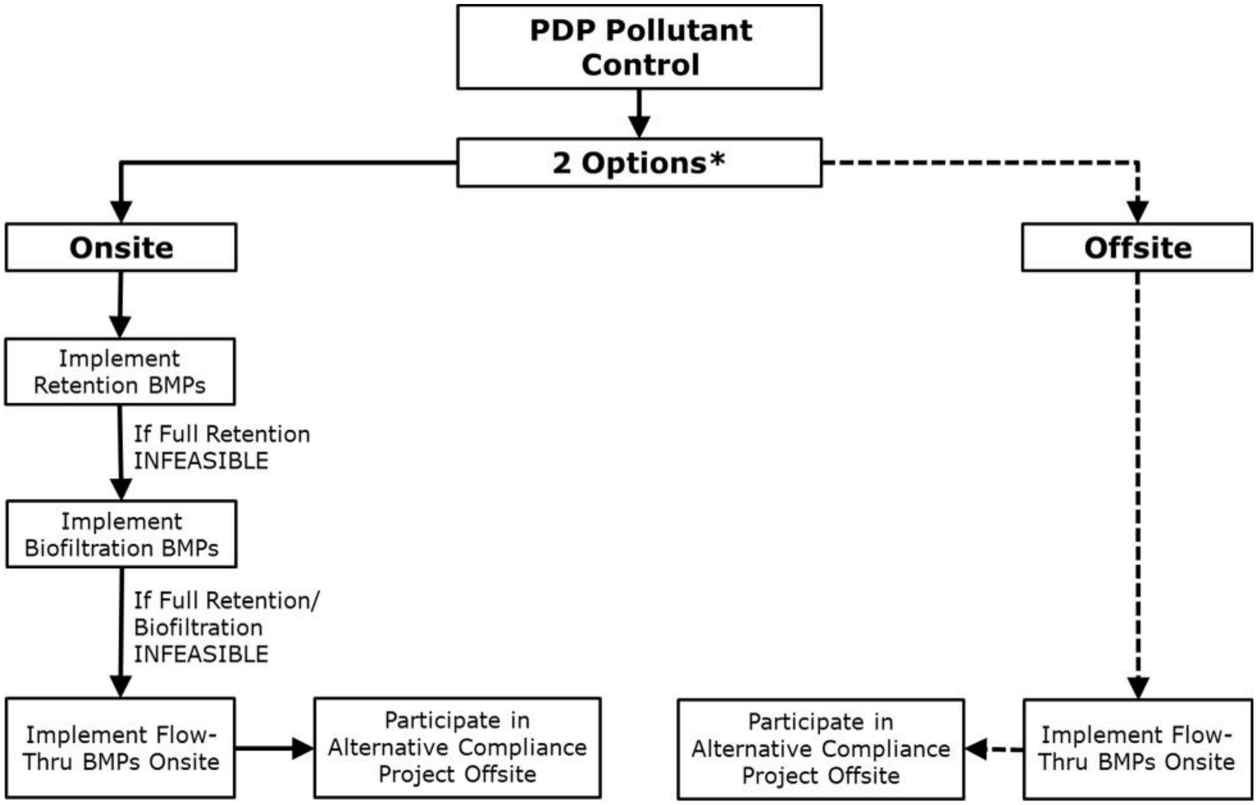
Participation in an offsite alternative compliance project, **and** the obligation to implement flow-through treatment controls for the DCV not reliably retained or biofiltered onsite, are linked and cannot be separated. Therefore, if the Authority does not allow the PDP to participate in the alternative compliance program or to propose a project-specific offsite alternative compliance project, then the PDP may not utilize flow-through treatment control. The PDP should consult with EAD regarding processing requirements if this is the case.

PDPs may be required to provide temporal mitigation when participating in an alternative compliance program.

Finally, if the PDP is allowed to participate in an offsite alternative compliance project that is constructed after the completion of the development project, the PDP must provide temporal mitigation to address this interim time period. Temporal mitigation must provide equivalent or better pollutant removal and/or hydrologic control (as applicable) as compared to the case where the offsite alternative compliance project is completed at the same time as the PDP.

Water Quality Equivalency calculations must be accepted by the SDRWQCB

The Water Quality Equivalency (WQE) calculation must be accepted by the SDRWQCB's Executive Officer prior to administering an alternative compliance program. The Water Quality Equivalency provides currency calculations to assess water quality and hydromodification management benefits for a variety of potential offsite project types and provides a regional and technical basis for demonstrating a greater water quality benefit for the watershed. The Water Quality Equivalency guidelines are available on the Project Clean Water website (www.projectcleanwater.org).



*PDP may be allowed to directly participate in an offsite project without demonstrating infeasibility of retention and/or biofiltration BMPs onsite. Consult EAD for specific guidelines.

FIGURE 1-2. Pathways to Participating in Alternative Compliance Program

Please see Appendix J for a discussion of the Authority's Alternative Compliance Program.

Tenant Implemented Alternative Compliance Project: The Authority may allow a tenant project applicant to implement an alternative compliance project in lieu of complying onsite. In this scenario, the applicant is fully responsible for the alternative compliance project design, construction, operation, and long-term maintenance. Applicant-proposed alternative compliance projects shall not be authorized by the Copermittee prior to acceptance of the water quality equivalency calculations by the SDRWQCB.

1.9 Relationship Between This Manual and Water Quality Improvement Plans

This Manual is connected to other permit-specified planning efforts.

The MS4 Permit requires each Watershed Management Area within the San Diego Region to develop a Water Quality Improvement Plan (WQIP) that identifies priority and highest priority water quality conditions and strategies that will be implemented with associated goals to demonstrate progress toward addressing the conditions in the watershed. The MS4 Permit also provides an option to perform a Watershed Management Area Analysis (WMAA**)** as part of the WQIP to develop watershed-specific requirements for structural BMP implementation in the watershed management area. PDPs should expect to consult either of these separate planning efforts as appropriate when using this Manual as follows:

1. For PDPs that implement flow-through treatment BMPs, selection of the type of BMP shall consider the pollutants and conditions of concerns. Among the selection considerations, the PDP must consult the highest priority water quality condition as identified in the WQIP for that particular watershed management area. The highest priority water quality condition identified in the San Diego Bay WQIP by the Authority is impairment due to metals (copper and zinc).

2. There may be watershed management area specific BMPs or strategies that are identified in WQIPs for which PDPs should consult and incorporate as appropriate.

3. PDPs may have the option of participating in an alternative compliance program. Refer to Section 1.8.

These relationships between this Manual and WQIPs are presented in Figure 1-3.

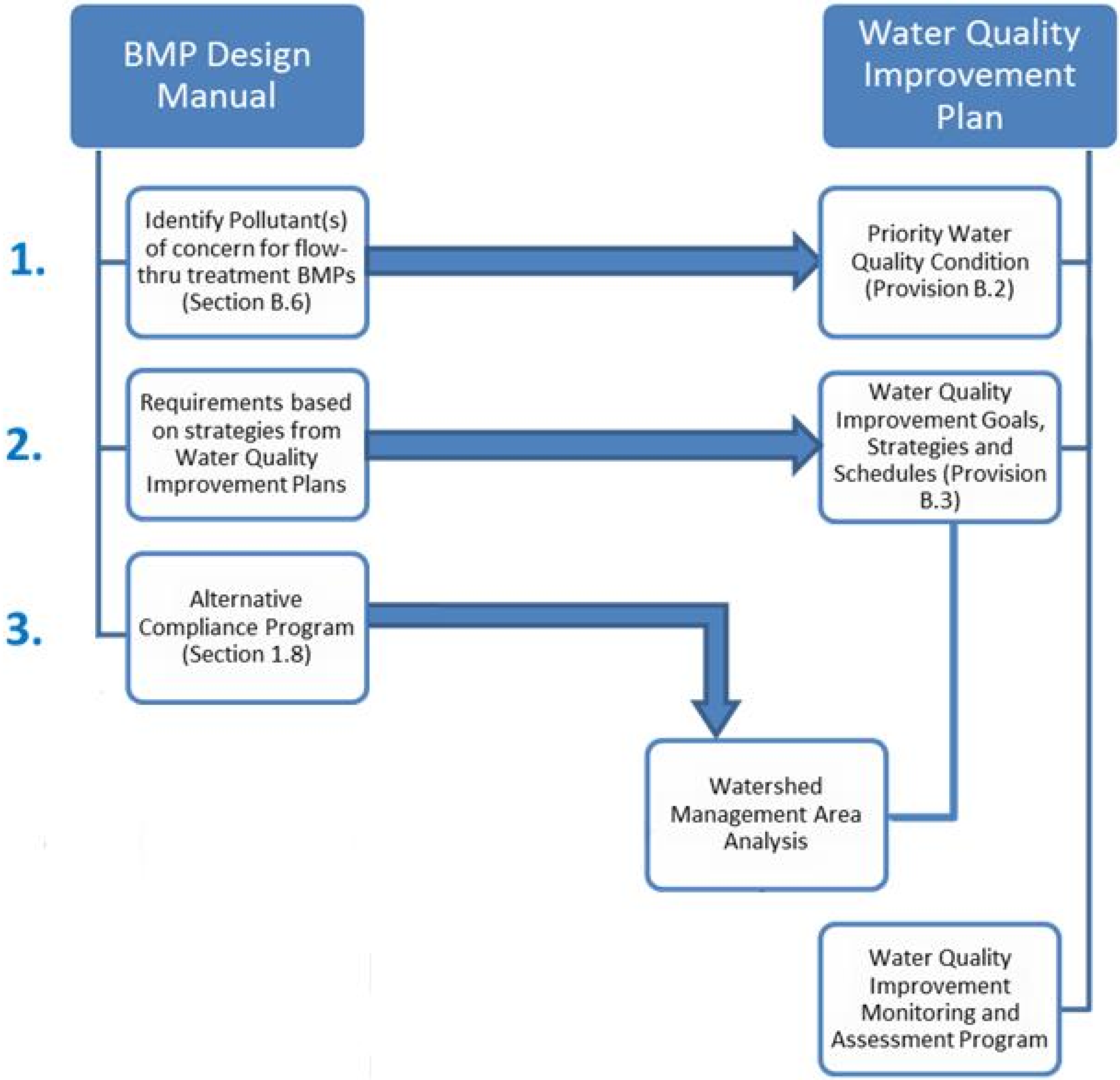


FIGURE 1-3. Relationship Between This Manual and the WQIP

1.10 Project Review Procedures

EAD reviews project plans for compliance with applicable requirements of this Manual and the MS4 Permit.

Specific submittal requirements for documentation of permanent, post-construction storm water BMPs may vary by jurisdiction and project type; however, in all cases, the project applicant must provide sufficient documentation to demonstrate that applicable requirements of the BMP Design Manual and the MS4 Permit will be met.

For Standard Projects, this typically means using forms and/or a Standard Project SWQMP or other equivalent documents approved by EAD to document that the following general requirements of the MS4 Permit are met, and showing applicable features, including onsite grading, building, improvement, and landscaping plans:

- BMP Requirements for All Development Projects, which include general requirements, source control BMP requirements, and narrative (i.e., not numerically sized) site design requirements (MS4 Permit Provision E.3.a).

For PDPs, this typically means preparing a PDP SWQMP to document that the following general requirements of the MS4 Permit are met, and showing applicable features including onsite grading and landscaping plans:

- BMP Requirements for All Development Projects, which include general requirements for siting of permanent, post-construction BMPs, source control BMP requirements, and narrative (i.e., not numerically sized) site design requirements (MS4 Permit Provision E.3.a); and
- Storm Water Pollutant Control BMP Requirements, for numerically sized onsite structural BMPs to control pollutants in storm water (MS4 Permit Provision E.3.c.(1)).

Detailed submittal requirements are provided in Chapter 8 of this Manual. Documentation of the permanent, post-construction storm water BMPs at the discretion of EAD must be provided with the first submittal of a project or another preliminary planning stage defined by the Authority. Storm water requirements will directly affect the layout of the project. Therefore storm water requirements must be considered from the initial project planning phases, and will be reviewed with each submittal, beginning with the first submittal.

1.11 PDP Structural BMP Verification

MS4 Permit Provision E.3.e.(1)

Structural BMPs must be verified by the Authority prior to project occupancy.

Pursuant to MS4 Permit Provision E.3.e.(1), each Copermittee must require and confirm the following with respect to PDPs constructed within their jurisdiction:

(a) "Each Copermittee must require and confirm that appropriate easements and ownerships are properly recorded in public records and the information is conveyed to all appropriate parties when there is a change in project or site ownership."

(b) "Each Copermittee must require and confirm that, prior to occupancy and/or intended use of any portion of the [PDP], each structural BMP is inspected to verify that it has been constructed and is operating in compliance with all of its specifications, plans, permits, ordinances, and the requirements of [the MS4 Permit]."

For PDPs, this means that after structural BMPs have been constructed, EAD may request the project owner provide a certification that the site improvements for the project have been constructed in conformance with the approved storm water management documents and drawings.

EAD may require inspection of the structural BMPs at each significant construction stage and at completion. Following construction, EAD may require an addendum to the SWQMP and As-Builts to address any changes to the structural BMPs that occurred during construction that were approved by EAD. The Authority may also require a final update to the O&M Plan and/or execution of a maintenance agreement that will be recorded for the facility. A maintenance agreement that is recorded with the facility can then be transferred to future operators.

Certification of structural BMPs, updates to reports, and documentation of a maintenance agreement may occur concurrently with project closeout, but could be required sooner per Authority practices. In all cases, it is required prior to occupancy and/or intended use of the project. Specific procedures are provided in Chapter 8 of this Manual.

Chapter 2

Performance Standards and Concepts

Projects must meet three separate performance standards, as applicable.

The MS4 Permit establishes separate performance standards for (1) source control and site design practices, (2) storm water pollutant control BMPs, and (3) hydromodification management BMPs. Chapter 1 provided guidance for determining which performance standards apply to a given project. This chapter defines these performance standards based on the MS4 Permit, and presents concepts that provide the project applicant with technical background, explains why the performance standards are important, and gives a general description of how these performance standards can be met. Detailed procedures for meeting the performance standards are presented in Chapters 4, 5, and 6.

Performance standards can be met through an integrated approach.

While three separate performance standards are defined by this Manual, an overlapping set of design features can be used as part of demonstrating conformance to each standard. Further discussion of the relationship between performance standards is provided in Section 2.4.

2.1 Source Control and Site Design Requirements for All Development Projects

2.1.1 Performance Standards

MS4 Permit Provision E.3.a

This section defines performance standards for source control and site design practices that are applicable to all projects (regardless of project type or size; both Standard Projects and PDPs) when local permits are issued, including unpaved roads and flood management projects.

2.1.1.1 General Requirements

All projects shall meet the following general requirements:

(a) Onsite BMPs must be located so as to remove pollutants from runoff prior to its discharge to any receiving waters, and as close to the source as possible;

(b) Structural BMPs must not be constructed within waters of the United States (U.S.); and

(c) Onsite BMPs must be designed and implemented with measures to avoid the creation of nuisance or pollution associated with vectors (e.g., mosquitoes, rodents, or flies).

2.1.1.2 Source Control Requirements

Pollutant source control BMPs are features that must be implemented to address specific sources of pollutants.

The following source control BMPs must be implemented at all development projects where applicable and technically feasible:

(a) Prevention of illicit discharges into the MS4;

(b) Storm drain system stenciling or signage;

(c) Protection of outdoor material storage areas from rainfall, run-on, runoff, and wind dispersal;

(d) Protection of materials stored in outdoor work areas from rainfall, run-on, runoff, and wind dispersal;

(e) Protection of trash storage areas from rainfall, run-on, runoff, and wind dispersal; and

(f) Use of any additional BMPs determined to be necessary by the Authority to minimize pollutant generation at each project.

Further guidance is provided in Section 2.1.2 and Chapter 4. Additionally, all BMPs relevant to the Authority's jurisdiction are contained in Appendix B of the SWMP.

2.1.1.3 Site Design Requirements

Site design requirements are qualitative requirements that apply to the layout and design of ALL development project sites (Standard Projects and PDPs).

Site design performance standards define minimum requirements for how a site must incorporate LID BMPs, including the location of BMPs and the use of integrated site design practices. The following site design practices must be implemented at all development projects, where applicable and technically feasible:

(a) Maintenance or restoration of natural storage reservoirs and drainage corridors (including topographic depressions, areas of permeable soils, natural swales, and ephemeral and intermittent streams)[2];

(b) Buffer zones for natural water bodies (where buffer zones are technically infeasible, require project applicant to include other buffers such as trees, access restrictions, etc.);

(c) Conservation of natural areas within the project footprint including existing trees, other vegetation, and soils;

[2] Development projects proposing to dredge or fill materials in waters of the U.S. must obtain a Clean Water Act Section 401 Water Quality Certification. Projects proposing to dredge or fill waters of the state must obtain waste discharge requirements.

(d) Construction of streets, sidewalks, or parking lot aisles to the minimum widths necessary, provided public safety is not compromised;

(e) Minimization of the impervious footprint of the project;

(f) Minimization of soil compaction to landscaped areas;

(g) Disconnection of impervious surfaces through distributed pervious areas;

(h) Landscaped or other pervious areas designed and constructed to effectively receive and infiltrate, retain and/or treat runoff from impervious areas, prior to discharging to the MS4;

(i) Small collection strategies located at, or as close as possible to, the source (i.e., the point where storm water initially meets the ground) to minimize the transport of runoff and pollutants to the MS4 and receiving waters;

(j) Use of permeable materials for projects with low traffic areas and appropriate soil conditions;

(k) Landscaping with native or drought tolerant species; and

(l) Harvesting and use of precipitation.

A key aspect of this performance standard is that these design features must be used where applicable and feasible. Responsible implementation of this performance standard depends on evaluating applicability and feasibility. Further guidance is provided in Section 2.1.2 and Chapter 4.

Additional site design requirements may apply to PDPs.

Site design decisions may influence the ability of a PDP to meet applicable performance standards for pollutant control (as defined in Section 2.2). For example, the layout of the site drainage and reservation of areas for BMPs relative to areas of infiltrative soils may influence the feasibility of capturing and managing storm water to meet storm water pollutant control requirements. As such, the Authority may require additional site design practices, beyond those listed above, to be considered and documented as part of demonstrating conformance to storm water pollutant control requirements.

2.1.2 Concepts and References

Land development tends to increase the amount of pollutants in storm water runoff.

Land development generally alters the natural conditions of the land by removing vegetative cover, compacting soil, and/or affecting placement of concrete, asphalt, or other impervious surfaces. These impervious surfaces facilitate entrainment of urban pollutants in storm water runoff (such as pesticides, petroleum hydrocarbons, heavy metals, and pathogens) that are otherwise not generally found in high concentrations in the runoff from the natural environment. Pollutants that accumulate on impervious surfaces and actively landscaped pervious surfaces may contribute to elevated levels of pollutants in runoff relative to the natural condition.

Land development also impacts site hydrology.

Impervious surfaces greatly affect the natural hydrology of the land because they do not allow natural infiltration, retention, evapotranspiration, and treatment of storm water runoff to take place. Instead, storm water runoff from impervious surfaces is typically and has traditionally been directed through pipes, curbs, gutters, and other hardscape into receiving waters, with little treatment, at significantly increased volumes and accelerated flow rates over what would occur naturally. The increased pollutant loads, storm water volume, discharge rates and velocities, and discharge durations from the MS4 adversely impact stream habitat by causing accelerated, unnatural erosion and scouring within creek beds and banks. Compaction of pervious areas can have a similar effect as impervious surfaces on natural hydrology.

Site Design LID involves attempting to maintain or restore the predevelopment hydrologic regime.

LID is a comprehensive land planning and engineering design approach with a goal of maintaining and enhancing the pre-development hydrologic regime of urban and developing watersheds. LID designs seeks to control storm water at the source, using small-scale integrated site design and management practices to mimic the natural hydrology of a site, retain storm water runoff by minimizing soil compaction and impervious surfaces, and disconnect storm water runoff from conveyances to the storm drain system. Site design LID BMPs may utilize interception, storage, evaporation, evapotranspiration, infiltration, and filtration processes to retain and/or treat pollutants in storm water before it is discharged from a site. Examples of site design LID BMPs include using permeable pavements, rain gardens, rain barrels, grassy swales, soil amendments, and native plants.

Site design must be considered early in the design process.

Site designs tend to be more flexible in the early stages of project planning than later on when plans become more detailed. Because of the importance of the location of BMPs, site design shall be considered as early as the planning/tentative design stage. Site design is critical for feasibility of storm water pollutant control BMPs (Section 2.2).

Source control and site design (LID) requirements help avoid impacts by controlling pollutant sources and changes in hydrology.

Source control and site design practices prescribed by the MS4 Permit are the minimum management practices, control techniques and system, design and engineering methods to be included in the planning procedures to reduce the discharge of pollutants from development projects, regardless of size or purpose of the development. In contrast to storm water pollutant control BMPs, which are intended to mitigate impacts, source control and site design BMPs are intended to avoid or minimize these impacts by managing site hydrology, providing treatment features integrated within the site, and reducing or preventing the introduction of pollutants from specific sources. Implementation of site design BMPs will result in reduction in storm water runoff generated by the site. Methods to estimate effective runoff coefficients and the storm water runoff produced by the site after site design BMPs are implemented are presented in Appendix B.2. This methodology is applicable for PDPs that are required to estimate runoff produced from the site with site design BMPs implemented so that they can appropriately size storm water pollutant control BMPs.

The location of BMPs matters.

The site design BMPs listed in the performance standard include practices that either prevent runoff from occurring or manage runoff as close to the source as possible. These BMPs help create a more hydrologically effective site and reduce the requirements that pollutant control BMPs must meet, where required. Additionally, because sites may have spatially variable conditions, the locations reserved for structural BMPs within the site can influence whether these BMPs can feasibly retain, treat, and/or detain storm water to comply with structural pollutant control requirements, where applicable. Finally, the performance standard specifies that onsite BMPs must remove pollutants from runoff prior to discharge to any receiving waters or the MS4, must be located/constructed as close to the pollutant generating source as possible, and must not be constructed within waters of the U.S.

The selection of BMPs also matters.

The lists of source control and site design BMPs specified in the performance standard must be used "where applicable and feasible." This is an important concept – BMPs should be selected to meet the R9-2013-0001 permit requirements and are feasible with consideration of site conditions and project type. By using BMPs that are applicable and feasible, the project can achieve benefits of these practices, while not incurring unnecessary expenses (associated with using practices that do not apply or would not be effective) or creating undesirable conditions (e.g., infiltration-related issues, vector concerns including mosquito breeding, etc.).

Methods to select and design BMPs and demonstrate compliance with source control and site design requirements are presented in Chapter 4 of this Manual.

2.2 Storm Water Pollutant Control Requirements for PDPs

2.2.1 Storm Water Pollutant Control Performance Standard

MS4 Permit Provision E.3.c.(1)

Storm Water Pollutant Control BMPs for PDPs shall meet the following performance standards:

(a) Each PDP shall implement BMPs that are designed to retain (i.e., intercept, store, infiltrate, evaporate, and evapotranspire) onsite the pollutants contained in the volume of storm water runoff produced from a 24-hour, 85th percentile storm event (Design Capture Volume [DCV]). The 24-hour, 85th percentile storm event shall be based on Figure B.1-1 in Appendix B or an approved site-specific rainfall analysis.

(i) If it is not technically feasible to implement retention BMPs for the full DCV onsite for a PDP, then the PDP shall utilize biofiltration BMPs for the remaining volume not reliably retained. Biofiltration BMPs must be designed as described in Appendix F to have an appropriate hydraulic loading rate to maximize storm water retention and pollutant removal, as well as to prevent erosion, scour, and channeling within the BMP, and must be sized to:

[a]. Treat 1.5 times the DCV not reliably retained onsite, OR

[b]. Treat the DCV not reliably retained onsite with a flow-through design that has a total volume, including pore spaces and pre-filter detention volume, sized to hold at least 0.75 times the portion of the DCV not reliably retained onsite.

(ii) If biofiltration BMPs are not technically feasible, then the PDP shall utilize flow-through treatment control BMPs (selected and designed per Appendix B.6) to treat runoff leaving the site, AND participate in alternative compliance to mitigate for the pollutants from the DCV not reliably retained onsite pursuant to Section 2.2.1.(b). Flow-through treatment control BMPs must be sized and designed to:

[a]. Remove pollutants from storm water to the maximum extent practicable (MEP) (defined by the MS4 Permit) by following the guidance in Appendix B.6; and

[b]. Filter or treat either (1) the maximum flow rate of runoff produced from a rainfall intensity of 0.2 inch of rainfall per hour, for each hour of a storm event, or (2) the maximum flow rate of runoff produced by the 85th percentile hourly rainfall intensity (for each hour of a storm event), as determined from the local historical rainfall record, multiplied by a factor of two (both methods may be adjusted for the portion of the DCV retained onsite as described in Appendix B.6); and

[c]. Meet the flow-through treatment control BMP treatment performance standard described in Appendix B.6.

(b) A PDP may be allowed to participate in an alternative compliance program in lieu of fully complying with the performance standards for storm water pollutant control BMPs onsite if the alternative compliance program outlined in Section 1.8 is followed. When an alternative compliance program is utilized:

(i) The PDP must mitigate for the portion of the DCV not reliably retained onsite.

(ii) Flow-through treatment control BMPs must be implemented to treat the portion of the DCV that is not reliably retained onsite. Flow-through treatment control BMPs must be selected and sized in accordance with Appendix B.6.

(iii) A PDP may be allowed to propose an alternative compliance project not identified in the WMAA of the WQIP if the requirements in Section 1.8 are met at the discretion of EAD.

Demonstrations of feasibility findings and calculations to justify BMP selection and design shall be provided by the project applicant in the SWQMP to the satisfaction of EAD. Methodology to demonstrate compliance with the performance standards, described above, applicable to storm water pollutant control BMPs for PDPs, is detailed in Chapter 5.

2.2.2 Concepts and References

Retention BMPs are the most effective type of BMPs to reduce pollutants discharging to MS4s when they are sited and designed appropriately.

Retention of the required DCV will achieve 100 percent pollutant removal efficiency (i.e., prevent pollutants from discharging directly to the MS4). Thus, retention of as much storm water onsite as technically feasible is the most effective way to reduce pollutants in storm water discharges to, and consequently from, the MS4, and to remove pollutants in storm water discharges from a site to the MEP.

However, to accrue these benefits, retention BMPs must be technically feasible and suitable for the project. Retention BMPs that fail prematurely, under-perform, or result in unintended consequences as a result of improper selection or siting may achieve performance that is inferior to other BMP types while posing other issues for tenants and the Authority. Therefore, this Manual provides criteria for evaluating feasibility and provides options for other types of BMPs to be used if retention is not technically feasible.

Biofiltration BMPs can be sized to achieve approximately the same pollutant removal as retention BMPs.

In the case, where the entire DCV cannot be retained onsite because it is not technically feasible, PDPs are required to use biofiltration BMPs with specific sizing and design criteria listed in Appendix B.5 and Appendix F. These sizing and design criteria are intended to provide a level of long-term pollutant removal that is reasonably equivalent to retention of the DCV.

Flow-through treatment BMPs are required to treat the pollutant loads in the DCV not retained or biofiltered onsite to the MEP.

If the pollutant loads from the full DCV cannot feasibly be retained or biofiltered onsite, then PDPs are required to implement flow-through treatment control BMPs to remove the pollutants to the MEP for the portion of the DCV that could not be feasibly retained or biofiltered. Flow-through treatment BMPs may be implemented to address onsite storm water pollutant control requirements only if coupled with an offsite alternative compliance project that mitigates for the portion of the pollutant load in the DCV not retained or biofiltered onsite.

Offsite Alternative Compliance Program may be available.

The MS4 Permit allows the Authority discretion to grant PDPs permission to utilize an alternative compliance program for meeting the pollutant control performance standard. Onsite and offsite mitigation is required when a PDP is allowed to use an alternative compliance program. The specific parameters of the Authority's alternative compliance program are contained in Appendix J.

Methods to design and demonstrate compliance with storm water pollutant control BMPs are presented in Chapter 5 of this Manual. Definitions and concepts that should be understood when sizing storm water pollutant control BMPs to be in compliance with the performance standards are explained below:

2.2.2.1 Best Management Practices

To minimize confusion, this Manual considers all references to "facilities," "features," or "controls" to be incorporated into development projects as BMPs.

2.2.2.2 DCV

The MS4 Permit requires pollutants be addressed for the runoff from the 24-hour 85th percentile storm event ("DCV") as the design standard to which PDPs must comply.

The 85th percentile, 24-hour storm event is the event that has a precipitation total greater than or equal to 85 percent of all storm events over a given period of record in a specific area or location. For example, to determine what the 85th percentile storm event is in a specific location, the following steps would be followed:

- Obtain representative precipitation data, preferably no less than 30-year period, if possible.
- Divide the recorded precipitation into 24-hour precipitation totals.
- Filter out events with no measurable precipitation (less than 0.01 inch of precipitation).

- Of the remaining events, calculate the 85th percentile value (i.e., 15 percent of the storms would be greater than the number determined to be the 85th percentile, 24-hour storm).

The 85th percentile, 24-hour storm event depth is then used in hydrologic calculations to calculate the DCV for sizing storm water pollutant control BMPs. An exhibit showing the 85th percentile, 24-hour storm depth across San Diego County and the methodology used to develop this exhibit is included in Appendix B.1.3. The 85th percentile, 24-hour storm event depth for SAN is 0.5 inch. Guidance to estimate the DCV is presented in Appendix B.1.

2.2.2.3 Implementation of Storm Water Pollutant Control BMPs

The MS4 Permit requires that the PDP applicants proposing to meet the performance standards onsite implement storm water pollutant control BMPs in the order listed below. That is, the PDP applicant first needs to implement **all** feasible onsite retention BMPs needed to meet the storm water pollutant control BMP requirements prior to installing onsite biofiltration BMPs, and then onsite biofiltration BMPs prior to installing onsite flow-through treatment control BMPs.

PDPs may be allowed to participate in an alternative compliance program. Refer to Section 1.8 for additional guidance.

Retention BMPs: Structural measures that provide retention (i.e., intercept, store, infiltrate, evaporate, and evapotranspire) of storm water as part of pollutant control strategy. Examples include infiltration BMPs and cisterns, bioretention BMPs, and biofiltration with partial retention BMPs.

Biofiltration BMPs: Structural measures that provide biofiltration of storm water as part of the pollutant control strategy. Example includes biofiltration BMPs.

Flow-through treatment control BMPs: Structural measures that provide flow-through treatment as part of the pollutant control strategy. Examples include vegetated swales and media filters.

For example, if the DCV from a site is 10,000 cubic feet (ft^3) and it is technically feasible to implement 2,000 ft^3 of retention BMPs and 9,000 ft^3 of biofiltration BMPs sized using Section 2.2.1.(a)(i)[a], and the jurisdiction has an alternative compliance program to satisfy the requirements of this Manual the project applicant should:

1) First, design retention BMPs for 2,000 ft^3.
2) Then complete a technical feasibility form for retention BMPs (included in Appendix C and Appendix D) demonstrating that it is only technically feasible to implement retention BMPs for 2,000 ft^3.
3) Then design biofiltration BMPs for 9,000 ft^3 (calculate equivalent volume for which the pollutants are retained = 9,000/1.5 = 6,000 ft^3).
4) Then complete a technical feasibility for biofiltration BMPs demonstrating that it is only technically feasible to implement biofiltration BMPS for 9,000 ft^3.
5) Estimate the DCV that could not be retained or biofiltered = 10,000 ft^3 – (2,000 ft^3 + 6,000 ft^3) = 2,000 ft^3.
6) Implement flow-through treatment control BMPs to treat the pollutants in the remaining 2,000 ft^3. Refer to Appendix B.6 for guidance for designing flow-through treatment control BMPs.

7) Also participate in an alternative compliance project for 2,000 ft^3. Refer to Section 1.8 for additional guidance on participation in an alternative compliance program.

2.2.2.4 Technical Feasibility

MS4 Permit Requirement E.3.c.(5)

Analysis of technical feasibility is necessary to select the appropriate BMPs for a site.

PDPs are required to implement pollutant control BMPs in the order of priority in Section 2.2.2.3 based on determinations of technical feasibility. To assist the project applicant in selecting BMPs, this Manual includes a defined process for evaluating feasibility. Conceptually, the feasibility criteria contained in this Manual are intended to:

- Promote reliable and effective long-term operations of BMPs by providing a BMP selection process that eliminates the use of BMPs that are not suitable for site conditions, project type or other factors;
- Minimize significant risks to property, human health, and/or environmental degradation (e.g., geotechnical stability, groundwater quality) as a result of selection of BMPs that are undesirable for a given site; and
- Describe circumstances under which regional and watershed-based strategies, as part of an approved WMAA **and** an alternative compliance program developed by the Authority, may be selected.

Steps for performing technical feasibility analyses are described in detail in Chapter 5. More specific guidance related to geotechnical investigation guidelines for feasibility of storm water infiltration and groundwater quality and water balance factors is provided in Appendices C and D, respectively.

2.2.2.5 Biofiltration BMPs

The MS4 Permit requires that biofiltration BMPs be designed to have an appropriate hydraulic loading rate to maximize storm water retention and pollutant removal, as well as to prevent erosion, scour, and channeling within the BMP. Appendix F of this Manual has guidance for hydraulic loading rates and other biofiltration design criteria to meet these required goals. Appendix F also has a checklist to be completed by the project SWQMP preparer during plan submittal. Guidance for sizing biofiltration BMPs is included in Chapter 5 and Appendices B.5 and F.

2.2.2.6 Flow-through Treatment Control BMPs (for use with Alternative Compliance)

MS4 Permit Requirement E.3.d.2-3

The MS4 Permit requires that the flow-through treatment control BMP selected by the PDP applicant be ranked with high or medium pollutant removal efficiency for the most significant pollutant of concern. Steps to select the flow-through treatment control BMP include:

- Step 1: Identify the pollutant(s) of concern by considering the following at a minimum (1) receiving water quality; (2) highest priority water quality conditions identified in the Watershed

Management Areas Water Quality Improvement Plan; (3) land use type of the project and pollutants associated with that land use type, and (4) pollutants expected to be present onsite

- Step 2: Identify the most significant pollutant of concern. A project could have multiple most significant pollutants of concerns and shall include the highest priority water quality condition identified in the watershed WQIP (i.e., copper and zinc in wet weather for the Authority) and pollutants expected to be presented onsite/from land use.
- Step 3: Determine the effectiveness of the flow-through treatment control BMP for the identified most significant pollutant of concern.

Methodology for sizing flow-through treatment control BMPs and the resources required to identify the pollutant(s) of concern and effectiveness of flow-through treatment control BMPs are included in Chapter 5 and Appendix B.6.

2.3 Hydromodification Management Requirements for PDPs

2.3.1 Hydromodification Management Performance Standards

MS4 Permit Provision E.3.c.(2)

The MS4 Permit defines performance standards for hydromodification management, including flow control of post-project storm water runoff and protection of critical sediment yield areas, that shall be met by all PDPs unless exempt from hydromodification management requirements per Section 1.6 of this Manual. Hydromodification management requirements apply to both new development and redevelopment PDPs, except those that are exempt on the basis of discharging to downstream channels or water bodies that are not subject to erosion, as defined in either the MS4 Permit (Provision E.3.c.(2).(d)) or the WMAA for the watershed in which the project resides. Exemptions from hydromodification management requirements are described in Section 1.6 of this Manual.

All projects discharging storm water from SAN are exempt from hydromodification management requirements because all discharges drain to an enclosed embayment (San Diego Bay). Project applicants will state in the project SWQMP that the hydromodification management exemption outlined in Section 1.6 applies to their project.

2.4 Relationship Among Performance Standards

An integrated approach can provide significant cost savings by utilizing design features that meet multiple standards.

Site design/LID and storm water pollutant control are separate requirements to be addressed in development project design. Each has its own purpose and each has separate performance standards that must be met. However, effective project planning involves understanding the ways in which these standards are related and how single suites of design features can meet more than one standard.

Site design features (aka LID) can be effective at reducing the runoff to downstream BMPs.

Site design BMPs serve the purpose of minimizing impervious areas and therefore reducing post-project runoff, reducing the potential transport of pollutants offsite, and reducing the potential for downstream erosion caused by increased flow rates and durations. By reducing post-project runoff through site design BMPs, the amount of runoff that must be managed for pollutant control can be reduced.

Single structural BMPs, particularly retention BMPs, can meet or contribute to pollutant control objectives.

The objective of structural BMPs for pollutant control is to reduce offsite transport of pollutants. The most effective structural BMPs to meet the objective are BMPs that are based on retention of storm water runoff where feasible. Both storm water pollutant control and flow control for hydromodification management can be achieved within the same structural BMP(s). However, demonstrating that the separate performance requirements for pollutant control and hydromodification management are met must be shown separately. Because hydromodification management is not required by the Authority, only pollutant control requirements must be demonstrated.

The design process should start with an assessment of the feasibility to retain or partially retain the DCV for pollutant control, and then determine what kind of BMPs will be used for pollutant control.

A typical design process for a single structural BMP to meet the pollutant control performance standard involves initiating the structural BMP design based on the performance standard that is expected to require the largest volume of storm water to be retained.

This page intentionally left blank

Chapter 3

Development Project Planning and Design

Compliance with source control/site design, and pollutant control BMPs, as applicable, requires coordination of site, landscape, and project storm water plans. It also involves provisions for O&M of structural BMPs. To effectively comply with applicable requirements, a step-wise approach is recommended. This chapter outlines a step-wise, systematic approach (Figure 3-1) to preparing a comprehensive storm water management design for Standard Projects and PDPs.

STEP 1: **Coordinate Between Disciplines** Refer to Section 3.1	*Purpose:* Engage and coordinate with owner and other project disciplines (e.g., architect, engineer) early in the design and throughout the design process to support appropriate project decisions.
⇓	
STEP 2: **Gather Project Site Information** Refer to Section 3.2	*Purpose:* Gather information necessary to inform overall storm water planning process and specific aspects of BMP selection; determine the applicable storm water requirements for the project.
⇓	
STEP 3: **Develop Conceptual Site Layout and Storm Water Control Strategies** Refer to Section 3.3	*Purpose:* Use the information obtained in Step 2 to inform the preliminary site design and storm water management strategy. The scope of this step varies depending on whether the project is a Standard Project or a PDP.
⇓	
STEP 4: **Develop Complete Storm Water Management Design** Refer to Section 3.4	*Purpose:* Develop the complete storm water management design by incorporating the site design and storm water management strategies identified in Step 3 and conducting design level analyses. Integrate the storm water design with the site plan and other infrastructure plans.

FIGURE 3-1. Approach for Developing a Comprehensive Storm Water Management Design

A step-wise approach is not mandatory, and adaptation of this step-wise approach to better fit with unique project features is encouraged. However, taking a step-wise, systematic approach of some sort for planning and design has a number of advantages. First, it helps ensure that applicable requirements and design goals are identified early in the process. Second, it helps ensure that key data about the site, watershed, and project are collected at the appropriate time in the project development process, and the analyses are suited to the decisions that need to be made at each phase. Third, taking a systematic approach helps identify opportunities for retention of storm water that may not be identified in a less systematic process. Finally, a systematic approach helps ensure that constraints and unintended consequences are considered and used to inform BMP selection and design, and related project decisions.

Authority-specific special requirements are listed in Section 3.5 and requirements for phased projects are in Section 3.6. EAD recommends that a preliminary site design be submitted prior to formally applying for project approvals. The preliminary site design should incorporate a conceptual plan for site drainage, including self-treating and self-retaining areas and the location and approximate sizes of any treatment facilities. Any initial feasibility assessments for retaining the full DCV onsite should also be provided. This additional up-front design effort will likely save time and avoid potential delays later in the review process.

3.1 Coordination Among Disciplines

Storm water management design requires close coordination among multiple disciplines, as storm water management design will affect the site layout and should therefore be coordinated among the project team as necessary from the start. The following list describes entities/disciplines that are frequently involved with storm water management design and potential roles that these entities/disciplines may plan.

Owner:

- Engage the appropriate disciplines needed for the project and facilitate exchange of information between disciplines.
- Identify who will be responsible for long-term O&M of storm water management features, and initiate maintenance agreements when applicable.
- Ensure that whole life cycle costs are considered in the selection and design of storm water management features and that a source of funding is provided for long-term maintenance.
- Identify the party responsible for inspecting structural BMPs at each significant construction stage and at completion to provide certification of structural BMPs following construction.

Planner:

- Communicate overall project planning criteria to the team, such as planned development density, parking requirements, project-specific planning conditions, conditions of approval from prior entitlement actions (e.g., CEQA, 401 certifications), and locations of open space and environmentally sensitive areas that are protected from disturbance (e.g., the least tern nesting area in the southwestern corner of SAN).
- Consider location of storm water facilities early in the conceptual site layout process.
- Assist in developing the site plan.

Architect:

- Participate in siting and design (architectural elements) of storm water BMPs.

Civil Engineer:

- Determine storm water requirements applicable to the site (e.g., Standard Project vs. PDP).

- Obtain site-specific information (e.g., watershed information, infiltration rates) and develop viable storm water management options that meet project requirements.
- Reconcile storm water management requirements with other site requirements (e.g., fire access, Americans with Disabilities Act accessibility, parking, open space).
- Develop site layout and site design, including preliminary and final design documents or plans.
- Select and design BMPs; conduct and document associated analyses; and prepare BMP design sheets, details, and specifications.
- Prepare project SWQMP submittals.

Landscape Architect and/or Horticulturist/Agronomist:

- Select appropriate plants for vegetated storm water features and BMPs, and prepare planting plans.
- Develop specifications for planting, vegetation establishment, and maintenance.
- Assist in developing irrigation plans/rates to minimize water application and non-storm water runoff from the project site.

Geotechnical Engineer

- Assist in preliminary infiltration feasibility screening of the site to help inform project layout and initial BMP selection, including characterizing soil, groundwater, geotechnical hazards, utilities, and any other factors applicable for the site.
- Conduct detailed analyses at proposed infiltration BMP locations to confirm or revise feasibility findings and provide design infiltration rates.
- Provide recommendations for infiltration testing that must be conducted during the construction phase, if needed to confirm pre-construction infiltration estimates.

3.2 Gathering Project Site Information

In order to make decisions related to selection and design of storm water management BMPs, it is necessary to gather relevant project site information, including physical site information, proposed uses of the site, level of storm water management requirements (i.e., determination of whether it is a Standard Project or a PDP), proposed storm water discharge locations, potential/anticipated storm water pollutants based on the proposed uses of the site, receiving water sensitivity to pollutants and susceptibility to erosion, and other site requirements and constraints.

The amount and type of information that should be collected depend on the project type (i.e., whether it is a Standard Project, a PDP with all requirements, or a PDP with only pollutant control requirements). Refer to Figure 1-1 in Chapter 1 to identify the project type.

Information should be gathered only to the extent necessary to inform the storm water management design. In some cases, it is not necessary to conduct site-specific analyses to precisely characterize conditions. For example, if depth to groundwater is known to be approximately 100 feet based on regional surveys, it is not necessary to also conduct a site-specific assessment of depth to groundwater to determine whether it is actually 90 feet or 110 feet on the project site. The difference between these values would not influence the storm water management design. In other cases, some information will not be applicable. For example, on an existing development site, there may be no natural hydrologic features remaining; therefore, these features do not need to be characterized. The lack of natural hydrologic features can be simply noted without further effort required.

Submittal templates (in Appendix A) are provided to facilitate gathering information about the project site for BMP selection and design. The checklists in Appendix H may also be necessary, depending on the type of BMP selected. As part of planning for the site investigation, it is helpful to review the subsequent steps (Section 3.3 and 3.4) to gain familiarity with how the site information will be used in making decisions about site layout and storm water BMP selection and design. This can help prioritize the data that are collected.

3.3 Developing Conceptual Site Layout and Storm Water Control Strategies

Once preliminary site information has been obtained, the site can be assessed for storm water management opportunities and constraints that will inform the overall site layout. Considering the project site data discussed above, it is essential to identify potential locations for storm water management features at a conceptual level during the site planning phase. Storm water management requirements must be considered as a key factor in laying out the overall site. Preliminary design of permanent storm water BMPs is partially influenced by whether the project is a Standard Project or a PDP. Table 3-1 presents the applicability of different subsections in this Manual based on project type and must be used to determine which requirements apply to a given project.

TABLE 3-1. Applicability of Section 3.3 Subsections for Different Project Types

Project Type	Section 3.3.1	Section 3.3.2	Section 3.3.3	Section 3.3.4
Standard Project	☑	NA	NA	NA
PDP With Only Pollutant Control Requirements	☑	NA	☑	☑
PDP With Pollutant and Hydromodification Management Requirements	Requirements not applicable to Authority projects.			

3.3.1 Preliminary Design Steps for All Development Projects

All projects must incorporate source control and site design BMPs. The following systematic approach outlines these site planning considerations for all development projects:

1 Review Chapter 4 of this Manual to become familiar with the menu of source control and site design practices that are required.

2 Review the preliminary site information gathered in Section 3.2, specifically related to:

a. Natural hydrologic features that can be preserved and/or protected;

b. Soil information;

c. General drainage patterns (i.e., general topography, points of connection to the storm drain or receiving water);
d. Pollutant sources that require source controls; and
e. Information gathered and summarized in the Site Information Checklist for Standard Projects (Appendix A.3).

3 Create opportunities for source control and site design BMPs by developing an overall conceptual site layout that allocates space for site design BMPs and promotes drainage patterns that are effective for hydrologic control and pollutant source control. For example:
   a. Locate pervious areas down gradient from buildings where possible to allow for dispersion.
   b. Identify parts of the project that could be drained via overland vegetated conveyance rather than piped connections.
   c. Develop traffic circulation patterns that are compatible with minimizing street widths.

4 As part of Section 3.4, refine the selection and placement of source control and site design BMPs and incorporate them into project plans. Compliance with site design and source control requirements shall be documented as described in Chapter 4.

3.3.2 Evaluation of Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Areas

For PDPs that are required to meet hydromodification management requirements, an evaluation of whether critical coarse sediment yield areas exist within or upstream of the project site is to be conducted. However, this requirement does not apply to Authority projects, as all development discharges directly to an enclosed embayment.

3.3.3 Drainage Management Areas

Drainage management areas (DMAs) provide an important framework for feasibility screening, BMP prioritization, and storm water management system configuration. BMP selection, sizing, and feasibility determinations must be made at the DMA level; therefore, delineation of DMAs is highly recommended at the conceptual site planning phase and is mandatory for completing the project design and meeting submittal requirements. This section provides guidance on delineating DMAs that is intended to be used as part of Section 3.3 and 3.4.

DMAs are defined on the basis of the proposed drainage patterns of the site and the BMPs to which they drain. During the early phases of the project, DMAs shall be delineated on the basis of onsite drainage patterns and possible BMP locations identified in the site planning process. DMAs should not overlap and should be similar with respect to BMP opportunities and feasibility constraints. More than one DMA can drain to the same BMP. However, because the BMP sizes are determined by the runoff from the DMA, a single DMA may not drain to more than one BMP. See Figure 3-2.

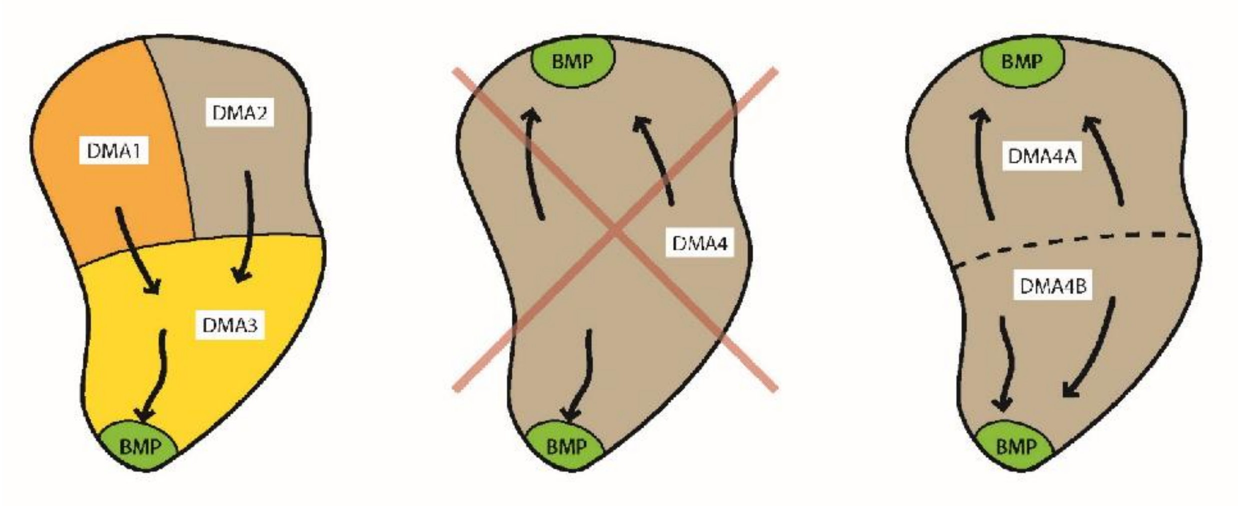


FIGURE 3-2. DMA Delineation

In some cases, in early planning phases, it may be appropriate to generalize the proposed treatment plan by simply assigning a certain BMP type to an entire planning area (e.g., Parking lot X will be treated with bioretention) and calculating the total sizing requirement without identifying the specific BMP locations at that time. This planning area would be later subdivided for design-level calculations. Section 5.2 provides additional guidance on DMA delineation. A runoff factor (similar to a "C" factor used in the rational method) should be used to estimate the runoff draining to the BMP. Appendix B.1 provides guidance in estimating the runoff factor for the drainage area draining to a BMP.

BMPs must be sized to treat the DCV from the total area draining to the BMP, including any offsite or onsite areas that comingle with project runoff and drains to the BMP. To minimize offsite flows treated by project BMPs, consider diverting upgradient flows subject to local drainage and flood control regulation. An example is shown in Figure 3-3.

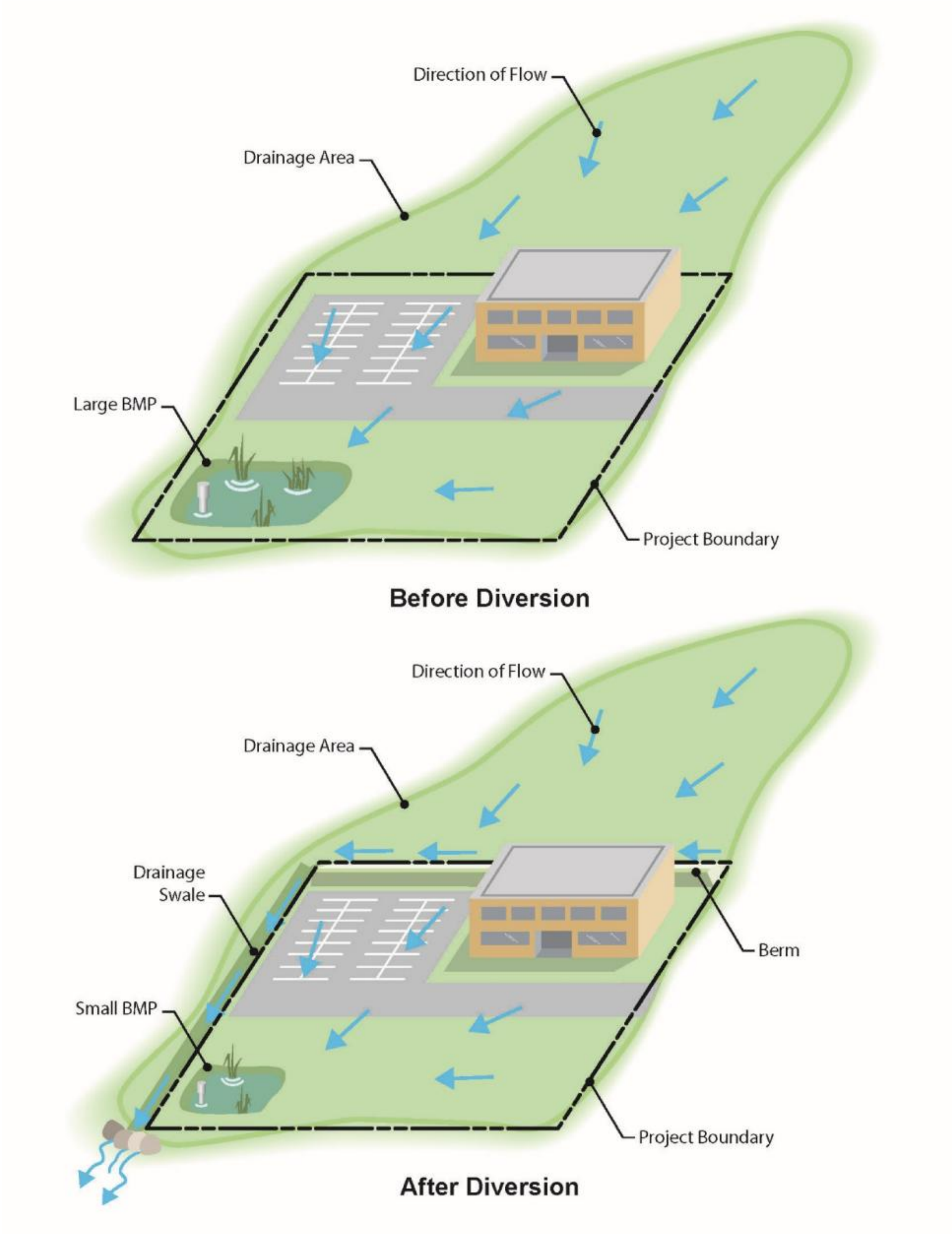


FIGURE 3-3. Tributary Area for BMP Sizing

3.3.4 Developing Conceptual Storm Water Control Strategies

This step applies to PDPs only. The goal of this step is to develop conceptual storm water control strategies that are compatible with the site conditions, including siting and preliminary selection of structural BMPs. At this phase of project planning, it is typically still possible for storm water considerations to influence the site layout to better accommodate storm water design requirements. The end product of this step should be a general, but concrete, understanding of the storm water management parameters for each DMA, the compatibility of this approach with the site design, and preliminary estimates of BMP selection. For simpler sites, this step could be abbreviated in favor of skipping forward to design-level analyses in Section 3.4. However, for larger and/or more complex sites, this section can provide considerable value and can help evaluation of storm water management requirements on common ground with other site planning considerations.

The following systematic approach is recommended:

1. Review the preliminary site information gathered in Section 3.2, specifically related to information gathered and summarized in the Site Information Checklist for PDPs (Appendix A.4).
2. Identify self-mitigating, *de minimis* areas, and/or potential self-retaining DMAs that can be isolated from the remainder of the site (see Section 5.2).
3. Estimate DCV for each remaining DMAs (see Appendix B.1).
4. Determine whether there is a potential opportunity for harvest and use of storm water from the project site. See Section 5.4.1 for harvest and use feasibility screening, which is based on water demand at the project site. For most sites, there is limited opportunity; therefore, evaluating this factor early can help simplify later decisions.
5. Estimate potential runoff reduction and the DCV that could be achieved with site design BMPs (see Section 5.3 and Appendix B.2) and harvest and use BMPs (see Appendix B.3).
6. Based on the remaining runoff after accounting for Steps 2 to 5, estimate BMP space requirements. Identify applicable structural BMP requirements (i.e., storm water pollutant control) and conduct approximate sizing calculations to determine the overall amount of storage volume and/or footprint area required for BMPs. Use worksheets presented in Appendices B.4 and B.5 to estimate sizing requirements for different types of BMPs.
7. Conduct a preliminary screening of infiltration feasibility conditions. A preliminary screening of infiltration feasibility should be conducted as part of site planning to identify areas that are more or less conducive to infiltration. Recommended factors to consider include:
   a. Soil types (determined from available geotechnical testing data, soil maps, site observations, and/or other data sources),
   b. Approximate infiltration rates at various points on the site, obtained via approximate methods (e.g., simple pit test), if practicable,
   c. Groundwater elevations,
   d. Proposed depths of fill,
   e. New or existing utilities that will remain with development,
   f. Soil or groundwater contamination issues within the site or in the vicinity of the site,

   g. Slopes and other potential geotechnical hazards that are unavoidable as part of site development, and
   h. Safety and accessibility considerations.

   This assessment is not intended to be final or to account for all potential factors. Rather, it is intended to help identify site opportunities and constraints as they relate to site planning. After potential BMP locations are established, a more detailed feasibility analysis is necessary (see Section 3.4 and 5.4.2). Additionally, Appendices C and D provide methods for geotechnical and groundwater assessment applicable for screening at the planning level and design level. The jurisdiction may allow alternate assessment methods with appropriate documentation at the discretion of EAD.

8. Identify tentative BMP locations on the basis of preliminary feasibility screening, natural opportunities for BMPs (e.g., low areas of the site, areas near storm drain or stream connections), and other BMP sites that can potentially be created through effective site design (e.g., oddly configured or otherwise unbuildable parcels, easements and landscape amenities, including open space and buffers that can double as locations for bioretention or biofiltration facilities).
9. Determine tentative BMP feasibility categories for infiltration for each DMA or specific BMP location. Based on the results of feasibility screening and tentative BMP locations, determine the general feasibility categories that would apply to BMPs in these locations. Categories are described in Section 5.4.2 and include:
   a. Full infiltration condition;
   b. Partial infiltration condition; and
   c. No infiltration condition.

   Adapt the site layout to attempt to achieve infiltration to the greatest extent feasible.
10. Consider how storm water management BMPs will be accessed for inspection and maintenance and provide necessary site planning allowances (access roads, inspection openings, setbacks, etc.).
11. Document site planning and opportunity assessment activities as a record of the decisions that led to the development of the final storm water management plan. The SWQMP primarily shows the complete design rather than the preliminary steps in the process. However, to comply with the requirements of this Manual, the applicant is required to describe how storm water management objectives have been considered as early as possible in the site planning process and how opportunities to incorporate BMPs have been identified.

3.4 Developing Complete Storm Water Management Design

The complete storm water management design consists of all of the elements describing the BMPs to be implemented, as well as integration of the BMPs with the site design and other infrastructure. The storm water management design shall be developed by taking into consideration the opportunities and/or constraints identified during the site planning phase of the project and then performing the final design level analysis. The scope of this step varies depending on whether the project is a Standard Project or a PDP with pollutant control BMP requirements. The following systematic approach is recommended to develop a final site layout and storm water management design. Table 3-2 presents the applicability of different subsections based on project type and must be used to determine which requirements apply to a given project.

TABLE 3-2. Applicability of Section 3.4 Subsections for Different Project Types

Project Type	Section 3.4.1	Section 3.4.2	Section 3.4.3
Standard Project	☑	NA	NA
PDP With Only Pollutant Control Requirements	☑	☑	NA
PDP With Pollutant Control and Hydromodification Management Requirements	Requirements do not apply to Authority projects.		

3.4.1 Steps for All Development Projects

Standard Projects need to satisfy only the source control and site design requirements of Chapter 4 of this Manual, and then proceed to Chapter 8 to determine submittal requirements:

1. Select, identify, and detail specific source control BMPs. See Section 4.2.
2. Select, identify, and detail specific site design BMPs. See Section 4.3.
3. Document that all applicable source control and site design BMPs have been used. See Chapter 8.

3.4.2 Steps for PDPs With Only Pollutant Control Requirements

The steps below primarily consist of refinements to the conceptual steps completed as part of Section 3.3, accompanied by design-level detail and calculations. More detailed instructions for selection and design of storm water pollutant treatment BMPs are provided in Chapter 5:

1. Select locations for storm water pollutant control BMPs, and delineate and characterize DMAs using information gathered during the site planning phase.
2. Conduct feasibility analysis for harvest and use BMPs. See Section 5.4.1.
3. Conduct feasibility analysis for infiltration to determine the infiltration condition. See Section 5.4.2.
4. Based on the results of Steps 2 and 3, select the BMP category that is most appropriate for the site. See Section 5.5.
5. Calculate required BMP sizes and footprints. See Appendix B (sizing methods) and Appendix E (design criteria).
6. Evaluate whether the required BMP footprints will fit within the site, considering the site constraints; if not, then document infeasibility and move to the next step.

7. If using biofiltration BMPs, document conformance with the criteria for biofiltration BMPs found in Appendix F, including Appendix F.1, as applicable.
8. If needed, implement flow-through treatment control BMPs (for use with Alternative Compliance) for the remaining DCV. See Section 5.5.4 and Appendix B.6 for additional guidance.
9. If flow-through treatment control BMPs (for use with Alternative Compliance) were implemented, refer to Section 1.8.
10. Prepare a SWQMP documenting site planning and opportunity assessment activities, final site layout, and storm water management design. See Chapter 8.
11. Determine and document O&M requirements. See Chapters 7 and 8.

3.4.3 Steps for Projects With Pollutant Control and Hydromodification Management Requirements

The steps to consider when hydromodification management is required primarily consist of refinements to the conceptual steps completed as part of Section 3.3, accompanied by design-level detail and calculations. However, hydromodification management is not a requirement of Authority projects because all development drains directly to an enclosed embayment.

3.5 Project Planning and Design Requirements Specific to the Authority

It should be decided during initial project design whether FMD, SAN tenants, site operators, or another entity will be responsible for maintaining the selected structural BMPs for PDPs. While the Authority is responsible for overall operation of SAN, certain areas are operated by tenants under short- and long-term leases. Tenants may be responsible for maintenance of BMPs within their operational areas, as designated on their lease agreement. The Authority retains ultimate responsibility for oversight and enforcement of maintenance activities, and may levy penalties, including fines, to compel compliance with maintenance requirements. During project design, project proponents should consult with EAD to determine the appropriate responsible party for maintenance.

3.6 Phased Projects

Phased projects typically require a conceptual or master PDP SWQMP followed by more detailed submittals.

For phased projects, EAD may request a conceptual or master SWQMP that describes and illustrates, in broad outline, how the drainage for the project will comply with BMP Design Manual requirements. The level of detail in the conceptual or master SWQMP should be consistent with the scope and level of detail of the development approval being considered. The conceptual or master SWQMP should specify that a more detailed SWQMP for each later phase or portion of the project will be submitted with subsequent applications for approval of various project components.

As stated in Section 1.3, a project may not be segmented or phased into small parts either onsite or offsite if the effect is to reduce the quantity of impervious area and fall below thresholds for applicability of storm water requirements. Phased projects must consider the total area of new or replaced impervious surface, and applicants cannot phase work to evade PDP requirements.

Chapter

4

Source Control and Site Design Requirements for All Development Projects

This chapter presents the source control and site design requirements to be met by all projects, inclusive of Standard Projects and PDPs. Checklists H.4 for source control and H.5 for site design included in Appendix A can be used by both Standard Projects and PDPs to document conformance with the requirements.

4.1 General Requirements (GR)

GR-1: Onsite BMPs must be located so as to remove pollutants from runoff prior to its discharge to any receiving waters, and as close to the source as possible.

The location of the BMP affects the ability of the BMP to retain, and/or treat, the pollutants from the contributing drainage area. BMPs must remove pollutants from runoff and should be placed as close to the pollutant source as possible.

> **How to comply**: Projects shall comply with this requirement by implementing source control (Section 4.2) and site design BMPs (Section 4.3) that are applicable to their project and site conditions.

GR-2: Structural BMPs must not be constructed within the waters of the U.S.

Construction, operation, and maintenance of a structural BMP in a water body can negatively impact the physical, chemical, and biological integrity, as well as the beneficial uses, of the water body.

> **How to comply**: Projects shall comply with this requirement by preparing project plans that illustrate the locations of all storm water BMPs and describe or depict the location of receiving waters.

GR-3: Onsite BMPs must be designed and implemented with measures to avoid the creation of nuisances or pollutions associated with vectors (e.g., mosquitoes, rodents, or flies).

According to the California Department of Health, structural BMPs that retain standing water for over 96 hours are particularly concerning for facilitating mosquito breeding. Certain site design features that hold standing water may similarly produce mosquitoes.

How to comply: Projects shall comply with this requirement by incorporating design, construction, and maintenance principles to drain retained water within **96 hours** and minimize standing water. Design calculations shall be provided to demonstrate that the potential for standing water ponding at surface level and accessible to mosquitoes has been addressed. For water retained in biofiltration facilities that are not accessible to mosquitoes, this criterion is not applicable (i.e., water ponding in the gravel layer, water retained in the amended soil, etc.).

4.2 Source Control (SC) BMP Requirements

Source control BMPs avoid and reduce pollutants in storm water runoff. Everyday activities, such as recycling, trash disposal, and irrigation, generate pollutants that have the potential to drain to the storm water conveyance system. Source control BMPs are defined as an activity that reduces the potential for storm water runoff to come into contact with pollutants. An activity could include an administrative action, design of a structural facility, usage of alternative materials, and operation, maintenance, and inspection of an area.

Where applicable and feasible, all development projects are required to implement source control BMPs. Source control BMPs required by the MS4 Permit (SC-1 through SC-6) are discussed below. These correspond to existing source control BMPs required by the Authority in the Authority SWMP; the corresponding Authority BMP numbering is noted in the discussion of each BMP. Additional source control BMPs may be required by the Authority, depending on project type. The full list of Authority source control BMPs is provided in Appendix B of the Authority SWMP.

How to comply: Projects shall comply with this requirement by implementing source control BMPs listed in this section that are applicable to their project. Applicability shall be determined through consideration of the development project's features and anticipated pollutant sources. Appendix E provides guidance for identifying source control BMPs applicable to a project. The "Source Control BMP Checklist for All Development Projects" located in Appendix A.3 for Standard Projects and A.4 for PDPs shall be used to document compliance with source control BMP requirements.

SC-1: Prevent illicit discharges into the MS4

An illicit discharge is any discharge to the MS4 that is not composed entirely of storm water, except discharges pursuant to a National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System permit and discharges resulting from firefighting activities. Projects must effectively eliminate discharges of non-storm water into the MS4. This may involve a suite of housekeeping BMPs that could include effective irrigation, dispersion of non-storm water discharges into landscaping for infiltration, and control of wash water from vehicle washing. This BMP corresponds to Authority BMPs SC01 (Non-Storm Water Management), SC04 (Aircraft, Ground Vehicle, and Equipment Cleaning), SC05 (Aircraft Deicing/Anti-Icing), SC09 (Building and Grounds Maintenance), SC11 (Lavatory Service Operation), SC12 (Outdoor Washdown/Sweeping), SC13 (Fire Fighting Foam Discharge), SC14 (Potable Water System Flushing), SC15 (Runway Rubber Removal), and SC18 (Housekeeping).

SC-2: Identify the storm drain system using stenciling or signage

Storm drain signs and stencils are visible source controls typically placed adjacent to the inlets. Posting notices regarding discharge prohibitions at storm drain inlets can prevent waste dumping. Stenciling shall be provided for all storm water conveyance system inlets and catch basins within the project area. Inlet stenciling may include concrete stamping, concrete painting, placards, or other methods approved by the Authority. This BMP corresponds to Authority BMP SC17 (Storm Drain Maintenance).

Language used on signs and stencils will include the words "No Dumping! Flows to Bay" or similar as approved by the EAD.

SC-3: Protect *outdoor material storage areas* from rainfall, run-on, runoff, and wind dispersal

Materials with the potential to pollute storm water runoff shall be stored in a manner that prevents contact with rainfall and storm water runoff. Contaminated runoff shall be managed for treatment and disposal (e.g., secondary containment directed to sanitary sewer). All development projects shall incorporate the following structural or pollutant control BMPs for outdoor material storage areas, as applicable and feasible:

- Materials with the potential to contaminate storm water shall be:
  - Placed in an enclosure such as, but not limited to, a cabinet, or similar structure, or under a roof or awning that prevents contact with rainfall runoff or spillage to the storm water conveyance system; or
  - Protected by secondary containment structures such as berms, dikes, or curbs.
- The storage areas shall be paved and sufficiently impervious to contain leaks and spills, where necessary.
- The storage area shall be sloped towards a sump or another equivalent measure that is effective to contain spills.
- Runoff from downspouts/roofs shall be directed away from storage areas.
- The storage area shall have a roof or awning that extends beyond the storage area to minimize collection of storm water within the secondary containment area. A manufactured storage shed may be used for small containers.

This BMP corresponds to Authority BMP SC07 (Outdoor Material Storage).

SC-4: Protect *materials stored in outdoor work areas* from rainfall, run-on, runoff, and wind dispersal

Outdoor work areas have an elevated potential for pollutant loading and spills. All development projects shall include the following structural or pollutant control BMPs for any outdoor work areas with potential for pollutant generation, as applicable and feasible:

- Create an impermeable surface such as concrete or asphalt, or a prefabricated metal drip pan, depending on the size needed to protect the materials.
- Cover the area with a roof or other acceptable cover.
- Berm the perimeter of the area to prevent water from adjacent areas from flowing on to the surface of the work area.
- Directly connect runoff to sanitary sewer or other specialized containment system(s), as needed and where feasible. This allows the more highly concentrated pollutants from these areas to receive special treatment that removes particular constituents. Approval for this connection must be obtained from the appropriate sanitary sewer agency.
- Locate the work area away from storm drains or catch basins.

This BMP corresponds to Authority BMPs SC02A (Outdoor Equipment Operations and Maintenance Areas), SC02B (Aircraft, Ground Vehicle, and Equipment Maintenance), SC02C (Electric Vehicle Maintenance), SC03 (Aircraft, Ground Vehicle, and Equipment Fueling), SC06 (Outdoor Loading/Unloading of Materials), SC09 (Building and Grounds Maintenance), and SC21 (Construction and Remodeling/Repair).

SC-5: Protect *trash storage areas* from rainfall, run-on, runoff, and wind dispersal

Storm water runoff from areas where trash is stored or disposed of can be polluted. In addition, loose trash and debris can be easily transported by water or wind into nearby storm drain inlets, channels, and/or creeks. All development projects shall include the following structural or pollutant control BMPs, as applicable:

- Design trash container areas so that drainage from adjoining roofs and pavement is diverted around the area(s) to avoid run-on. This can include berming or grading the waste handling area to prevent run-on of storm water.
- Ensure trash container areas are screened or walled to prevent offsite transport of trash.
- Provide roofs, awnings, or attached lids on all trash containers to minimize direct precipitation and prevent rainfall from entering containers.
- Locate storm drains away from immediate vicinity of the trash storage area and vice versa.
- Post signs on all dumpsters informing users that hazardous material are not to be disposed.

This BMP corresponds to Authority BMP SC08 (Waste Handling and Disposal).

SC-6: Use any additional BMPs determined to be necessary by the Authority to minimize pollutant generation at each project site

Appendix E provides guidance on permanent controls and operational BMPs that are applicable at a project site based on potential sources of runoff pollutants at the project site. The applicant shall implement all applicable and feasible source control BMPs listed in Appendix E.

The full list of Authority source control BMPs is provided in Appendix B of the Authority SWMP (www.san.org/green). The following source control BMPs may apply, depending on project type:

1) SC01 – Non-Storm Water Management
2) SC02A – Outdoor Equipment Operations and Maintenance Areas
3) SC02B – Aircraft, Ground Vehicle, and Equipment Preventive Maintenance
4) SC02C – Electric Vehicle Maintenance
5) SC03 – Aircraft, Ground Vehicle, and Equipment Fueling
6) SC04 – Aircraft, Ground Vehicle, and Equipment Cleaning
7) SC05 – Aircraft Deicing/Anti-Icing
8) SC06 – Outdoor Loading/Unloading of Materials
9) SC07 – Outdoor Material Storage
10) SC08 – Waste Handling and Disposal

11) SC09 – Building and Grounds Maintenance
12) SC10 – Employee Training
13) SC11 – Lavatory Service Operations
14) SC12 – Outdoor Washdown/Sweeping (Apron Washing, Ramp Scrubbing)
15) SC13 – Firefighting Foam Discharge
16) SC14 – Potable Water System Flushing
17) SC15 – Runway Rubber Removal
18) SC16 – Parking Lots
19) SC17 – Storm Drain Maintenance
20) SC18 – Good Housekeeping
21) SC19 – Safer/Alternative Products
22) SC20 – Erodible Areas
23) SC21 – Construction and Remodeling/Repair
24) SR01 – Spill Prevention, Control, and Clean-up

4.3 Site Design (SD) BMP Requirements

Site design BMPs (also referred to as LID BMPs) are intended to reduce the rate and volume of storm water runoff and associated pollutant loads. Site design BMPs include practices that reduce the rate and/or volume of storm water runoff by minimizing surface soil compaction, reducing impervious surfaces, and/or providing flow pathways that are "disconnected" from the storm drain system, such as by routing flow over pervious surfaces. Site design BMPs may incorporate interception, storage, evaporation, evapotranspiration, infiltration, and/or filtration processes to retain and/or treat pollutants in storm water before it is discharged from a site.

Site design BMPs shall be applied to all development projects as appropriate and practicable for the project site and project conditions. Site design BMPs are described in the following subsections.

> **How to comply**: Projects shall comply with this requirement by using all of the site design BMPs listed in this section that are applicable and practicable to their project type and site conditions. Applicability of a given site design BMP shall be determined on the basis of project type, soil conditions, presence of natural features (e.g., streams), and presence of site features (e.g., parking areas). Explanation shall be provided by the applicant when a certain site design BMP is considered to be not applicable or not practicable/feasible. Site plans shall show site design BMPs and provide adequate details necessary for effective implementation of site design BMPs. The "Site Design BMP Checklist for All Development Projects" located in Appendix A.3 for Standard Projects and Appendix A.4 for PDPs shall be used to document compliance with site design BMP requirements.

SD-1: Maintain natural drainage pathways and hydrologic features

Maintain or restore natural storage reservoirs and drainage corridors (including topographic depressions, areas of permeable soils, natural swales, and ephemeral and intermittent streams)

Include buffer zones for natural water bodies (where buffer zones are technically infeasible, include other buffers such as trees, access restrictions, etc.)

Source: County of San Diego LID Handbook

During the site assessment, natural drainages must be identified along with their connection to creeks and/or streams, if any. Natural drainages offer a benefit to storm water management as the soils and habitat already function as a natural filtering/infiltrating swale. When determining the development footprint of the site, altering natural drainages should be avoided. By providing a development envelope set back from natural drainages, the drainage can retain some water quality benefits to the watershed. In some situations, site constraints, regulations, economics, or other factors may not allow avoidance of drainages and sensitive areas. Projects proposing to dredge or fill materials in Waters of the U.S. must obtain Clean Water Act Section 401 Water Quality Certification. Projects proposing to dredge or fill waters of the State must obtain waste discharge requirements. Both the Section 401 Certification and the Waste Discharge Requirements are administered by the SDRWQCB. The project applicant shall consult EAD for other specific requirements.

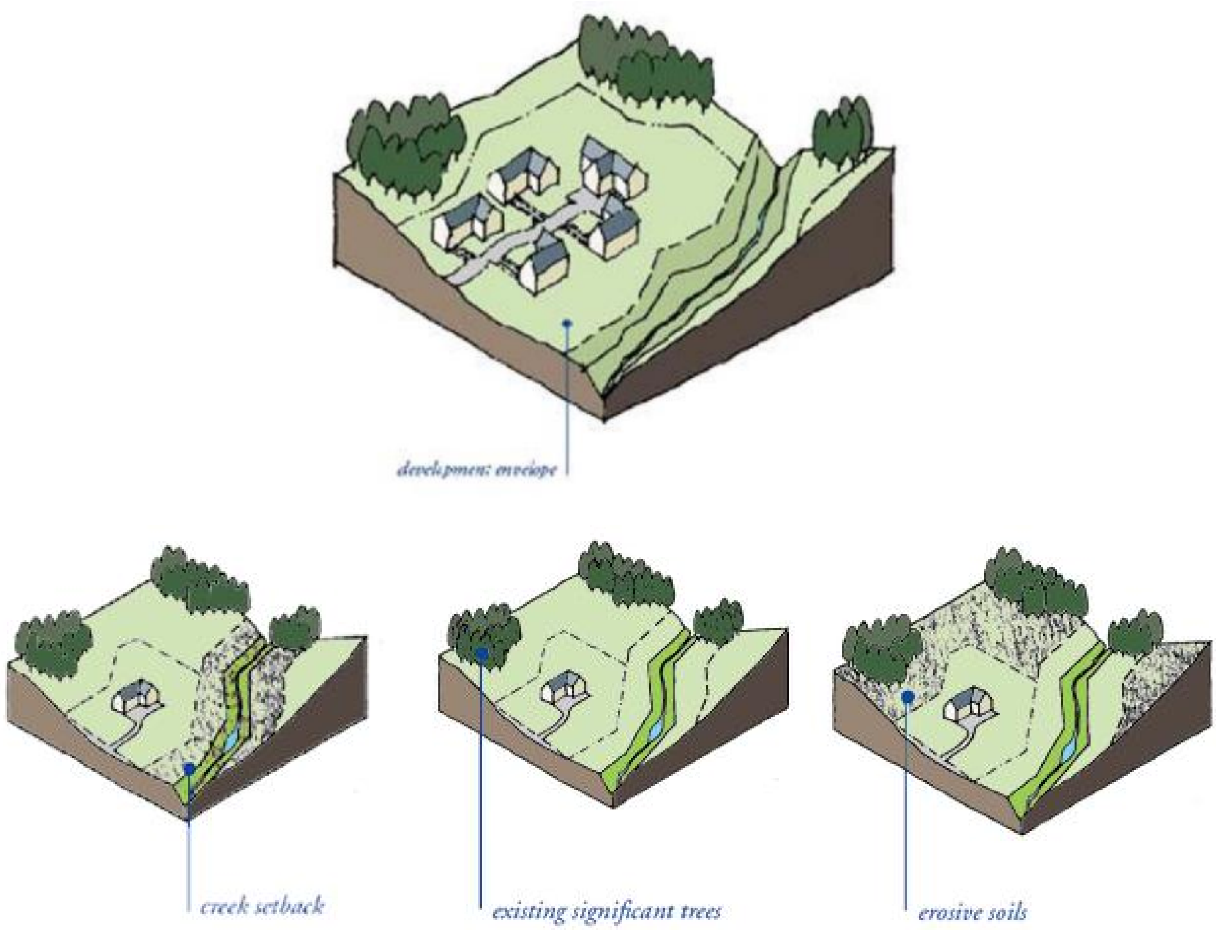
Projects can incorporate SD-1 into a project by implementing the following planning and design phase techniques as applicable and practicable:

- Evaluate surface drainage and topography in considering selection of site design BMPs that will be most beneficial for a given project site. Where feasible, maintain topographic depressions for infiltration.
- Optimize the site layout and reduce the need for grading. Where possible, conform the site layout along natural landforms, avoid grading and disturbance of vegetation and soils, and replicate the site's natural drainage patterns. Integrating existing drainage patterns into the site plan will help maintain the site's predevelopment hydrologic function.
- Preserve existing drainage paths and depressions, where feasible and applicable, to help maintain the time of concentration and infiltration rates of runoff, and decrease peak flow.
- Do not locate structural BMPs in buffer zones if a state and/or federal resource agency (e.g., SDRWQCB, California Department of Fish and Wildlife; U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, etc.) prohibits maintenance or activity in the area.

SD-2: Conserve natural areas, soils and vegetation

Conserve natural areas within the project footprint, including existing trees, other vegetation, and soils

To enhance a site's ability to support source control and reduce runoff, the conservation and restoration of natural areas must be considered in the site design process. By conserving or restoring the natural drainage features, natural processes are able to intercept storm water, thereby reducing the amount of runoff. SAN is highly developed and no natural areas exist; however, preservation of existing landscaped areas and the least tern nesting ovals should be considered in site design.

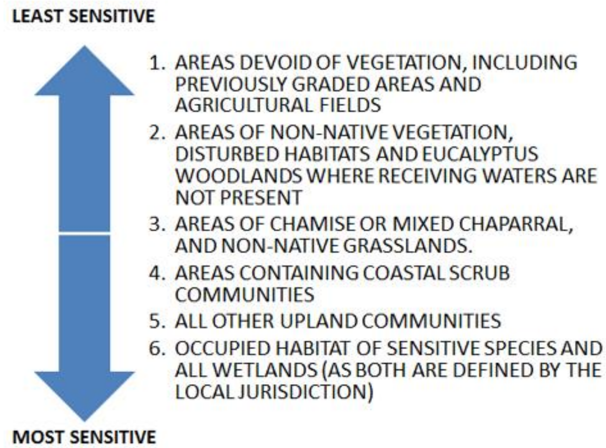


Source: County of San Diego LID Handbook

The upper soil layers of a natural area contain organic material, soil biota, vegetation, and a configuration favorable for storing and slowly conveying storm water and establishing or restoring vegetation to stabilize the site after construction. The canopy of existing native trees and shrubs also provides a water conservation benefit by intercepting rain water before it hits the ground. By minimizing disturbances in these areas, natural processes are able to intercept storm water, providing a water quality benefit. By keeping the development concentrated to the least environmentally sensitive areas of the site and set back from natural areas, storm water runoff is reduced, water quality can be improved, environmental impacts can be decreased, and many of the site's most attractive native landscape features can be retained. In some situations, site constraints, regulations, economics, and/or other factors may not allow avoidance of all sensitive areas on a project site. Project applicant shall consult EAD for specific requirements for mitigation of removal of sensitive areas.

Projects can incorporate SD-2 by implementing the following planning and design phase techniques as applicable and practicable:

- Identify areas most suitable for development and areas that should be left undisturbed. Additionally, reduced disturbance can be accomplished by increasing building density and increasing height, if possible.



- Cluster development on the least-sensitive portions of a site while leaving the remaining land in a natural undisturbed condition.
- Avoid areas with thick, undisturbed vegetation. Soils in these areas have a much higher capacity to store and infiltrate runoff than disturbed soils, and reestablishment of a mature vegetative community can take decades. Vegetative cover can also provide additional volume storage of rainfall by retaining water on the surfaces of leaves, branches, and trunks of trees during and after storm events.
- Preserve trees, especially native trees and shrubs, and identify locations for planting additional native or drought tolerant trees and large shrubs.
- In areas of disturbance, remove topsoil before construction and replace it after the project is completed. When handled carefully, such an approach limits the disturbance to native soils and reduces the need for additional (purchased) topsoil during later phases.
- Avoid sensitive areas, such as wetlands, biological open space areas, biological mitigation sites, streams, floodplains, or particular vegetation communities, such as coastal sage scrub and intact forest. Also, avoid areas that are habitat for sensitive plants and animals, particularly those, State or federally listed as endangered, threatened or rare (e.g., the least tern nesting ovals). Development in these areas is often restricted by federal, state and local laws.

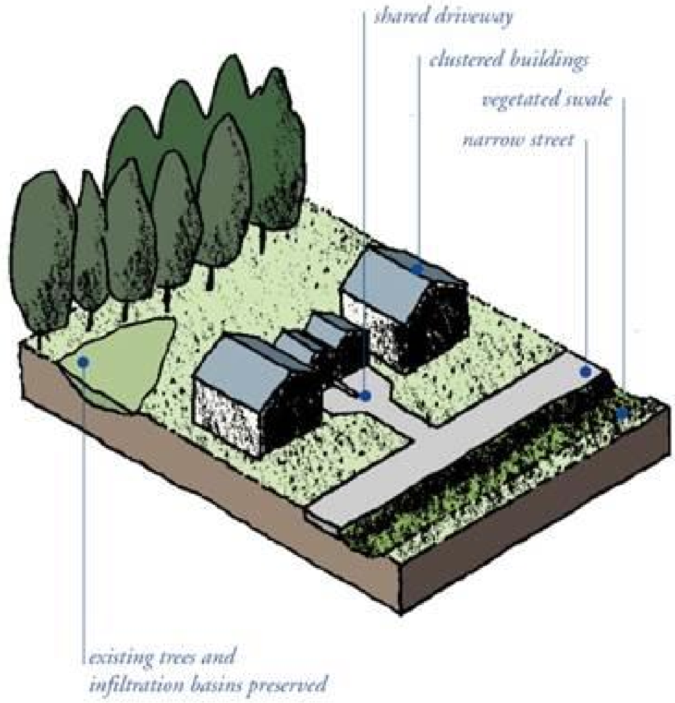
SD-3: Minimize impervious area

Construct streets, sidewalks, or parking lots aisles to the minimum widths necessary, provided public safety is not compromised

Minimize the impervious footprint of the project

One of the principal causes of environmental impacts by development is the creation of impervious surfaces. Imperviousness links urban land development to degradation of aquatic ecosystems in two ways:

- First, the combination of paved surfaces and piped runoff efficiently collects urban pollutants and transports them, in suspended or dissolved form, to surface waters. These pollutants may originate as airborne dust and be washed from the atmosphere during rainfall, or may be generated by automobiles and outdoor work activities.
- Second, increased peak flows and runoff durations typically cause erosion of stream banks and beds, transport of fine sediments, and disruption of aquatic habitat. Measures taken to control stream erosion, such as hardening banks with riprap or concrete, may permanently eliminate habitat.



Source: County of San Diego LID Handbook

Impervious cover can be minimized through identification of the smallest possible land area that can be practically impacted or disturbed during site development. Reducing impervious surfaces retains the permeability of the project site, allowing natural processes to filter and reduce sources of pollution.

Projects can incorporate SD-3 by implementing the following planning and design phase techniques as applicable and practicable:

- Decrease building footprints through the design of compact and taller structures when allowed by Authority zoning and design standards and provided that public safety and flight security are not compromised.
- Construct walkways, trails, patios, overflow parking lots, alleys, and other low-traffic areas with permeable surfaces.
- Construct streets, sidewalks, and parking lot aisles to the minimum widths necessary, provided that public safety and alternative transportation (e.g., pedestrians, bikes) are not compromised.
- Consider the implementation of shared parking lots and driveways where possible.
- Implement a landscaped area in the center of a parking lot or road to reduce impervious area, depending on configuration. Design of a landscaped parking lot or road must be coordinated with fire department personnel to accommodate turning radii and other operational needs.
- Design smaller parking lots with fewer stalls, smaller stalls, and more efficient lanes.
- Design indoor or underground parking.
- Minimize the use of impervious surfaces in the landscape design.

SD-4: Minimize soil compaction

Minimize soil compaction in landscaped areas

The upper soil layers contain organic material, soil biota, and a configuration favorable for storing and slowly conveying storm water down gradient. By protecting native soils and vegetation in appropriate areas during the clearing and grading phase of development, the site can retain some of its existing beneficial hydrologic function. Soil compaction resulting from the movement of heavy construction equipment can reduce soil infiltration rates. It is important to recognize that areas adjacent to and under building foundations, roads, and manufactured slopes must be compacted with minimum soil density requirements in compliance with local building and grading ordinances.

Projects can incorporate SD-4 by implementing the following planning and design phase techniques as applicable and practicable:

- Avoid disturbance in planned green space and proposed landscaped areas where feasible. These areas that are planned for retaining their beneficial hydrological function should be protected during the grading/construction phase so that vehicles and construction equipment do not intrude and inadvertently compact the area.
- In areas planned for landscaping where compaction could not be avoided, re-till the soil surface to allow for better infiltration capacity. Soil amendments are recommended and may be necessary to increase permeability and organic content. Soil stability, density requirements, and other geotechnical considerations associated with soil compaction must be reviewed by a qualified landscape architect or licensed geotechnical, civil or other professional engineer.

SD-5: Disperse impervious areas

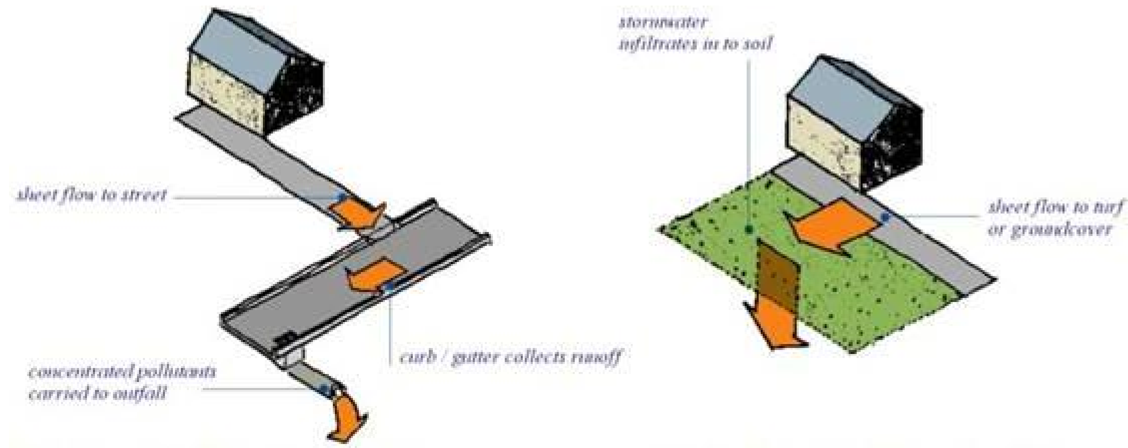
Disconnect impervious surfaces through disturbed pervious areas

Design and construct landscaped or other pervious areas to effectively receive and infiltrate, retain and/or treat runoff from impervious areas prior to discharging to the MS4

Impervious area dispersion (dispersion) refers to the practice of essentially disconnecting impervious areas from directly draining to the storm drain system by routing runoff from impervious areas such as rooftops, walkways, and roads onto the surface of adjacent pervious areas. The intent is to slow runoff discharges, and reduce volumes while achieving incidental treatment. Volume reduction from dispersion is dependent on the infiltration characteristics of the pervious area and the amount of impervious area draining to the pervious area. Treatment is achieved through filtration, shallow sedimentation, sorption, infiltration, evapotranspiration, biochemical processes, and plant uptake.

The effects of imperviousness can be mitigated by disconnecting impervious areas from the drainage system and by encouraging detention and retention of runoff near the point where it is generated. Detention and retention of runoff reduces peak flows and volumes and allows pollutants to settle out or adhere to soils before they can be transported downstream. Disconnection practices may be applied in almost any location, but impervious surfaces must discharge into a suitable receiving area for the practices to be effective. Information gathered during the site assessment will help determine appropriate receiving areas.

Project designs should direct runoff from impervious areas to adjacent landscaping areas that have higher potential for infiltration and surface water storage. This will limit the amount of runoff generated, and therefore the size of the mitigation BMPs downstream. The design, including consideration of slopes and soils, must reflect a reasonable expectation that runoff will soak into the soil and produce no runoff of the DCV.



Source: County of San Diego LID Handbook

Projects can incorporate SD-5 by implementing the following planning and design phase techniques as applicable and practicable:

- Implement design criteria and considerations listed in impervious area dispersion fact sheet (SD-5) presented in Appendix E.
- Drain rooftops into adjacent landscape areas.
- Drain impervious parking lots, sidewalks, walkways, trails, and roads into adjacent landscape areas.
- Reduce or eliminate curb and gutters from roadway sections, thus allowing roadway runoff to drain to adjacent pervious areas.
- Replace curbs and gutters with roadside vegetated swales and direct runoff from the paved street or parking areas to adjacent LID facilities. Such an approach for alternative design can reduce the overall capital cost of the site development while improving the storm water quantity and quality issues and the site's aesthetics.
- Plan site layout and grading to allow for runoff from impervious surfaces to be directed into distributed permeable areas such as turf, landscaped or permeable recreational areas, medians, parking islands, planter boxes, etc.
- Detain and retain runoff throughout the site. On flatter sites, landscaped areas can be interspersed among the buildings and pavement areas. On hillside sites, drainage from upper areas may be collected in conventional catch basins and conveyed to landscaped areas in lower areas of the site.
- Ensure that pervious areas that receive run-on from impervious surfaces shall have a minimum width of 10 feet and a maximum slope of 5 percent.

SD-6: Collect runoff

Use small collection strategies located at, or as close to as possible to, the sources (i.e., the point where storm water initially meets the ground) to minimize the transport of runoff and pollutants to the MS4 and receiving waters

Use permeable material for projects with low traffic areas and appropriate soil conditions

Distributed control of storm water runoff from the site can be accomplished by applying small collection techniques (e.g., green roofs), or integrated management practices, on small sub-catchments. Small collection techniques foster opportunities to maintain the natural hydrology and provide a much greater range of control practices. Integration of storm water management into landscape design and natural features of the site reduces site development and long-term maintenance costs, and provides redundancy if one technique fails. On flatter sites, it typically works best to intersperse landscaped areas and integrate small-scale retention practices among the buildings and paved areas.

Permeable pavements contain small voids that allow water to pass through to a gravel base. They come in a variety of forms; they may be a modular paving system (concrete pavers, grass-pave, or gravel-pave) or poured in place pavement (porous concrete, permeable asphalt). Project applicants should identify locations where permeable pavements could be substituted for impervious concrete or asphalt paving. The O&M of the site must ensure that permeable pavements will not be sealed in the future. In areas where infiltration is not appropriate, permeable paving systems can be fitted with an under drain to allow filtration, storage, and evaporation, prior to drainage into the storm drain system.

Projects can incorporate SD-6 by implementing the following planning and design phase techniques as applicable and practicable:

- Implementing distributed small collection techniques to collect and retain runoff
- Installing permeable pavements (see SD-6B in Appendix E)

SD-7: Landscape with native or drought tolerant species

All development projects are required to select a landscape design and plant palette that minimizes required resources (irrigation, fertilizers, and pesticides) and pollutants generated from landscaped areas. Native plants require less fertilizers and pesticides because they are already adapted to the rainfall patterns and soils conditions. Plants should be selected to be drought tolerant and should not require watering after establishment (2 to 3 years). Watering should only be required during prolonged dry periods after plants are established. Final selection of plant material needs to be made by a landscape architect experienced with LID techniques. Microclimates vary significantly throughout the region and consulting local municipal resources will help to select plant material suitable for a specific geographic location.

Projects can incorporate SD-7 by landscaping with native and drought tolerant species. Recommended plant list is included in Appendix E (Fact Sheet PL).

SD-8: Harvest and use precipitation

Photograph Courtesy of Arid Solutions, Inc.

Harvest and use BMPs capture and stores storm water runoff for later use. Harvest and use can be applied at smaller scales (Standard Projects) using rain barrels or at larger scales (PDPs) using cisterns. This harvest and use technique has been successful in reducing runoff discharged to the storm drain system conserving potable water and recharging groundwater.

Rain barrels are above ground storage vessels that capture runoff from roof downspouts during rain events and detain that runoff for later reuse for irrigating landscaped areas. The temporary storage of roof runoff reduces the runoff volume from a property and may reduce the peak runoff velocity for small, frequently occurring storms. In addition, by reducing the amount of storm water runoff that flows overland into a storm water conveyance system (storm drain inlets and drain pipes), less pollutants are transported through the conveyance system into San Diego Bay. The reuse of the detained water for irrigation purposes leads to the conservation of potable water and the recharge of groundwater. The SD-8 fact sheet in Appendix E provides additional details for designing Harvest and Use BMPs. Projects can incorporate SD-8 by installing rain barrels or cisterns, as applicable.

This page intentionally left blank

Chapter

5

Storm Water Pollutant Control Requirements for PDPs

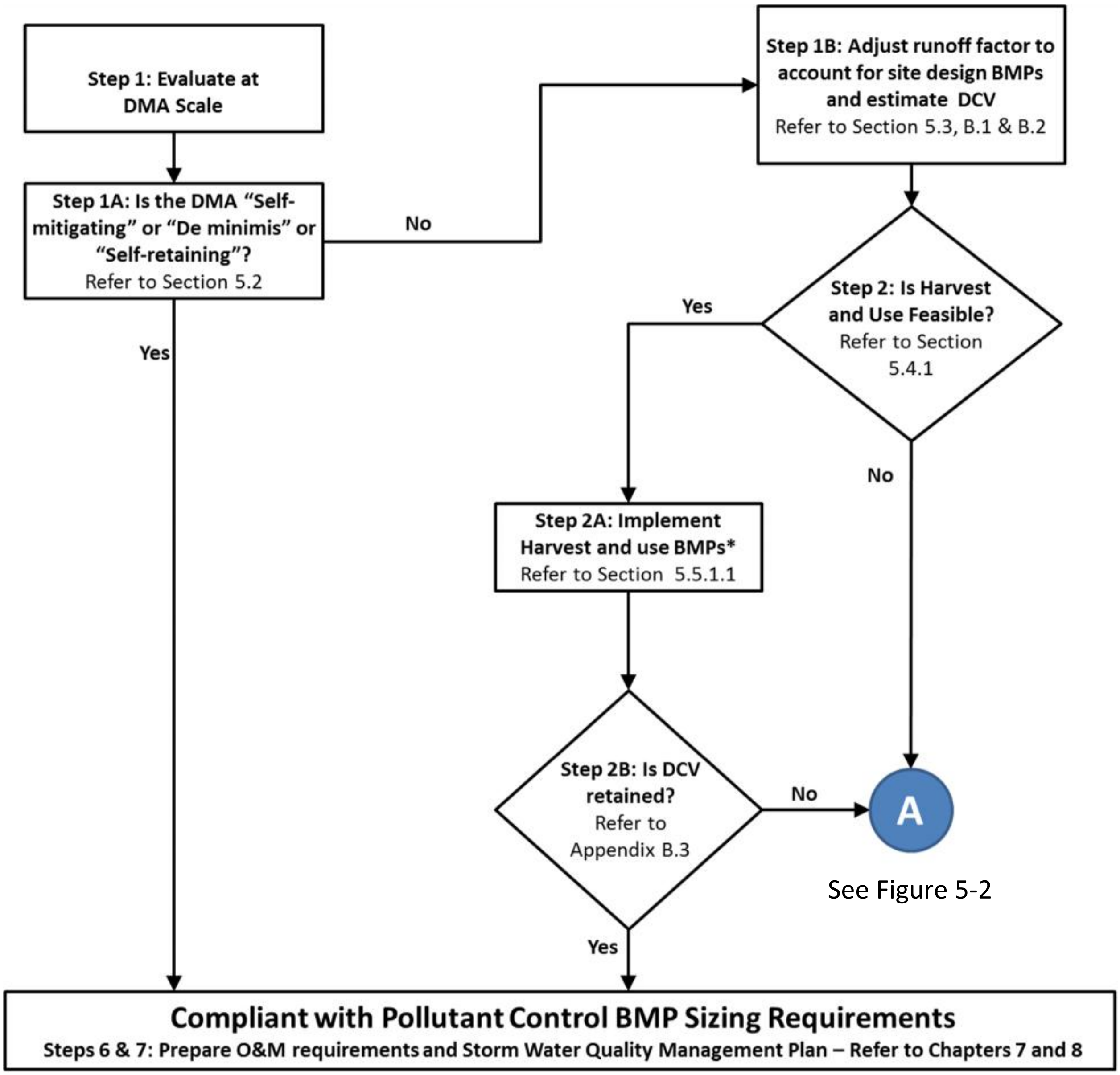
In addition to the site design and source control BMPs discussed in Chapter 4, PDPs are required to implement storm water pollutant control BMPs to reduce the quantity of pollutants in storm water discharges. Storm water pollutant control BMPs are engineered facilities that are designed to retain (i.e., intercept, store, infiltrate, evaporate, and evapotranspire), biofilter, and/or provide flow-through treatment of storm water runoff generated on the project site.

This chapter describes the specific process for determining which category of pollutant control BMP, or combination of BMPs, is most appropriate for the PDP site and how to design the BMP to meet the storm water pollutant control performance standard (per Section 2.2).

This chapter by itself is not a complete design guide for project development. It is intended to provide guidance for selecting and designing storm water pollutant control BMPs. Specifically, this chapter should be followed after having conducted site planning that maximizes opportunities for storm water retention and biofiltration as discussed in Chapter 3.

5.1 Steps for Selecting and Designing Storm Water Pollutant Control BMPs

Figures 5-1 and 5-2 present the flow chart for complying with storm water pollutant control BMP requirements. The steps associated with this flow chart are described below. A project is considered to be in compliance with storm water pollutant control performance standards if it follows and implements this flow chart and follows the supporting technical guidance referenced from this flow chart.



* Step 2C: Project applicant has an option to also conduct feasibility analysis for infiltration and if infiltration is fully or partially feasible has an option to choose between infiltration and harvest and use BMPs. But if infiltration is not feasible and harvest and use is feasible, project applicant must implement harvest and use BMPs

FIGURE 5-1. Storm Water Pollutant Control BMP Selection Flow Chart

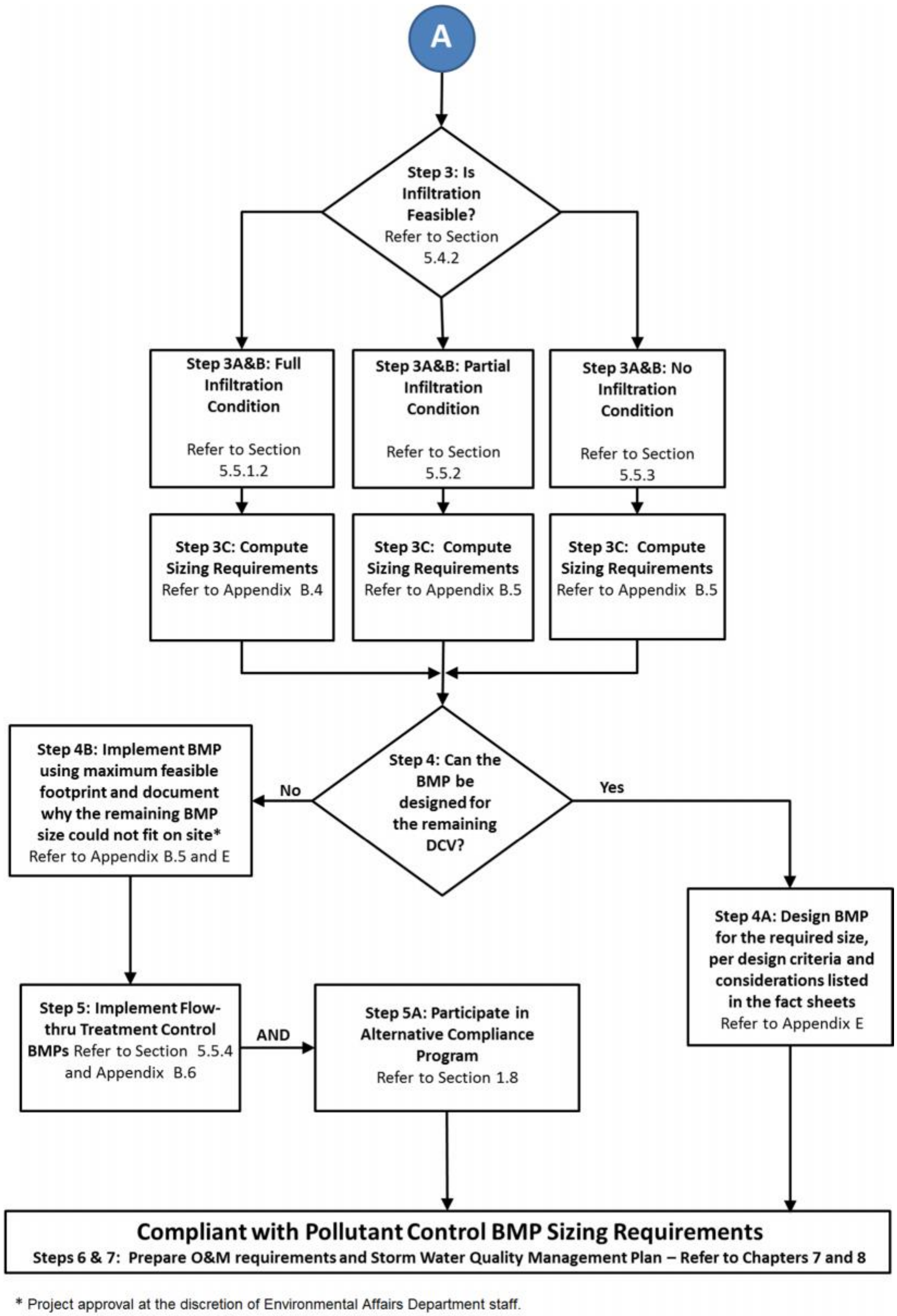


FIGURE 5-2. Storm Water Pollutant Control BMP Selection Flow Chart

Description of Steps:

Step 1. Based on the locations for storm water pollutant control BMPs and the DMA delineations developed during the site planning phase (See Section 3.3.3), calculate the DCV.

A. Identify DMAs that meet the criteria in Section 5.2 (self-mitigating and/or *de minimis* areas and/or self-retaining via qualifying site design BMPs).

B. Estimate the DCV for each remaining DMA. See Section 5.3.

Step 2. Conduct feasibility screening analysis for harvest and use BMPs. See Section 5.4.1.

A. If it is feasible, implement harvest and use BMPs (See Section 5.5.1.1) or go to Step 3.

B. Evaluate whether the DCV can be retained onsite using harvest and use BMPs. See Appendix B.3. If the DCV can be retained onsite, then the pollutant control performance standards are met.

C. (Optional): Conduct a feasibility analysis for infiltration and, if infiltration is feasible, choose between infiltration and harvest and use BMPs. If the analysis finds infiltration is not feasible and harvest and use is feasible, the applicant must implement harvest and use BMPs.

Step 3. Conduct a feasibility analysis for infiltration for the BMP locations selected. See Section 5.4.2.

A. Determine the preliminary feasibility categories of BMP locations on the basis of available site information. Determine the additional information needed to conclusively support findings. Use the "Categorization of Infiltration Feasibility Condition" checklist located in Appendix H.8 to conduct preliminary feasibility screening.

B. Select the storm water pollutant control BMP category on the basis of the preliminary feasibility condition.

i. Full Infiltration Condition– Implement infiltration BMP category, See Section 5.5.1.2

ii. Partial Infiltration Condition – Implement partial retention BMP category. See Section 5.5.2

iii. No Infiltration Condition – Implement biofiltration BMP category. See Section 5.5.3

C. After selecting BMPs, conduct design level feasibility analyses at BMP locations. The purpose of these analyses is to conform or adapt selected BMPs to maximize storm water retention and develop design parameters (e.g., infiltration rates, elevations). Document findings to substantiate BMP selection, feasibility, and design in the SWQMP. See Appendices C and D for additional guidance.

Step 4. Evaluate whether the required BMP footprint will fit considering the site design and constraints.

A. If the calculated footprint fits, then size and design the selected BMPs accordingly using design criteria and considerations from fact sheets presented in Appendix E. The project has met the pollutant control performance standards.

B. If the calculated BMP footprint does not fit, evaluate additional options to make space for BMPs. Examples include revising potential designs, reconfiguring DMAs, evaluating other or additional BMP locations, and evaluating other BMP types. If no additional options are practicable for making adequate space for the BMPs, then document why the remaining DCV could not be treated onsite and then implement the BMP using the maximum feasible footprint, design criteria, and considerations from fact sheets presented in Appendix E. Then continue to the next step. Project approval if the entire DCV could not be treated because the BMP size could not fit within the project footprint is at the discretion of EAD.

Step 5. Implement flow-through treatment control BMPs for the remaining DCV. See Section 5.5.4 and Appendix B.6 for additional guidance.

A. When flow-through treatment control BMPs are implemented, participate in an alternative compliance program. See Section 1.8.

Step 6. Prepare a SWQMP documenting site planning and opportunity assessment activities, final site layout, and storm water management design. See Chapter 8.

Step 7. Identify and document O&M requirements and confirm acceptability to the responsible party. See Chapters 7 and Chapter 8.

5.2 DMAs Excluded from DCV Calculation

This Manual provides project applicants the option to exclude DMAs from DCV calculations if they meet the criteria specified below. These DMAs must implement source control and site design BMPs from Chapter 4 as applicable and feasible. These exclusions will be evaluated on a case-by-case basis and approvals of these exclusions are at the discretion of EAD.

5.2.1 Self-mitigating DMAs

Self-mitigating DMAs consist of natural or landscaped areas that drain directly offsite or to the public storm drain system. Self-mitigating DMAs must meet **ALL** the following characteristics to be eligible for exclusion:

- Vegetation in the natural or landscaped area is native and/or non-native/non-invasive drought tolerant species that do not require regular application of fertilizers and pesticides.
- Soils are undisturbed native topsoil, or disturbed soils that have been amended and aerated to promote water retention characteristics equivalent to undisturbed native topsoil.
- The incidental impervious areas are less than 5 percent of the self-mitigating area.
- The impervious area within the self-mitigated area should not be hydraulically connected to other impervious areas unless it is a storm water conveyance system (such as brow ditches).
- The self-mitigating area is hydraulically separate from DMAs that contain permanent storm water pollutant control BMPs.

Figure 5.3 illustrates the concept of self-mitigating DMAs.

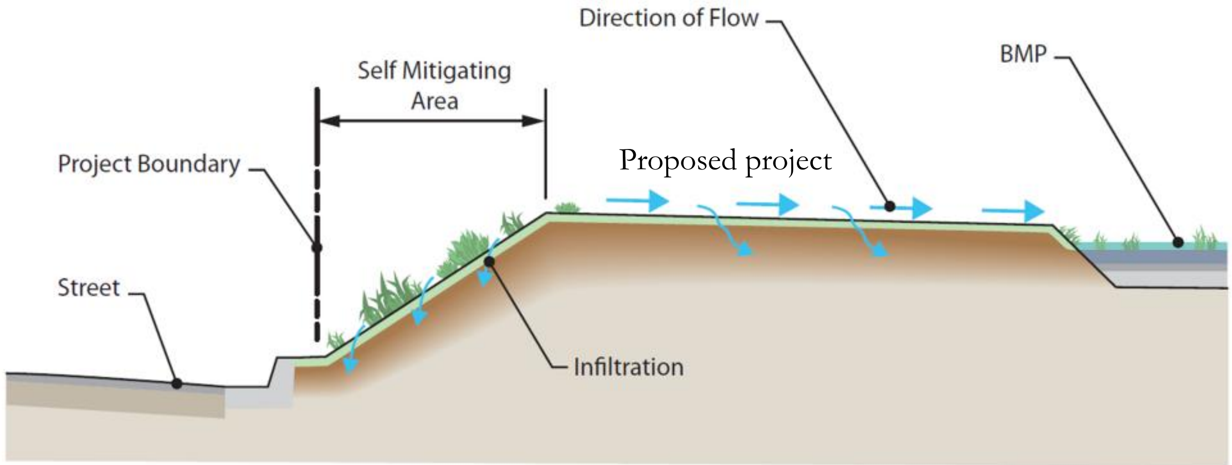


FIGURE 5-3. Self Mitigating Area

5.2.2 De Minimis DMAs

De minimis DMAs consist of areas that are very small, and therefore are not considered to be significant contributors of pollutants, and are considered by the project proponent and EAD not to be practicable to drain to a BMP. It is anticipated that only a small subset of projects will qualify for *de minimis* DMA exclusion. Examples include driveway aprons connecting to existing streets, portions of sidewalks, retaining walls at the external boundaries of a project, and similar features. *De minimis* DMAs must include **ALL** of the following characteristics to be eligible for exclusion:

- Areas abut the perimeter of the development site.
- Topography constraints make BMP construction to reasonably capture runoff technically infeasible.
- The portion of the site falling into this category is minimized through effective site design
- Each DMA should be less than 250 square feet and the sum of all *de minimis* DMAs should represent less than 2 percent of the total added or replaced impervious surface of the project. Except for projects where 2 percent of the total added or replaced impervious surface of the project is less than 250 square feet, a *de minimis* DMA of 250 square feet or less is allowed.
- Two *de minimi*s DMAs cannot be adjacent to each other and hydraulically connected.
- The SWQMP must document the reason that each *de minimis* area could not be addressed otherwise.

5.2.3 Self-retaining DMAs via Qualifying Site Design BMPs

Self-retaining DMAs are areas that are designed with site design BMPs to retain runoff to a level equivalent to pervious land. BMP Fact Sheets for impervious area dispersion (SD-5 in Appendix E) and permeable pavement (SD-6B in Appendix E) describe the design criteria by which BMPs can be considered self-retaining. DMAs that are categorized as self-retaining DMAs are considered to **only** meet the storm water pollutant control obligations.

Requirements for utilizing this category of DMA include the following:

- Site design BMPs such as impervious area dispersion and permeable pavement may be used individually or in combination to reduce or eliminate runoff from a portion of a PDP.
- If a site design BMP is used to create a self-retaining DMA, then the site design BMPs must be designed and implemented per the criteria in the applicable fact sheet. These criteria are conservatively developed to anticipate potential changes in DMA characteristics with time. The fact sheet criteria for impervious area dispersion and permeable pavement for meeting pollutant control requirement developed using continuous simulation are summarized as follows
    - SD-5 Impervious Area Dispersion: a DMA is considered self-retaining if the impervious to pervious ratio is:
        - 2:1 when the pervious area is composed of Hydrologic Soil Group A
        - 1:1 when the pervious area is composed of Hydrologic Soil Group B
    - SD-6B Self-retaining permeable pavement: a DMA is considered self-retaining if the ratio of total drainage area (including permeable pavement) to area of permeable pavement of 1.5:1 or less.
    - Note: The left side of ratios presented above represents the portion of the site that receives volume reduction and the right side of the ratio represents the site design BMP that promotes the achieved volume reduction.
- Site design BMPs used as part of a self-retaining DMA or as part of reducing runoff coefficients from a DMA must be clearly called out on project plans and in the SWQMP.
- EAD may accept or reject a proposed self-retaining DMA meeting these criteria at its discretion. Examples of rationale for rejection may include the potential for negative impacts (such as infiltration or vector issues), potential for significant future alteration of this feature, inability to visually inspect and confirm the feature, etc.

Other site design BMPs can be considered self-retaining for meeting storm water pollutant control obligations if the long-term annual runoff volume (estimated using continuous simulation following guidelines listed in Appendix G) from the DMA is reduced to a level equivalent to pervious land and the applicant provides supporting analysis and rationale for the reduction in long term runoff volume. Approval of other self-retaining areas is at the discretion of EAD. Figure 5.4 illustrates the concept of self-retaining DMAs.

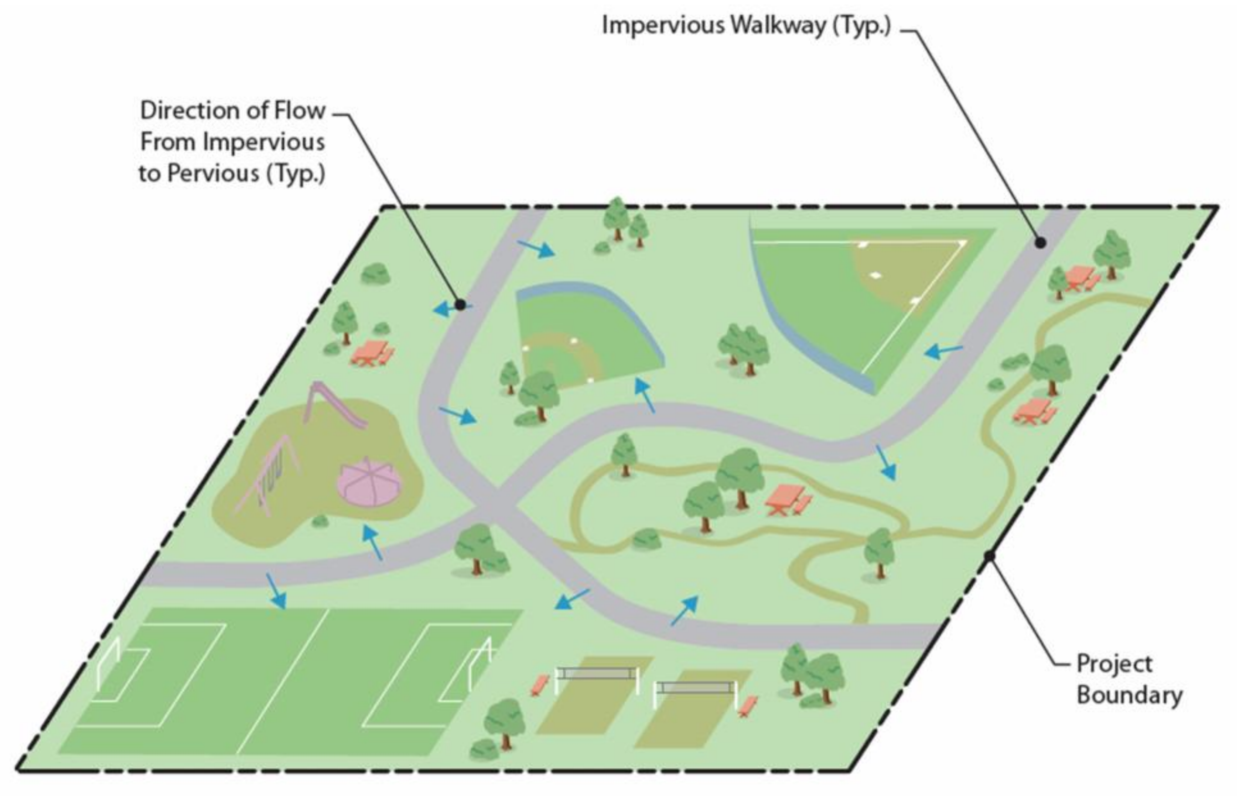


FIGURE 5-4. Self-retaining Site

5.3 DCV Reduction Through Site Design BMPs

Site design BMPs as discussed in Chapter 4 reduce the rate and volume of storm water runoff from the project site. This Manual provides adjustments to runoff factors for the following site design BMPs that may be incorporated into the project as part of an effective site design so that the downstream structural BMPs can be sized appropriately:

- SD-1 Street trees
- SD-5 Impervious area dispersion
- SD-6A Green roofs
- SD-6B Permeable pavement
- SD-8 Rain barrels

Methods for adjusting runoff factors for the site design BMPs listed above are presented in Appendix B.2. Site design BMPs used for reducing runoff coefficients from a DMA must be clearly called out on project plans and in the SWQMP. Approval of the claimed reduction of runoff factors is at the discretion of EAD.

5.4 Evaluating Feasibility of Storm Water Pollutant Control BMP Options

This section provides the fundamental process to establish which category, or combination of categories, of pollutant control BMP is feasible and to determine the volume of onsite retention that is feasible, either through harvest and use, or infiltration of the DCV. The feasibility screening process presented below establishes the volume of retention that can be achieved to fully or partially meet the pollutant control performance standards.

5.4.1 Feasibility Screening for Harvest and Use Category BMPs

Harvest and use is a BMP that captures and stores storm water runoff for later use. The primary question to be evaluated is:

- Is there a demand for harvested water within the project or project vicinity that can be met or partially met with rainwater harvesting in a practical manner?

Appendix B.3 provides guidance for determining the feasibility for using harvested storm water based on onsite demand. Step 2 from Section 5.1 describes how the feasibility results need to be considered in the pollutant control BMP selection process.

5.4.2 Feasibility Screening for Infiltration Category BMPs

After accounting for any potential onsite use of storm water, the next step is to evaluate how much storm water can be retained onsite primarily through infiltration of the DCV. Infiltration of storm water is dependent on many important factors that must be evaluated as part of infiltration feasibility screening. The key questions to determining the degree of infiltration that can be accomplished onsite are:

- Is infiltration potentially feasible and desirable?
- If so, what quantity of infiltration is potentially feasible and desirable?

These questions must be addressed in a systematic fashion to determine whether full infiltration of the DCV is potentially feasible. If when answering these questions it is determined that full infiltration is not feasible, then the portion of the DCV that could be infiltrated must be quantified, or a determination that infiltration in any appreciable quantity is infeasible or must be avoided. **This process is illustrated in Figure 5-5.** As a result of this process, conditions can be characterized as one of the three categories listed and defined below.

- **Full Infiltration Condition**: Infiltration of the full DCV is potentially feasible and desirable. More rigorous design-level analyses should be used to confirm this classification and establish specific design parameters such as infiltration rate and factor of safety. BMPs in this category may include bioretention and infiltration basins. See Section 5.5.1.2.
- **Partial Infiltration Condition**: Infiltration of a significant portion of the DCV may be possible, but site factors may indicate that infiltration of the full DCV is either infeasible or not desirable. Select BMPs that provide opportunity for partial infiltration, e.g., biofiltration with partial retention. See Section 5.5.2.

- **No Infiltration Condition**: Infiltration of any appreciable volume should be avoided. Some incidental volume losses may still be possible, but any appreciable quantity of infiltration would introduce undesirable conditions. Other pollutant control BMPs should be considered e.g., biofiltration or flow-through treatment control BMPs and participation in alternative compliance (Section 1.8) for the portion of the DCV that is not retained or biofiltered onsite. See Section 5.5.3 and 5.5.4.

The "Categorization of Infiltration Feasibility Condition" checklist in Appendix H must be used to document the findings of the infiltration feasibility assessment and must be supported by all associated information used in the feasibility findings. Appendices C and D in this Manual provide additional guidance and criteria for performing feasibility analysis for infiltration. All PDPs are required to complete this worksheet. At the site planning phase, this worksheet can help guide the design process by influencing project layout and selection of infiltration BMPs, and identifying whether more detailed studies are needed. At the design and final report submittal phase, planning level categorizations related to infiltration must be confirmed or revised and rigorously documented and supported on the basis of design-level investigations and analyses, as needed. A Geological Investigation Report must be prepared for all PDPs implementing onsite structural BMPs. This report should be attached to the SWQMP. Geotechnical and groundwater investigation report requirements are listed in Appendix C.

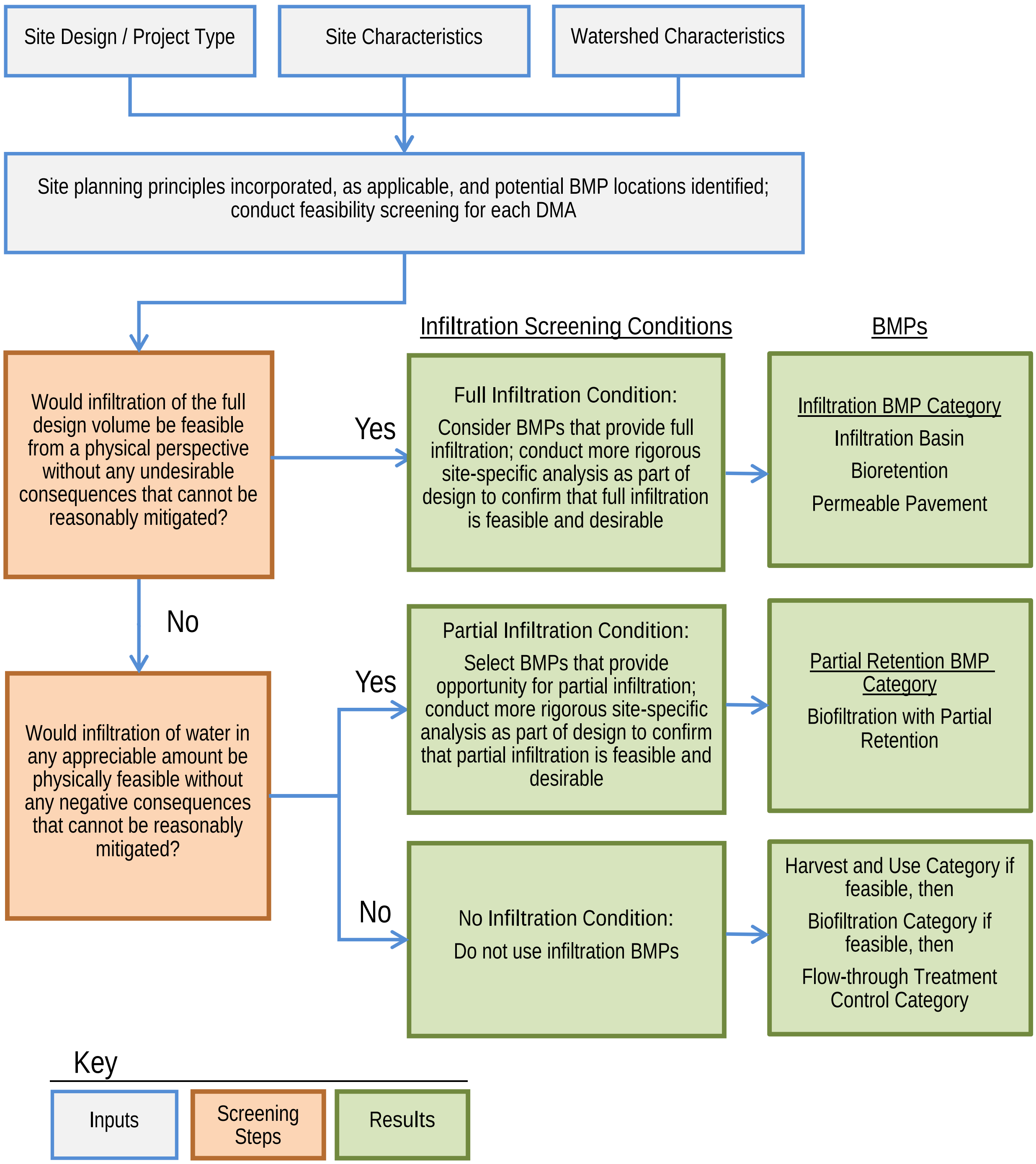


FIGURE 5-5. Infiltration Feasibility and Desirability Screening Flow Chart

5.5 BMP Selection and Design

BMP selection shall be based on steps listed in Section 5.1 and the feasibility screening process described in Section 5.4. Selected BMPs must be designed on the basis of accepted design standards. The BMP designs described in the BMP Fact Sheets (Appendix E) shall constitute the allowable storm water pollutant control BMPs for the purpose of meeting storm water management requirements. Other BMP types and variations on these designs may be approved at the discretion of EAD if documentation is provided demonstrating that the BMP is functionally equivalent or better than those described in this Manual.

This section provides an introduction to each category of BMP and provides links to fact sheets that contain recommended criteria for the design and implementation of BMPs. Table 5-1 maps the BMP category to the fact sheets provided in Appendix E. Criteria specifically described in these fact sheets override guidance contained in outside referenced source documents. Where criteria are not specified, the applicant and the project review staff should use best professional judgment based on the recommendations of the referenced guidance material or other published and generally accepted sources. When an outside source is used, the preparer must document the source in the SWQMP.

TABLE 5-1. Permanent Structural BMPs for PDPs

MS4 Permit Category	Manual Category	BMPs
Retention	Harvest and Use (HU)	HU-1: Cistern
Retention	Infiltration (INF)	INF-1: Infiltration basin INF-2: Bioretention INF-3: Permeable pavement
NA	Partial Retention (PR)	PR-1: Biofiltration with partial retention
Biofiltration	Biofiltration (BF)	BF-1: Biofiltration BF-2: Nutrient Sensitive Media Design BF-3: Proprietary Biofiltration
Flow-through treatment control	Flow-through treatment control with Alternative Compliance (FT)	FT-1: Vegetated swales FT-2: Media filters FT-3: Sand filters FT-4: Dry extended detention basins FT-5: Proprietary flow-through treatment control

5.5.1 Retention Category

5.5.1.1 Harvest and Use BMP Category

Harvest and use (typically referred to as rainwater harvesting) BMPs capture and store storm water runoff for later use. These BMPs are engineered to store a specified volume of water and have no design surface discharge until this volume is exceeded. Uses of captured water shall not result in runoff to storm drains or receiving waters. Potential uses of captured water may include irrigation demand, indoor non-potable demand, industrial process water demand, or other demands.

Selection: Harvest and use BMPs shall be selected after performing a feasibility analysis per Section 5.4.1. Based on findings from Section 5.4, if both harvest and use and full infiltration of the DCV are feasible onsite, the project applicant has an option to implement either harvest and use BMPs and/or infiltration BMPs to meet the storm water requirements.

Design: A worksheet for sizing harvest and use BMPs is presented in Appendix B.3 and the fact sheet for sizing and designing the harvest and use BMP is presented in Appendix E. Figure 5-6 shows a schematic of a harvest and use BMP.

BMP option under this category:

- HU-1: Cistern

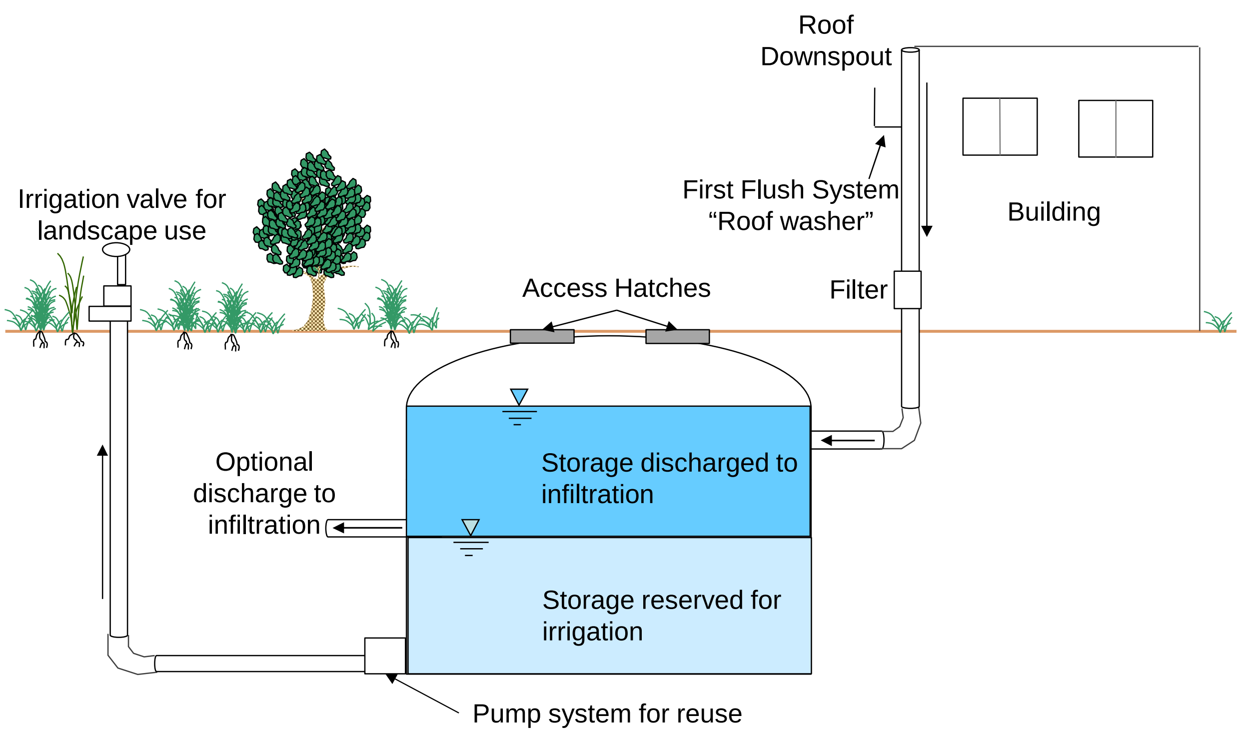


FIGURE 5-6. Schematic of a Typical Cistern

5.5.1.2 Infiltration BMP Category

Infiltration BMPs are structural measures that capture, store, and infiltrate storm water runoff. These BMPs are engineered to store a specified volume of water and have no design surface discharge (underdrain or outlet structure) until this volume is exceeded. These types of BMPs may also support evapotranspiration processes, but are characterized by having their most dominant volume losses due to infiltration. Pollution prevention and source control BMPs shall be implemented at a level appropriate to protect groundwater quality for areas draining to infiltration BMPs and runoff must undergo pretreatment such as sedimentation or filtration prior to infiltration.

Selection: Selection of this BMP category shall be based on analysis according to Sections 5.1 and 5.4.2. Dry wells are considered Class V injection wells and are subject to underground injection control (UIC) regulations. Dry wells are only allowed when registered with the USEPA.

Design: Appendix B.4 has a worksheet for sizing infiltration BMPs, Appendix D has guidance for estimating infiltration rates for use in design the BMP, and Appendix E provides fact sheets to design the infiltration BMPs. Appendices B.6.2.1, B.6.2.2, and D.5.3 have guidance for selecting appropriate pretreatment for infiltration BMPs. Figure 5-7 shows a schematic of an infiltration basin.

BMP options under this category:

- INF-1: Infiltration Basins
- INF-2: Bioretention
- INF-3: Permeable Pavement
- Dry Wells

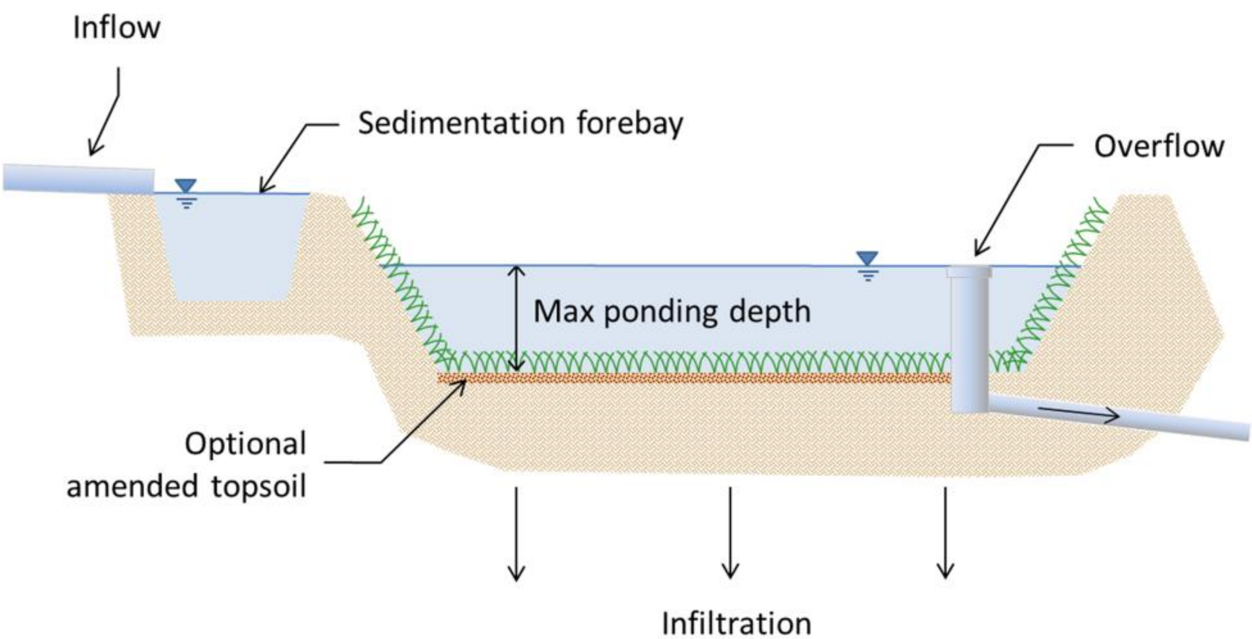


FIGURE 5-7. Schematic of a Typical Infiltration Basin

5.5.2 Partial Retention BMP Category

Partial retention category is defined by structural measures that incorporate both infiltration (in the lower treatment zone) and biofiltration (in the upper treatment zone). Example includes biofiltration with partial retention BMP.

5.5.2.1 Biofiltration With Partial Retention BMP

Biofiltration with partial retention BMPs are shallow basins filled with treatment media and drainage rock that manage storm water runoff through infiltration, evapotranspiration, and biofiltration. These BMPs are characterized by a subsurface stone infiltration storage zone in the bottom of the BMP below the elevation of the discharge from the underdrains. The discharge of biofiltered water from the underdrain occurs when the water level in the infiltration storage zone exceeds the elevation of the underdrain outlet. The storage volume can be controlled by the elevation of the underdrain outlet (shown in Figure 5-8), or other configurations. Other typical biofiltration with partial retention components include a media layer and associated filtration rates, drainage layer with associated in-situ soil infiltration rates, and vegetation.

Selection: Biofiltration with partial retention BMP shall be selected if the project site feasibility analysis performed according to Section 5.4.2 determines a partial infiltration feasibility condition.

Design: Appendix B.5 provides guidance for sizing biofiltration with partial retention BMP and Appendix E provides a fact sheet to design biofiltration with partial retention BMP.

BMP option under this category:

- PR-1: Biofiltration With Partial Retention

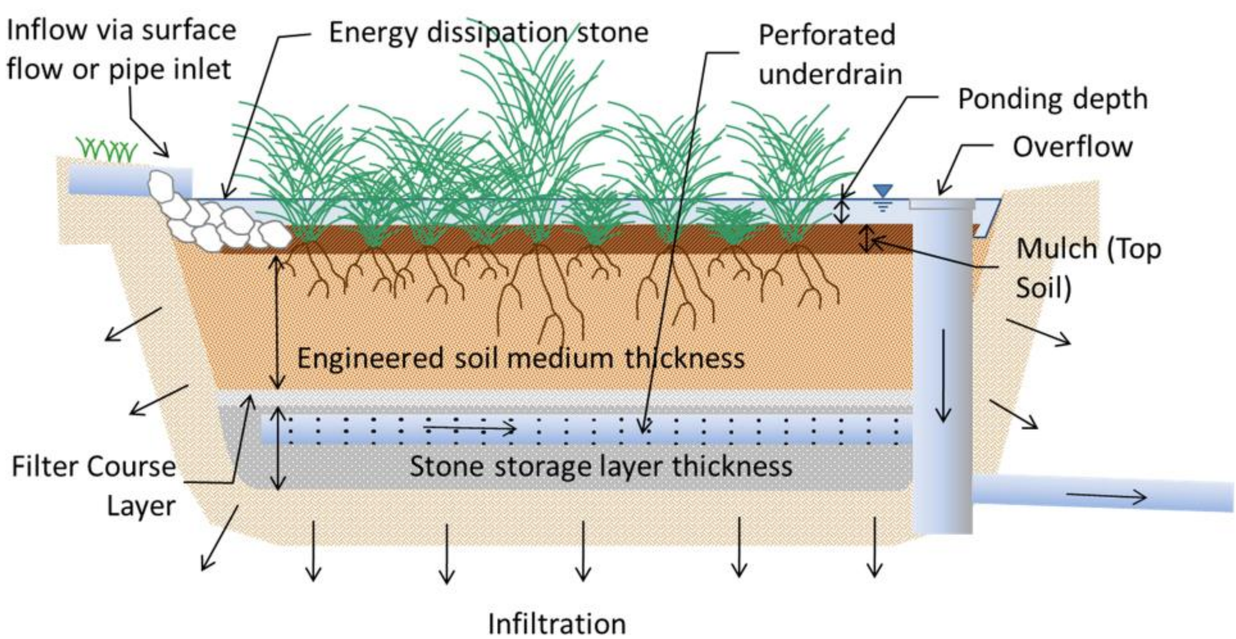


FIGURE 5-8. Schematic of a Typical Biofiltration with Partial Retention BMP

5.5.3 Biofiltration BMP Category

Biofiltration BMPs are shallow basins filled with treatment media and drainage rock that treat storm water runoff by capturing and detaining inflows prior to controlled release through minimal incidental infiltration, evapotranspiration, or discharge via underdrain or surface outlet structure. Treatment is achieved through filtration, sedimentation, sorption, biochemical processes, and/or vegetative uptake. Biofiltration BMPs can be designed with or without vegetation, provided that biological treatment processes are present throughout the life of the BMP via maintenance of plants, media base flow, or other biota-supporting elements. By default, BMP BF-1 shall include vegetation unless it is demonstrated, to the satisfaction of EAD, that effective biological treatment process will be maintained without vegetation. Typical biofiltration components include a media layer with associated filtration rates, drainage layer with associated in-situ soil infiltration rates, underdrain, inflow and outflow control structures, and vegetation, with an optional impermeable liner installed on an as needed basis due to site constraints.

Selection: Biofiltration BMPs shall be selected if the project site feasibility analysis performed according to Section 5.4.2 determines a No Infiltration Feasibility Condition.

Design: Appendix B.5 has a worksheet for sizing biofiltration BMPs and Appendix E provides fact sheets to design the biofiltration BMP. Figure 5-9 shows the schematic of a biofiltration Basin.

BMP option under this category:

- BF-1: Biofiltration
- BF-2: Nutrient Sensitive Media Design
- BF-3: Proprietary Biofiltration

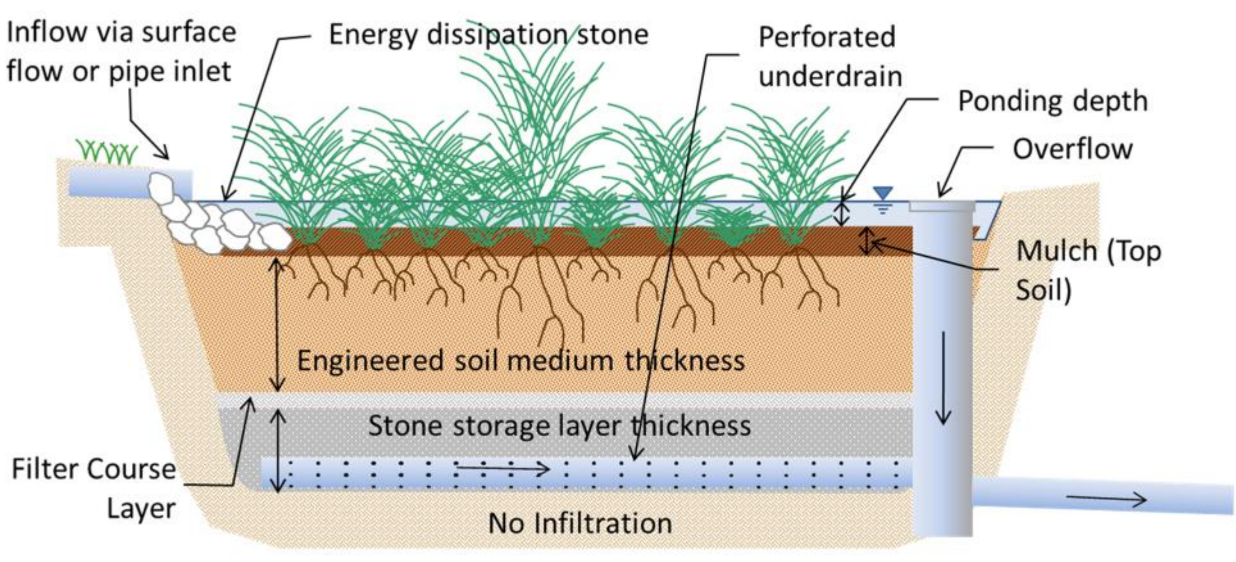


FIGURE 5-9. Schematic of a Typical Biofiltration Basin

Alternative Biofiltration Options: Other BMPs, including proprietary BMPs (See fact sheet BF-3) may be classified as biofiltration BMPs if they (1) meet the minimum design criteria listed in Appendix F, including the pollutant treatment performance standard in Appendix F.1, (2) are designed and maintained in a manner consistent with its performance certifications, if applicable, and (3) are acceptable at the discretion of EAD. The applicant may be required to provide additional studies and/or required to meet additional design criteria beyond the scope of this document in order to demonstrate that these criteria are met. In determining the acceptability of an alternative biofiltration BMP, the Authority will consider, as applicable, (1) the data submitted; (2) representativeness of the data submitted; (3) consistency of the BMP performance claims with pollutant control objectives and certainty of the BMP performance claims; (4) for projects within the public right of way and/or public projects: maintenance requirements, cost of maintenance activities, relevant previous local experience with operation and maintenance of the BMP type, and ability to continue to operate the system in event that the vending company is no longer operating as a business; and (5) other relevant factors. If a proposed BMP is not accepted by EAD, a written explanation/reason will be provided to the applicant.

5.5.4 Flow-through Treatment Control BMPs (for Use With Alternative Compliance) Category

Flow-through treatment control BMPs are structural, engineered facilities that are designed to remove pollutants from storm water runoff using treatment processes that do not incorporate significant biological methods.

Selection: Flow-through treatment control BMPs shall be selected on the basis of the criteria in Appendix B.6. Flow-through treatment control BMPs may be implemented to satisfy PDP structural BMP performance requirements only if an appropriate offsite alternative compliance project is also constructed to mitigate for the pollutant load in the portion of the DCV not retained onsite. The alternative compliance program is an optional element that may be developed by each jurisdiction (see Section 1.8).

Design: Appendix B.6 provides the methodology, required tables, and worksheet for sizing flow-through treatment control BMPs and Appendix E provides fact sheets to design the following flow-through treatment control BMPs. Figure 5-10 shows a schematic of a Vegetated Swale as an example of a flow-through treatment control BMP.

BMP options under this category:

- FT-1: Vegetated Swales
- FT-2: Media Filters
- FT-3: Sand Filters
- FT-4: Dry Extended Detention Basin
- FT-5: Proprietary Flow-Through Treatment Control

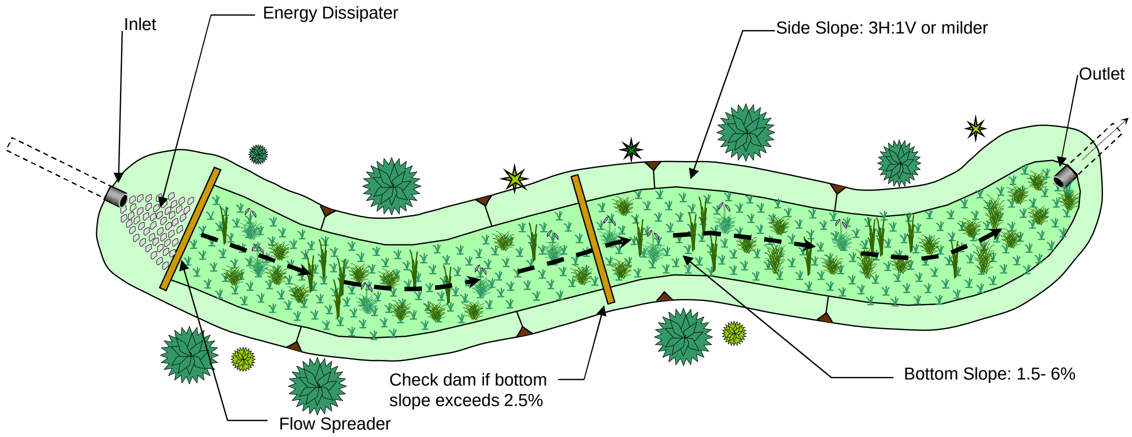


FIGURE 5-10. Schematic of a Vegetated Swale

Use of Proprietary BMP Options: A proprietary BMP (see fact sheet FT-5) can be classified as a flow-through treatment control BMP if (1) it is demonstrated to meet the flow-through treatment performance criteria in Appendix B.6, (2) is designed and maintained in a manner consistent with its applicable performance certifications, and (3) is acceptable at the discretion of the EAD. The applicant may be required to provide additional studies and/or required to meet additional design criteria beyond the scope of this document in order to justify the use of a proprietary flow-through treatment control BMP. In determining the acceptability of an proprietary flow-through treatment control BMP, the Authority will consider, as applicable, (1) the data submitted; (2) representativeness of the data submitted; (3) consistency of the BMP performance claims with pollutant control objectives; certainty of the BMP performance claims; (4) for projects within the public right of way and/or public projects: maintenance requirements, cost of maintenance activities, relevant previous local experience with operation and maintenance of the BMP type, ability to and continue to operate the system in event that the vending company is no longer operating as a business; and (5) other relevant factors. If a proposed BMP is not accepted by EAD, a written explanation/reason will be provided to the applicant.

5.5.5 Alternate BMPs

New and proprietary BMP technologies may be available that meet the performance standards in Chapter 2 but are not discussed in this Manual. Use of these alternate BMPs to comply with permit obligations is at the discretion of the EAD. Alternate BMPs must meet the standards for biofiltration BMPs or flow-through BMPs (depending on how they are used), as described in Appendix F and Appendix B.6, respectively.

Chapter

6

Hydromodification Management Requirements for PDPs

The purpose of hydromodification management requirements for PDPs is to minimize the potential of storm water discharges from the MS4 from causing altered flow regimes and excessive downstream erosion in receiving waters. As discussed in Section 1.6, development within Authority jurisdiction is not subject to hydromodification management requirements. All discharges drain directly to San Diego Bay, an enclosed embayment. Therefore, this section, as written in the Model BMP Design Manual, is not included here.

This page intentionally left blank

Chapter

7

AUTHORITY BMP DESIGN MANUAL

Long Term Operation & Maintenance

Permanent structural BMPs require ongoing inspection and maintenance into perpetuity to preserve the intended pollution control and/or flow control performance.

This chapter addresses procedural requirements for implementation of long-term O&M and the typical maintenance requirements of structural BMPs presented in the Manual. Specific requirements for O&M Plan reports will be discussed in Chapter 8 with the Submittal Requirements.

7.1 Need for Permanent Inspection and Maintenance

7.1.1 MS4 Permit Requirements

The MS4 Permit requires that the Authority implement a program that requires and confirms structural BMPs on all PDPs are designed, constructed, and maintained to remove pollutants in storm water to the MEP.

Routine inspection and maintenance of BMPs will preserve the design and MS4 Permit objective to remove pollutants in storm water to the MEP. The MS4 Permit requirement specifically applies to PDP structural BMPs. However, source control BMPs and site design/LID BMPs within a PDP are components in the storm water management scheme that determine the amount of runoff to be treated by structural BMPs; when source control, site design, or LID BMPs are not maintained, this can lead to clogging or failure of structural BMPs due to greater delivery of runoff and pollutants than intended. Therefore, EAD may also require confirmation of maintenance of source control BMPs and site design/LID BMPs as part of their PDP structural BMP maintenance documentation requirements (see Section 7.4).

7.1.2 Practical Considerations

Why do permanent structural BMPs require ongoing inspection and maintenance into perpetuity?

By design, structural BMPs will trap pollutants transported by storm water. Structural BMPs are subject to deposition of solids such as sediment, trash, and other debris. Some structural BMPs are also subject to growth of vegetation, either by design (e.g., biofiltration) or incidentally. The pollutants and any overgrown vegetation must be removed on a periodic basis for the life of the BMP to maintain the capacity of the structural BMP to process storm water and capture pollutants from every storm event. Structural BMP components are also subject to clogging from trapped pollutants and growth of vegetation. Clogged BMPs can result in flooding, standing water, and mosquito breeding habitat. Maintenance is critical to ensure the ongoing drainage of the facility. All components of the BMP must be maintained, including both the surface and any subsurface components.

Vegetated structural BMPs, including vegetated infiltration or partial infiltration BMPs and above-ground detention basins, also require routine maintenance so that they do not inadvertently become wetlands, waters of the state, or sensitive species habitat under the jurisdiction of the United States Army Corps of Engineers, SDRWQCB, California Department of Fish and Wildlife, or the United States Fish and Wildlife Service. A structural BMP that is constructed in the vicinity of, or connected to, an existing jurisdictional water or wetland could inadvertently result in creation of expanded waters or wetlands. As such, vegetated structural BMPs have the potential to come under the jurisdiction of one or more of the above-mentioned resource agencies. This could result in the need for specific resource agency permits and costly mitigation to perform maintenance of the structural BMP. Along with proper placement of a structural BMP, routine maintenance is key to preventing this scenario.

7.2 Summary of Steps to Maintenance Agreement

Ownership and maintenance responsibility for structural BMPs should be discussed at the *beginning of project planning*, typically at the pre-application meeting with EAD.

Experience has shown provisions to finance and implement maintenance of BMPs can be a major stumbling block to project approval. Project owners shall be aware of their responsibilities regarding storm water BMP maintenance and need to be familiar with the contents of the O&M Plan prepared for the project. Chapter 8 provides the guidelines for preparation of a site specific O&M Plan. A maintenance mechanism must be determined prior to the issuance of any construction, grading, building permit, site development permit, or any other applicable permit. Below are typical steps and schedule for establishing a plan and mechanism to ensure on-going maintenance of structural BMPs.

The final O&M plan submitted to EAD must describe the designated responsible party to manage the structural BMP(s), any necessary employee or tenant training and duties, operating schedule, maintenance frequency, specific maintenance activities, copies of resource agency permits, and any other necessary activities. At a minimum, the O&M Plan will require the inspection and servicing of all structural BMPs on an annual basis. The tenant shall document all maintenance and shall retain records for at least 5 years. These documents shall be made available to the Authority for inspection upon request at any time. O&M Plans will also be prepared for capital projects that include structural BMPs.

The Authority maintains the rights to access tenant properties as part of lease provisions. These rights extend to any access required related to structural BMPs.

TABLE 7-1. Schedule for Developing O&M Plan and Agreement

Item	Description	Time Frame
1	Determine structural BMP ownership, party responsible for permanent O&M, and maintenance funding mechanism	Prior to first submittal of a project application – discuss with staff at pre-application meeting
2	Identify expected maintenance actions	First submittal of a project application – identify in SWQMP
3	Develop detailed O&M Plan	As required by EAD, prior to issuance of project approvals
4	Update/finalize O&M Plan to reflect constructed structural BMPs with as-built plans and baseline photos	As required by EAD, upon completion of construction of structural BMPs
5	Prepare draft O&M Agreement	As required by EAD and Business & Financial Management Department
6	Execute O&M Agreement	As required by EAD and Business & Financial Management Department

7.3 Maintenance Responsibility

Who is responsible for the maintenance of the permanent structural BMPs into perpetuity?

The project owner is responsible to ensure inspection, and O&M of permanent structural BMPs within their facility (i.e., either the Authority itself or a tenant, unless responsibility has been formally transferred from the tenant to the Authority). For tenant projects, when tenant areas change (i.e., the area falls under a new tenant lease) maintenance responsibility also transfers to the new tenant. For Authority projects, FMD is responsible for maintenance. If property ownership changes (i.e., the property is sold or otherwise transferred to a new owner), maintenance responsibility also transfers to the new owner. For tenant structural BMPs that will be transferred to the Authority, there may be an interim period during which the tenant is responsible until maintenance responsibility is formally transferred.

From the time that the structural BMP is constructed and activated (i.e., it is operating and processing storm water from storm events), it requires inspection and maintenance to ensure that it continues to function as designed. Because of this, the MS4 Permit requires that each jurisdiction must "require the project applicant to submit proof of the mechanism under which ongoing long-term maintenance of all structural BMPs will be conducted." The various jurisdictions have different allowable maintenance mechanisms (e.g., privately funded or publicly funded maintenance) and/or requirements for proof of the maintenance mechanism (e.g., maintenance agreements). Requirements for proof of the maintenance mechanism may also differ depending on whether the long term O&M will be provided by a public or private party.

For projects within the Authority jurisdiction, structural BMP maintenance will be provided by the Authority for capital projects (i.e., public entity maintenance) and will be provided by the individual tenants for tenant projects (i.e., through lease provisions). As part of the project review for both capital and tenant PDPs that include structural BMPs, the Authority will verify that appropriate mechanisms are in place. The maintenance mechanisms include:

1) Public entity maintenance: The Authority will provide storm water BMP maintenance for its capital projects. Funding will be provided on an ongoing basis through the inclusion of maintenance costs in annual operating budgets for any department having BMP maintenance responsibility.
2) Lease provisions: The Authority will ensure storm water BMP maintenance, repair, and replacement of tenant projects through conditions in tenant leases. An example Tenant Condition of Approval is included in Appendix A.4.
3) Other mechanisms: On a case-by-case basis, the Authority may consider other mechanisms for structural BMP maintenance such as inclusion of maintenance conditions in a use permit, or alternative mechanisms, subject to EAD approval.

7.4 Long-Term Maintenance Documentation

As part of ongoing structural BMP maintenance into perpetuity, property owners are required to provide documentation of maintenance for the structural BMPs on their property to support the Authority's reporting requirements to the SDRWQCB.

The MS4 Permit requires the Authority to verify that structural BMPs on each PDP "are adequately maintained, and continue to operate effectively to remove pollutants in storm water to the MEP through inspections, self-certifications, surveys, or other equally effective approaches." The Authority must also identify the party responsible for structural BMP maintenance for the PDP and report the dates and findings of structural BMP maintenance verifications, and corrective actions and/or resolutions when applicable, in their PDP inventory. The PDP inventory and findings of maintenance verifications must be reported to the SDRWQCB annually.

FMD annually inspects the Authority PDP structural BMPs for maintenance requirements and determines the appropriate maintenance required to continue to operate the BMPs in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, and to ensure effective operation of the BMP in removing pollutants in storm water to the MEP. This verification is accomplished through these inspections and the subsequent maintenance. Structural BMPs constructed by the Authority as part of a capital improvement project are generally maintained by the FMD. FMD records the inspection and maintenance of these BMPs. Before October 1 of each year, EAD inspects FMD documentation of maintenance.

Structural BMPs constructed by tenants are generally maintained by tenants, unless the Authority and FMD have assumed responsibility under the terms of the tenant's lease or some other mechanism. Structural BMPs constructed by tenants are either inspected by FMD annually before October 1 or the tenant is allowed to self-certify inspection and maintenance. Structural BMPs associated with PDPs designated high priority by the Authority will not be eligible for self-certification and will be inspected by FMD directly. Tenants who have been authorized by EAD to perform their own inspections and maintenance of structural BMPs are required to submit documentation and self-certification that inspection and maintenance were performed prior to October 1.

7.5 Inspection and Maintenance Frequency

How often is a project owner required to inspect and maintain permanent structural BMPs on their facility?

The minimum inspection and maintenance frequency is annually and must be reported annually. However, actual maintenance needs are site specific, and maintenance may be needed more frequently than annually. The need for maintenance depends on the amount and quality of runoff delivered to the structural BMP. Maintenance must be performed whenever needed, based on maintenance indicators presented in Section 7.7. The optimum maintenance frequency is each time the maintenance threshold for removal of materials (sediment, trash, debris, or overgrown vegetation) is met. If this maintenance threshold has been exceeded by the time the structural BMP is inspected, the BMP has been operating at reduced capacity. This would mean it is necessary to inspect and maintain the structural BMP more frequently. Routine maintenance will also help avoid more costly rehabilitative maintenance to repair damages that may occur when BMPs have not been adequately maintained on a routine basis.

During the first year of normal operation of a structural BMP (i.e., when the project is fully built out and occupied), inspection by the project owner's representative is recommended at least once prior to August 31 and then monthly from September through May of each year. Inspection during a storm event is also recommended. It is during and after a rain event that one can determine whether the components of the BMP are functioning properly. After the initial period of frequent inspections, the minimum inspection and maintenance frequency can be determined on the basis of the results of the first year inspections.

The EAD may require an increased inspection frequency by the project owner in cases where an annual inspection has proven insufficient based upon documentation provided to EAD or independent inspections conducted by EAD.

7.6 Measures to Control Maintenance Costs

Because structural BMPs must be maintained into perpetuity, it is essential to include measures to control maintenance costs.

The most effective way to reduce maintenance of structural BMPs is to prevent or reduce pollutants generated onsite and delivered to the structural BMP by implementation of source control and site design BMPs onsite, as required and described in Chapter 4 of this Manual. Second, vegetated BMPs should be placed properly to reduce the potential to come under the jurisdiction of one or more resource agencies that could require permits and costly mitigation to perform maintenance of the structural BMP. Third, the structural BMP should include design features to facilitate maintenance, as listed below.

Considerations for placement of vegetated BMPs:

- Locate structural BMPs outside of floodway, floodplain, and other jurisdictional areas.
- Avoid direct connection to a natural surface water body.
- Discuss the location of the structural BMP with a wetland biologist to avoid placing a structural BMP in a location where it could become jurisdictional or be connected to a jurisdictional area.

Measures to facilitate collection of the trapped pollutants:

- Design a forebay to trap gross pollutants in a contained area that is readily accessible for maintenance. A forebay may be a dedicated area at the inlet entrance to an infiltration BMP, biofiltration BMP, or detention basin, or may be a gross pollutant separator installed in the storm drain system that drains to the primary structural BMP.

Measures to access the structural BMP:

- The BMP must be accessible to equipment needed for maintenance. Access requirements for maintenance will vary with the type of facility selected.
- Infiltration BMPs, biofiltration BMPs, and most above-ground detention basins and sand filters will typically require routine landscape maintenance using the same equipment that is used for general landscape maintenance. At times these BMPs may require excavation of clogged media (e.g., bioretention soil media, or sand for the sand filter), and should be accessible to appropriate equipment for excavation and removal/replacement of media.
- Above-ground detention basins should include access ramps for trucks to enter the basin to bring equipment and to remove materials.
- Underground BMPs such as detention vaults, media filters, or gross pollutant separators used as forebays to other BMPs typically require access for a vactor truck to remove materials. Proprietary BMPs such as media filters or gross pollutant separators may require access by a forklift or other truck for delivery and removal of media cartridges or other internal components. Access requirements must be verified with the manufacturer of proprietary BMPs.
- Vactor trucks are large, heavy, and difficult to maneuver. Structural BMPs that are maintained by vactor truck must include a level pad adjacent to the structural BMP, preferably with no vegetation or irrigation system (otherwise vegetation or irrigation system may be destroyed by the vactor truck).
- The sump area of a structural BMP should not exceed 20 feet in depth because of the loss of efficiency of a vactor truck. The water removal rate is three to four times longer when the depth is greater than 20 feet. Deep structures may require additional equipment (stronger vactor trucks, ladders, more vactor pipe segments).
- All manhole access points to underground structural BMPs must include a ladder or steps.

Measures to facilitate inspection of the structural BMP

- Structural BMPs shall include inspection ports for observing all underground components that require inspection and maintenance.
- Silt level posts or other markings shall be included in all BMP components that will trap and store sediment, trash, and/or debris, so that the inspector may determine how full the BMP is, and the maintenance personnel may determine where the bottom of the BMP is. Posts or other markings shall be indicated and described on structural BMP plans.
- Vegetation requirements, including plant type, coverage, and minimum height when applicable, shall be provided on the structural BMP and/or landscaping plans as appropriate or as required by Environmental Affairs.
- Signage indicating the location and boundary of the structural BMP is recommended.

When designing a structural BMP, the engineer should review the typical structural BMP maintenance actions listed in Section 7.7 to determine the potential maintenance equipment and access needs.

When selecting permanent structural BMPs for a project, the engineer and project owner should consider the long-term cost of maintenance and what type of maintenance contracts a future project owner will need to manage. The types of materials used (e.g., proprietary vs. non-proprietary parts), equipment used (e.g., landscape equipment vs. vactor truck), and actions/labor expected in the maintenance process and required qualifications of maintenance personnel (e.g., confined space entry) affect the cost of long-term O&M of the structural BMPs presented in the Manual.

7.7 Maintenance Indicators and Actions for Structural BMPs

This section presents typical maintenance indicators and expected maintenance actions (routine and corrective) for typical structural BMPs.

There are many different variations of structural BMPs, and structural BMPs may include multiple components. For the purpose of maintenance, the structural BMPs have been grouped into four categories on the basis of common maintenance requirements:

- Vegetated infiltration or filtration BMPs
- Non-vegetated infiltration BMPs
- Non-vegetated filtration BMPs
- Detention BMPs

The project civil engineer is responsible for determining which categories are applicable based on the components of the structural BMP, and for identifying the applicable maintenance indicators from within the category. Maintenance indicators and actions shall be shown on the construction plans and in the project-specific O&M Plan.

During inspection, the inspector checks the maintenance indicators. If one or more thresholds are met or exceeded, maintenance must be performed to ensure the structural BMP will function as designed during the next storm event.

7.7.1 Maintenance of Vegetated Infiltration or Filtration BMPs

"Vegetated infiltration or filtration BMPs" are BMPs that include vegetation as a component of the BMP. Applicable fact sheets may include INF-2 (bioretention), PR-1 (biofiltration with partial retention), BF-1 (biofiltration), or FT-1 (vegetated swale). The vegetated BMP may or may not include amended soils, subsurface gravel layer, underdrains, and/or impermeable liners. The project civil engineer is responsible for determining which maintenance indicators and actions shown below in Table 7-2 are applicable based on the components of the structural BMP.

TABLE 7-2. Maintenance Indicators and Actions for Vegetated BMPs

Typical Maintenance Indicator(s) for Vegetated BMPs	Maintenance Actions
Accumulation of sediment, litter, or debris	Remove and properly dispose of accumulated materials, without damage to the vegetation.
Poor vegetation establishment	Re-seed, re-plant, or re-establish vegetation per original plans.
Overgrown vegetation	Mow or trim as appropriate, but not less than the design height of the vegetation per original plans when applicable (e.g., a vegetated swale may require a minimum vegetation height).
Erosion due to concentrated irrigation flow	Repair/re-seed/re-plant eroded areas and adjust the irrigation system.
Erosion due to concentrated storm water runoff flow	Repair/re-seed/re-plant eroded areas, and make appropriate corrective measures such as adding erosion control blankets, adding stone at flow entry points, or performing minor re-grading to restore proper drainage according to the original plan. If the issue is not corrected by restoring the BMP to the original plan and grade, the engineer shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.
Standing water in vegetated swales	Make appropriate corrective measures such as adjusting the irrigation system, removing obstructions of debris or invasive vegetation, loosening or replacing top soil to allow for better infiltration, or performing minor re-grading for proper drainage. If the issue is not corrected by restoring the BMP to the original plan and grade, the engineer shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.
Standing water in bioretention, biofiltration with partial retention, or biofiltration areas, or flow-through planter boxes for longer than 96 hours following a storm event*	Make appropriate corrective measures such as adjusting the irrigation system, removing obstructions of debris or invasive vegetation, clearing underdrains (where applicable), or repairing/replacing clogged or compacted soils.
Obstructed inlet or outlet structure	Clear obstructions.
Damage to structural components such as weirs, inlet or outlet structures	Repair or replace as applicable.
*These BMPs typically include a surface ponding layer as part of their function which may take 96 hours to drain following a storm event.	

7.7.2 Maintenance of Non-Vegetated Infiltration BMPs

"Non-vegetated infiltration BMPs" are BMPs that store storm water runoff until it infiltrates into the ground, and do not include vegetation as a component of the BMP (refer to the "vegetated BMPs" category for infiltration BMPs that include vegetation). Non-vegetated infiltration BMPs generally include non-vegetated infiltration trenches and infiltration basins, dry wells, underground infiltration galleries, and permeable pavement with underground infiltration gallery. Applicable fact sheets may include INF-1 (infiltration basin) or INF-3 (permeable pavement). The non-vegetated infiltration BMP may or may not include a pre-treatment device, and may or may not include above-ground storage of runoff. The project civil engineer is responsible for determining which maintenance indicators and actions shown below in Table 7-3 are applicable based on the components of the structural BMP.

TABLE 7-3. Maintenance Indicators and Actions for Non-Vegetated Infiltration BMPs

Typical Maintenance Indicator(s) for Non-Vegetated Infiltration BMPs	Maintenance Actions
Accumulation of sediment, litter, or debris in infiltration basin or pre-treatment device, or on permeable pavement surface	Remove and properly dispose of accumulated materials.
Standing water in infiltration basin without subsurface infiltration gallery for longer than 96 hours following a storm event	Remove and replace clogged surface soils.
Standing water in subsurface infiltration gallery for longer than 96 hours following a storm event	Investigate the reason that infiltration is not occurring. If feasible, corrective action shall be taken to restore infiltration (e.g., flush fine sediment or remove and replace clogged soils). BMP may require retrofit if infiltration cannot be restored. If retrofit is necessary, the engineer shall be contacted prior to any repairs or reconstruction.
Standing water in permeable paving area	Flush fine sediment from paving and subsurface gravel. Provide routine vacuuming of permeable paving areas to prevent clogging.
Damage to permeable paving surface	Repair or replace damaged surface as appropriate.
Note: When inspection or maintenance indicates sediment is accumulating in an infiltration BMP, the DMA draining to the infiltration BMP should be examined to determine the source of the sediment, and corrective measures should be made as applicable to minimize the sediment supply.	

7.7.3 Maintenance of Non-Vegetated Filtration BMPs

"Non-vegetated filtration BMPs" include media filters (FT-2) and sand filters (FT-3). These BMPs function by passing runoff through the media to remove pollutants. The project civil engineer is responsible for determining which maintenance indicators and actions shown below in Table 7-4 are applicable based on the components of the structural BMP.

TABLE 7-4. Maintenance Indicators and Actions for Filtration BMPs

Typical Maintenance Indicator(s) for Filtration BMPs	Maintenance Actions
Accumulation of sediment, litter, or debris	Remove and properly dispose of accumulated materials.
Obstructed inlet or outlet structure	Clear obstructions.
Clogged filter media	Remove and properly dispose of filter media, and replace with fresh media.
Damage to components of the filtration system	Repair or replace as applicable.
Note: For proprietary media filters, refer to the manufacturer's maintenance guide.	

7.7.4 Maintenance of Detention BMPs

"Detention BMPs" include basins, cisterns, vaults, and underground galleries that are primarily designed to store runoff for controlled release to downstream systems. For the purpose of the maintenance discussion, this category does not include an infiltration component (refer to "vegetated infiltration or filtration BMPs" or "non-vegetated infiltration BMPs" above). Applicable fact sheets may include HU-1 (cistern) or FT-4 (extended detention basin). There are many possible configurations of above ground and underground detention BMPs, including both proprietary and non-proprietary systems. The project civil engineer is responsible for determining which maintenance indicators and actions shown below in Table 7-5 are applicable based on the components of the structural BMP.

TABLE 7-5. Maintenance Indicators and Actions for Detention BMPs

Typical Maintenance Indicator(s) for Detention Basins	Maintenance Actions
Poor vegetation establishment	Re-seed/re-establish vegetation.
Overgrown vegetation	Mow or trim as appropriate.
Erosion due to concentrated irrigation flow	Repair/re-seed/re-plant eroded areas and adjust the irrigation system.
Erosion due to concentrated storm water runoff flow	Repair/re-seed/re-plant eroded areas and make appropriate corrective measures such as adding erosion control blankets, adding stone at flow entry points, or re-grading where necessary.
Accumulation of sediment, litter, or debris	Remove and properly dispose of accumulated materials.
Standing water	Make appropriate corrective measures such as adjusting the irrigation system, removing obstructions of debris or invasive vegetation, or performing minor re-grading for proper drainage.
Obstructed inlet or outlet structure	Clear obstructions.
Damage to structural components such as weirs, or inlet or outlet structures	Repair or replace as applicable.

Chapter

8

Submittal Requirements

It is necessary for EAD to review project plans for compliance with applicable requirements of this Manual and the MS4 Permit.

The review process must verify that storm water management objectives were considered in the project planning process and that opportunities to incorporate BMPs have been identified. The review process must confirm that the site plan, landscape plan, and project storm water documents are congruent. Therefore, the Authority requires a submittal documenting the storm water management design for every project that is subject to the requirements of this Manual. Herein the submittal is called a "SWQMP." A complete and thorough project submittal will facilitate and expedite the review and approval, and may result in fewer submittals by the applicant. The sections below discuss submittal requirements. In all cases, the project applicant must provide sufficient documentation to demonstrate that applicable requirements of this Manual and the MS4 Permit will be met.

8.1 Submittal Requirement for Standard Projects

8.1.1 Standard Project SWQMP

For Standard Projects, the project submittal shall include a "Standard Project SWQMP."

The Standard Project SWQMP is a compilation of checklists that document that all permanent source control and site design BMPs have been considered for the project and implemented where feasible. All applicable features shall be shown on site plans and landscaping plans. The Standard Project SWQMP shall consist of the following forms and/or checklists included in Appendix A.3 of this Manual:

- Form H-1: Applicability of Permanent BMP Requirements
- Form H-2: Project Type Determination (Standard Project or PDP)
- Form H-3A: Site Information for Standard Projects
- Form H-4: Source Control BMP Checklist
- Form H-5: Site Design BMP Checklist

The Standard Project SWQMP shall also include copies of the relevant plan sheets showing source control and site design BMPs.

8.2 Submittal Requirements for PDPs

8.2.1 PDP SWQMP

For PDPs, the project submittal shall include a "PDP SWQMP."

The PDP SWQMP shall document that all permanent source control and site design BMPs have been considered for the project and implemented where feasible; document the planning process and the decisions that led to the selection of structural BMPs; provide the calculations for design of structural BMPs to demonstrate that applicable performance standards are met by the structural BMP design; identify O&M requirements of the selected structural BMPs; and identify the maintenance mechanism (see Sections 7.2 and 7.3) for long-term O&M of structural BMPs. PDPs shall use the PDP SWQMP Template provided in Appendix A.4, which will include forms and/or checklists project intake and source control BMP documentation as well as checklists for documentation of pollutant control structural BMP design. The PDP SWQMP shall include copies of the relevant plan sheets showing site design, source control, and structural BMPs, and structural BMP maintenance requirements.

A PDP SWQMP must be provided with the first submittal of a project application.

Storm water requirements will directly affect the layout of the project. Storm water requirements must be considered from the initial project planning or in project concept stage, and will be reviewed upon each submittal, beginning with the first submittal. The process from initial project application through approval of the project plans often includes design changes to the site layout and features. Changes may be driven by storm water management requirements or other site requirements. Each time the site layout is adjusted, whether the adjustment is directly due to storm water management requirements identified during EAD review of the storm water submittal, or is driven by other site requirements, the storm water management design must be revisited to ensure that the revised project layout and features meet the requirements of this Manual and the MS4 Permit. An updated PDP SWQMP must be provided with each submittal of revised project plans. The updated PDP SWQMP should include documentation of changes to the site layout and features, and reasons for the changes. In the event that other site requirements identified during plan review render certain proposed storm water features infeasible (e.g., if fire department access requirements were identified that precluded use of certain surfaces or landscaping features that had been proposed), this must be documented as part of the decisions that led to the development of the final storm water management design.

Note that additional information may be required at the discretion of the reviewer based on the nature of the project but as a minimum the information listed in the submittal template in Appendix A.4 shall be included in the PDP SWQMP.

The Authority requires that the SWQMP be certified by an architect, landscape architect, or civil engineer licensed to practice in the State of California.

The certification should state: "The selection, sizing, and preliminary design of storm water treatment and other control measures in this plan meet the requirements of Regional Water Quality Control Board Order R9-2013-0001 and subsequent amendments."

8.2.1.1 PDP O&M Plan

While the PDP SWQMP must include general O&M requirements for structural BMPs, the PDP SWQMP may not be the final O&M Plan.

The O&M requirements documented in the PDP SWQMP must be sufficient to show that O&M requirements have been considered in the project planning and design. However, a final O&M Plan should reflect actual constructed structural BMPs to be maintained. Photographs and as-built plans for the constructed structural BMPs should be included. Local jurisdictions may have varying requirements for a final O&M Plan. Requirements may also vary depending on whether long term O&M will be furnished by a public agency or private entity. See Section 8.2.3 for project closeout procedures, including Authority requirements for final O&M Plans, and Section 8.2.4 for additional requirements for tenant O&M of structural BMPs.

8.2.2 Requirements for Construction Plans

8.2.2.1 BMP Identification and Display on Construction Plans

Plans for construction of the project (grading plans, improvement plans, and landscaping plans, as applicable) must show all permanent site design, source control, and structural BMPs, and must be congruent with the PDP SWQMP.

When construction plans are submitted for EAD review and approval, Department staff will compare that submittal with the earlier SWQMP Submittal. Preparation and submittal of a Construction Plan SWQMP Checklist for the project will facilitate comparisons and likely speed review of the project.

TABLE 8-1. Format for Construction Plans SWQMP Checklist

SWQMP Page #	BMP Description	See Plan Sheet #s

Here's how:

1) Create a table similar to Table 8-1. Number and list each measure or BMP specified in the SWQMP submittal in Columns 1 and 2 of the table. Leave Column 3 blank. Incorporate the table into the SWQMP Submittal.
2) When submitting construction plans, duplicate the table (by photocopy or electronically). Now fill in Column 3, identifying the plan sheets where the BMPs are shown. List all plan sheets on which the BMP appears. Submit the updated table with the construction plans.

Note that the updated table—or Construction Plan SWQMP Checklist—is only a reference tool to facilitate comparison of the construction plans to the SWQMP. EAD can advise applicants about the process required to propose changes to the approved SWQMP.

8.2.2.2 Structural BMP Maintenance Information on Construction Plans

Plans for construction of the project must provide sufficient information to describe maintenance requirements (thresholds and actions) for structural BMPs such that in the event all other separate O&M documents were lost, a new party studying plans for the project could identify the structural BMPs and identify the required maintenance actions based on the plans.

For the purpose of long-term O&M, the project plans must identify the following:

- Instruction for how to access the structural BMP to inspect and perform maintenance;
- Features that are provided to facilitate inspection (e.g., observation ports, cleanouts, silt posts, or other features that allow the inspector to view necessary components of the structural BMP and compare to maintenance thresholds);
- Manufacturer and part number for proprietary parts;
- Maintenance thresholds specific to the structural BMP, with a location-specific frame of reference (e.g., level of accumulated materials that triggers removal of the materials, to be identified on the basis of viewing marks on silt posts or measured with a survey rod with respect to a fixed benchmark within the BMP);
- Recommended equipment to perform maintenance; and
- When applicable, necessary special training or certification requirements for inspection and maintenance personnel such as confined space entry or hazardous waste management.

8.2.3 Design Changes During Construction and Project Closeout Procedures

8.2.3.1 Design Changes During Construction

Prior to occupancy and/or intended use of any portion of a PDP, the site must be in compliance with the requirements of this Manual and the MS4 Permit.

During construction, any changes that affect the design of storm water management features must be reviewed and approved by EAD before work can proceed. Approved documents and additional design may be required prior to implementation of design changes during construction. This might include changes to drainage patterns that occurred on the basis of actual site grading and construction of storm water conveyance structures, or substitutions to storm water management features. Just as during the design phase, when there are changes to the site layout and features, the storm water management design must be revisited to ensure that the revised project layout and features meet the requirements of this Manual and the MS4 Permit.

8.2.3.2 Certification of Constructed BMPs

As part of the "Structural BMP Approval and Verification Process" required by the MS4 Permit, each structural BMP must be inspected to verify that it has been constructed and is operating in compliance with all of its specifications, plans, permits, ordinances, and the requirements of the MS4 Permit.

Because some portions of the structural BMP will not be readily visible after completion of construction (e.g., subsurface layers), EAD will require inspections during construction, photographs taken during construction, and/or other certification that the BMP has been constructed in conformance with the approved plans.

Prior to occupancy of each PDP, EAD, together with a project proponent engineer, will inspect each structural BMP to verify that it has been constructed in compliance with all specifications, plans, permits, and ordinances, and records verification and approval of the structural BMPs in the Authority's Web-based database. Initial BMP verification inspections are separate from the regular operation and maintenance inspections for each BMP. EAD may require forms, As-Builts, or other documentation be submitted prior to the inspection to facilitate the structural BMP inspection.

8.2.3.3 Final O&M Plan

Upon completion of project construction, the local agency may require a final O&M Plan to be submitted.

A final O&M Plan reflects project-specific constructed structural BMPs with project-specific drawings, photographs, and maps, and identifies specific maintenance requirements and actions for the constructed structural BMPs. Specific requirements and review procedures for this process may vary based on the planned maintenance entity (Authority, tenant, or other).

8.2.4 Additional Requirements for Tenant O&M

This section discusses structural BMPs associated with tenant projects to be operated and maintained by tenants as part of their lease agreement.

8.2.4.1 O&M Agreements for Tenant Structural BMP Maintenance

For structural BMPs associated with tenant projects, the Authority requires execution of an O&M Agreement through conditions in the tenant lease.

An O&M Agreement will be incorporated in the tenant lease and signed by the Authority and the tenant, committing the tenant to maintain the permanent structural BMPs. The O&M Agreement may provide that, if the tenant fails to maintain the storm water facilities, the Authority may restore the storm water facilities to operable condition, and obtain reimbursement, including administrative costs, from the tenant.

This page intentionally left blank

Bibliography

ASTM International.. 2009. ASTM Standard D3385-09. Retrieved from http://www.astm.org/Standards/D3385.htm

Breuer, L., Eckhardt, K, and Frede, H. 2003. Plant Parameter Values for Models in Temperate Climates. Ecological Modelling. 169:237-293. November.

California Department of Water Resources. 1947. Evaporation from Water Surfaces in California, A Summary of Pan Records and Coefficients, 1881 to 1946. Bulletin No. 54. California State Printing Office.

California Department of Water Resources. 2012. California Irrigation Management Information System Reference Evapotranspiration Zones.

Caltrans. 1986. Method for Determining the Percolation Rate of Soil Using a 6-inch-diameter Test Hole. California Test 750. http://www.dot.ca.gov/hq/esc/sdsee/wwe/documents/Test_750.pdf

Cedergren, H.R. 1997. Seepage, drainage, and flow nets, third ed. John Wiley and Sons, Inc., New York.

Cities and County of Riverside. 2012. Water Quality Management Plan for the Santa Margarita Region of Riverside County.

City of Los Angeles. 2011. Development Best Management Practices Handbook. Low Impact Development Manual.

City of Portland. 2008. Storm water Management Manual

City of San Diego. 2011. Guidelines for Geotechnical Reports.

City of San Diego. 2011. San Diego Low Impact Development Design Manual.

City of San Diego. 2012. Storm Water Standards.

City of Santa Barbara. 2013. Storm Water BMP Guidance Manual.

Clear Creek Solutions, Inc. 2012. San Diego Hydrology Model User Manual.

County of Los Angeles Department of Public Works. 2014. Low Impact Development, Standards Manual.

County of Orange. 2011. Model Water Quality Management Plan (Model WQMP).

County of Orange. 2011. Technical Guidance Document for the Preparation of Conceptual/Preliminary and/or Project Water Quality Management Plans (WQMPs).

County of San Bernardino. 1992. Suitability of Lots and Soils for Use of Leachlines or Seepage Pits, Soil Percolation (PERC) Test Report Standards, Onsite Waste Water Disposal System, August 1992.

County of San Diego. 2007. Low Impact Development Handbook: Stormwater Management Strategies.

County of San Diego. 2011. Final Hydromodification Management Plan

County of San Diego. 2012. County of San Diego SUSMP: Standard Urban Stormwater Mitigation Plan Requirements for Development Applications.

County of San Diego. 2014. Low Impact Development Handbook: Stormwater Management Strategies.

County of San Diego. 2003. Stormwater Standards Manual.

County of Ventura. 2011. Ventura County Technical Guidance Manual for Stormwater Quality Control Measures.

Darcy, H, 1856. Les fontaines publiques de la Ville de Dijon (The public fountains of the City of Dijon). Trans. Patricia Bobeck. Paris: Dalmont. (Kendall/Hunt, 2004) 506 p

Double Ring Infiltrometer Test (ASTM 3385)-ASTM International. 2009.

Emerson, C. 2008. Evaluation of Infiltration Practices as a Means to Control Stormwater Runoff. Civil and Environmental Engineering. Villanova University.

Emerson, C.H. 2008. Evaluation of Infiltration Practices as a Means to Control Stormwater Runoff. Doctoral dissertation, Villanova University. May 2008.

Galli, J. 1992. Analysis of urban stormwater BMP performance and longevity in Prince George's County, Maryland. Metropolitan Washington Council of Governments, Washington, D.C.

Gobel, P. et al. 2004. Near-Natural Stormwater Management and its Effects on the Water Budget and Groundwater Surface in Urban Areas Taking Account of the Hydrogeological Conditions. Journal of Hydrology 299, 267-283.

Gulliver, J., Erickson, A., and Weiss, P. 2010. Optimizing Stormwater Treatment Practices: A Handbook of Assessment and Maintenance.

Hazen, A. 1892. Some Physical Properties of Sands And Gravels, With Special Reference To Their Use In Filtration. 24th Annual Rep., Massachusetts State Board of Health, Pub. Doc. No. 34, 539-556.

Hazen, A. 1911. Discussion of Dams On Sand Foundations' by A.C. Koenig. Trans. Am. Soc. Civ. Eng., 73, 199-203

Hazen, A., 1892. Some Physical Properties of Sands and Gravels, With Special Reference to their Use in Filtration. 24th Annual Rep., Massachusetts State Board of Health, Pub. Doc. No. 34, 539-556.

Hazen, A., 1911. Discussion of Dams on Sand Foundations' by A.C. Koenig. Trans. Am. Soc. Civ. Eng., 73, 199-203

King County Department of Natural Resources and Parks. 2009. King County, Washington Surface Water Design Manual. Retrieved from http://your.kingcounty.gov/dnrp/library/water-and-land/stormwater/surface-water-design-manual/SWDM-2009.pdf

Lindsey, G., L. Roberts, and W. Page. 1991. Storm Water Management Infiltration. Maryland Department of the Environment, Sediment and Storm Water Administration.

Lindsey, P. and Bassuk, N. 1991. Specifying Soil Volumes to Meet the Water Needs of Mature Urban Street Trees and Trees in Containers. Journal of Arboriculture 17(6): 141-149.

Minnesota Pollution Control Agency (MPCA). (n.d.). Minnesota Stormwater Manual. Retrieved October 2014 from: http://stormwater.pca.state.mn.us/index.php/Calculating_credits_for_tree_trenches_and_tree_boxes

Orange County Watersheds Protection Program. 2011. Project-Specific Alternatives to the Interim Sizing Tool.

Philips C. and W. Kitch 2011. A review of methods for characterization of site infiltration with design recommendations. California State Polytechnic University-Pomona. http://www.csupomona.edu/~wakitch/arts/Philips_&_Kitch_2011.pdf

Phillips, E., and Kitch, W. 2011. A Review of Methods for Characterization of Site Infiltration with Design Recommendations. Journal of the Nevada Water Resources Association, Summer 2011, Vol. 6, No. 1, pp. 29-46.

Pitt, R., Chen, S., Clark, S., Lantrip, J., and C. Ong. 2008. Compaction's Impacts on Urban Stormwater Infiltration, J. Irr. and Drainage Eng., January 2008.

Pitt, R., Chen, S., Clark, S., Swenson, J., and Ong, C. 2008. "Compaction's Impacts on Urban Storm-Water Infiltration." J. Irrig. Drain Eng. 134, SPECIAL ISSUE: Urban Storm-Water Management, 652–658.

Riverside County. 2011. Riverside County - Low Impact Development BMP Design Handbook – Appendix A – Infiltration Testing http://rcflood.org/downloads/NPDES/Documents/LIDManual/Appendix%20A_Infiltration_Testing.pdf

Riverside County Copermittees. 2014. Santa Margarita Region Hydromodification Management Plan.

Riverside County Flood Control and Water Conservation District. 2011. Design Handbook for Low Impact Development Best Management Practices.

Riverside County Percolation Test (2011), California Test 750 (1986), San Bernardino County Percolation Test (1992); USEPA Falling Head Test (1980).

Rossman, Lewis A. 2010. Storm Water Management Model User's Manual Version 5.0. EPA/600/R-05/040.

San Diego County Copermittees. 2002. Model Standard Urban Storm Water Mitigation Plan for San Diego County, Port of San Diego, and Cities in San Diego County.

San Diego County Copermittees, 2011. Countywide Model SUSMP

San Diego County Copermittees. 2012. San Diego BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology

San Diego County Copermittees. 2014. San Diego County Regional Watershed Management Area Analysis

San Diego County Copermittees. 2008. Countywide Model SUSMP.

San Diego County Regional Airport Authority. 2011. San Diego County Regional Airport Authority SUSMP: Standard Urban Stormwater Mitigation Plan Requirements for Development Applications.

San Diego County Regional Airport Authority. 2015. SAN Storm Water Management Plan.

San Diego Regional Copermittees. 2015. Water Quality Equivalency Guidance Document: Region 9. http://www.projectcleanwater.org/images/stories/Docs/WQE/Final%20Water%20Quality%20Equivalency%20Guidance%20for%20Region%209%20-%20December%202015.pdf

SCCWRP. 2010. Hydromodification Screening Tools: Field Manual for Assessing Channel Susceptibility. Brian P. Bledsoe; Robert J. Hawley; Eric D. Stein; Derek B. Booth. Technical Report 606.

SCCWRP. 2012. Hydromodification Assessment and Management in California. Eric D. Stein; Felicia Federico; Derek B. Booth; Brian P. Bledsoe; Chris Bowles; Zan Rubin; G. Mathias Kondolf and Ashmita Sengupta. Technical Report 667.

Schwab, G., Fangmeier, D., Elliot, W., and Frevert, R. 1993. Soil and Water Conservation Engineering. Fourth Edition. John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Scurlock, J., Asner, G., and Gower, S. 2001. Global Leaf Area Index from Field Measurements, 1932-2000. Data set. Available on-line [http://www.daac.ornl.gov] from Oak Ridge National Laboratory Distributed Active Archive Center, Oak Ridge, Tennessee, U.S.A. doi:10.3334/ORNLDAAC/584.

U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Reclamation. 1990. "Procedure for Performing Field Permeability Testing by the Well Permeameter Method (USBR 7300-89)" in Earth Manual, Part 2. Materials Engineering Branch Research and Laboratory Services Division, Denver, Colorado.

U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Reclamation. 1993. Drainage Manual: A Water Resources Technical Publication. Retrieved from http://www.usbr.gov/pmts/wquality_land/DrainMan.pdf

United States Environmental Protection Agency. 2000. BASINS Technical Note 6 – Estimating Hydrology and Hydraulic Parameters for HSPF. EPA-823-R00-012.

Urban Drainage and Flood Control District, Denver, CO. (2010). Urban Storm Drainage Criteria Manual. Volume 3, Best Management Practices.

US Department of Interior Bureau of Reclamation. 1993. Drainage Design Manual.

USEPA. 1980. Onsite Wastewater Treatment and Disposal Systems (EPA No. 625/1-80-012). Retrieved from nepis.epa.gov/Exe/ZyPURL.cgi?Dockey=300043XO.txt

USEPA. 1999. Preliminary data summary of urban storm water best management practices. EPA-821-R-99-012, U. S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, D.C.

Washington Department of Ecology. 2012. Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington.

Washington State Department of Ecology. 2012. Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington - Volume 3: Hydrologic Analysis and Flow Control BMPs. Retrieved from https://fortress.wa.gov/ecy/publications/summarypages/1210030.html

This page intentionally left blank

SAN DIEGO
INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
LET'S GO.

San Diego County Regional Airport Authority BMP Design Manual

Appendices

February 2016

Prepared by:

amec foster wheeler

Geosyntec consultants

RICK ENGINEERING COMPANY

project clean water

This page intentionally left blank

Table of Contents

Appendix

A

Airport Authority Data and SWQMP Templates

Appendix A Airport Authority Data and SWQMP Templates

Appendix A contains tables, figures, and templates prepared to assist the project applicant in development of their SWQMP. The following sections are included:

- Section A.1 Environmentally Sensitive Areas (ESAs): This section contains a description of receiving water conditions applicable to storm water drainage from SAN. A table of 303(d) listings is provided.
- Section A.2 Authority Figures: This section contains the following figures to assist project applicants:
    - Figure A.2-1 San Diego International Airport Storm Drain System: Shows storm drain lines and drainage basins at SAN.
    - Figure A.2-2 San Diego International Airport Land Uses: Displays industrial, commercial, and Airport Authority land use areas at SAN.
    - Figure A.2-3 Receiving Waters and Conveyance Systems Exempt from Hydromodification Management Requirements: Displays the conveyance systems at SAN that are concrete lined to the point of discharge in San Diego Bay, and thus are exempt from hydromodification management requirements.
    - Figure A.2-4 Potential Critical Course Sediment Yield Areas: Displays Potential Critical Course Sediment Yield Areas in the San Diego Bay Watershed Management Area and at SAN.
- Section A.3 Standard SWQMP Template: This checklist was developed to assist the project applicant and plan reviewer of a Standard Project.
- Section A.4 PDP SWQMP Template: This checklist was developed to assist the project applicant and plan reviewer of a PDP. It includes an example Tenant Condition of Approval that may be used in a tenant lease agreement to assure storm water BMP maintenance, repair, and replacement for tenant projects.

A.1 Environmentally Sensitive Areas (ESAs)

The Project Applicant s hould consider receiving water quality during the project planning stage and during selection of Structural BMPs. Specifically, BMPs selected for PDPs should be designed to reduce concentrations of the most significant pollutants of concern.

Storm water f rom SAN drains to San Diego Bay, portions of which are currently 303(d) listed for impacts due to polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs), indicator bacteria, and metals, as well as benthic community effects and sediment toxicity. The 2010 303(d) list includes copper as a pollutant impacting water quality in the marinas along Harbor Island and PCBs as a pollutant impacting water quality throughout the San Diego Bay. Runoff from the airport commingles with runoff from other sources and discharges into the waters along Harbor Island. There are four Toxic Hot Spots in San Diego Bay, one of which (namely, the Downtown Anchorage, near the foot of Grape Street) is located near outfalls associated with runoff commingled from SAN and other sources. This area is currently the subject of an Investigative Order issued by the SDRWQCB. The San Diego Basin Plan designates San Diego Bay in its entirety as having rare beneficial use (RARE). Both the Sweetwater Marsh National Wildlife Refuge and the South Bay Unit of the San Diego National Wildlife Refuge are considered Areas of Special Biological Significance (ASBS), but neither is within close proximity to SAN.

Environmentally Sensitive Areas, as designated in the 2010 303(d) list, and their corresponding pollutants of concern are presented in Table A.1-1.

Table B.1-1: Environmentally Sensitive Areas (ESAs) and Pollutants of Concern

Receiving Water	Segment Name	Pollutant of Concern
San Diego Bay	San Diego Bay	PCBs (polychlorinated biphenyls)
	San Diego Bay Shoreline, at Harbor Island (West Basin)	Copper
	San Diego Bay Shoreline, at Harbor Island (East Basin)	Copper
	San Diego Bay Shoreline, at Spanish Landing	Indicator Bacteria
	San Diego Bay Shoreline, at Downtown Anchorage	Benthic Community Effects and Sediment Toxicity

A.2 Airport Authority Figures

This section contains Authority-specific figures to assist project applicants:

Figure A.2-1 shows existing storm drain lines and drainage basins at SAN. Project applicants may utilize this map to determine current drainage patterns during the preliminary project planning stage. It is the responsibility of the applicant, in consultation with EAD and FDD, to verify the location of the existing storm drain system as the project progresses (e.g., using GPS).

Figure A.2-2 displays the current land uses at SAN. Land uses can be broken down into tenant industrial areas such as terminals; Airport Authority industrial areas such as materials storage yards; commercial areas such as front -of house passenger walkways and concessions staging areas; and ground transportation areas such as parking lots. Appendix B of the Manual includes a table detailing the general pollutant categories associated with PDP land uses. An extended discussion of potential pollutants associated with land uses at SAN is provided in Sections 6 and 7 of the SAN SWMP.

Figure A.2-3 shows the existing storm drain lines and conveyance systems at SAN that are concrete lined and discharge directly to a waterbody that is exempt from hydromodification management requirements (San Diego Bay). As all conveyance systems at SAN are concrete lined and there are no natural streams or conveyances, all existing storm drain lines are exempt from hydromodification management requirements.

Figure A.2-4 displays the potential critical course sediment yield areas in the San Diego Bay Watershed Management Area, as determined during development of the Watershed Management Area Analysis (WMAA). There are no potential critical course sediment yield areas at SAN.

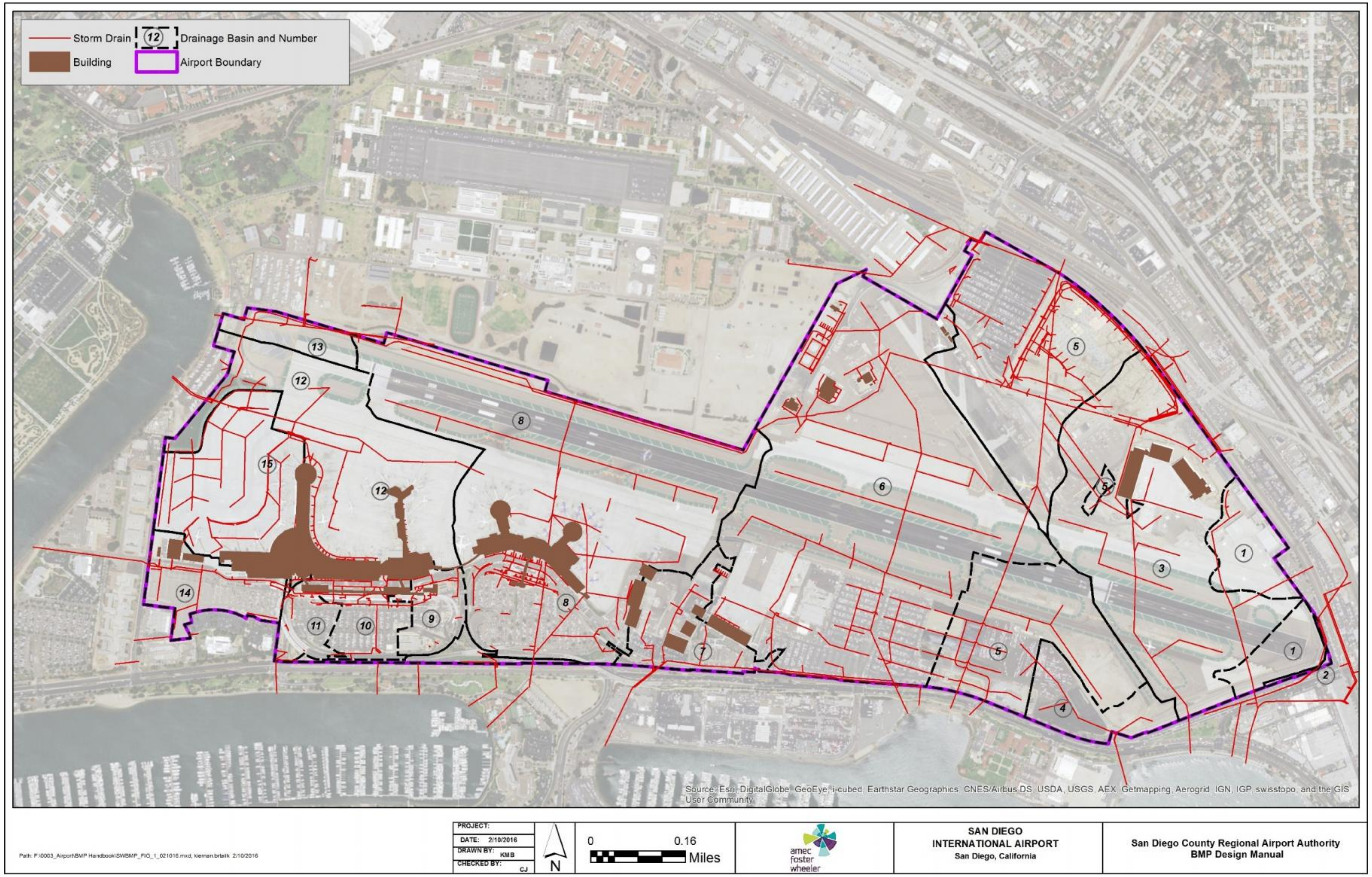


Figure A.2-1: San Diego International Airport Storm Drain System

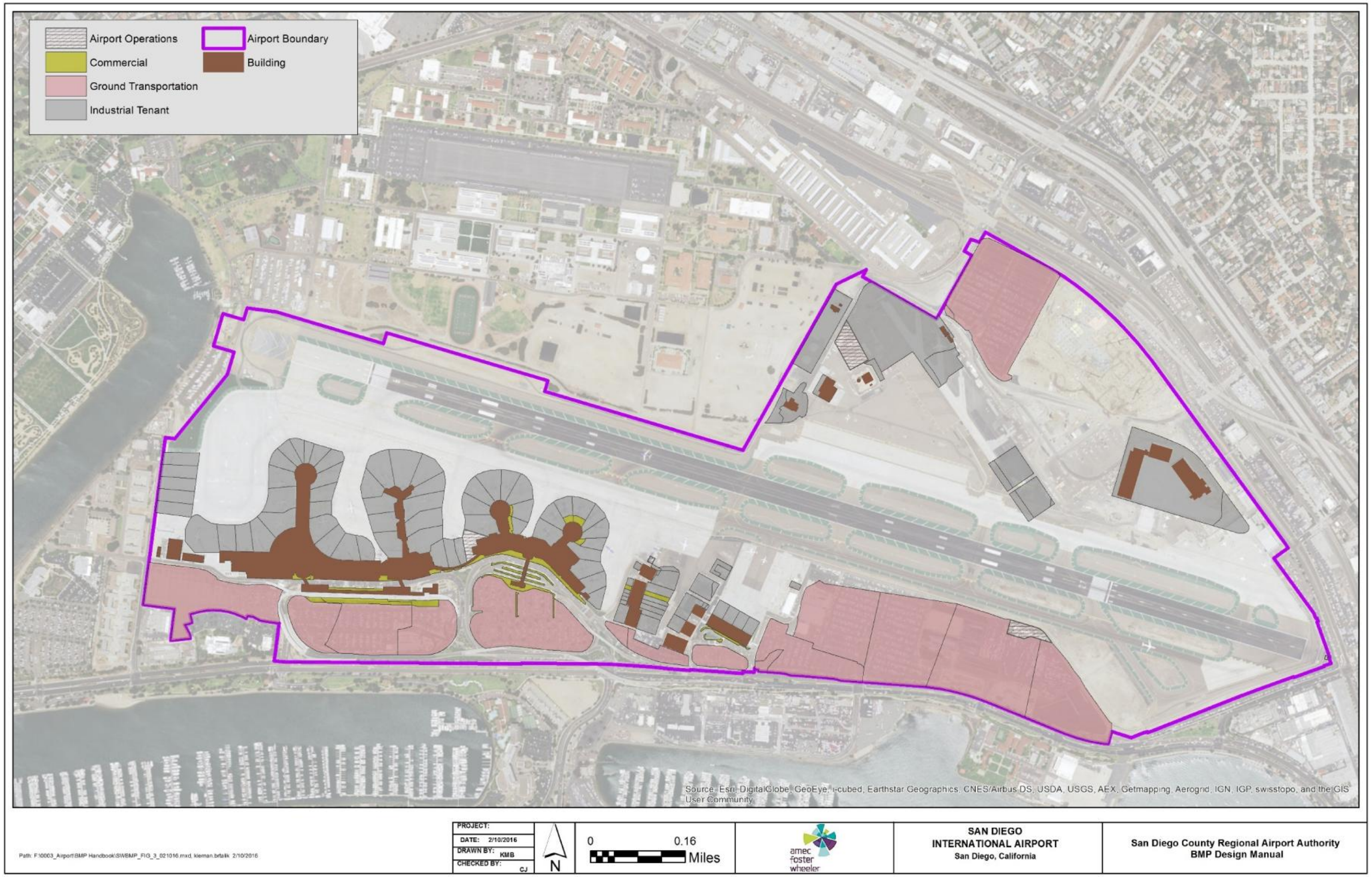


Figure A.2-2: San Diego International Airport Land Uses

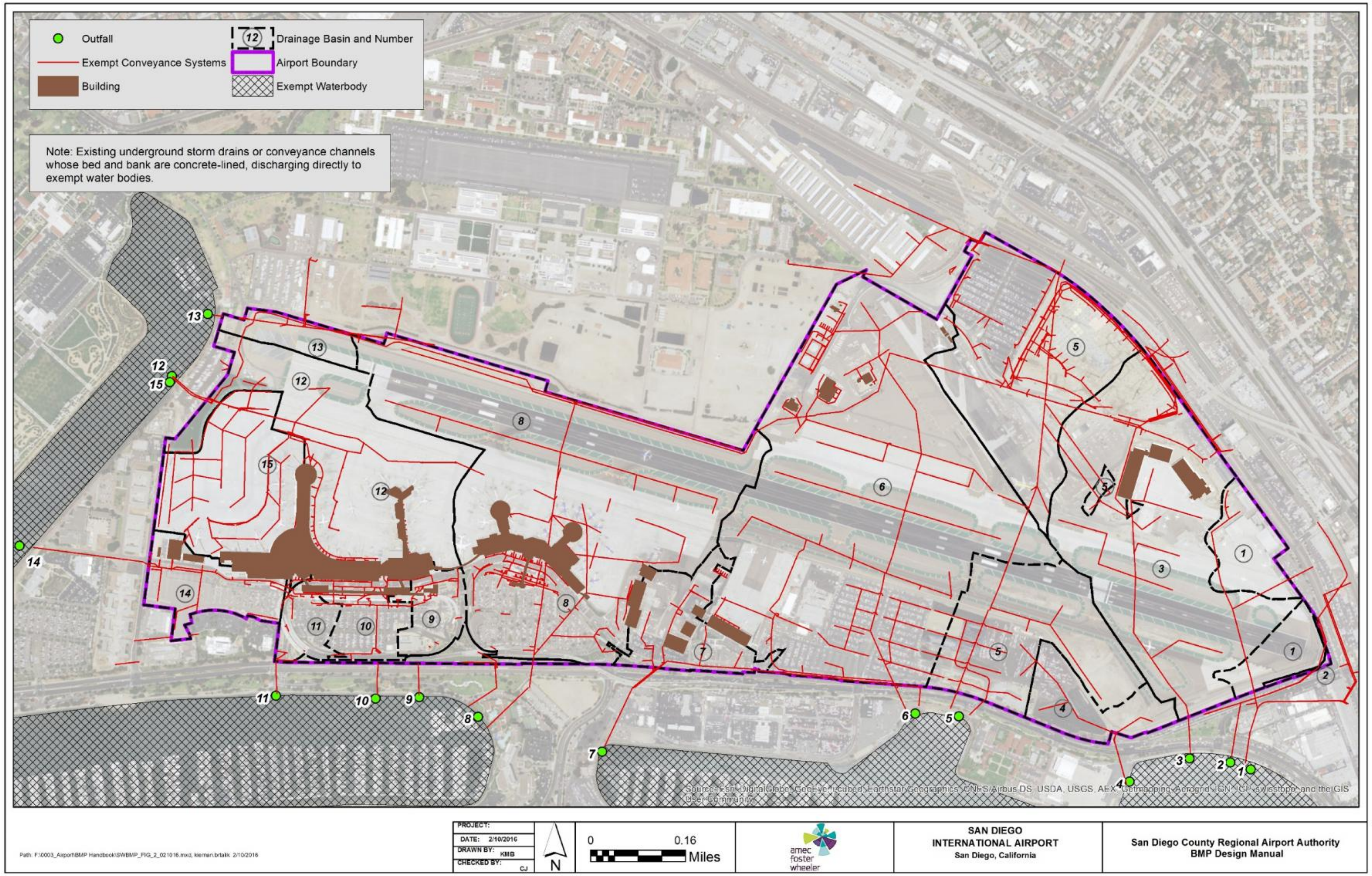


Figure A.2-3: Receiving Waters and Conveyance Systems Exempt from Hydromodification Management Requirements

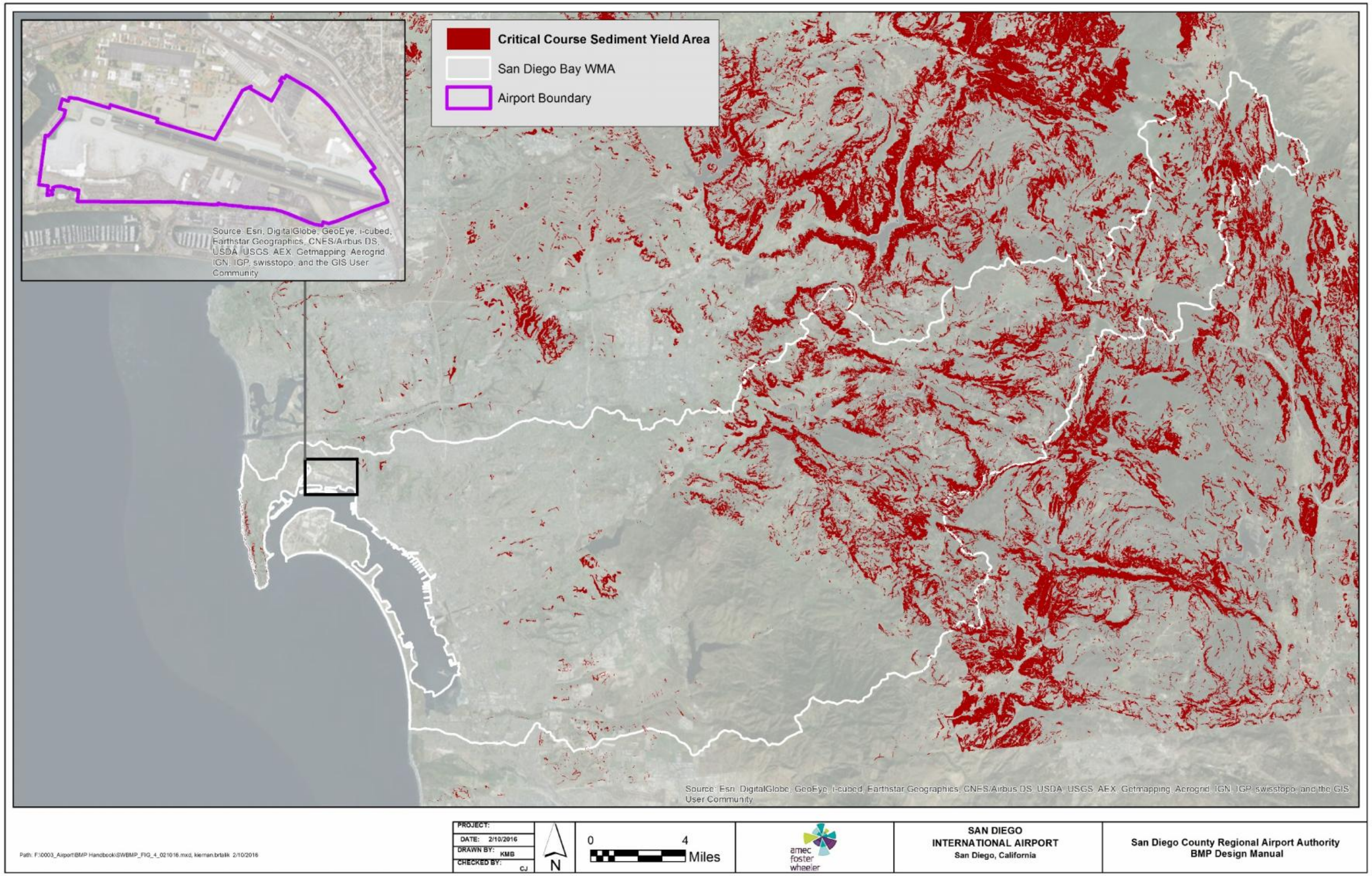


Figure A.2-4: Potential Critical Course Sediment Yield Areas

A.3 Standard SWQMP Template

The following template is provided for use by a Standard SWQMP applicant or reviewer. It is not intended to replace a thorough review of the Manual and all appendices.

SAN DIEGO COUNTY REGIONAL AIRPORT AUTHORITY
STANDARD (MINOR) DEVELOPMENT PROJECT STORM WATER QUALITY MANAGEMENT PLAN (SWQMP) FOR [INSERT PROJECT NAME] [INSERT PERMIT APPLICATION NUMBERS] [INSERT PROJECT ADDRESS] [INSERT PROJECT CITY, STATE ZIP CODE] ASSESSOR'S PARCEL NUMBER(S): [INSERT APN(S)]

PREPARED FOR:

[INSERT APPLICANT NAME]
[INSERT ADDRESS]
[INSERT CITY, STATE ZIP CODE]
[INSERT TELEPHONE NUMBER]

STANDARD PROJECT SWQMP PREPARED BY:

[INSERT COMPANY NAME]
[INSERT ADDRESS]
[INSERT CITY, STATE ZIP CODE]
[INSERT TELEPHONE NUMBER]

DATE OF SWQMP:
[INSERT MONTH, DAY, YEAR]

PLANS PREPARED BY:
[INSERT CIVIL ENGINEER OR ARCHITECT]
[INSERT ADDRESS]
[INSERT CITY, STATE ZIP CODE]
[INSERT TELEPHONE NUMBER]

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ACRONYMS

APN	Assessor's Parcel Number
BMP	Best Management Practice
HMP	Hydromodification Management Plan
HSG	Hydrologic Soil Group
MS4	Municipal Separate Storm Sewer System
N/A	Not Applicable
NRCS	Natural Resources Conservation Service
PDP	Priority Development Project
PE	Professional Engineer
SC	Source Control
SD	Site Design
SDRWQCB	San Diego Regional Water Quality Control Board
SIC	Standard Industrial Classification
SWQMP	Storm Water Quality Management Plan

STANDARD PROJECT SWQMP PROJECT OWNER'S CERTIFICATION PAGE

Project Name: [Insert Project Name]
Permit Application Number: [Insert Permit Application Number]

PROJECT OWNER'S CERTIFICATION

This Standard Project SWQMP has been prepared for [INSERT PROJECT OWNER'S COMPANY NAME] by [INSERT SWQMP PREPARER'S COMPANY NAME]. The Standard Project SWQMP is intended to comply with the Standard Project requirements of the San Diego County Regional Airport Authority BMP Design Manual, which is a design manual for compliance with local San Diego County Regional Airport Authority and regional MS4 Permit (California Regional Water Quality Control Board San Diego Region Order No. 2013-0001, as amended by Order No. R9-2015-0001 and R9-2015-0100) requirements for storm water management.

The undersigned, while it owns the subject property, is responsible for the implementation of the provisions of this plan. Once the undersigned transfers its interests in the property, its successor-in-interest shall bear the aforementioned responsibility to implement the best management practices (BMPs) described within this plan. A signed copy of this document shall be available on the subject property into perpetuity.

____
Project Owner's Signature

____
Print Name

____
Company

____
Date

SUBMITTAL RECORD

Use this Table to keep a record of submittals of this Standard Project SWQMP. Each time the Standard Project SWQMP is re-submitted, provide the date and status of the project. In column 4 summarize the changes that have been made or indicate if response to plan check comments is included. When applicable, insert response to plan check comments behind this page.

Submittal Number	Date	Project Status	Summary of Changes
1		Preliminary Design / Planning/ CEQA Final Design	Initial Submittal
2		Preliminary Design / Planning/ CEQA Final Design	
3		Preliminary Design / Planning/ CEQA Final Design	
4		Preliminary Design / Planning/ CEQA Final Design	

PROJECT VICINITY MAP

Project Name: [Insert Project Name]
Permit Application Number: [Insert Permit Application Number]

[Insert Project Vicinity Map here]

Applicability of Permanent, Post-Construction Storm Water BMP Requirements (Storm Water Intake Form for all Development Permit Applications)			Form H-1
Project Identification			
Project Name:			
Permit Application Number:			Date:
Determination of Requirements			
The purpose of this form is to identify permanent, post-construction requirements that apply to the project. This form serves as a short <u>summary</u> of applicable requirements, in some cases referencing separate forms that will serve as the backup for the determination of requirements. Answer each step below, starting with Step 1 and progressing through each step until reaching "Stop". Refer to the manual sections and/or separate forms referenced in each step below.			
Step	**Answer**	**Progression**	
Step 1: Is the project a "development project"? See Section 1.3 of the manual for guidance.	Yes	Go to Step 2.	
	No	Stop. Permanent BMP requirements do not apply. No SWQMP will be required. Provide discussion below.	
Discussion / justification if the project is <u>not</u> a "development project" (e.g., the project includes *only* interior remodels within an existing building):			
Step 2: Is the project a Standard Project, PDP, or exception to PDP definitions? To answer this item, see Section 1.4 of the manual *in its entirety* for guidance, AND complete Form H-2, Project Type Determination.	Standard Project	Stop. Standard Project requirements apply, including Standard Project SWQMP.	
	PDP	PDP requirements apply, including PDP SWQMP. Go to Step 3.	
	Exception to PDP definitions	Stop. Standard Project requirements apply. Provide discussion and list any additional requirements below. Prepare Standard Project SWQMP.	
Discussion / justification, and additional requirements for exceptions to PDP definitions, if applicable:			
Form H-1 Page 2 of 2			

Step	Answer	Progression
Step 3. Do hydromodification control requirements apply? See Section 1.6 of the manual for guidance. Note: Hydromodification control requirements do not apply to projects within Airport Authority jurisdiction that drain through concrete lined channels or conveyances that discharge directly to San Diego Bay.	Yes	PDP structural BMPs required for pollutant control (Chapter 5) and hydromodification control (Chapter 6). Go to Step 4.
	No	Stop. PDP structural BMPs required for pollutant control (Chapter 5) only. Provide brief discussion of exemption to hydromodification control below.
Discussion / justification if hydromodification control requirements do not apply:		
Step 4. Does protection of critical coarse sediment yield areas apply? See Section 6.2 of the manual for guidance. Note: Critical course sediment yield areas are not present within Airport Authority jurisdiction. See Section 1.6 and Appendix A of the manual.	Yes	Management measures required for protection of critical coarse sediment yield areas (Chapter 6.2). Stop.
	No	Management measures not required for protection of critical coarse sediment yield areas. Provide brief discussion below. Stop.
Discussion / justification if protection of critical coarse sediment yield areas does not apply:		

Project Type Determination Checklist				Form H-2
Project Information				
Project Name:				
Permit Application Number:				
Project Type Determination: Standard Project or PDP				
The project is (select one): New Development Redevelopment				
The total proposed newly created or replaced impervious area is: _________ ft² (_________) acres				
Is the project in any of the following categories, (a) through (f)?				
Yes	No	(a)	New development projects that create 10,000 square feet or more of impervious surfaces (collectively over the entire project site). This includes commercial, industrial, mixed-use, and public development projects on public or private land.	
Yes	No	(b)	Redevelopment projects that create and/or replace 5,000 square feet or more of impervious surface (collectively over the entire project site on an existing site of 10,000 square feet or more of impervious surfaces). This includes commercial, industrial, mixed-use, and public development projects on public or private land.	
Yes	No	(c)	New and redevelopment projects that create and/or replace 5,000 square feet or more of impervious surface (collectively over the entire project site), and support one or more of the following uses: (i) Restaurants. This category is defined as a facility that sells prepared foods and drinks for consumption, including stationary lunch counters and refreshment stands selling prepared foods and drinks for immediate consumption SIC code 5812). (ii) Parking lots. This category is defined as a land area or facility for the temporary parking or storage of motor vehicles used personally, for business, or for commerce. (iii) Streets, roads, highways, freeways, and driveways. This category is defined as any paved impervious surface used for the transportation of automobiles, trucks, motorcycles, and other vehicles.	

Form H-2 Page 2 of 2			
Yes	No	(d)	New or redevelopment projects that create and/or replace 2,500 square feet or more of impervious surface (collectively over the entire project site), and discharging d irectly to an Environmentally Sensitive Area (ESA). "Discharging directly to" includes flow that is conveyed overland a distance of 200 feet or less from the project to the ESA, or conveyed in a pipe or open channel any distance as an isolated flow from the project to the ESA (i.e. not commingled with flows from adjacent lands). Note: ESAs are areas that include but are not limited to all Clean Water Act Section 303(d) impaired water bodies; areas designated as Areas of Special Biological Significance by th e State Water Board and SDRWQCB; State Water Quality Protected Areas; water bodies designated with the RARE beneficial use by the State Water Board and SDRWQCB; and any other equivalent environmentally sensitive areas which have been identified by the Copermittees. See manual Section 1.4.2 for additional guidance and Appendix A.
Yes	No	(e)	New development projects, or redevelopment project that create and/or replace 5,000 square feet or more of impervious surface, that support one or more of the follow ing uses: (i) Automotive repair shops. This category is defined as a facility that is categorized in any one of the following SIC codes: 5013, 5014, 5541, 7532 -7534, or 7536-7539. (ii) Retail gasoline outlets. This category includes retail gasoline outlets that meet the following criteria: (a) 5,000 square feet or more or (b) a projected Average Daily Traffic of 100 or more vehicles per day.
Yes	No	(f)	New or redevelopment projects that result in the disturbance of one or more acres of land and are expected to generate pollutants post construction. *Note: See manual Section 1.4.2 for additional guidance.*

Does the project meet the definition of one or more of the PDP categories (a) through (f) listed above?

No – the project is not a PDP (Standard Project).

Yes – the project is a PDP.

The following is for redevelopment PDPs only:

The area of existing (pre-project) impervious area at the project site is: ________ ft² (A)
The total proposed newly created or replaced impervious area is: ________ ft² (B)
Percent impervious surface created or replaced (B/A)*100: _______%
The percent impervious surface created or replaced is (select one based on the above calculation):

less than or equal to fifty percent (50%) – only new impervious areas are considered PDP

OR

greater than fifty percent (50%) – the entire project site is a PDP

Site Information Checklist For Standard Projects	Form H-3A (Standard Projects)
Project Summary Information	

Project Name	
Project Address	
Assessor's Parcel Number(s)	
Permit Application Number	
Project Watershed (Hydrologic Unit)	Pueblo San Diego 908
Parcel Area (total area of Assessor's Parcel(s) associated with the project)	________ Acres (____________ Square Feet)
Area to be disturbed by the project (Project Area)	________ Acres (____________ Square Feet)
Project Proposed Impervious Area (subset of Project Area)	________ Acres (____________ Square Feet)
Project Proposed Pervious Area (subset of Project Area)	________ Acres (____________ Square Feet)
Note: Proposed Impervious Area + Proposed Pervious Area = Area to be Disturbed by the Project. This may be less than the Parcel Area.	

Form H-3A Page 2 of 4
Description of Existing Site Condition and Drainage Patterns
Current Status of the Site (select all that apply) Existing development Previously graded but not built out Agricultural or other non-impervious use Vacant, undeveloped/natural Description / Additional Information
Existing Land Cover Includes (select all that apply) Vegetative Cover Non-Vegetated Pervious Areas Impervious Areas Description / Additional Information
Underlying Soil belongs to Hydrologic Soil Group (select all that apply): NRCS Type A NRCS Type B NRCS Type C NRCS Type D
Existing Natural Hydrologic Features (select all that apply) Watercourses Seeps Springs Wetlands None Description / Additional Information
Description of Existing Site Drainage [How is storm water runoff conveyed from the site? At a minimum, this description should answer (1) whether existing drainage conveyance is natural or urban; (2) describe existing constructed storm water conveyance systems, if applicable; and (3) is runoff from offsite conveyed through the site? If so, describe.]
Form H-3A Page 3 of 4

Description of Proposed Site Development and Drainage Patterns
Project Description / Proposed Land Use and/or Activities
List proposed impervious features of the project (e.g., buildings, roadways, parking lots, courtyards, athletic courts, other impervious features)
List proposed pervious features of the project (e.g., landscape areas)
Does the project include grading and changes to site topography? Yes No Description / Additional Information
Does the project include changes to site drainage (e.g., installation of new storm water conveyance systems)? Yes No Description / Additional Information

Form H-3A Page 4 of 4
Identify whether any of the following features, activities, and/or pollutant source areas will be present (select all that apply) Onsite storm drain inlets Interior floor drains and elevator shaft sump pumps Interior parking garages Need for future indoor & structural pest control Landscape/outdoor pesticide use Pools, spas, ponds, decorative fountains, and other water features Food service Refuse areas Industrial processes Outdoor storage of equipment or materials Vehicle and equipment cleaning Vehicle/equipment repair and maintenance Fuel dispensing areas Loading docks Fire sprinkler test water Miscellaneous drain or wash water Plazas, sidewalks, parking lots, ramps, taxiways, and runways

Source Control BMP Checklist for All Development Projects (Standard Projects and PDPs)			Form H-4
Project Identification			
Project Name			
Permit Application Number			
Source Control BMPs			
All development projects must implement source control BMPs SC-1 through SC-6 where applicable and feasible. See Chapter 4 and Appendix E of the manual for information to implement source control BMPs shown in this checklist. Answer each category below pursuant to the following. • "Yes" means the project will implement the source control BMP as described in Chapter 4 and/or Appendix E of the manual. Discussion / justification is not required. • "No" means the BMP is applicable to the project but it is not feasible to implement. Discussion / justification must be provided. • "N/A" means the BMP is not applicable at the project site because the project does not include the feature that is addressed by the BMP (e.g., the project has no outdoor materials storage areas). Discussion / justification may be provided.			
Source Control Requirement	**Applied?**		
SC-1 Prevention of Illicit Discharges into the MS4 (Authority BMPs SC01, SC04, SC05, SC09, SC11, SC12, SC13, SC14, SC15, and SC18 as applicable)	Yes	No	N/A
Discussion / justification if SC-1 not implemented:			
SC-2 Storm Drain Stenciling or Signage (Authority BMP SC17)	Yes	No	N/A
Discussion / justification if SC-2 not implemented:			
SC-3 Protect Outdoor Materials Storage Areas from Rainfall, Run-On, Runoff, and Wind Dispersal (Authority BMP SC07)	Yes	No	N/A
Discussion / justification if SC-3 not implemented:			

Form H-4 Page 2 of 2

Source Control Requirement	Applied?		
SC-4 Protect Materials Stored in Outdoor Work Areas from Rainfall, Run-On, Runoff, and Wind Dispersal (Authority BMPs SC02A, SC02B, SC02C, SC03, SC06, SC09, and SC21 as applicable)	Yes	No	N/A
Discussion / justification if SC-4 not implemented:			
SC-5 Protect Trash Storage Areas from Rainfall, Run-On, Runoff, and Wind Dispersal (Authority BMP SC08)	Yes	No	N/A
Discussion / justification if SC-5 not implemented:			
SC-6 Additional BMPs Based on Potential Sources of Runoff Pollutants (must answer for each source listed below)			
Onsite storm drain inlets	Yes	No	N/A
Interior floor drains and elevator shaft sump pumps	Yes	No	N/A
Interior parking garages	Yes	No	N/A
Need for future indoor & structural pest control	Yes	No	N/A
Landscape/outdoor pesticide use	Yes	No	N/A
Pools, spas, ponds, decorative fountains, and other water features	Yes	No	N/A
Food service	Yes	No	N/A
Refuse areas	Yes	No	N/A
Industrial processes	Yes	No	N/A
Outdoor storage of equipment or materials	Yes	No	N/A
Vehicle and equipment cleaning	Yes	No	N/A
Vehicle/equipment repair and maintenance	Yes	No	N/A
Fuel dispensing areas	Yes	No	N/A
Loading docks	Yes	No	N/A
Fire sprinkler test water	Yes	No	N/A
Miscellaneous drain or wash water	Yes	No	N/A
Plazas, sidewalks, parking lots, ramps, taxiways, and runways	Yes	No	N/A
Discussion / justification if SC-6 not implemented. Clearly identify which sources of runoff pollutants are discussed. Clarify which additional source control BMPs from Appendix B of the Authority SWMP will be implemented. Justification must be provided for <u>all</u> "No" answers shown above.			

Site Design BMP Checklist for All Development Projects (Standard Projects and PDPs)			Form H-5
Project Identification			
Project Name			
Permit Application Number			
Site Design BMPs			
All development projects must implement site design BMPs SD-1 through SD-8 where applicable and feasible. See Chapter 4 and Appendix E of the manual for information to implement site design BMPs shown in this checklist. Answer each category below pursuant to the following. • "Yes" means the project will implement the site design BMP as described in Chapter 4 and/or Appendix E of the manual. Discussion / justification is not required. • "No" means the BMP is applicable to the project but it is not feasible to implement. Discussion / justification must be provided. • "N/A" means the BMP is not applicable at the project site because the project does not include the feature that is addressed by the BMP (e.g., the project site has no existing natural areas to conserve). Discussion / justification may be provided.			
Site Design Requirement	**Applied?**		
SD-1 Maintain Natural Drainage Pathways and Hydrologic Features	Yes	No	N/A
Discussion / justification if SD-1 not implemented:			
SD-2 Conserve Natural Areas, Soils, and Vegetation	Yes	No	N/A
Discussion / justification if SD-2 not implemented:			
SD-3 Minimize Impervious Area	Yes	No	N/A
Discussion / justification if SD-3 not implemented:			
SD-4 Minimize Soil Compaction	Yes	No	N/A
Discussion / justification if SD-4 not implemented:			
Form H-5 Page 2 of 2			

Site Design Requirement	Applied?		
SD-5 Impervious Area Dispersion	Yes	No	N/A
Discussion / justification if SD-5 not implemented:			
SD-6 Runoff Collection	Yes	No	N/A
Discussion / justification if SD-6 not implemented:			
SD-7 Landscaping with Native or Drought Tolerant Species	Yes	No	N/A
Discussion / justification if SD-7 not implemented:			
SD-8 Harvesting and Using Precipitation	Yes	No	N/A
Discussion / justification if SD-8 not implemented:			

ATTACHMENT 1
Copy of Plan Sheets Showing Permanent Storm Water BMPs

This is the cover sheet for Attachment 1.

Use this checklist to ensure the required information has been included on the plans:

The plans must identify:

Show all applicable permanent site design and source control BMPs as noted in Forms I-4 and I-5

A.4 PDP SWQMP Template

The following template is provided for use by a PDP SWQMP applicant or reviewer. It is not intended to replace a thorough review of the Manual and all appendices.

SAN DIEGO COUNTY REGIONAL AIRPORT AUTHORITY
PRIORITY DEVELOPMENT PROJECT (PDP) STORM WATER QUALITY MANAGEMENT PLAN (SWQMP) FOR [INSERT PROJECT NAME] [INSERT PERMIT APPLICATION NUMBERS] [INSERT PROJECT ADDRESS] [INSERT PROJECT CITY, STATE ZIP CODE] ASSESSOR'S PARCEL NUMBER(S): [INSERT APN(S)]
ENGINEER OF WORK: ____ [INSERT CIVIL ENGINEER'S NAME AND PE NUMBER HERE, PROVIDE WET SIGNATURE AND STAMP ABOVE LINE]

PREPARED FOR:

[INSERT APPLICANT NAME]
[INSERT ADDRESS]
[INSERT CITY, STATE ZIP CODE]
[INSERT TELEPHONE NUMBER]

PDP SWQMP PREPARED BY:

[INSERT COMPANY NAME]
[INSERT ADDRESS]
[INSERT CITY, STATE ZIP CODE]
[INSERT TELEPHONE NUMBER]

DATE OF SWQMP:
[INSERT MONTH, DAY, YEAR]

PLANS PREPARED BY:

[INSERT CIVIL ENGINEER OR ARCHITECT]
[INSERT ADDRESS]
[INSERT CITY, STATE ZIP CODE]
[INSERT TELEPHONE NUMBER]

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ACRONYMS

APN	Assessor's Parcel Number
BMP	Best Management Practice
HMP	Hydromodification Management Plan
HSG	Hydrologic Soil Group
MS4	Municipal Separate Storm Sewer System
N/A	Not Applicable
NRCS	Natural Resources Conservation Service
PDP	Priority Development Project
PE	Professional Engineer
SC	Source Control
SD	Site Design
SDRWQCB	San Diego Regional Water Quality Control Board
SIC	Standard Industrial Classification
SWQMP	Storm Water Quality Management Plan

PDP SWQMP PREPARER'S CERTIFICATION PAGE

Project Name: [Insert Project Name]
Permit Application Number: [Insert Permit Application Number]

PREPARER'S CERTIFICATION

I hereby declare that I am the Engineer in Responsible Charge of design of storm water best management practices (BMPs) for this project, and that I have exercised responsible charge over the design of the BMPs as defined in Section 6703 of the Business and Professions Code, and that the design is consistent with the PDP requirements of the [INSERT AGENCY NAME] BMP Design Manual, which is a design manual for compliance with local [INSERT AGENCY NAME] and regional MS4 Permit (California Regional Water Quality Control Board San Diego Region Order No. R9-2015-0100) requirements for storm water management.

I have read and understand that the San Diego County Regional Airport Authority has adopted minimum requirements for managing urban runoff, including storm water, from land development activities, as described in the BMP Design Manual. I certify that this PDP SWQMP has been completed to the best of my ability and accurately reflects the project being proposed and the applicable BMPs proposed to minimize the potentially negative impacts of this project's land development activities on water quality. I understand and acknowledge that the plan check review of this PDP SWQMP by the San Diego County Airport Authority Environmental Affairs Department and/or Facilities Development Department is confined to a review and does not relieve me, as the Engineer in Responsible Charge of design of storm water BMPs for this project, of my responsibilities for project design.

____

Engineer of Work's Signature, PE Number & Expiration Date

____

Print Name

____

Company

____

Date

Engineer's Seal:

PDP SWQMP PROJECT OWNER'S CERTIFICATION PAGE

Project Name: [Insert Project Name]
Permit Application Number: [Insert Permit Application Number]

PROJECT OWNER'S CERTIFICATION

This PDP SWQMP has been prepared for [INSERT PROJECT OWNER'S COMPANY NAME] by [INSERT SWQMP PREPARER'S COMPANY NAME]. The PDP SWQMP is intended to comply with the PDP requirements of the San Diego County Regional Airport Authority BMP Design Manual, which is a design manual for compliance with local San Diego County Regional Airport Authority and regional MS4 Permit (California Regional Water Quality Control Board San Diego Region Order No. R9-2015-0100) requirements for storm water management.

The undersigned, while it owns the subject property, is responsible for the implementation of the provisions of this plan. Once the undersigned transfers its interests in the property, its successor-in-interest shall bear the aforementioned responsibility to implement the best management practices (BMPs) described within this plan, including ensuring on-going operation and maintenance of structural BMPs. A signed copy of this document shall be available on the subject property into perpetuity.

____
Project Owner's Signature

____
Print Name

____
Company

____
Date

SUBMITTAL RECORD

Use this Table to keep a record of submittals of this PDP SWQMP. Each time th e PDP SWQMP is re-submitted, provide the date and status of the project. In column 4 summarize the changes that have been made or indicate if response to plan check comments is included. When applicable, insert response to plan check comments behind this page.

Submittal Number	Date	Project Status	Summary of Changes
1		Preliminary Design / Planning/ CEQA Final Design	Initial Submittal
2		Preliminary Design / Planning/ CEQA Final Design	
3		Preliminary Design / Planning/ CEQA Final Design	
4		Preliminary Design / Planning/ CEQA Final Design	

PROJECT VICINITY MAP

Project Name: [Insert Project Name]
Permit Application Number: [Insert Permit Application Number]

[Insert Project Vicinity Map here]

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Applicability of Permanent, Post-Construction
Storm Water BMP Requirements
(Storm Water Intake Form for all Development Permit Applications)</th><th>Form H-1</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Project Identification</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Project Name:</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Permit Application Number:</td><td>Date:</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Determination of Requirements</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">The purpose of this form is to identify permanent, post-construction requirements that apply to the project. This form serves as a short <u>summary</u> of applicable requirements, in some cases referencing separate forms that will serve as the backup for the determination of requirements.

Answer each step below, starting with Step 1 and progressing through each step until reaching "Stop".
Refer to the manual sections and/or separate forms referenced in each step below.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Step</td><td>Answer</td><td>Progression</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Step 1: Is the project a "development project"?
See Section 1.3 of the manual for guidance.</td><td>Yes</td><td>Go to Step 2.</td></tr>
<tr><td>No</td><td>Stop.
Permanent BMP requirements do not apply. No SWQMP will be required. Provide discussion below.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Discussion / justification if the project is <u>not</u> a "development project" (e.g., the project includes only interior remodels within an existing building):</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Step 2: Is the project a Standard Project, PDP, or exception to PDP definitions?
To answer this item, see Section 1.4 of the manual in its entirety for guidance, AND complete Form H-2, Project Type Determination.</td><td>Standard Project</td><td>Stop.
Standard Project requirements apply, including Standard Project SWQMP.</td></tr>
<tr><td>PDP</td><td>PDP requirements apply, including PDP SWQMP.
Go to Step 3.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Exception to PDP definitions</td><td>Stop.
Standard Project requirements apply. Provide discussion and list any additional requirements below. Prepare Standard Project SWQMP.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Discussion / justification, and additional requirements for exceptions to PDP definitions, if applicable:</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Form H-1 Page 2 of 2</td></tr>
</table>

Step	Answer	Progression
Step 3. Do hydromodification control requirements apply? See Section 1.6 of the manual for guidance. Note: Hydromodification control requirements do not apply to projects within Airport Authority jurisdiction that drain through concrete lined channels or conveyances that discharge directly to San Diego Bay.	Yes	PDP structural BMPs required for pollutant control (Chapter 5) and hydromodification control (Chapter 6). Go to Step 4.
	No	Stop. PDP structural BMPs required for pollutant control (Chapter 5) only. Provide brief discussion of exemption to hydromodification control below.
Discussion / justification if hydromodification control requirements do not apply:		
Step 4. Does protection of critical coarse sediment yield areas apply? See Section 6.2 of the manual for guidance. Note: Critical course sediment yield areas are not present within Airport Authority jurisdiction. See Section 1.6 and Appendix A of the manual.	Yes	Management measures required for protection of critical coarse sediment yield areas (Chapter 6.2). Stop.
	No	Management measures not required for protection of critical coarse sediment yield areas. Provide brief discussion below. Stop.
Discussion / justification if protection of critical coarse sediment yield areas does not apply:		

Project Type Determination Checklist			Form H-2
Project Information			
Project Name:			
Permit Application Number:			
Project Type Determination: Standard Project or PDP			
The project is (select one): New Development Redevelopment			
The total proposed newly created or replaced impervious area is: ________ ft² (________) acres			
Is the project in any of the following categories, (a) through (f)?			
Yes	No	(a)	New development projects that create 10,000 square feet or more of impervious surfaces (collectively over the entire project site). This includes commercial, industrial, mixed-use, and public development projects on public or private land.
Yes	No	(b)	Redevelopment projects that create and/or replace 5,000 square feet or more of impervious surface (collectively over the entire project site on an existing site of 10,000 square feet or more of impervious surfaces). This includes commercial, industrial, mixed-use, and public development projects on public or private land.
Yes	No	(c)	New and redevelopment projects that create and/or replace 5,000 square feet or more of impervious surface (collectively over the entire project site), and support one or more of the following uses: (i) Restaurants. This category is defined as a facility that sells prepared foods and drinks for consumption, including stationary lunch counters and refreshment stands selling prepared foods and drinks for immediate consumption SIC code 5812). (ii) Parking lots. This category is defined as a land area or facility for the temporary parking or storage of motor vehicles used personally, for business, or for commerce. (iii) Streets, roads, highways, freeways, and driveways. This category is defined as any paved impervious surface used for the transportation of automobiles, trucks, motorcycles, and other vehicles.

Form H-2 Page 2 of 2			
Yes	No	(d)	New or redevelopment projects that create and/or replace 2,500 square feet or more of impervious surface (collectively over the entire project site), and discharging directly to an Environmentally Sensitive Area (ESA). "Discharging directly to" includes flow that is conveyed overland a distance of 200 feet or less from the project to the ESA, or conveyed in a pipe or open channel any distance as an isolated flow from the project to the ESA (i.e. not commingled with flows from adjacent lands). Note: ESAs are areas that include but are not limited to all Clean Water Act Section 303(d) impaired water bodies; areas designated as Areas of Special Biological Significance by the State Water Board and SDRWQCB; State Water Quality Protected Areas; water bodies designated with the RARE beneficial use by the State Water Board and SDRWQCB; and any other equivalent environmentally sensitive areas which have been identified by the Copermittees. See manual Section 1.4.2 for additional guidance and Appendix A.
Yes	No	(e)	New development projects, or redevelopment project that create and/or replace 5,000 square feet or more of impervious surface, that support one or more of the following uses: (i) Automotive repair shops. This category is defined as a facility that is categorized in any one of the following SIC codes: 5013, 5014, 5541, 7532 -7534, or 7536-7539. (ii) Retail gasoline outlets. This category includes retail gasoline outlets that meet the following criteria: (a) 5,000 square feet or more or (b) a projected Average Daily Traffic of 100 or more vehicles per day.
Yes	No	(f)	New or redevelopment projects that result in the disturbance of one or more acres of land and are expected to generate pollutants post construction. *Note: See manual Section 1.4.2 for additional guidance.*

Does the project meet the definition of one or more of the PDP categories (a) through (f) listed above?

No – the project is not a PDP (Standard Project).

Yes – the project is a PDP.

The following is for redevelopment PDPs only:

The area of existing (pre-project) impervious area at the project site is: ________ ft² (A)
The total proposed newly created or replaced impervious area is: ________ ft² (B)
Percent impervious surface created or replaced (B/A)*100: _______%
The percent impervious surface created or replaced is (select one based on the above calculation):

less than or equal to fifty percent (50%) – only new impervious areas are considered PDP

OR

greater than fifty percent (50%) – the entire project site is a PDP

Site Information Checklist For PDPs	Form H-3B (PDPs)
Project Summary Information	

Project Name	
Project Address	
Assessor's Parcel Number(s)	
Permit Application Number	
Project Watershed (Hydrologic Unit)	Select One: Pueblo San Diego 908
Parcel Area (total area of Assessor's Parcel(s) associated with the project)	________ Acres (____________ Square Feet)
Area to be disturbed by the project (Project Area)	________ Acres (____________ Square Feet)
Project Proposed Impervious Area (subset of Project Area)	________ Acres (____________ Square Feet)
Project Proposed Pervious Area (subset of Project Area)	________ Acres (____________ Square Feet)
Note: Proposed Impervious Area + Proposed Pervious Area = Area to be Disturbed by the Project. This may be less than the Parcel Area.	

Form H-3B Page 2 of 7

Description of Existing Site Condition and Drainage Patterns

Current Status of the Site (select all that apply):

- Existing development
- Previously graded but not built out
- Agricultural or other non-impervious use
- Vacant, undeveloped/natural

Description / Additional Information:

Existing Land Cover Includes (select all that apply):

- Vegetative Cover
- Non-Vegetated Pervious Areas
- Impervious Areas

Description / Additional Information:

Underlying Soil belongs to Hydrologic Soil Group (select all that apply):

- NRCS Type A
- NRCS Type B
- NRCS Type C
- NRCS Type D

Approximate Depth to Groundwater:

- Groundwater Depth < 5 feet
- 5 feet < Groundwater Depth < 10 feet
- 10 feet < Groundwater Depth < 20 feet
- Groundwater Depth > 20 feet

Existing Natural Hydrologic Features (select all that apply):

- Watercourses
- Seeps
- Springs
- Wetlands
- None

Description / Additional Information:

Form H-3B Page 3 of 7
Description of Existing Site Topography and Drainage [How is storm water runoff conveyed from the site? At a minimum, this description should answer (1) whether existing drainage conveyance is natural or urban; (2) describe existing constructed storm water conveyance systems, if applicable; and (3) is runoff from offsite conveyed through the site? If so, describe]:

Form H-3B Page 4 of 7
Description of Proposed Site Development and Drainage Patterns
Project Description / Proposed Land Use and/or Activities:
List/describe proposed impervious features of the project (e.g., buildings, roadways, parking lots, courtyards, athletic courts, other impervious features):
List/describe proposed pervious features of the project (e.g., landscape areas):
Does the project include grading and changes to site topography? Yes No Description / Additional Information:
Does the project include changes to site drainage (e.g., installation of new storm water conveyance systems)? Yes No Description / Additional Information:
Form H-3B Page 5 of 7

Identify whether any of the following features, activities, and/or pollutant source areas will be present (select all that apply):

- Onsite storm drain inlets
- Interior floor drains and elevator shaft sump pumps
- Interior parking garages
- Need for future indoor & structural pest control
- Landscape/outdoor pesticide use
- Pools, spas, ponds, decorative fountains, and other water features
- Food service
- Refuse areas
- Industrial processes
- Outdoor storage of equipment or materials
- Vehicle and equipment cleaning
- Vehicle/equipment repair and maintenance
- Fuel dispensing areas
- Loading docks
- Fire sprinkler test water
- Miscellaneous drain or wash water
- Plazas, sidewalks, parking lots, ramp, taxiway, and runway

Form H-3B Page 6 of 7		
Identification of Receiving Water Pollutants of Concern		
Describe path of storm water from the project site to the Pacific Ocean (or bay, lagoon, lake or reservoir, as applicable):		
List any 303(d) impaired water bodies within the path of storm water from the project site to the Pacific Ocean (or bay, lagoon, lake or reservoir, as applicable), identify the pollutant(s)/stressor(s) causing impairment, and identify any TMDLs for the impaired water bodies:		
303(d) Impaired Water Body	**Pollutant(s)/Stressor(s)**	**TMDLs**

Identification of Project Site Pollutants*

***Identification of project site pollutants is only required if flow-through treatment BMPs are implemented onsite in lieu of retention or biofiltration BMPs (note the project must also participate in an alternative compliance program)**

Identify pollutants anticipated from the project site based on all proposed use(s) of the site (see manual Appendix B.6):

Pollutant	Not Applicable to the Project Site	Anticipated from the Project Site	Also a Receiving Water Pollutant of Concern
Sediment			
Nutrients			
Heavy Metals			
Organic Compounds			
Trash & Debris			
Oxygen Demanding Substances			
Oil & Grease			
Bacteria & Viruses			
Pesticides			

Form H-3B Page 7 of 7
Hydromodification Management Requirements
Do hydromodification management requirements apply (see Section 1.6 of the manual)? Yes, hydromodification management flow control structural BMPs required. No, the project will discharge runoff directly to existing underground storm drains discharging directly to water storage reservoirs, lakes, enclosed embayments, or the Pacific Ocean. No, the project will discharge runoff directly to conveyance channels whose bed and bank are concrete-lined all the way from the point of discharge to water storage reservoirs, lakes, enclosed embayments, or the Pacific Ocean. No, the project will discharge runoff directly to an area identified as appropriate for an exemption by the WMAA for the watershed in which the project resides. Description / Additional Information (to be provided if a 'No' answer has been selected above):
Other Site Requirements and Constraints
When applicable, list other site requirements or constraints that will influence storm water management design, such as zoning requirements including setbacks and open space, or local codes governing minimum street width, sidewalk construction, allowable pavement types, and drainage requirements.
Optional Additional Information or Continuation of Previous Sections As Needed
This space provided for additional information or continuation of information from previous sections as needed.

Source Control BMP Checklist for All Development Projects (Standard Projects and PDPs)			Form H-4
Project Identification			
Project Name			
Permit Application Number			
Source Control BMPs			
All development projects must implement source control BMPs SC-1 through SC-6 where applicable and feasible. See Chapter 4 and Appendix E of the manual for information to implement source control BMPs shown in this checklist. Answer each category below pursuant to the following. • "Yes" means the project will implement the source control BMP as described in Chapter 4 and/or Appendix E of the manual. Discussion / justification is not required. • "No" means the BMP is applicable to the project but it is not feasible to implement. Discussion / justification must be provided. • "N/A" means the BMP is not applicable at the project site because the project does not include the feature that is addressed by the BMP (e.g., the project has no outdoor materials storage areas). Discussion / justification may be provided.			
Source Control Requirement	**Applied?**		
SC-1 Prevention of Illicit Discharges into the MS4 (Authority BMPs SC01, SC04, SC05, SC09, SC11, SC12, SC13, SC14, SC15, and SC18 as applicable)	Yes	No	N/A
Discussion / justification if SC-1 not implemented:			
SC-2 Storm Drain Stenciling or Signage (Authority BMP SC17)	Yes	No	N/A
Discussion / justification if SC-2 not implemented:			
SC-3 Protect Outdoor Materials Storage Areas from Rainfall, Run-On, Runoff, and Wind Dispersal (Authority BMP SC07)	Yes	No	N/A
Discussion / justification if SC-3 not implemented:			

Form H-4 Page 2 of 2			
Source Control Requirement	**Applied?**		
SC-4 Protect Materials Stored in Outdoor Work Areas from Rainfall, Run-On, Runoff, and Wind Dispersal (Authority BMPs SC02A, SC02B, SC02C, SC03, SC06, SC09, and SC21 as applicable)	Yes	No	N/A
Discussion / justification if SC-4 not implemented:			
SC-5 Protect Trash Storage Areas from Rainfall, Run-On, Runoff, and Wind Dispersal (Authority BMP SC08)	Yes	No	N/A
Discussion / justification if SC-5 not implemented:			
SC-6 Additional BMPs Based on Potential Sources of Runoff Pollutants (must answer for each source listed below)			
Onsite storm drain inlets	Yes	No	N/A
Interior floor drains and elevator shaft sump pumps	Yes	No	N/A
Interior parking garages	Yes	No	N/A
Need for future indoor & structural pest control	Yes	No	N/A
Landscape/outdoor pesticide use	Yes	No	N/A
Pools, spas, ponds, decorative fountains, and other water features	Yes	No	N/A
Food service	Yes	No	N/A
Refuse areas	Yes	No	N/A
Industrial processes	Yes	No	N/A
Outdoor storage of equipment or materials	Yes	No	N/A
Vehicle and equipment cleaning	Yes	No	N/A
Vehicle/equipment repair and maintenance	Yes	No	N/A
Fuel dispensing areas	Yes	No	N/A
Loading docks	Yes	No	N/A
Fire sprinkler test water	Yes	No	N/A
Miscellaneous drain or wash water	Yes	No	N/A
Plazas, sidewalks, parking lots, ramps, taxiways, and runways	Yes	No	N/A
Discussion / justification if SC-6 not implemented. Clearly identify which sources of runoff pollutants are discussed. Clarify which additional source control BMPs from Appendix B of the Authority SWMP will be implemented. Justification must be provided for all "No" answers shown above.			

Site Design BMP Checklist for All Development Projects (Standard Projects and PDPs)			Form H-5
Project Identification			
Project Name			
Permit Application Number			
Site Design BMPs			
All development projects must implement site design BMPs SD-1 through SD-8 where applicable and feasible. See Chapter 4 and Appendix E of the manual for information to implement site design BMPs shown in this checklist. Answer each category below pursuant to the following. • "Yes" means the project will implement the site design BMP as described in Chapter 4 and/or Appendix E of the manual. Discussion / justification is not required. • "No" means the BMP is applicable to the project but it is not feasible to implement. Discussion / justification must be provided. • "N/A" means the BMP is not applicable at the project site because the project does not include the feature that is addressed by the BMP (e.g., the project site has no existing natural areas to conserve). Discussion / justification may be provided.			
Site Design Requirement	**Applied?**		
SD-1 Maintain Natural Drainage Pathways and Hydrologic Features	Yes	No	N/A
Discussion / justification if SD-1 not implemented:			
SD-2 Conserve Natural Areas, Soils, and Vegetation	Yes	No	N/A
Discussion / justification if SD-2 not implemented:			
SD-3 Minimize Impervious Area	Yes	No	N/A
Discussion / justification if SD-3 not implemented:			
SD-4 Minimize Soil Compaction	Yes	No	N/A
Discussion / justification if SD-4 not implemented:			
Form H-5 Page 2 of 2			

Site Design Requirement	Applied?		
SD-5 Impervious Area Dispersion	Yes	No	N/A
Discussion / justification if SD-5 not implemented:			
SD-6 Runoff Collection	Yes	No	N/A
Discussion / justification if SD-6 not implemented:			
SD-7 Landscaping with Native or Drought Tolerant Species	Yes	No	N/A
Discussion / justification if SD-7 not implemented:			
SD-8 Harvesting and Using Precipitation	Yes	No	N/A
Discussion / justification if SD-8 not implemented:			

Summary of PDP Structural BMPs	Form H-6 (PDPs)
Project Identification	
Project Name	
Permit Application Number	
PDP Structural BMPs	
All PDPs must implement structural BMPs for storm water pollutant control (see Chapter 5 of the manual). Selection of PDP structural BMPs for storm water pollutant control must be based on the selection process described in Chapter 5. PDP structural BMPs must be verified by the local jurisdiction at the completion of construction. This may include requiring the project owner or project owner's representative to certify construction of the structural BMPs (see Section 1.12 of the manual). PDP structural BMPs must be maintained into perpetuity, and the local jurisdiction must confirm the maintenance (see Section 7 of the manual). Use this form to provide narrative description of the general strategy for structural BMP implementation at the project site in the box below. Then complete the PDP structural BMP summary information sheet (page 3 of this form) for each structural BMP within the project (copy the BMP summary information page as many times as needed to provide summary information for each individual structural BMP).	
Describe the general strategy for structural BMP implementation at the site. This information must describe how the steps for selecting and designing storm water pollutant control BMPs presented in Section 5.1 of the manual were followed, and the results (type of BMPs selected). (Continue on page 2 as necessary.)	

Form H-6 Page 2 of 3
(Page reserved for continuation of description of general strategy for structural BMP implementation at the site)
(Continued from page 1)
Form H-6 Page 3 of X (Copy as many as needed)

Structural BMP Summary Information (Copy this page as needed to provide information for each individual proposed structural BMP)	
Structural BMP ID No.	
Construction Plan Sheet No.	
Type of structural BMP: Retention by harvest and use (HU-1) Retention by infiltration basin (INF-1) Retention by bioretention (INF-2) Retention by permeable pavement (INF-3) Partial retention by biofiltration with partial retention (PR-1) Biofiltration (BF-1) Flow-through treatment control included as pre-treatment/forebay for an onsite retention or biofiltration BMP (provide BMP type/description and indicate which onsite retention or biofiltration BMP it serves in discussion section below) Flow-through treatment control with alternative compliance (provide BMP type/description in discussion section below) Detention pond or vault for hydromodification management Other (describe in discussion section below)	
Purpose: Pollutant control only Combined pollutant control and hydromodification control (if desired) Pre-treatment/forebay for another structural BMP Other (describe in discussion section below)	
Who will certify construction of this BMP? Provide name and contact information for the party responsible to sign BMP verification forms if required by the EAD (See Section 1.12 of the manual)	
Who will be the final owner of this BMP?	
Who will maintain this BMP into perpetuity?	
What is the funding mechanism for maintenance?	
Discussion (as needed):	

ATTACHMENT 1
BACKUP FOR PDP POLLUTANT CONTROL BMPS

This is the cover sheet for Attachment 1.

Indicate which Items are Included behind this cover sheet:

Attachment Sequence	Contents	Checklist
Attachment 1a	DMA Exhibit (Required) See DMA Exhibit Checklist on the back of this Attachment cover sheet.	Included
Attachment 1b	Tabular Summary of DMAs Showing DMA ID matching DMA Exhibit, DMA Area, and DMA Type (Required)* *Provide table in this Attachment OR on DMA Exhibit in Attachment 1a	Included on DMA Exhibit in Attachment 1a Included as Attachment 1b, separate from DMA Exhibit
Attachment 1c	Form H-7 (Appendix H of the Manual), Harvest and Use Feasibility Screening Checklist (Required unless the entire project will use infiltration BMPs) Refer to Appendix B.3-1 of the BMP Design Manual to complete Form H-7.	Included Not included because the entire project will use infiltration BMPs
Attachment 1d	Form H-8 (Appendix H of the Manual), Categorization of Infiltration Feasibility Condition (Required unless the project will use harvest and use BMPs) Refer to Appendices C and D of the BMP Design Manual to complete Form H-8.	Included Not included because the entire project will use harvest and use BMPs
Attachment 1e	Pollutant Control BMP Design Worksheets / Calculations (Required) Refer to Appendices B and E of the BMP Design Manual for structural pollutant control BMP design guidelines	Included

Use this checklist to ensure the required information has been included on the DMA Exhibit:

The DMA Exhibit must identify:

- Underlying hydrologic soil group
- Approximate depth to groundwater
- Existing natural hydrologic features (watercourses, seeps, springs, wetlands)
- Critical coarse sediment yield areas to be protected
- Existing topography and impervious areas
- Existing and proposed site drainage network and connections to drainage offsite
- Proposed demolition
- Proposed grading
- Proposed impervious features
- Proposed design features and surface treatments used to minimize imperviousness
- Drainage management area (DMA) boundaries, DMA ID numbers, and DMA areas (square footage or acreage), and DMA type (i.e., drains to BMP, self-retaining, or self-mitigating)
- Potential pollutant source areas and corresponding required source controls (see Chapter 4, Appendix E.1, and Form H-3B)
- Structural BMPs (identify location, type of BMP, and size/detail)

ATTACHMENT 2
Structural BMP Maintenance Information

This is the cover sheet for Attachment 2.

Indicate which Items are Included behind this cover sheet:

Attachment Sequence	Contents	Checklist
Attachment 2a	Structural BMP Maintenance Thresholds and Actions (Required)	Included See Structural BMP Maintenance Information Checklist on the back of this Attachment cover sheet.
Attachment 2b	Tenant Condition of Approval (when applicable)	Included Not Applicable

Use this checklist to ensure the required information has been included in the Structural BMP Maintenance Information Attachment:

Preliminary Design / Planning / CEQA level submittal:

Attachment 2a must identify:

- Typical maintenance indicators and actions for proposed structural BMP(s) based on Section 7.7 of the BMP Design Manual

Attachment 2b is not required for preliminary design / planning / CEQA level submittal.

Final Design level submittal:

Attachment 2a must identify:

- Specific maintenance indicators and actions for proposed structural BMP(s). This shall be based on Section 7.7 of the BMP Design Manual and enhanced to reflect actual proposed components of the structural BMP(s)
- How to access the structural BMP(s) to inspect and perform maintenance
- Features that are provided to facilitate inspection (e.g., observation ports, cleanouts, silt posts, or other features that allow the inspector to view necessary components of the structural BMP and compare to maintenance thresholds)
- Manufacturer and part number for proprietary parts of structural BMP(s) when applicable
- Maintenance thresholds specific to the structural BMP(s), with a location-specific frame of reference (e.g., level of accumulated materials that triggers removal of the materials, to be identified based on viewing marks on silt posts or measured with a survey rod with respect to a fixed benchmark within the BMP)
- Recommended equipment to perform maintenance
- When applicable, necessary special training or certification requirements for inspection and maintenance personnel such as confined space entry or hazardous waste management

Attachment 2b: For tenant projects, Attachment 2b shall include a tenant condition of approval. An example is provided below, but the PDP applicant should contact the EAD to obtain the current condition of approval.

Attachment 2b: Example Tenant Condition of Approval

The following statement can be added as a condition of approval for all tenant projects:

"The San Diego County Regional Airport Authority (Authority) and San Diego International Airport is regulated under Regional Water Quality Control Board Order No. R9-2013-0001, as amended by Order No. R9-2015-0001 and R9-2015-0100 (MS4 Permit), as adopted, amended, and/or modified.

The MS4 Permit prohibits any activities that could degrade storm water quality. Post-construction / operational use of this project site must comply with the MS4 and Authority direction related to permitted activities including the requirements found in the Authority's Storm Water Management Plan (SWMP).

No discharges of any material or waste, including potable water, wash water, dust, soil, trash and debris, may contaminate storm water or enter the storm water conveyance system. Any such material that inadvertently contaminates storm water or enters the storm water conveyance system as part of site operations must be removed immediately. All unauthorized discharges to the storm water conveyance system or the Bay or the ocean must be reported immediately to the Environmental Affairs Department, in order to address any regulatory permit requirements regarding spill notifications.

Best management practices (BMPs) must be implemented by the Tenant to control the potential release of any materials or wastes being handled or stored on-site which could enter the storm water conveyance system due to wind or storm water runoff.

In addition, this project is subject to the Authority's BMP Design Manual. As such, approval of the project by the Authority is necessarily conditioned upon submission by the project proponent of a project specific Storm Water Quality Management Plan (SWQMP) that meets Authority requirements. Project approval requires full implementation of all SWQMP structural and non-structural BMPs throughout the life of the project. The implementation and maintenance of the SWQMP BMPs constitute regulatory obligations for the lessee, and failure to comply with the MS4 Permit, the SWMP, or the Authority approved SWQMP, including the specific BMPs contained therein, may be considered a default under the lease."

ATTACHMENT 3
Copy of Plan Sheets Showing Permanent Storm Water BMPs

This is the cover sheet for Attachment 3.

Use this checklist to ensure the required information has been included on the plans:

The plans must identify:

- Structural BMP(s) with ID numbers matching Form H-6 Summary of PDP Structural BMPs
- The grading and drainage design shown on the plans must be consistent with the delineation of DMAs shown on the DMA exhibit
- Details and specifications for construction of structural BMP(s)
- Signage indicating the location and boundary of structural BMP(s) as required by the EAD
- How to access the structural BMP(s) to inspect and perform maintenance
- Features that are provided to facilitate inspection (e.g., observation ports, cleanouts, silt posts, or other features that allow the inspector to view necessary components of the structural BMP and compare to maintenance thresholds)
- Manufacturer and part number for proprietary parts of structural BMP(s) when applicable
- Maintenance thresholds specific to the structural BMP(s), with a location-specific frame of reference (e.g., level of accumulated materials that triggers removal of the materials, to be identified based on viewing marks on silt posts or measured with a survey rod with respect to a fixed benchmark within the BMP)
- Recommended equipment to perform maintenance
- When applicable, necessary special training or certification requirements for inspection and maintenance personnel such as confined space entry or hazardous waste management
- Include landscaping plan sheets showing vegetation requirements for vegetated structural BMP(s)
- All BMPs must be fully dimensioned on the plans
- When proprietary BMPs are used, site-specific cross section with outflow, inflow, and model number shall be provided. Photocopies of general brochures are not acceptable.

This page intentionally left blank

Appendix

B

A U T H O R I T Y B M P D E S I G N M A N U A L

Storm Water Pollutant Control Hydrologic Calculations and Sizing Methods

February 2016

Appendix B Storm Water Pollutant Control Hydrologic Calculations and Sizing Methods

Table of Contents:

B.1 DCV

DCV is defined as the volume of storm water runoff resulting from the 85th percentile, 24-hr storm event. The following hydrologic method shall be used to calculate the DCV:

$$DCV = C \times d \times A \times 43{,}560\ sf/ac \times 1/12\ in/ft$$

$$DCV = 3{,}630 \times C \times d \times A$$

Where:

DCV = Design Capture Volume in cubic feet

C = Runoff factor (unitless); refer to section B.1.1

d = 85th percentile, 24-hr storm event rainfall depth (inches), refer to section B.1.3

A = Tributary area (acres) which includes the total area draining to the BMP, including any offsite or onsite areas that comingles with project runoff and drains to the BMP. Refer to Chapter 3, Section 3.3.3 for additional guidance. Street redevelopment projects consult section 1.4.3.

B.1.1 Runoff Factor

Estimate the area weighted runoff factor for the tributary area to the BMP using runoff factor (from Table B.1-1) and area of each surface type in the tributary area and the following equation:

$$C = \frac{\sum C_x A_x}{\sum A_x}$$

Where:

C_x = Runoff factor for area X

A_x = Tributary area X (acres)

These runoff factors apply to areas receiving direct rainfall only. For conditions in which runoff is routed onto a surface from an adjacent surface, see Section B.2 for determining composite runoff factors for these areas.

Table B.1-1: Runoff factors for surfaces draining to BMPs – Pollutant Control BMPs

Surface	Runoff Factor
Roofs[1]	0.90
Concrete or Asphalt[1]	0.90
Unit Pavers (grouted)[1]	0.90
Decomposed Granite	0.30
Cobbles or Crushed Aggregate	0.30
Amended, Mulched Soils or Landscape	0.10
Compacted Soil (e.g., unpaved parking)	0.30

1. Surface is considered impervious and could benefit from use of Site Design BMPs and adjustment of the runoff factor per Section B.2.1.

Surface	Runoff Factor
Natural (A Soil)	0.10
Natural (B Soil)	0.14
Natural (C Soil)	0.23
Natural (D Soil)	0.30

B.1.2 Offline BMPs

Diversion flow rates for offline BMPs shall be sized to convey the maximum flow rate of runoff produced from a rainfall intensity of 0.2 inch of rainfall per hour, for each hour of every storm event. The following hydrologic method shall be used to calculate the diversion flow rate for off-line BMPs:

$$Q = C \times i \times A$$

Where:

Q = Diversion flow rate in cubic feet per second

C = Runoff factor, area weighted estimate using Table B.1

i = Rainfall intensity of 0.2 in/hr

A = Tributary area (acres) which includes the total area draining to the BMP, including any offsite or onsite areas that comingle with project runoff and drain to the BMP. Refer to Chapter 3, Section 3.3.3 for additional guidance. Street redevelopment projects also consult Section 1.4.3.85th Percentile, 24-Hour Storm Event

The 85th percentile, 24-hour isopluvial map is provided as Figure B.1-1. The rainfall depth to estimate the DCV shall be determined using Figure B.1-1; SAN is located within the 0.5 inch rainfall depth zone. The methodology used to develop this map is presented below:

B.1.2.1 Gage data and calculation of 85th percentile

The method of calculating the 85th percentile is to produce a list of values, order them from smallest to largest, and then pick the value that is 85 percent of the way through the list. Only values that are capable of producing run off are of interest for this purpose. Lacking a legislative definition of rainfall values capable of producing runoff, Flood Control staff in San Diego County have observed that the point at which significant runoff begins is rather subjective, and is affected by land use type and soil moisture. In highly-urbanized areas, the soil has a high impermeability and runoff can begin with as little as 0.02" of rainfall. In rural areas, soil impermeability is significantly lower and even 0.30" of rain on dry soil will frequently not produce significant runoff. For this reason, San Diego County has chosen to use the more objective method of including all non-zero 24-hour rainfall totals when calculating the 85th percentile. To produce a statistically significant number, only stations with 30 years or greater of daily rainfall records are used.

B.1.2.2 Mapping the gage data

A collection of 56 precipitation gage points was developed with 85th percentile precipitation values based on multiple years of gage data. A raster surface (grid of cells with values) was interpolated from that set of points. The surface initially did not cover the County's entire jurisdiction. A total of 13 dummy points were added. Most of those were just outside the County boundary to enable the software to generate a surface that covered the entire County. A handful of points were added to enforce a plausible surface. In particular, one point was added in the desert east of Julian, to enforce a gradient from high precipitation in the mountains to low precipitation in the desert. Three points were added near the northern boundary of the County to adjust the surface to reflect the effect of elevation in areas lacking sufficient operating gages.

Several methods of interpolation were considered. The method chosen is named by Environmental Systems Research Institute as the Natural Neighbor technique. This method produces a surface that is highly empirical, with the value of the surface being a product of the values of the data points nearest each cell. It does not produce peaks or valleys of surface based on larger area trends, and is free of artifacts that appeared with other methods.

This page intentionally left blank

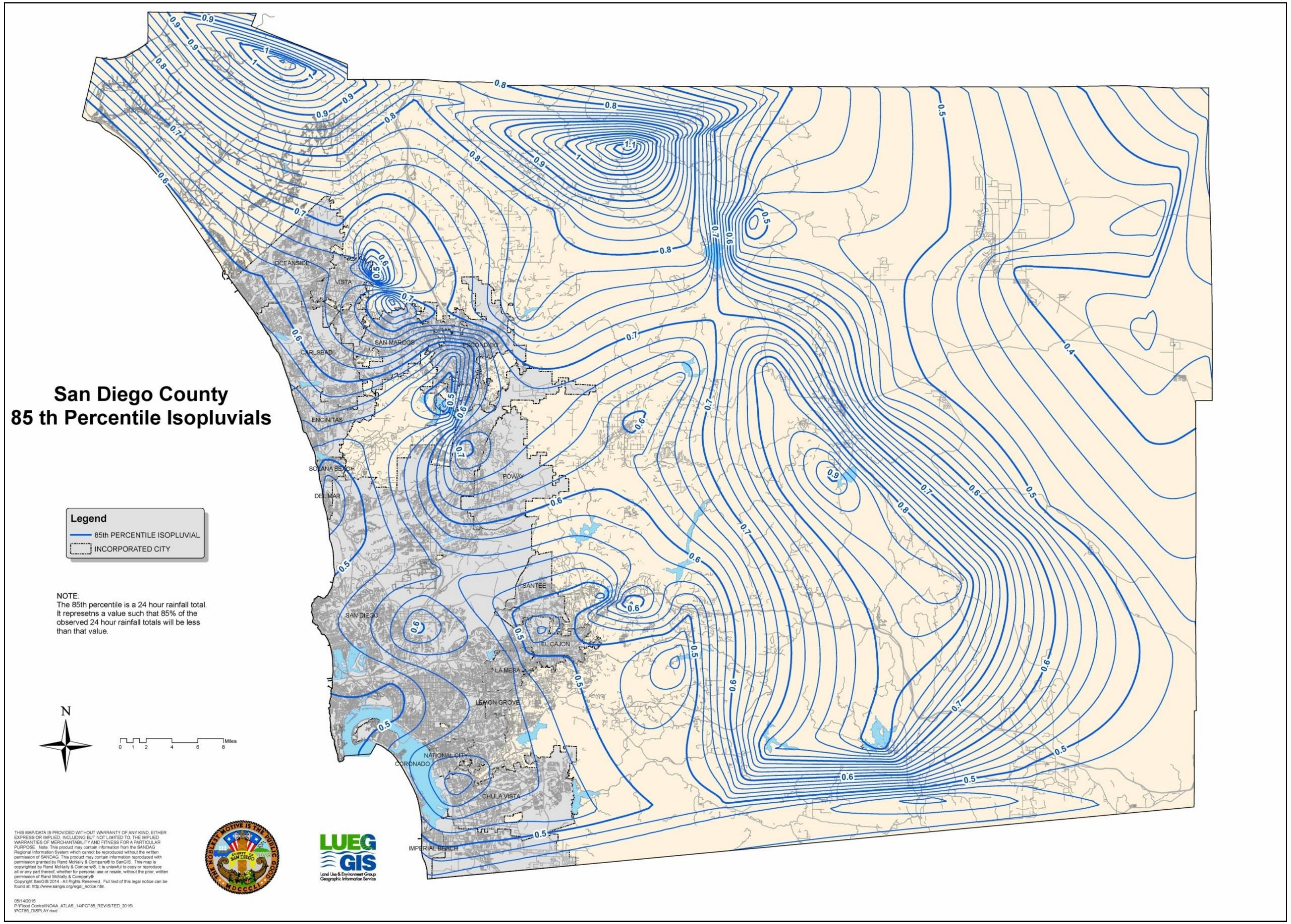


Figure B.1-1: 85th Percentile 24-hour Isopluvial Map

This page intentionally left blank

B.2 Adjustments to Account for Site Design BMPs

This section provides methods to adjust the DCV (for sizing pollutant control BMPs) as a result of implementing site design BMPs. The adjustments are provided by one of the following two methods:

- Adjustment to impervious runoff factor
- Adjustment to DCV

B.2.1 Adjustment to Impervious Runoff Factor

When one of the following site design BMPs is implemented the runoff factor of 0.9 for impervious surfaces identified in Table B.1-1 should be adjusted using the factors listed below and an adjusted area weighted runoff factor shall be estimated following guidance from Section B.1.1 and used to calculate the DCV.

- SD-5 Impervious area dispersion
- SD-6A Green roofs
- SD-6B Permeable pavement

B.2.1.1 Impervious area dispersion (SD-5)

Dispersion of impervious areas through pervious areas: The following adjustments are allowed to impervious runoff factors when dispersion is implemented in accordance with the SD-5 fact sheet (Appendix E). Adjustments are only credited up to a 4:1 maximum ratio of impervious to pervious areas. In order to adjust the runoff factor, the pervious area shall have a minimum width of 10 feet and a maximum slope of 5%. Based on the ratio of **impervious area to pervious area** and the hydrologic soil group of the pervious area, the adjustment factor from Table B.2-1 shall be multiplied with the unadjusted runoff factor (Table B.1-1) of the impervious area to estimate the adjusted runoff factor for sizing pollutant control BMPs. The adjustment factors in Table B.2-1 are **only** valid for impervious surfaces that have an unadjusted runoff factor of 0.9.

Table B.2-1: Impervious area adjustment factors that accounts for dispersion

Pervious area hydrologic soil group	Ratio = Impervious area/Pervious area			
	<=1	2	3	4
A	0.00	0.00	0.23	0.36
B	0.00	0.27	0.42	0.53
C	0.34	0.56	0.67	0.74
D	0.86	0.93	0.97	1.00

Continuous simulation modeling in accordance with Appendix G is required to develop adjustment factors for surfaces that have an unadjusted runoff factor less than 0.9. Approval of adjustment factors for surfaces that have an unadjusted runoff factor less than 0.9 is at the discretion of the FDD and EAD.

The adjustment factors in Table B.2-1 were developed by performing continuous simulations in SWMM with default parameters from Appendix G and impervious to pervious area ratios of 1, 2, 3, and 4. When using adjustment factors from Table B.2-1:

- **Linear interpolation** shall be performed if the impervious to pervious area ratio of the site is in between one of ratios for which an adjustment factor was developed;
- Use adjustment factor for a ratio of 1 when the impervious to pervious area ratio is less than 1; and
- Adjustment factor is not allowed when the impervious to pervious area ratio is greater than 4, when the pervious area is designed as a site design BMP.

Example B.2-1: DMA is comprised of one acre of impervious area that drains to a 0.4 acre hydrologic soil group B pervious area and then the pervious area drains to a BMP. Impervious area dispersion is implemented in the DMA in accordance with SD-5 factsheet. Estimate the adjusted runoff factor for the DMA.

- Baseline Runoff Factor per Table B.1-1 = [(1*0.9+0.4*0.14)/1.4] = 0.68.
- Impervious to Pervious Ratio = 1 acre impervious area/ 0.4 acre pervious area = 2.5; since the ratio is 2.5 adjustment can be claimed.
- From Table B.2-1 the adjustment factor for hydrologic soil group B and a ratio of 2 = 0.27; ratio of 3 = 0.42.
- Linear interpolated adjustment factor for a ratio of 2.5 = 0.27 + {[(0.42 -0.27)/(3-2)]*(2.5-2)} = 0.345.
- Adjusted runoff factor for the DMA = [(1*0.9*0.345+0.4*0.14)/1.4] = 0.26.
- Note only the runoff factor for impervious area is adjusted, there is no change made to the pervious area.

B.2.1.2 Green Roofs

When green roofs are implemented in accordance with the SD-6A factsheet the green roof footprint shall be assigned a runoff factor of 0.10 for adjusted runoff factor calculations.

B.2.1.3 Permeable Pavement

When a permeable pavement is implemented in accordance with the SD-6B factsheet and it does not have an impermeable liner and has storage greater than the 85^{th} percentile depth below the underdrain, if an underdrain is present, then the footprint of the permeable pavement shall be assigned a runoff factor of 0.10 for adjusted runoff factor calculations.

Permeable Pavement can also be designed as a structural BMP to treat run on from adjacent areas. Refer to INF-3 factsheet and Appendix B.4 for additional guidance.

B.2.2 Adjustment to DCV

When the following site design BMPs are implemented the anticipated volume reduction from these BMPs shall be deducted from the DCV to estimate the volume for which the downstream structural BMP should be sized for:

- SD-1: Street trees
- SD-8 Rain barrels

B.2.2.1 Street Trees

Street tree credit volume from tree trenches or boxes (tree BMPs) is a sum of three runoff reduction volumes provided by trees that decrease the required DCV for a tributary area. The following reduction in DCV is allowed per tree based on the mature diameter of the tree canopy, when trees are implemented in accordance with SD-1 factsheet and meet the following criteria:

- Total tree credit volume is less than 0.25DCV of the project footprint and
- Single tree credit volume is less than 400 ft^3

Credit for trees that do not meet the above criteria shall be based on the criteria for sizing the tree as a storm water pollutant control BMP in SD-1 fact sheet.

Mature Tree Canopy Diameter (ft)	Tree Credit Volume (ft^3/tree)
5	10
10	40
15	100
20	180
25	290
30	420

Basis for the reduction in DCV:

Tree credit volume was estimated based on typical characteristics of street trees as follows:

It is assumed that each tree and associated trench or box is considered a single BMP, with calculations based on the media storage volume and/or the individual tree within the tree BMP as appropriate. Tree credit volume is calculated as:

$$\boldsymbol{TCV = TIV + TCIV + TETV}$$

Where:

- TCV = Tree credit volume (ft^3)
- TIV = Total infiltration volume of all storage layers within tree BMPs (ft^3)
- $TCIV$ = Total canopy interception volume of all individual trees within tree BMPs (ft^3)
- $TETV$ = Total evapotranspiration volume, sums the media evapotranspiration storage within each tree BMP (ft^3)

Total infiltration volume was calculated as the total volume infiltrated within the BMP storage layers. Infiltration volume was assumed to be 20% of the total BMP storage layer volume, the available pore space in the soil volume (porosity – field capacity). Total canopy interception volume was calculated for all street trees within the tributary area as the average interception capacity for the entire mature tree total canopy projection area. Interception capacity was determined to be 0.04 inches for all street tree sizes, an average from the findings published by Breuer et al (2003) for coniferous and deciduous trees. Total evapotranspiration volume is the available evapotranspiration storage volume (field capacity – wilting point) within the BMP storage layer media. TEVT is assumed to be 10% of the minimum soil volume. The minimum soil volume as required by SD-1 fact sheet of 2 cubic feet per unit canopy projection area was assumed for estimating reduction in DCV.

B.2.2.2 Rain Barrels

Rain barrels are containers that can capture rooftop runoff and store it for future use. Credit can be taken for the full rain barrel volume when each barrel volume is smaller than 100 gallons, implemented per SD-8 fact sheet and meet the following criteria:

- Total rain barrel volume is less than 0.25 DCV and
- Landscape areas are greater than 30 percent of the project footprint.

Credit for harvest and use systems that do not meet the above criteria shall be based on the criteria in Appendix B.3 and HU-1 fact sheet.

Worksheet B.2-1. DCV

	Design Capture Volume	Worksheet B-2.1		
1	85th percentile 24-hr storm depth from Figure B.1-1	d=		inches
2	Area tributary to BMP (s)	A=		acres
3	Area weighted runoff factor (estimate using Appendix B.1.1 and B.2.1)	C=		unitless
4	Street trees volume reduction	TCV=		cubic-feet
5	Rain barrels volume reduction	RCV=		cubic-feet
6	Calculate DCV = (3630 x C x d x A) – TCV - RCV	DCV=		cubic-feet

B.3 Harvest and Use BMPs

The purpose of this section is to provide guidance for evaluating feasibility of harvest and use BMPs, calculating harvested water demand and sizing harvest and use BMPs.

B.3.1 Planning Level Harvest and Use Feasibility

Harvest and use feasibility should be evaluated at the scale of the entire project, and not limited to a single DMA. For the purpose of initial feasibility screening, it is assumed that harvested water collected from one DMA could be used within another. Types of non-potable water demand that may apply within a project include:

- Toilet and urinal flushing
- Irrigation
- Vehicle washing
- Evaporative cooling
- Dilution water for recycled water systems
- Industrial processes
- Other non-potable uses

Worksheet B.3-1 provides a screening process for determining the preliminary feasibility for harvest and use BMPs. This worksheet should be completed for the overall project.

Worksheet B.3-1. Harvest and Use Feasibility Screening

Harvest and Use Feasibility Screening		Worksheet B.3-1
1. Is there a demand for harvested water (check all that apply) at the project site that is reliably present during the wet season? ☐ Toilet and urinal flushing ☐ Landscape irrigation ☐ Other:_______________		
2. If there is a demand; estimate the anticipated average wet season demand over a period of 36 hours. Guidance for planning level demand calculations for toilet/urinal flushing and landscape irrigation is provided in Section B.3.2. [Provide a summary of calculations here]		
3. Calculate the DCV using worksheet B-2.1. [Provide a results here]		
3a. Is the 36-hour demand greater than or equal to the DCV? Yes ⇩ / No ⇨	3b. Is the 36-hour demand greater than 0.25DCV but less than the full DCV? Yes ⇩ / No ⇨	3c. Is the 36-hour demand less than 0.25DCV? Yes ⇩
Harvest and use appears to be feasible. Conduct more detailed evaluation and sizing calculations to confirm that DCV can be used at an adequate rate to meet drawdown criteria.	Harvest and use may be feasible. Conduct more detailed evaluation and sizing calculations to determine feasibility. Harvest and use may only be able to be used for a portion of the site, or (optionally) the storage may need to be upsized to meet long term capture targets while draining in longer than 36 hours.	Harvest and use is considered to be infeasible.

B.3.2 Harvested Water Demand Calculation

The following sections provide technical references and guidance for estimating the harvested water demand of a project. These references are intended to be used for the planning phase of a project for feasibility screening purposes.

B.3.2.1 Toilet and Urinal Flushing Demand Calculations

The following guidelines should be followed for computing harvested water demand from toilet and urinal flushing:

- If reclaimed water is planned for use for toilet and urinal flushing, then the demand for harvested storm water is equivalent to the total demand minus the reclaimed water supplied, and should be reduced by the amount of reclaimed water that is available during the wet season.
- Demand calculations for toilet and urinal flushing should be based on the average rate of use during the wet season for a typical year.
- Demand calculations should include changes in occupancy over weekends and around holidays and changes in attendance/enrollment over school vacation periods.
- For facilities with generally high demand, but periodic shut downs (e.g., for vacations, maintenance, or other reasons), a project specific analysis should be conducted to determine whether the long term storm water capture performance of the system can be maintained despite shut downs.
- Such an analysis should consider the statistical distributions of precipitation and demand, most importantly the relationship of demand to the wet seasons of the year.

Table B.3-1 provides planning level demand estimates for toilet and urinal flushing per resident, or employee, for a variety of project types. The per capita use per day is based on daily employee or resident usage. For non-residential types of development, the "visitor factor" should be multiplied by the employee use to account for toilet and urinal usage for non-employees using facilities. Project proponents may suggest an alternate per capita use for airport employees and passengers, with approval from EAD and FDD.

Table B.3-1. Toilet and Urinal Water Usage per Employee and Visitor

Land Use Type[6]	Toilet User Unit of Normalization	Per Capita Use per Day		Visitor Factor[4]	Water Efficiency Factor	Total Use per Employee[6]
		Toilet Flushing[1, 2]	Urinals[3]			
Office	Employee (non-visitor)	9.0	2.27	1.1	0.5	7 (avg)
Retail	Employee (non-visitor)	9.0	2.11	1.4	0.5	
Various Industrial Uses (excludes process water)	Employee (non-visitor)	9.0	2	1	0.5	5.5

1- Based on American Waterworks Association Research Foundation,1999. Residential End Uses of Water. Denver, CO: AWWARF
2 - Based on use of 3.45 gallons per flush and average number of per employee flushes per subsector, Table D-1 for MWD (Pacific Institute, 2003)
3 - Based on use of 1.6 gallons per flush, Table D-4 and average number of per employee flushes per subsector, Appendix D (Pacific Institute, 2003)
4 - Multiplied by the demand for toilet and urinal flushing for the project to account for visitors. Based on proportion of annual use allocated to visitors and others (includes students for schools; about 5 students per employee) for each subsector in Table D-1 and D-4 (Pacific Institute, 2003)
5 – Accounts for requirements to use ultra low flush toilets in new development projects; assumed that requirements will reduce toilet and urinal flushing demand by half on average compared to literature estimates. Ultra low flush toilets are required in all new construction in California as of January 1, 1992. Ultra low flush toilets must use no more than 1.6 gallons per flush and Ultra low flush urinals must use no more than 1 gallon per flush. Note: If zero flush urinals are being used, adjust accordingly.
6 – Project proponents may suggest an alternate usage rate for airport employees and passengers, with approval from EAD.

B.3.2.2 General Requirements for Irrigation Demand Calculations

The following guidelines should be followed for computing harvested water demand from landscape irrigation:

- If reclaimed water is planned for use for landscape irrigation, then the demand for harvested storm water should be reduced by the amount of reclaimed water that is available during the wet season.
- Irrigation rates should be based on the irrigation demand exerted by the types of landscaping that are proposed for the project, with consideration for water conservation requirements.
- Irrigation rates should be estimated to reflect the average wet season rates (defined as October through April) accounting for the effect of storm events in offsetting harvested water demand. In the absence of a detailed demand study, it should be assumed that irrigation demand is not present during days with greater than 0.1 inches of rain and the subsequent 3-day period. This irrigation shutdown period is consistent with standard practice in land application of wastewater and is applicable to storm water to prevent irrigation from resulting in dry weather runoff. Based on a statistical analysis of San Diego County rainfall patterns, approximately 30 percent of wet season days would not have a demand for irrigation.

- If land application of storm water is proposed (irrigation in excess of agronomic demand), then this BMP must be considered to be an infiltration BMP and feasibility screening for infiltration must be conducted. In addition, it must be demonstrated that land application would not result in greater quantities of runoff as a result of saturated soils at the beginning of storm events. Agronomic demand refers to the rate at which plants use water.

The following sections describe methods that should be used to calculate harvested water irrigation demand. While these methods are simplified, they provide a reasonable estimate of potential harvested water demand that is appropriate for feasibility analysis and project planning. These methods may be replaced by a more rigorous project-specific analysis that meets the intent of the criteria above.

B.3.2.2.1 Demand Calculation Method

This method is based on the San Diego Municipal Code Land Development Code Landscape Standards Appendix E which includes a formula for estimating a project's annual estimated total water use based on reference evaporation, plant factor, and irrigation efficiency.

For the purpose of calculating harvested water irrigation demand applicable to the sizing of harvest and use systems, the estimated total water use has been modified to reflect typical wet-season irrigation demand. This method assumes that the wet season is defined as October through April. This method further assumes that no irrigation water will be applied during days with precipitation totals greater than 0.1 inches or within the 3 days following such an event. Based on these assumptions and an analysis of Lake Wohlford, Lindbergh and Oceanside precipitation patterns, irrigation would not be applied during approximately 30 percent of days from October through April.

The following equation is used to calculate the Modified Estimated Total Water Usage:

$$\text{Modified ETWU} = ETo_{Wet} \times [[\Sigma(PF \times HA)/IE] + SLA] \times 0.015$$

Where:

Modified ETWU = Estimated daily average water usage during wet season
ETo_{Wet} = Average reference evapotranspiration from October through April (use 2.8 inches per month, using CIMS Zone 4 from Table G.1-1)
PF = Plant Factor

Table B.3-2. Planning Level Plant Factor Recommendations

Plant Water Use	Plant Factor	Also Includes
Low	< 0.1 – 0.2	Artificial Turf
Moderate	0.3 – 0.7	
High	0.8 and greater	Water features
Special Landscape Area	1.0	

HA = Hydrozone Area (sq-ft); A section or zone of the landscaped area having plants with similar water needs.

Σ(PF x HA) = The sum of PF x HA for each individual Hydrozone (accounts for different landscaping zones).

IE = Irrigation Efficiency (assume 90 percent for demand calculations)

SLA = Special Landscape Area (sq-ft); Areas used for active and passive recreation areas, areas solely dedicated to the production of fruits and vegetables, and areas irrigated with reclaimed water.

In this equation, the coefficient (0.015) accounts for unit conversions and shut down of irrigation during and for the three days following a significant precipitation event:

0.015 = (1 mo/30 days)×(1 ft/12 in)×(7.48 gal/cu-ft)×(approximately 7 out of 10 days with irrigation demand from October through April)

B.3.2.2.2 Planning Level Irrigation Demands

To simplify the planning process, the method described above has been used to develop daily average wet season demands for a one-acre irrigated area based on the plant/landscape type. These demand estimates can be used to calculate the drawdown of harvest and use systems for the purpose of LID BMP sizing calculations.

Table B.3-3. Planning Level Irrigation Demand by Plant Factor and Landscape Type

General Landscape Type	36-Hour Planning Level Irrigation Demand (gallons per irrigated acre per 36 hour period)
Hydrozone – Low Plant Water Use	390
Hydrozone – Moderate Plant Water Use	1,470
Hydrozone – High Plant Water Use	2,640
Special Landscape Area	2,640

B.3.2.3 Calculating Other Harvested Water Demands

Calculations of other harvested water demands should be based on the knowledge of land uses, industrial processes, and other factors that are project-specific. Demand should be calculated based on the following guidelines:

- Demand calculations should represent actual demand that is anticipated during the wet season (October through April).
- Sources of demand should only be included if they are reliably and consistently present during the wet season.
- Where demands are substantial but irregular, a more detailed analysis should be conducted based on a statistical analysis of anticipated demand and precipitation patterns.

B.3.3 Sizing Harvest and Use BMPs

Sizing calculations shall demonstrate that one of two equivalent performance standards is met:

1. Harvest and use BMPs are sized to drain the tank in 36 hours following the end of rainfall. The size of the BMP is dependent on the demand (Section B.3.2) at the site; OR
2. Harvest and use BMP is designed to capture at least 80 percent of average annual (long term) runoff volume.

It is rare cisterns can be sized to capture the full DCV and use this volume in 36 hours. So when using Worksheet B.3-1 if it is determined that harvest and use BMP is feasible then the BMP should be sized to the estimated 36-hour demand. The applicant has an option to design the harvest and use BMP for greater demand, but the BMP must then be made larger to account for back to back storms. This increase in sizing can be estimated using the nomograph presented in Figure B.4-1.

According to the California Department of Health, structural BMPs that retain standing water for over 96 hours are particularly concerning for facilitating mosquito breeding. Cisterns designed for the 96-hour demand or greater should incorporate appropriate vector controls, and a vector control plan be submitted to EAD.

B.4 Infiltration BMPs

Sizing calculations shall demonstrate that one of two equivalent performance standards is met:

1. The BMP or series of BMPs captures the DCV and infiltrates this volume fully within 36 hours following the end of precipitation. This can be demonstrated through the Simple Method (Section B.4.1).

2. The BMP or series of BMPs infiltrates at least 80 percent of average annual (long term) runoff volume. This can be demonstrated using the percent capture method (Section B.4.2), through reporting of output from the San Diego Hydrology Model, or through other continuous simulation modeling meeting the criteria in Appendix G, as acceptable to the EAD and FDD. This method is **not** applicable for sizing biofiltration BMPs.

The methods to show compliance with these standards are provided in the following sections.

B.4.1 Simple Method

Stepwise Instructions:

1. Compute DCV using Worksheet B.4-1
2. Estimate design infiltration rate using Worksheet D.5-1
3. Design BMP(s) to ensure that the DCV is fully retained (i.e., no surface discharge during the design event) and the stored effective depth draws down in no longer than 36 hours.

Worksheet B.4-1: Simple Sizing Method for Infiltration BMPs

	Simple Sizing Method for Infiltration BMPs	Worksheet B.4-1		
1	DCV (Worksheet B-2.1)	DCV=		cubic-feet
2	Estimated design infiltration rate (Worksheet D.5-1)	K_{design}=		in/hr
3	Available BMP surface area	A_{BMP}=		sq-ft
4	Average effective depth in the BMP footprint (DCV/A_{BMP})	D_{avg}=		feet
5	Drawdown time, T (D_{avg} *12/K_{design})	T=		hours
6	Provide alternative calculation of drawdown time, if needed.			

Notes:

- Drawdown time must be less than 36 hours. This criterion was set to achieve average annual capture of 80% to account for back to back storms (See rationale in Section B.4.3). In order to use a different drawdown time, BMPs should be sized using the percent capture method (Section B.4.2).
- The average effective depth calculation should account for any aggregate/media in the BMP. For example, 4 feet of stone at a porosity of 0.4 would equate to 1.6 feet of effective depth.
- This method may overestimate drawdown time for BMPs that drain through both the bottom and walls of the system. BMP specific calculations of drawdown time may be provided that account for BMP-specific geometry.

B.4.2 Percent Capture Method

This section describes the recommended method of sizing volume-based BMPs to achieve the 80 percent capture performance criterion. This method has a number of potential applications for sizing BMPs, including:

- Use this method when a BMP can draw down in less than 36 hours and it is desired to demonstrate that 80 percent capture can be achieved using a BMP volume smaller than the DCV.
- Use this method to determine how much volume (greater than the DCV) must be provided to achieve 80 percent capture when the drawdown time of the BMP exceeds 36 hours. Note: if the drawdown time exceeds 96 hours, appropriate vector control should be incorporated.
- Use this method to determine how much volume should be provided to achieve 80 percent capture when upstream BMP(s) have achieved some capture, but have not achieved 80 percent capture.

By nature, the percent capture method is an iterative process that requires some initial assumptions about BMP design parameters and subsequent confirmation that these assumptions are valid. For example, sizing calculations depend on the assumed drawdown time, which depends on BMP depth, which may in turn need to be adjusted to provide the required volume within the allowable footprint. In general, the selection of reasonable BMP design parameters in the first iteration will result in minimal required additional iterations. Figure B.4-1 presents the nomograph for use in sizing retention BMPs in San Diego County.

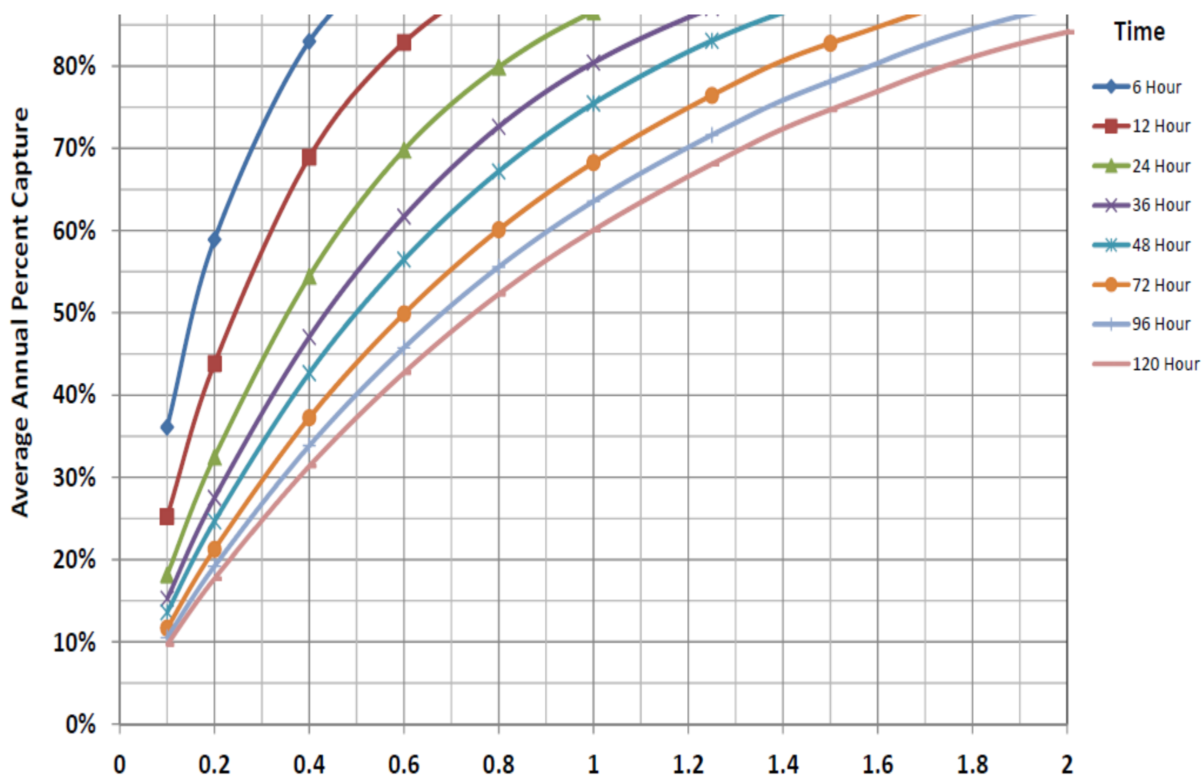


Figure B.4-1: Percent Capture Nomograph

B.4.2.1 Stepwise Instructions for sizing a single BMP:

1. Estimate the drawdown time of the proposed BMP by estimating the design infiltration rate (Worksheet D.5-1) and accounting for BMP dimensions/geometry. See the applicable BMP Fact Sheet for specific guidance on how to convert BMP geometry to estimated drawdown time.
2. Using the estimated drawdown time and the nomograph from Figure B.4-1 locate where the line corresponding to the estimated drawdown time intersects with 80 percent capture. Pivot to the X axis and read the fraction of the DCV that needs to be provided in the BMP to achieve this level of capture.
3. Calculate the DCV using Worksheet B.2-1.
4. Multiply the result of Step 2 by the DCV (Step 3). This is the required BMP design volume.
5. Design the BMP to retain the required volume, and confirm that the drawdown time is no more than 25 percent greater than estimated in Step 1. If the computed drawdown time is greater than 125 percent of the estimated drawdown, then return to Step 1 and revise the initial drawdown time assumption.

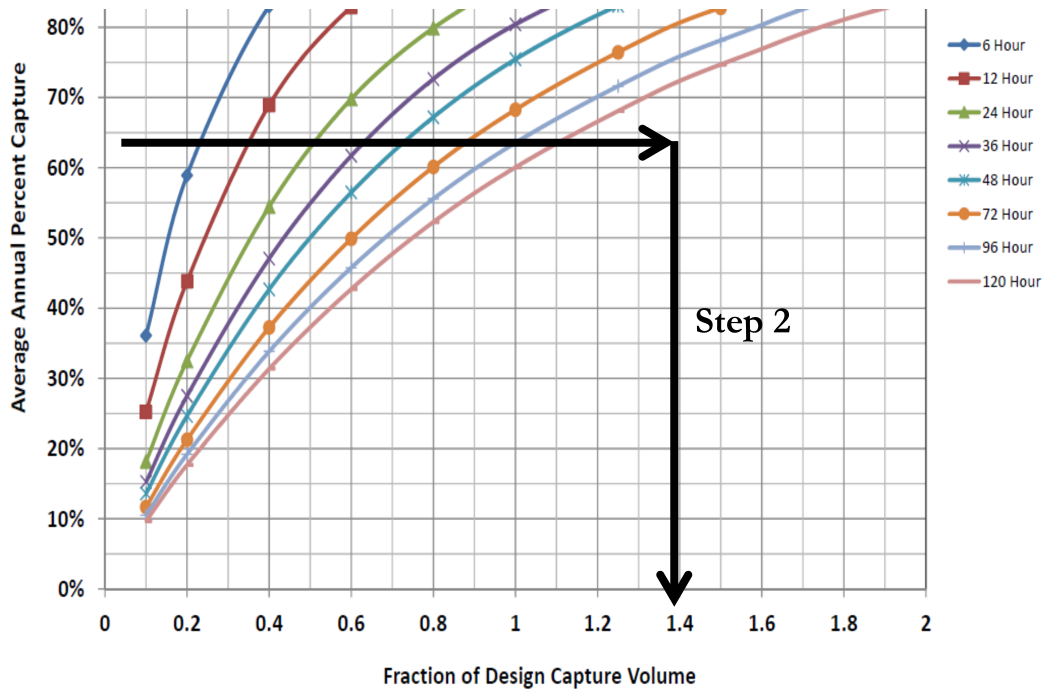
See the respective BMP facts sheets for BMP-specific instructions for the calculation of volume and drawdown time. The above method can also be used to size and/or evaluate the performance of other retention BMPs (evapotranspiration, harvest and use) that have a drawdown rate that can be approximated as constant throughout the year or over the wet season. In order to use this method for other retention BMPs, drawdown time in Step 1 will need to be evaluated using an applicable method for the type of BMP selected. After completing Step 1 continue to Step 2 listed above.

Example B.4.2.1 Percent Capture Method for Sizing a Single BMP:

Given:
• Estimated drawdown time: 72 Hours • DCV: 3000 ft^3
Required:
• Determine the volume required to achieve 80 percent capture.
Solution:
1. Estimated drawdown time = 72 Hours 2. Fraction of DCV required = 1.35 3. DCV = 3000 ft^3 (Given for this example; To be estimated using Worksheet B.2-1) 4. Required BMP volume = 1.35 x 3000 = 4050 ft^3 5. Design BMP and confirm drawdown Time is $\leq$ 90 Hours (72 Hours +25%)

Example B.4.2.1 Continued:

Graphical Operations Supporting Solution:



Percent Capture Nomograph

B.4.2.2 Stepwise Instructions for sizing BMPs in series:

For projects where BMPs in series have to be implemented to meet the performance standard the following stepwise procedure shall be used to size the downstream BMP to achieve the 80 percent capture performance criterion:

1. Using the upstream BMP parameters (volume and drawdown time) estimate the average annual capture efficiency achieved by the upstream BMP using the nomograph.
2. Estimate the drawdown time of the proposed downstream BMP by estimating the design infiltration rate (Worksheet D.5-1) and accounting for BMP dimensions/geometry. See the applicable BMP Fact Sheet for specific guidance on how to convert BMP geometry to estimated drawdown time. Use the nomograph and locate where the line corresponding to the estimated drawdown time intersects with 80 percent capture. Pivot to the horizontal axis and read the fraction of the DCV that needs to be provided in the BMP. This is referred to as X_1.
3. Trace a horizontal line on the nomograph using the capture efficiency of the upstream BMP estimated in Step 1. Find where the line traced intersects with the drawdown time of the downstream BMP (Step 2). Pivot and read down to the horizontal axis to yield the fraction of the DCV already provided by the upstream BMP. This is referred to as X_2.

4. Subtract X_2 (Step 3) from X_1 (Step 2) to determine the fraction of the design volume that must be provided in the downstream BMP to achieve 80 percent capture to meet the performance standard.
5. Multiply the result of Step 4 by the DCV. This is the required downstream BMP design volume.
6. Design the BMP to retain the required volume, and confirm that the drawdown time is no more than 25 percent greater than estimated in Step 2. If the computed drawdown time is greater than 125 percent of the estimated drawdown, then return to Step 2 and revise the initial drawdown time assumption.

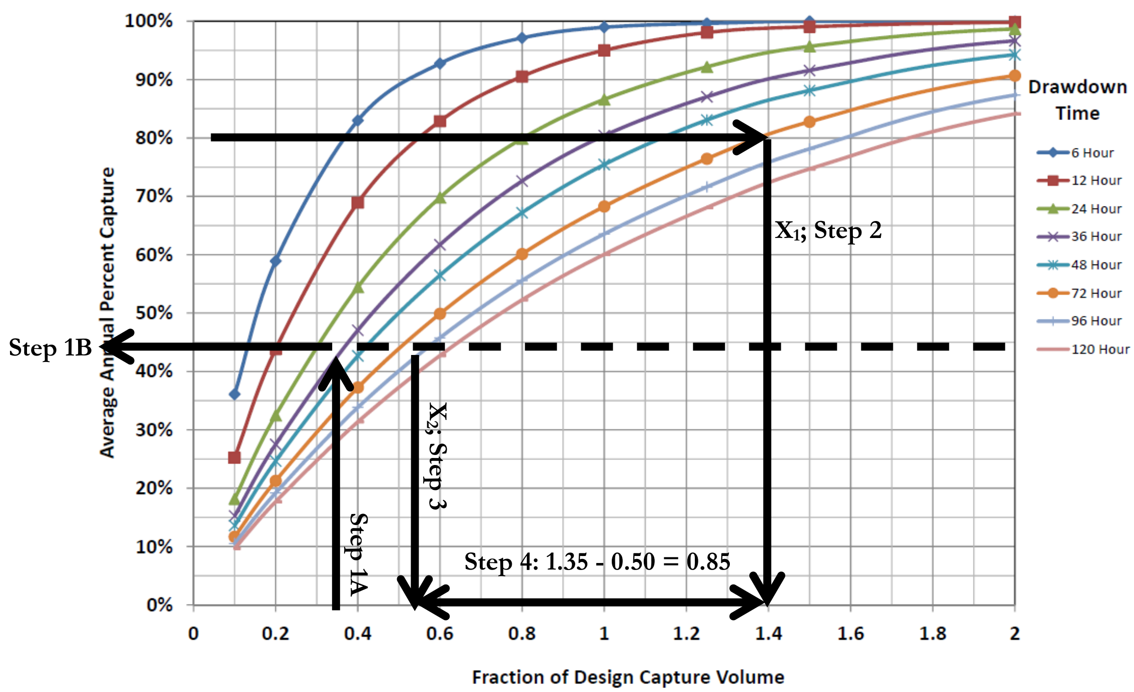
See the respective BMP facts sheets for BMP-specific instructions for the calculation of volume and drawdown time.

Example B.4.2.2 Percent Capture Method for Sizing BMPs in Series:

Given:
• Estimated drawdown time for downstream BMP: 72 Hours • DCV for the area draining to the BMP: 3000 ft^3 • Upstream BMP volume: 900 ft^3 • Upstream BMP drawdown time: 24 Hours
Required:
• Determine the volume required in the downstream BMP to achieve 80 percent capture.
Solution:
1. Step 1A: Upstream BMP Capture Ratio = 900/3000 = 0.3; Step 1B: Average annual capture efficiency achieved by upstream BMP = 44% 2. Downstream BMP drawdown = 72 hours; Fraction of DCV required to achieve 80% capture = 1.35 3. Locate intersection of design capture efficiency and drawdown time for upstream BMP (See Graph); Fraction of DCV already provided (X_2) = 0.50 (See Graph) 4. Fraction of DCV Required by downstream BMP = 1.35-0.50 = 0.85 5. DCV (given) = 3000 ft^3 ; Required downstream BMP volume = 3000 ft^3 x 0.85 = 2,550 ft^3 6. Design BMP and confirm drawdown Time is $\leq$ 90 Hours (72 Hours +25%)

Example B.4.2.2 Continued:

Graphical Operations Supporting Solution:



Percent Capture Nomograph

B.4.3 Technical Basis for Equivalent Sizing Methods

Storm water BMPs can be conceptualized as having a storage volume and a treatment rate, in various proportions. Both are important in the long-term performance of the BMP under a range of actual storm patterns, depths, and inter-event times. Long-term performance is measured by the operation of a BMP over the course of multiple years, and provides a more complete metric than the performance of a BMP during a single event, which does not take into account antecedent conditions, including multiple storms arriving in short timeframes. A BMP that draws down more quickly would be expected to capture a greater fraction of overall runoff (i.e., long-term runoff) than an identically sized BMP that draws down more slowly. This is because storage is made available more quickly, so subsequent storms are more likely to be captured by the BMP. In contrast a BMP with a long drawdown time would stay mostly full, after initial filling, during periods of sequential storms. The volume in the BMP that draws down more quickly is more "valuable" in terms of long term performance than the volume in the one that draws down more slowly. The MS4 permit definition of the DCV does not specify a drawdown time, therefore the definition is not a complete indicator of a

BMP's level of performance. An accompanying performance-based expression of the BMP sizing standard is essential to ensure uniformity of performance across a broad range of BMPs and helps prevents BMP designs from being used that would not be effective.

An evaluation of the relationships between BMP design parameters and expected long term capture efficiency has been conducted to address the needs identified above. Relationships have been developed through a simplified continuous simulation analysis of precipitation, runoff, and routing, that relate BMP design volume and storage recovery rate (i.e., drawdown time) to an estimated long term level of performance using United States Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA) SWMM and parameters listed in Appendix G for Lake Wohlford, Lindbergh, and Oceanside rain gages. Comparison of the relationships developed using the three gages indicated that the differences in relative capture estimates are within the uncertainties in factors used to develop the relationships. For example, the estimated average annual capture for the BMP sized for the DCV and 36 hour drawdown using Lake Wohlford, Lindbergh, and Oceanside are 80%, 76% and 83% respectively. In an effort to reduce the number of curves that are made available, relationships developed using Lake Wohlford are included in this manual for use in the whole San Diego County region.

Figure B.4-1 demonstrated that a BMP sized for the runoff volume from the 85th percentile, 24-hour storm event (i.e., the DCV), which draws down in 36 hours is capable of managing approximately 80 percent of the average annual. There is long precedent for 80 percent capture of average annual runoff as approximately the point at which larger BMPs provide decreasing capture efficiency benefit (also known as the "knee of the curve") for BMP sizing. The characteristic shape of the plot of capture efficiency versus storage volume in Figure B.4-1 illustrates this concept.

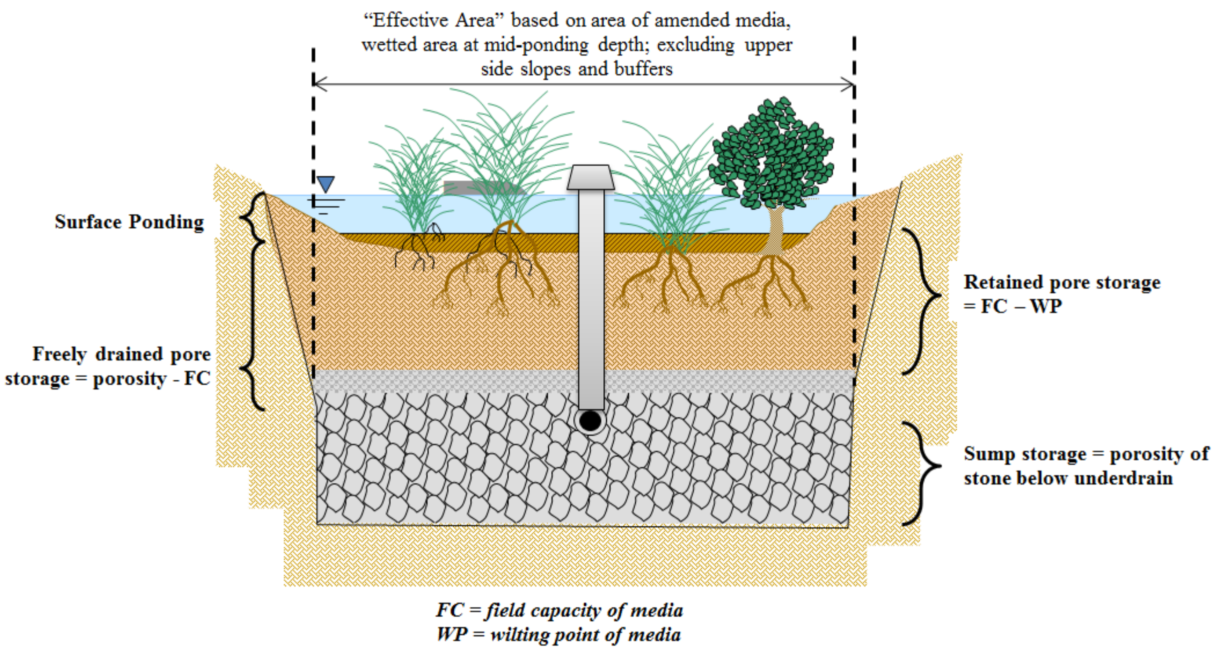
As such, this equivalency (between DCV draw down in 36-hours and 80 percent capture) has been utilized to provide a common currency between volume-based BMPs with a wide range of drawdown rates. This approach allows flexibility in the design of BMPs while ensuring consistent performance.

B.5 Biofiltration BMPs

Biofiltration BMPs shall be sized by one of the following sizing methods:

Option 1: Treat 1.5 times the portion of the DCV not reliably retained onsite, OR

Option 2: Treat 1.0 times the portion of the DCV not reliably retained onsite; and additionally check that the system has a total static (i.e., non-routed) storage volume, including pore spaces and pre-filter detention volume, equal to at least 0.75 times the portion of the DCV not reliably retained onsite.



Explanation of Biofiltration Volume Compartments for Sizing Purposes

Worksheet B.5-1 provides a simple sizing method for sizing biofiltration BMP with partial retention and biofiltration BMP.

When using sizing option 1 a routing period of 6 hours is allowed. The routing period was estimated based on 50th percentile storm duration for storms similar to 85th percentile rainfall depth. It was estimated based on inspection of continuous rainfall data from Lake Wohlford, Lindbergh and Oceanside rain gages.

Worksheet B.5-1: Simple Sizing Method for Biofiltration BMPs

Simple Sizing Method for Biofiltration BMPs		Worksheet B.5-1 (Page 1 of 2)	
1	Remaining DCV after implementing retention BMPs		cubic-feet
Partial Retention			
2	Infiltration rate from Worksheet D.5-1 if partial infiltration is feasible		in/hr.
3	Allowable drawdown time for aggregate storage below the underdrain	36	hours
4	Depth of runoff that can be infiltrated [Line 2 x Line 3]		inches
5	Aggregate pore space	0.40	in/in
6	Required depth of gravel below the underdrain [Line 4/ Line 5]		inches
7	Assumed surface area of the biofiltration BMP		sq-ft
8	Media retained pore storage	0.1	in/in
9	Volume retained by BMP [[Line 4 + (Line 12 x Line 8)]/12] x Line 7		cubic-feet
10	DCV that requires biofiltration [Line 1 – Line 9]		cubic-feet
BMP Parameters			
11	Surface Ponding [6 inch minimum, 12 inch maximum]		inches
12	Media Thickness [18 inches minimum], also add mulch layer thickness to this line for sizing calculations		inches
13	Aggregate Storage above underdrain invert (12 inches typical) – use 0 inches for sizing if the aggregate is not over the entire bottom surface area		inches
14	Media available pore space	0.2	in/in
15	Media filtration rate to be used for sizing (5 in/hr. with no outlet control; if the filtration rate is controlled by the outlet use the outlet controlled rate)	5	in/hr.
Baseline Calculations			
16	Allowable Routing Time for sizing	6	hours
17	Depth filtered during storm [Line 15 x Line 16]	30	inches
18	Depth of Detention Storage [Line 11 + (Line 12 x Line 14) + (Line 13 x Line 5)]		inches
19	Total Depth Treated [Line 17 + Line 18]		inches

Worksheet Error! No text of specified style in document.**-1: Simple Sizing Method for Biofiltration BMPs (continued)**

Simple Sizing Method for Biofiltration BMPs		Worksheet B.5-1 (Page 2 of 2)	
Option 1 – Biofilter 1.5 times the DCV			
20	Required biofiltered volume [1.5 x Line 10]		cubic-feet
21	Required Footprint [Line 20/ Line 19] x 12		sq-ft
Option 2 - Store 0.75 of remaining DCV in pores and ponding			
22	Required Storage (surface + pores) Volume [0.75 x Line 10]		cubic-feet
23	Required Footprint [Line 22/ Line 18] x 12		sq-ft
Footprint of the BMP			
24	Area draining to the BMP		sq-ft
25	Adjusted Runoff Factor for drainage area (Refer to Appendix B.1 and B.2)		
26	BMP Footprint Sizing Factor (Default 0.03 or an alternative minimum footprint sizing factor from Worksheet B.5-2, Line 11)		unitless
27	Minimum BMP Footprint [Line 24 x Line 25 x Line 26]		sq-ft
28	Footprint of the BMP = Maximum(Minimum(Line 21, Line 23), Line 27)		sq-ft
Check for Volume Reduction [Not applicable for No Infiltration Condition]			
29	Calculate the fraction of the DCV retained by the BMP [Line 9/ Line 1]		unitless
30	Minimum required fraction of DCV retained for partial infiltration condition	0.375	unitless
31	Is the retained DCV > 0.375? If the answer is no increase the footprint sizing factor in Line 26 until the answer is yes for this criterion.	☐ Yes	☐ No

Note:

1. Line 7 is used to estimate the amount of volume retained by the BMP. Update assumed surface area in Line 7 until its equivalent to the required biofiltration footprint (either Line 21 or Line 23)
2. The DCV fraction of 0.375 is based on a 40% average annual percent capture and a 36-hour drawdown time.
3. The increase in footprint for volume reduction can be optimized using the approach presented in Appendix B.5.2. The optimized footprint cannot be smaller than the alternative minimum footprint sizing factor from Worksheet B.5-2.
4. If the proposed biofiltration BMP footprint is smaller than the alternative minimum footprint sizing factor from Worksheet B.5-2, but satisfies Option 1 or Option 2 sizing, it is considered a compact biofiltration BMP and may be allowed at the discretion of the EAD and FDD, if it meets the requirements in Appendix F.

B.5.1 Basis for Minimum Sizing Factor for Biofiltration BMPs

B.5.1.1 Introduction

MS4 Permit Provision E.3.c.(1)(a)(i)

The MS4 Permit describes conceptual performance goals for biofiltration BMPs and specifies numeric criteria for sizing biofiltration BMPs (See Section 2.2.1 of this Manual).

However, the MS4 Permit does not define a specific footprint sizing factor or design profile that must be provided for the BMP to be considered "biofiltration." Rather, the MS4 Permit specifies (Footnote 25):

> **As part of the Copermittee's update to its BMP Design Manual, pursuant to Provision E.3.d, the Copermittee must provide guidance for hydraulic loading rates and other biofiltration design criteria necessary to maximize storm water retention and pollutant removal.**

To meet this provision, this manual includes specific criteria for design of biofiltration BMPs. Among other criteria, a minimum footprint sizing factor of 3 percent (BMP footprint area as percent of contributing area times adjusted runoff factor) is specified. The purpose of this section is to provide the technical rationale for this 3 percent minimum sizing factor.

B.5.1.2 Conceptual Need for Minimum Sizing Factor

Under the 2011 Model SUSMP, a sizing factor of 4 percent was used for sizing biofiltration BMPs. This value was derived based on the goal of treating the runoff from a 0.2 inch per hour uniform precipitation intensity at a constant media flow rate of 5 inches per hour. While this method was simple, it was considered to be conservative as it did not account for significant transient storage present in biofiltration BMPs (i.e., volume in surface storage and subsurface storage that would need to fill before overflow occurred). Under this manual, biofiltration BMPs will typically provide subsurface storage to promote infiltration losses; therefore typical BMP profiles will tend to be somewhat deeper than those provided under the 2011 Model SUSMP. A deeper profile will tend to provide more transient storage and allow smaller footprint sizing factors while still providing similar or better treatment capacity and pollutant removal. Therefore a reduction in the minimum sizing factor from the factor used in the 2011 Model SUSMP is supportable. However, as footprint decreases, issues related to potential performance, operations, and/or maintenance can increase for a number of reasons:

1) As the surface area of the media bed decreases, the sediment loading per unit area increases, increasing the risk of clogging. While vigorous plant growth can help maintain permeability of soil, there is a conceptual limit above which plants may not be able to mitigate for the sediment loading. Scientific knowledge is not conclusive in this area.
2) With smaller surface areas and greater potential for clogging, water may be more likely to bypass the system via overflow before filling up the profile of the BMP.
3) As the footprint of the system decreases, the amount of water that can be infiltrated from subsurface storage layers and evapotranspire from plants and soils tends to decrease.
4) With smaller sizing factors, the hydraulic loading per unit area increases, potentially reducing the average contact time of water in the soil media and diminishing treatment performance.

The MS4 Permit requires that volume and pollutant retention be maximized. Therefore, a minimum sizing factor was determined to be needed. This minimum sizing factor does not replace the need to conduct sizing calculations as described in this manual; rather it establishes a lower limit on required size of biofiltration BMPs as the last step in these calculations. Additionally, it does not apply to alternative biofiltration designs that utilize the checklist in Appendix F (Biofiltration Standard and Checklist). Acceptable alternative designs (such as proprietary systems meeting Appendix F criteria) typically include design features intended to allow acceptable performance with a smaller footprint and have undergone field scale testing to evaluate performance and required O&M frequency.

B.5.1.3 Lines of Evidence to Select Minimum Sizing Factor

Three primary lines of evidence were used to select the minimum sizing factor of 3 percent (BMP footprint area as percent of contributing area times adjusted runoff factor) in this manual:

1. Typical design calculations.
2. Volume reduction performance.
3. Sediment clogging calculations.

These lines of evidence and associated findings are explained below.

Typical Design Calculations

A range of BMP profiles were evaluated for different design rainfall depths and soil conditions. Worksheet B.5-1 was used for each case to compute the required footprint sizing factor. For these calculations, the amount of water filtered during the storm event was determined based on a media filtration rate of 5 inches per hour and a routing time of 6 hours. These input assumptions are considered to be well-supported and consistent with the intent of the MS4 Permit. These calculations generally yielded footprint factors between 1.5 and 4.9 percent. In the interest of establishing a uniform County-wide minimum sizing factor, a 3 percent sizing factor was selected from this range, consistent with other lines of evidence.

Volume Reduction Performance

Consistent with guidance in Fact Sheet PR-1, the amount of retention storage (in gravel sump below underdrain) that would drain in 36 hours was calculated for a range of soil types. This was used to estimate the volume reduction that would be expected to be achieved. For a sizing factor of 3 percent and a soil filtration rate of 0.20 inches per hour, the average annual volume reduction was estimated to be approximately 40 percent (via percent capture method; see Appendix B.4.2).

In describing the basis for equivalency between retention and biofiltration (1.5 multiplier), the MS4 Permit Fact Sheet referred to analysis prepared in the Ventura County Technical Guidance Manual. The Ventura County analysis considered the pollutant treatment as well as the volume reduction provided by biofiltration in considering equivalency to retention. This analysis assumed an average long term volume reduction of 40 percent based on analysis of data from the International Stormwater BMP Database. The calculations of estimated volume reduction at a 3 percent sizing factor is (previous paragraph) consistent with this value. While estimated volume reduction is sensitive to site-specific factors, this analysis suggests that a sizing factor of approximately 3 percent provides levels of volume reduction that are reasonably consistent with the intent of the MS4 Permit.

Sediment Clogging Calculations

As sediment accumulates in a filter, the permeability of the filter tends to decline. The lifespan of the filter bed can be estimated by determining the rate of sediment loading per unit area of the filter bed. To determine the media bed surface area sizing factor needed to provide a target lifespan, simple sediment loading calculations were conducted based on typical urban conditions. The inputs and results of this calculation are summarized in Table B.5-1.

Table B.5-1: Inputs and Results of Clogging Calculation

Parameter	Value	Source
Representative TSS Event Mean Concentration, mg/L	100	Approximate average of San Diego Land Use Event Mean Concentrations from San Diego River and San Luis Rey River WQIP
Runoff Coefficient of Impervious Surface	0.90	Table B.1-1
Runoff Coefficient of Pervious Surface	0.10	Table B.1-1 for landscape areas
Imperviousness	40% to 90%	Planning level assumption, covers typical range of single family to commercial land uses
Average Annual Precipitation, inches	11 to 13	Typical range for much of urbanized San Diego County
Load to Initial Maintenance, kg/m^2	10	Pitt, R. and S. Clark, 2010. Evaluation of Biofiltration Media for Engineered Natural Treatment Systems.
Allowable period to initial clogging, yr	10	Planning-level assumption
Estimated BMP Footprint Needed for 10-Year Design Life	2.8 to 3.3%	Calculated

This analysis suggests that a 3 percent sizing factor, coupled with sediment source controls and careful system design, should provide reasonable protection against premature clogging. However, there is substantial uncertainty in sediment loading and the actual load to clog that will be observed under field conditions in the San Diego climate. Additionally this analysis did not account for the effect of plants on maintaining soil permeability. Therefore this line of evidence should be considered provisional, subject to refinement based on field scale experience. As field scale experience is gained about the lifespan of biofiltration BMPs in San Diego and the mitigating effects of plants on long term clogging, it may be possible to justify lower factors of safety and therefore smaller design sizes in some cases. If a longer lifespan is desired and/or greater sediment load is expected, then a larger sizing factor may be justified.

B.5.1.4 Discussion

Generally, the purpose of a minimum sizing factor is to help improve the performance and reliability of standard biofiltration systems and limit the use of sizing methods and assumptions that may lead to designs that are less consistent with the intent of the MS4 Permit.

Ultimately, this factor is a surrogate for a variety of design considerations, including clogging and associated hydraulic capacity, volume reduction potential, and treatment contact time. A prudent design approach should consider each of these factors on a project-specific basis and identify whether site conditions warrant a larger or smaller factor. For example a system treating only rooftop runoff in an area without any allowable infiltration may have negligible clogging risk and negligible volume reduction potential – a smaller sizing factor may not substantially reduce performance in either of these areas. Alternatively, for a site with high sediment load and limited pre-treatment potential, a larger sizing factor may be warranted to help mitigate potential clogging risks. EAD and FDD have discretion to accept alternative sizing factor(s) based on project-specific or jurisdiction-specific considerations. Additionally, the recommended minimum sizing factor may change over time as more experience with biofiltration is obtained.

The worksheet B.5-2 below shall be used to support a request for an alternative minimum footprint sizing factor. Based on a review of the submitted worksheet and supporting documentation, the use of a smaller footprint sizing factor may be approved at the discretion of the EAD and FDD. If approved, the estimated footprint from the worksheet below can be used in line 26 of worksheet B.5-1 in lieu of the 3 percent minimum footprint value.

This worksheet includes the following general steps to calculate the minimum footprint sizing factor:

- Select a "load to clog" that is representative of the type of BMP proposed
- Select a target life span (i.e., frequency of major maintenance) that is acceptable to the EAD and FDD. A default value of 10 years is recommended.
- Compile information about the DMA from other parts of the SWQMP development process.
- Determine the event mean concentration (EMC) of TSS that is appropriate for the DMA
- Perform calculations to determine the minimum footprint to provide the target lifespan.

Worksheet B.5-2: Calculation of Alternative Minimum Footprint Sizing Factor

Alternative Minimum Footprint Sizing Factor		Worksheet B.5-2 (Page 1 of 2)	
1	Area draining to the BMP		sq-ft
2	Adjusted Runoff Factor for drainage area (Refer to Appendix B.1 and B.2)		
3	Load to Clog[1] (See Table B.5-2 for guidance; L_c)	2.0	lb/sq-ft
4	Allowable Period to Accumulate Clogging Load (T_L)	10	years

Volume Weighted EMC Calculation

Land Use	Fraction of Total DCV	TSS EMC (mg/L)	Product
Single Family Residential		123	
Commercial		128	
Industrial		125	
Education (Municipal)		132	
Transportation		78	
Multi-family Residential		40	
Roof Runoff		14	
Low Traffic Areas		50	
Open Space		216	
Other, specify:			
Other, specify:			
Other, specify:			

5	Volume Weighted EMC (sum of all products)		mg/L

BMP Parameters

6	If pretreatment measures are included in the design, apply an adjustment of 25%[2] [Line 5 x (1-0.25)]		mg/L
7	Average Annual Precipitation		inches
8	Calculate the Average Annual Runoff (Line 7 x 43,560/12) x Line2		cu-ft/yr
9	Calculate the Average Annual TSS Load (Line 8 x 62.4 x Line 6)/10^6		lb/yr
10	Calculate the BMP Footprint Needed (Line 9 x Line 4)/Line 3		sq-ft
11	Calculate the Alternative Minimum Footprint Sizing Factor [Line 10/ (Line 1 x Line 2)]		

[1] Load to clog value should be in the range of 2 – 5 lb/sq-ft per Pitt and Clark (2010). If selecting a value other than 2, a justification for the value selected is required. See guidance in Table B.5-2.

[2] A value of 25 percent is supported by Maniquiz-Redillas et al. (2014) study, which found a pretreatment sediment capture range of 15% - 35%. If using a value outside of this range, documentation of the selected value is required. A value of 50 percent can be claimed for a system with an active Washington State TAPE approval rating for "pre-treatment."

Table B.5-2: Typical land use total suspended solids (TSS) event mean concentration (EMC) values.

Land Use	TSS EMC[1], mg/L
Single Family Residential	123
Commercial	128
Industrial	125
Education (Municipal)	132
Transportation[2]	78
Multi-family Residential	40
Roof Runoff[3]	14
Low Traffic Areas[4]	50
Open Space	216

Table B.5-3: Guidance for Selecting Load to Clog (LC)

BMP Configuration	Load to Clog, L_c, lb/sq-ft
Baseline: Approximately 50 percent vegetative cover; typical fine sand and compost blend	2
Baseline + increase vegetative cover to at least 75 percent	3
Baseline + include coarser sand to increase initial permeability to 20 to 30 in/hr; control flowrate with outlet control	3
Baseline + increase vegetative cover and include more permeable media with outlet control, per above	4

References

Charters, F.J., Cochrane, T.A., and O'Sullivan, A.D., (2015). Particle Size Distribution Variance in Untreated Urban Runoff and its implication on treatment selection. Water Research, 85 (2015), pg. 337-345.

Davis, A.P. and McCuen, R.H., (2005). Stormwater Management for Smart Growth. Springer Science & Business Media, pg. 155.

Maniquiz-Redillas, M.C., Geronimo, F.K.F, and Kim, L-H. Investigation on the Effectiveness of Pretreatment in Stormwater Management Technologies. Journal of Environmental Sciences, 26 (2014), pg. 1824-1830.

Pitt, R. and Clark, S.E., (2010). Evaluation of Biofiltration Media for Engineered Natural Treatment Systems. Geosyntec Consultants and The Boeing Company.

[1] EMCs are from SBPAT datasets for SLR and SDR Watersheds – Arithmetic Estimates of the Lognormal Summary Statistics for San Diego, unless otherwise noted.

[2] EMCs are based on Los Angeles region default SBPAT datasets due to lack of available San Diego data.

[3] Value represents the average first flush concentration for roof runoff (Charters et al., 2015).

[4] Davis and McCuen (2005)

B.5.2 Sizing Biofiltration BMPs Downstream of a Storage Unit

B.5.2.1 Introduction

In scenarios, where the BMP footprint is governed based on Option 1 (Line 21 of Worksheet B.5-1) or the required volume reduction of 40% average annual (long term) runoff capture for partial infiltration conditions (Line 31 of Worksheet B.5.1) the footprint of the biofiltration BMP can be optimized using the sizing calculations in this Appendix B.5.2 when there is an upstream storage unit (e.g. cistern) that can be used to regulate the flows through the biofiltration BMP.

This methodology is **not** applicable when the minimum footprint factor is governed based on the alternative minimum footprint sizing factor calculated using Worksheet B.5-2 (Line 11). Biofiltration BMP smaller than the alternative minimum footprint sizing factor is considered compact biofiltration BMP and may be allowed at the discretion of the EAD and FDD if the BMP meets the requirements in Appendix F **and** Option 1 or Option 2 sizing in Worksheet B.5-1.

B.5.2.2 Sizing Calculations

Sizing calculations for the biofiltration footprint shall demonstrate that one of two equivalent performance standards is met:

1. Use continuous simulation and demonstrate one of the following is met based on the infiltration condition identified in Chapter 5.4.2:
    a. **No infiltration condition**: The BMP or series of BMPs biofilters at least 92 percent of average annual (long term) runoff volume. This can be demonstrated through reporting of output from the San Diego Hydrology Model, or through other continuous simulation modeling meeting the criteria in Appendix G, as acceptable to the EAD and FDD. The 92 percent of average annual runoff treatment corresponds to the average capture achieved by implementing a BMP with 1.5 times the DCV and a drawdown time of 36 hours (Appendix B.4.2).
    b. **Partial infiltration condition**: The BMP or series of BMPs biofilters at least 92 percent of average annual (long term) runoff volume and achieves a volume reduction of at least 40 percent of average annual (long term) runoff volume. This can be demonstrated through reporting of output from the San Diego Hydrology Model, or through other continuous simulation modeling meeting the criteria in Appendix G, as acceptable to the EAD and FDD.
2. Use the simple sizing method in Worksheet B.5-3. The applicant is also required to complete Worksheet B.5-1 and B.5-2 when the applicant elects to use Worksheet B.5-3 to optimize the biofiltration BMP footprint. Worksheet B.5-3 was developed to satisfy the following two criteria as applicable:
    a. Greater than 92 percent of the average annual runoff volume from the storage unit is routed to the biofiltration BMP through the low flow orifice and the peak flow from the low flow orifice can instantaneously be filtered through the biofiltration media. If the outlet design includes orifices at different elevations and an overflow structure,

only flows from the overflow structure should be excluded from the calculation (both for 92 percent capture and for peak flow to the biofiltration BMP that needs to be instantaneously filtered), unless the flows from other orifices also bypass the biofiltration BMP, in which case flows from the orifices that bypass should also be excluded.

b. The retention losses from the optimized biofiltration BMP is equal to or greater than the retention losses from the conventional biofiltration BMP. This second criterion is only applicable for partial infiltration condition.

Table B.5-4 Storage required for different drawdown times

Drawdown Time (hours)	Storage requirement (below the overflow elevation, or below outlet elevation that bypass the biofiltration BMP)
12	0.85 DCV
24	1.25 DCV
36	1.50 DCV
48	1.80 DCV
72	2.20 DCV
96	2.60 DCV
120	2.80 DCV

For drawdown times that are outside the range of values presented in Table B.5-4 above the storage unit should be designed to discharge greater than 92% average annual capture to the downstream Biofiltration BMP.

Worksheet B.5-3: Optimized Biofiltration BMP Footprint when Downstream of a Storage Unit

Optimized Biofiltration BMP Footprint when Downstream of a Storage Unit		Worksheet B.5-3	
1	Area draining to the storage unit and biofiltration BMP		sq-ft
2	Adjusted runoff factor for drainage area (Refer to Appendix B.1 and B.2)		
3	Effective impervious area draining to the storage unit and biofiltration BMP [Line 1 x Line 2]		sq-ft
4	Remaining DCV after implementing retention BMPs		cubic-feet
5	Infiltration rate from Worksheet D.5-1 if partial infiltration is feasible		ft/hr.
6	Media Thickness [1.5 feet minimum], also add mulch layer thickness to this line for sizing calculations		ft
7	Media filtration rate to be used for sizing (0.42 ft/hr. with no outlet control; if the filtration rate is controlled by the outlet use the outlet controlled rate)		ft/hr
8	Media retained pore storage	0.1	ft/ft
Storage Unit Requirement			
9	Drawdown time of the storage unit, minimum(from the elevation that bypasses the biofiltration BMP, overflow elevation)		hours
10	Storage required to achieve greater than 92 percent capture (see Table B.5-4)		fraction
11	Storage required in cubic feet (Line 4 x Line 10)		cubic-feet
12	Storage provided in the design, minimum(from the elevation that bypasses the biofiltration BMP, overflow elevation)		cubic-feet
13	Is Line 12 ≥ Line 11. If no increase storage provided until this criteria is met	☐ Yes	☐ No
Criteria 1: BMP Footprint Biofiltration Capacity			
14	Peak flow from the storage unit to the biofiltration BMP (using the elevation used to evaluate the percent capture)		cfs
15	Required biofiltration footprint [(3,600 x Line 14)/Line 7]		sq-ft
Criteria 2: Alternative Minimum Sizing Factor (Clogging)			
16	Alternative Minimum Footprint Sizing Factor [Line 11 of Worksheet B.5-2]		Fraction
17	Required biofiltration footprint [Line 3 x Line 16]		sq-ft
Criteria 3: Retention requirement [Not applicable for No Infiltration Condition]			
18	Conventional biofiltration footprint Line 28 of Worksheet B.5-1		sq-ft
19	Retention Losses from the conventional footprint (36 x Line 5 + Line 6 x Line 8) x Line 18		cubic-feet
20	Average discharge rate from the storage unit to the biofiltration BMP		cfs
21	Depth retained in the optimized biofiltration BMP {Line 6 x Line 8} + {[(Line 4)/(2400 x Line 20)] x Line 5}		ft
22	Required optimized biofiltration footprint (Line 19/Line 21)		sq-ft
Optimized Biofiltration Footprint			
23	Optimized biofiltration footprint, maximum(Line 15, Line 17, Line 22)		sq-ft

Note: Biofiltration BMP smaller than the alternative minimum footprint sizing (Line 17) is considered compact biofiltration BMP and may be allowed at the discretion of the EAD and FDD if the BMP meets the requirements in Appendix F and Option 1 or Option 2 sizing in Worksheet B.5-1.

B.6 Flow-Through Treatment Control BMPs (for use with Alternative Compliance)

The following methodology shall be used for selecting and sizing onsite flow-through treatment control BMPs. These BMPs are to be used only when the project is participating in an alternative compliance program. This methodology consists of three steps:

(1) Determine the PDP most significant pollutants of concern (Appendix B.6.1).

(2) Select a flow-through treatment control BMP that treats the PDP most significant pollutants of concern and meets the pollutant control BMP treatment performance standard (Appendix B.6.2).

(3) Size the selected flow-through treatment control BMP (Appendix B.6.3).

B.6.1 PDP Most Significant Pollutants of Concern

The following steps shall be followed to identify the PDP most significant pollutants of concern:

1) Compile the following information for the PDP and receiving water:

    a. Receiving water quality (including pollutants for which receiving waters are listed as impaired under the Clean Water Act section 303(d) List; refer to Appendix A);

    b. Pollutants, stressors, and/or receiving water conditions that cause or contribute to the highest priority water quality conditions identified in the WQIP (refer to Section 1.9);

    c. Land use type(s) proposed by the PDP and the storm water pollutants associated with the PDP land use(s) (see Table B.6–1);

    d. For tenant projects, the potential pollutants listed in Appendix E of the SAN SWMP.

2) From the list of pollutants identified in Step 1 identify the most significant PDP pollutants of concern. A PDP could have multiple most significant pollutants of concerns and shall include the highest priority water quality condition identified in the watershed WQIP and pollutants anticipated to be present onsite/generated from land use.

.

TABLE B.6-1. Anticipated and Potential Pollutants Generated by Land Use Type

Priority Project Categories	General Pollutant Categories								
	Sediment	Nutrients	Heavy Metals	Organic Compounds	Trash & Debris	Oxygen Demanding Substances	Oil & Grease	Bacteria & Viruses	Pesticides
Commercial Development	P(1)	P(1)	X	P(2)	X	P(5)	X	P(3)	P(5)
Heavy Industry	X		X	X	X	X	X		
Automotive Repair Shops			X	X(4)(5)	X		X		
Restaurants					X	X	X	X	P(1)
Parking Lots	P(1)	P(1)	X		X	P(1)	X		P(1)
Retail Gasoline Outlets			X	X	X	X	X		
Streets, Highways & Freeways	X	P(1)	X	X(4)	X	P(5)	X	X	P(1)

X = anticipated
P = potential
(1) A potential pollutant if landscaping exists onsite.
(2) A potential pollutant if the project includes uncovered parking areas.
(3) A potential pollutant if land use involves food or animal waste products.
(4) Including petroleum hydrocarbons.
(5) Including solvents.

B.6.2 Selection of Flow-Through Treatment Control BMPs

The following steps shall be followed to select the appropriate flow-through treatment control BMPs for the PDP:

1) For each PDP most significant pollutant of concern identify the grouping using Table B.6-2. Table B.6-2 is adopted from the Model SUSMP.
2) Select the flow-through treatment control BMP based on the grouping of pollutants of concern that are identified to be most significant in Step 1. This section establishes the pollutant control BMP treatment performance standard to be met for each grouping of pollutants in order to meet the standards required by the MS4 permit and how an applicant can select a non-proprietary or a proprietary BMP that meets the established performance standard. The grouping of pollutants of concern are:
   a. Coarse Sediment and Trash (Appendix B.6.2.1)
   b. Pollutants that tend to associate with fine particles during treatment (Appendix B.6.2.2)
   c. Pollutants that tend to be dissolved following treatment (Appendix B.6.2.3)

TABLE B.6-2: Grouping of Potential Pollutants of Concern

Pollutant	Coarse Sediment and Trash	Suspended Sediment and Particulate-bound Pollutants[1]	Soluble-form Dominated Pollutants[2]
Sediment	X	X	
Nutrients			X
Heavy Metals		X	
Organic Compounds		X	
Trash & Debris	X		
Oxygen Demanding		X	
Bacteria		X	
Oil & Grease		X	
Pesticides		X	

[1] Pollutants in this category can be addressed to Medium or High effectiveness by effectively removing suspended sediments and associated particulate-bound pollutants. Some soluble forms of these pollutants will exist, however treatment mechanisms to address soluble pollutants are not necessary to remove these pollutants to a Medium or High effectiveness.

[2] Pollutants in this category are not typically addressed to a Medium or High level of effectiveness with particle and particulate-bound pollutant removal alone.

One flow-through BMP can be used to satisfy the required pollutant control BMP treatment performance standard for the PDP most significant pollutants of concern. In some situations it might be necessary to implement multiple flow-through BMPs to satisfy the pollutant control BMP treatment performance standards. For example, a PDP has trash, nutrients and bacteria as the most significant pollutants of concern. If a vegetated filter strip is selected as a flow-through BMP then it is anticipated to meet the performance standard in Appendix B.6.2.2 and B.6.2.3 but would need a trash removal BMP to meet the pollutant control BMP treatment performance standard in Appendix B.6.2.1 upstream of the vegetated filter strip. This could be achieved by fitting the inlets and/or outlets with racks or screens on to address trash.

B.6.2.1 Coarse Sediment and Trash

If coarse sediment and/or trash and debris are identified as a pollutant of concern for the PDP, then BMPs must be selected to capture and remove these pollutants from runoff. The BMPs described below can be effective in removing coarse sediment and/or trash. These devices must be sized to treat the flow rate estimated using Worksheet B.6-1. Applicant can only select BMPs that have High or Medium effectiveness.

Trash Racks and Screens [Coarse Sediment: Low effectiveness; Trash: Medium to High effectiveness] are simple devices that can prevent large debris and trash from entering storm drain infrastructure and/or ensure that trash and debris are retained with downstream BMPs. Trash racks and screens can be installed at inlets to the storm drain system, at the inflow line to a BMP, and/or on the outflow structure from the BMP. Trash racks and screens are commercially available in many sizes and configurations or can be designed and fabricated to meet specific project needs.

Hydrodynamic Separation Devices [Coarse Sediment: Medium to High effectiveness; Trash: Medium to High effectiveness] are devices that remove coarse sediment, trash, and other debris from incoming flows through a combination of screening, settlement, and centrifugal forces. The design of hydrodynamic devises varies widely, more specific information can be found by contacting individual vendors. A list of hydrodynamic separator products approved by the Washington State Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology protocol can be found at:

http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/technologies.html.

Systems should be rated for "pretreatment" with a General Use Level Designation or provide results of field-scale testing indicating an equivalent level of performance.

Catch Basin Insert Baskets [Coarse Sediment: Low effectiveness; Trash: Medium effectiveness, if appropriately maintained] are manufactured filters, fabrics, or screens that are placed in inlets to remove trash and debris. The shape and configuration of catch basin inserts varies based on inlet type and configuration. Inserts are prone to clogging and bypass if large trash items are accumulated, and therefore require frequent observation and maintenance to remain effective. Systems with screen size small enough to retain coarse sediment will tend to clog rapidly and should be avoided.

Other Manufactured Particle Filtration Devices [Coarse Sediment: Medium to High effectiveness; Trash: Medium to High effectiveness] include a range of products such as cartridge filters, bag filters, and other configurations that address medium to coarse particles. Systems should be rated for "pretreatment" with a General Use Level Designation under the Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology program or provide results of field-scale testing indicating an equivalent level of performance.

Note, any BMP that achieves Medium or High performance for suspended solids (See Section B.6.2.2) is also considered to address coarse sediments. However, some BMPs that address suspended solids do not retain trash (for example, swales and detention basins). These types of BMPs could be fitted with racks or screens on inlets or outlets to address trash.

BMP Selection for Pretreatment:

Devices that address both coarse sediment and trash can be used as pretreatment devices for other BMPs, such as infiltration BMPs. However, it is recommended that BMPs that meet the performance standard in Appendix B.6.2.2 be used. A device with a "pretreatment" rating and General Use Level Designation under Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology is required for pretreatment upstream of infiltration basins and underground galleries. Pretreatment may also be provided as presettling basins or forebays as part of a pollutant control BMP instead of implementing a specific pretreatment device for systems where maintenance access to the facility surface is possible (to address clogging), expected sediment load is not high, and appropriate factors of safety are included in design.

B.6.2.2 Suspended Sediment and Particulate-Bound Pollutants

<u>**Performance Standard**</u>

The pollutant treatment performance standard is shown in Table B.6-3. This performance standard is consistent with the Washington State Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology Basic Treatment Level, and is also met by technologies receiving Phosphorus Treatment or Enhanced Treatment certification. This standard is based on pollutant removal performance for total suspended solids. Systems that provide effective TSS treatment also typically address trash, debris, and particulate bound pollutants and can serve as pre-treatment for offsite mitigation projects or for onsite infiltration BMPs.

Table B.6-3: Performance Standard for Flow-Through Treatment Control

Influent Range	Criteria
20 – 100 mg/L TSS	Effluent goal ≤ 20 mg/L TSS
100 – 200 mg/L TSS	≥ 80% TSS removal
>200 mg/L TSS	> 80% TSS removal, effluent not to exceed 100 mg/L TSS

<u>**Selecting Non-Proprietary BMPs**</u>

Table B.6-4 identifies the categories of non-proprietary BMPs that are considered to meet the pollutant treatment performance standard if designed to contemporary design standards[1]. BMP types with an "High" ranking should be considered before those with an "Medium" ranking. Statistical analysis by category from the International Stormwater BMP Database (also presented in Table B.6-4) indicates each of these BMP types (as a categorical group) meets or nearly meets the performance standard. The International Stormwater BMP Database includes historic as well as contemporary BMP studies; contemporary BMP designs in these categories are anticipated to meet or exceed this standard on average.

[1] Contemporary design standards refers to design standards that are reasonably consistent with the current state of practice and are based on desired outcomes that are reasonably consistent with the context of the MS4 Permit and this manual. For example, a detention basin that is designed solely to mitigate peak flow rates would not be considered a contemporary water quality BMP design because it is not consistent with the goal of water quality improvement. Current state of the practice recognizes that a drawdown time of 24 to 72 hours is typically needed to promote settling. For practical purposes, design standards can be considered "contemporary" if they have been published within the last 10 years, preferably in California or Washington State, and are specifically intended for storm water quality management.

Table B.6-4: Flow-Through Treatment Control BMPs Meeting Performance Standard

List of Acceptable Flow-Through Treatment Control BMPs	Statistical Analysis of International Stormwater BMP Database				Evaluation of Conformance to Performance Standard		
	Count In/Out	TSS Mean Influent, mg/L	TSS Mean Effluent[1], mg/L	Average Category Volume Reduct.	Volume-Adjusted Effluent Conc[2], mg/L	Volume-Adjusted Removal Efficiency[2]	Level of Attainment of Performance Standard (with rationale)
Vegetated Filter Strip	361/ 282	69	31	38%	19	72%	Medium, effluent < 20 mg/L after volume adjustment
Vegetated Swale	399/ 346	45	33	48%	17	61%	Medium, effluent < 20 mg/L after volume adjustment
Detention Basin	321/ 346	125	42	33%	28	77%	Medium, percent removal near 80% after volume adjustment
Sand Filter/ Media Bed Filter	381/ 358	95	19	NA[3]	19	80%	High, effluent and % removal meet criteria without adjustment
Lined Porous Pavement[4]	356/ 220	229	46	NA[3,4]	46	80%	High, % removal meets criteria without adjustment
Wet Pond	923/ 933	119	31	NA[3]	31	74%	Medium, percent removal near 80%

Source: 2014 BMP Performance Summaries and Statistical Appendices; 2010 Volume Performance Summary; available at: www.bmpdatabase.org

1 - A statistically significant difference between influent and effluent was detected at a p value of 0.05 for all categories.

2 - Estimates were adjusted to account for category-average volume reduction.

3 - Not Applicable as these BMPs are not designed for volume reduction and are anticipated to have very small incidental volume reduction.

4 - The category presented in this table represents a lined system for flow-through treatment purposes. Porous pavement for retention purposes is an infiltration BMP, not a flow-through BMP. This table should not be consulted for porous pavement for infiltration.

Selecting Proprietary BMPs

Proprietary BMPs can be used if the BMP meets each of the following conditions:

(1) **The proposed BMP meets the performance standard in Appendix B.6.2.2 as certified through third-party, field scale evaluation.** An active General Use Level Designation for Basic Treatment, Phosphorus Treatment or Enhanced Treatment under the Washington State Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology program is the preferred method of demonstrating that the performance standard is met. The list of certified technologies is updated as new technologies are approved (link below). Technologies with Pilot Use Level Designation and Conditional Use Level Designations are not acceptable. Refer to:

http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/technologies.html. Alternatively, other field scale verification of 80 percent TSS capture, such as through Technology Acceptance Reciprocity Partnership or New Jersey Corporation for Advance Testing may be acceptable. A list of field-scale verified technologies under Technology Acceptance Reciprocity Partnership Tier II and New Jersey Corporation for Advance Testing can be accessed at: http://www.njcat.org/verification-process/technology-verification-database.html (refer to field verified technologies only).

(2) **The proposed BMP is designed and maintained in a manner consistent with its performance certifications (see explanation below).** The applicant must demonstrate conclusively that the proposed application of the BMP is consistent with the basis of its certification/verification. Certifications or verifications issued by the Washington Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology program and the Technology Acceptance Reciprocity Partnership or New Jersey Corporation for Advance Testing programs are typically accompanied by a set of guidelines regarding appropriate design and maintenance conditions that would be consistent with the certification/verification. It is common for these approvals to specify the specific model of BMP, design capacity for given unit sizes, type of media that is the basis for approval, and/or other parameters.

(3) **The proposed BMP is acceptable at the discretion of the EAD and FDD.** The applicant may be required to provide additional studies and/or required to meet additional design criteria beyond the scope of this document in order to demonstrate that these criteria are met. In determining the acceptability of a proprietary flow-through treatment control BMP, the EAD and FDD should consider, as applicable, (a) the data submitted; (b) representativeness of the data submitted; (c) consistency of the BMP performance claims with pollutant control objectives; certainty of the BMP performance claims; (d) for projects within tenant areas and/or capital projects: maintenance requirements, cost of maintenance activities, relevant previous local experience with operation and maintenance of the BMP type, ability to continue to operate the system in event that the vending company is no longer operating as a business; and (e) other relevant factors. If a proposed BMP is not accepted by the EAD or FDD, a written explanation/reason will be provided to the applicant

B.6.2.3 Soluble-form dominated Pollutants (Nutrients)

If nutrients are identified as a most significant pollutant of concern for the PDP, then BMPs must be selected to meet the performance standard described in Appendix B.6.2.2 **and** must be selected to provide medium or high level of effectiveness for nutrient treatment as described in this section. The most common nutrient of concern in the San Diego region is nitrogen, therefore total nitrogen (TN) was used as the primary indicator of nutrient performance in storm water BMPs.

Selection of BMPs to address nutrients consists of two steps:

1) Determine if nutrients can be addressed via source control BMPs as described in Appendix E and Chapter 4. After applying source controls, if there are no remaining source areas for soluble nutrients, then this pollutant can be removed from the list of pollutants of concerns for the purpose of selecting flow-through treatment control BMPs. Particulate nutrients will be addressed by the performance standard in Appendix B.6.2.2.

2) If soluble nutrients cannot be fully addressed with source controls, then select a flow-through treatment control BMPs that meets the performance criteria in Table B.6-5 or select from the nutrient-specific menu of treatment control BMPs in Table B.6-6.

    a. The performance standard for nitrogen removal (Table B.6-5) has been developed based on evaluation of the relative performance of available categories of non-proprietary BMPs.

    b. For proprietary BMPs, submit third party performance data indicating that the criteria in Table B.6-5 are met. The applicant may be required to provide additional studies and/or required to meet additional design criteria beyond the scope of this document in order to demonstrate that these criteria are met. In determining the acceptability of a proprietary flow-through treatment control BMP, the EAD and FDD should consider, as applicable, (a) the data submitted; (b) representativeness of the data submitted; (c) consistency of the BMP performance claims with pollutant control objectives; certainty of the BMP performance claims; (d) for projects within tenant areas and/or capital projects: maintenance requirements, cost of maintenance activities, relevant previous local experience with operation and maintenance of the BMP type, ability to continue to operate the system in event that the vending company is no longer operating as a business; and (e) other relevant factors. If a proposed BMP is not accepted by the EAD or FDD, a written explanation/reason will be provided to the applicant.

Table B.6-5: Performance Standard for Flow-Through Treatment Control BMPs for Nutrient Treatment

Basis	Criteria
Treatment Basis	Comparison of mean influent and effluent indicates significant concentration reduction of TN approximately 40 percent or higher based on studies with representative influent concentrations
Combined Treatment and Volume Reduction Basis	Combination of concentration reduction and volume reduction yields TN mass removal of approximately 40 percent or higher based on studies with representative influent concentrations

Table B.6-6: Flow-Through Treatment Control BMPs Meeting Nutrient Treatment Performance Standard

List of Acceptable Flow-Through Treatment Control BMPs for Nutrients	Statistical Analysis of International Stormwater BMP Database				Evaluation of Conformance to Performance Standard		
	Count In/Out	TN Mean Influent, mg/L	TN Mean Effluent[1], mg/L	Average Category Volume Reduct.	Volume-Adjusted Effluent Conc[2], mg/L	Volume-Adjusted Removal Efficiency[2]	Level of Attainment of Performance Standard (with rationale)
Vegetated Filter Strip	138/ 122	1.53	1.37	38%	0.85	44%	Medium, if designed to include volume reduction processes
Detention Basin	90/ 89	2.34	2.01	33%	1.35	42%	Medium, if designed to include volume reduction processes
Wet Pond	397/ 425	2.12	1.33	NA	1.33	37%	Medium, best concentration reduction among BMP categories, but limited volume reduction

Source: 2014 BMP Performance Summaries and Statistical Appendices; 2010 Volume Performance Summary; available at: www.bmpdatabase.org

1 - A statistically significant difference between influent and effluent was detected at a p value of 0.05 for all categories included.

2 - Estimates were adjusted to account for category-average volume reduction.

B.6.3 Sizing Flow-Through Treatment Control BMPs:

Flow-through treatment control BMPs shall be sized to filter or treat the maximum flow rate of runoff produced from a rainfall intensity of 0.2 inch of rainfall per hour, for each hour of every storm event. The required flow-through treatment rate should be adjusted for the portion of the DCV already retained or biofiltered onsite as described in Worksheet B.6-1. The following hydrologic method shall be used to calculate the flow rate to be filtered or treated:

$$Q = C \times i \times A$$

Where:

Q = Design flow rate in cubic feet per second

C = Runoff factor, area-weighted estimate using Table B.1-1.

i = Rainfall intensity of 0.2 in/hr.

A = Tributary area (acres) which includes the total area draining to the BMP, including any offsite or onsite areas that comingle with project runoff and drain to the BMP. Refer to Section 3.3.3 for additional guidance. Street projects consult Section 1.4.3.

Worksheet B.6-1: Flow-Through Design Flows

Flow-through Design Flows		Worksheet B.6-1		
1	DCV	DCV		cubic-feet
2	DCV retained	$DCV_{retained}$		cubic-feet
3	DCV biofiltered	$DCV_{biofiltered}$		cubic-feet
4	DCV requiring flow-through (Line 1 – Line 2 – 0.67*Line 3)	$DCV_{flow-through}$		cubic-feet
5	Adjustment factor (Line 4 / Line 1)*	AF=		unitless
6	Design rainfall intensity	i=	0.20	in/hr
7	Area tributary to BMP (s)	A=		acres
8	Area-weighted runoff factor (estimate using Appendix B.2)	C=		unitless
9	Calculate Flow Rate = AF x (C x i x A)	Q=		cfs

1) Adjustment factor shall be estimated considering only retention and biofiltration BMPs located upstream of flow-through BMPs. That is, if the flow-through BMP is upstream of the project's retention and biofiltration BMPs then the flow-through BMP shall be sized using an adjustment factor of 1.
2) Volume based (e.g., dry extended detention basin) flow-through treatment control BMPs shall be sized to the volume in Line 4 and flow based (e.g., vegetated swales) shall be sized to flow rate in Line 9. Sand filter and media filter can be designed either by volume in Line 4 or flow rate in Line 9.
3) Proprietary BMPs, if used, shall provide certified treatment capacity equal to or greater than the calculated flow rate in Line 9; certified treatment capacity per unit shall be consistent with third party certifications.

Appendix

C

AUTHORITY BMP DESIGN MANUAL

Geotechnical and Groundwater Investigation Requirements

Appendix C Geotechnical and Groundwater Investigation Requirements

C.1 Purpose and Phasing

Feasibility of storm water infiltration is dependent on the geotechnical and groundwater conditions at the project site.

This appendix provides guidelines for performing and reporting feasibility analysis for infiltration with respect to geotechnical and groundwater conditions. It provides framework for feasibility analysis at two phases of project development:

- ***Planning Phase***: Simpler methods for conducting preliminary screening for feasibility/infeasibility, and
- ***Design Phase***: When infiltration is considered potentially feasible, more rigorous analysis is needed to confirm feasibility and to develop design considerations and mitigation measures if required

Planning Phase At this stage of the project, information about the site may be limited, the proposed design features may be conceptual, and there may be an opportunity to adjust project plans to incorporate infiltration into the project layout as it is developed. At this phase, project geotechnical engineers are typically responsible for conducting explorations of geologic conditions, performing preliminary analyses, and identifying particular aspects of design that require more detailed investigation at later phases. As part of this process, the role of a planning- level infiltration feasibility assessment is to help planners reach early tentative conclusions regarding where infiltration is likely feasible, possibly feasible if done carefully, or clearly infeasible. This determination can help guide the design process by influencing project layout, selection of infiltration BMPs, and identifying if more detailed studies are necessary. The goal of the planning and feasibility phase is to identify potential geotechnical and groundwater impacts and to determine which impacts may be considered fatal flaws and which impacts may be possible to mitigate with design features. Determination of acceptable risks and/or mitigation measures may involve discussions with adjacent land owners and/or utility operators, as well as coordination with other projects under planning or design in the project vicinity. Early involvement of potentially impacted parties is critical to avoid late-stage design changes and schedule delays and to reduce potential future liabilities.

Design Phase During this phase, potential geotechnical and groundwater impacts must be fully considered and evaluated and mitigation measures should be incorporated in the BMP design, as appropriate. Mitigation measures refer to design features or assumptions intended to reduce risks associated with storm water infiltration. While rules of thumb may be useful, if applied carefully, for the planning level phase, the analyses conducted in the detailed design phase require the involvement of a geotechnical professional familiar with the local conditions. One of the first steps in the design phase should be determination if additional field and/or laboratory investigations are required (e.g., borings, test pits, laboratory or field testing) to further assess the geotechnical impacts of storm water infiltration. As the design of infiltration systems are highly dependent on the subsurface conditions, coordination with the storm water design team may be beneficial to limit duplicative efforts and costs.

Worksheet C.4-1 is provided to document infiltration feasibility screening. This worksheet is divided into two parts. Part 1 "Full Infiltration Feasibility Screening Criteria" is used to determine if the full design volume can be infiltrated onsite, whereas Part 2 "Partial Infiltration versus No Infiltration Screening Criteria" is used to determine if any amount of volume can be infiltrated.

Note that it is not necessary to investigate each and every criterion in the worksheet, a single "no" answer in Part 1 and Part 2 controls the feasibility and desirability. If all the answers in Part 1 are "yes" then it is not required to complete Part 2. The same worksheet could be used to document both planning-level categorization and design-level categorization. Note that planning-level categorization, are typically based on initial site assessment results; therefore it is not necessarily conclusive. Categorizations should be confirmed or revised, as necessary, based on more detailed design-level investigation and analysis during BMP design.

C.2 Geotechnical Feasibility Criteria

This section is divided into seven factors that should be considered, as applicable, while assessing the feasibility and desirability of infiltration related to geotechnical conditions. Note that during the planning phase, if one or more of these factors precludes infiltration as an approach, it is not necessary to assess every other factor. However, if proposing infiltration BMPs, then every applicable factor in this section must be addressed.

C.2.1 Soil and Geologic Conditions

Site soils and geologic conditions influence the rate at which water can physically enter the soils. Site assessment approaches for soil and geologic conditions may consist of:

- Review of soil survey maps
- Review of available reports on local geology to identify relevant features, such as depth to bedrock, rock type, lithology, faults, and hydrostratigraphic or confining units
- Review of previous geotechnical investigations of the area
- Site-specific geotechnical and/or geologic investigations (e.g., borings, infiltration tests)

Geologic investigations should also seek to provide an assessment of whether soil infiltration properties are likely to be uniform or variable across the project site. Appendix D provides guidance on determining infiltration rates for planning and design phase.

C.2.2 Settlement and Volume Change

Settlement and volume change limits the amount of infiltration that can be allowed without resulting in adverse impacts that cannot be mitigated. Upon considering the impacts of an infiltration design, the designer must identify areas where soil settlement or heave is likely and whether these conditions would be unfavorable to existing or proposed features. Settlement refers to the condition when soils decrease in volume, and heave refers to expansion of soils or increase in volume.

There are several different mechanisms that can induce volume change due to infiltration that the professional must be aware of and consider while completing the feasibility screening including:

- Hydro collapse and calcareous soils;
- Expansive soils;
- Frost heave;
- Consolidation; and
- Liquefaction.

C.2.3 Slope Stability

Infiltration of water has the potential to result in an increased risk of slope failure of nearby slopes. This should be assessed as part of both the feasibility and design stages of a project. The City of San Diego's Guidelines for Geotechnical Reports states that slope steeper than 25% are generally not feasible for use of infiltration BMPs. The County of San Diego LID Handbook recommends a 50 foot setback from steep or sensitive slopes. In general, this consideration will not apply to Authority projects as there are no significant slopes at SAN.

C.2.4 Utility Considerations

Utilities are either public or private infrastructure components that include underground pipelines and vaults (e.g., potable water, sewer, storm water, gas pipelines), underground wires/conduit (e.g., telephone, cable, electrical) and above ground wiring and associated structures (e.g., electrical distribution and transmission lines). Utility considerations are typically within the purview of a geotechnical site assessment and should be considered in assessing the feasibility of storm water infiltration. Infiltration has the potential to damage subsurface utilities and/or underground utilities may pose geotechnical hazards in themselves when infiltrated water is introduced. Impacts related to storm water infiltration in the vicinity of underground utilities are not likely to cause a fatal flaw in the design, but the designer must be aware of the potential cost impacts to the design during the planning stage.

Utility setbacks should be determined on a project-specific basis, with the approval of the EAD and FDD.

C.2.5 Groundwater Mounding

Storm water infiltration and recharge to the underlying groundwater table may create a groundwater mound beneath the infiltration facility. The height and shape of the mound depends on the infiltration system design, the recharge rate, and the hydrogeologic conditions at the site, especially the horizontal hydraulic conductivity and the saturated thickness. Elevated groundwater levels can lead to a number of problems, including flooding and damage to structures and utilities through buoyancy and moisture intrusion, increase in inflow and infiltration into municipal sanitary sewer systems, and flow of water through existing utility trenches, including sewers, potentially leading to formation of sinkholes (Gobel et al. 2004). Mounding shall be considered by the geotechnical professional while performing the infiltration feasibility screening.

C.2.6 Retaining Walls and Foundations

Development projects may include retaining walls or foundations in close proximity to proposed infiltration BMPs. These structures are designed to withstand the forces of the earth they are retaining and other surface loading conditions such as nearby structures. Foundations include shallow foundations (spread and strip footings, mats) and deep foundations (piles, piers) and are designed to support overburden and design loads. All types of retaining walls and foundations can be impacted by increased water infiltration into the subsurface as a result of potential increases in lateral pressures and potential reductions in soil strength. The geotechnical professional should consider these factors while performing the infiltration feasibility screening.

C.2.7 Other Factors

While completing the feasibility screening, other factors determined by the geotechnical professional to influence the feasibility and desirability of infiltration related to geotechnical conditions shall also be considered.

C.3 Groundwater Quality and Water Balance Feasibility Criteria

This section is divided into eight factors that should be considered, to the extent applicable, while assessing the feasibility and desirability of infiltration related to groundwater quality and water balance. Note that during the planning phase, if one or more of these factors precludes infiltration as an approach, it is not necessary to assess every other factor. However, if proposing infiltration BMPs, then every applicable factor in this section must be addressed.

C.3.1 Soil and Groundwater Contamination

Infiltration shall be avoided in areas with:

- Physical and chemical characteristics (e.g., appropriate cation exchange capacity, organic content, clay content and infiltration rate) which are not adequate for proper infiltration durations and treatment of runoff for the protection of groundwater beneficial uses.

- Groundwater contamination and/or soil pollution, if infiltration could contribute to the movement or dispersion of soil or groundwater contamination or adversely affect ongoing clean-up efforts, either onsite or down-gradient of the project.

If infiltration is under consideration for one of the above conditions, a site-specific analysis should be conducted to determine where infiltration-based BMPs can be used without adverse impacts.

C.3.2 Separation to Seasonal High Groundwater

The depth to seasonally high groundwater tables (normal high depth during the wet season) beneath the base of any infiltration BMP must be greater than 10 feet for infiltration BMPs to be allowed. The depth to groundwater requirement can be reduced from 10 feet at the discretion of the approval agency if the underlying groundwater basin does not support beneficial uses and the groundwater quality is maintained at the proposed depth. Depth to seasonally high groundwater levels can be estimated based on well level measurements or redoximorphic methods. For sites with complex groundwater tables, long term studies may be needed to understand how groundwater levels change in wet and dry years.

It should be noted that groundwater at SAN does not support beneficial uses (Water Quality Control Plan for the San Diego Basin, 1994/1995 with amendments effective prior to February 16, 2016). As such, the vertical distance from the base of any infiltration BMP to the seasonal high groundwater mark at the SAN may be less than 10 feet, provided groundwater quality is maintained and the remaining restrictions of Section 3.3 are met.

C.3.3 Wellhead Protection

Wellheads natural and man-made are water resources that may potentially be adversely impacted by storm water infiltration through the introduction of contaminants or alteration in water supply and levels. It is recommended that the locations of wells and springs be identified early in the design process and site design be developed to avoid infiltration in the vicinity of these resources. Infiltration BMPs must be located a minimum of 100 feet horizontally from any water supply well. Although no wells are located within SAN, the locations of wells in neighboring jurisdictions (i.e., within the City of San Diego and Port of San Diego jurisdictions) should be considered.

C.3.4 Contamination Risks from Land Use Activities

Concentration of storm water pollutants in runoff is highly dependent on the land uses and activities present in the area tributary to an infiltration BMP. Likewise, the potential for groundwater contamination due to the infiltration BMP is a function of pollutant abundance, concentration of pollutants in soluble forms, and the mobility of the pollutant in the subsurface soils. Hence infiltration BMPs must not be used for areas of industrial or light industrial activity, and other high threat to water quality land uses and activities, unless source control BMPs to prevent exposure of high threat activities are implemented, or runoff from such activities is first treated or filtered to remove pollutants prior to infiltration.

Source control BMPs (as outlined in Appendix B of the SWMP) should be used to reduce concentrations of priority pollutants, including copper and zinc, from industrial areas prior to infiltration.

C.3.5 Consultation with Applicable Groundwater Agencies

Infiltration activities should be coordinated with the applicable groundwater management agency, such as groundwater providers and/or resource protection agencies, to ensure groundwater quality is protected. It is recommended that coordination be initiated as early as possible during the planning process to determine whether specific site assessment activities apply or whether these agencies have data available that may support the planning and design process.

C.3.6 Water Balance Impacts on Stream Flow

Use of infiltration systems to reduce surface water discharge volumes may result in additional volume of deeper infiltration compared to natural conditions, which may result in impacts to receiving channels associated with change in dry weather flow regimes. A relatively simple survey of hydrogeologic data (piezometer measurements, boring logs, regional groundwater maps) and downstream receiving water characteristics is generally adequate to determine whether there is potential for impacts and whether a more rigorous assessment is needed.

Where water balance conditions appear to be sensitive to development impacts and there is an elevated risk of impacts, a computational analysis may be warranted to evaluate the feasibility/desirability of infiltration. Such an analysis should account for precipitation, runoff, irrigation inputs, soil moisture retention, evapotranspiration, baseflow, and change in groundwater recharge on a long term basis. Because water balance calculations are sensitive to the timing of precipitation versus evapotranspiration, it is most appropriate to utilize a continuous model simulation rather than basing calculations on average annual or monthly normal conditions.

C.3.7 Downstream Water Rights

While water rights cases are not believed to be common, there may be cases in which infiltration of water from area that was previously allowed to drain freely to downstream water bodies would not be legal from a water rights perspective. Site-specific evaluation of water rights laws should be conducted if this is believed to be a potential issue in the project location.

C.3.8 Other Factors

While completing the feasibility screening, other factors determined by the geotechnical professional to influence the feasibility and desirability of infiltration related to groundwater quality and water balance shall also be considered.

C.4 Geotechnical and Groundwater Investigation Report Requirements

The geotechnical and groundwater investigation report(s) addressing onsite storm water infiltration shall include the following elements, as applicable. These reports may need to be completed by multiple professional disciplines, depending on the issues that need be addressed for a given site. It may also be necessary to prepare separate report(s) at the planning phase and design phase of a project if the methods and timing of analyses differ.

C.4.1 Site Evaluation

Site evaluation shall identify the following:

- Areas of contaminated soil or contaminated groundwater within the site;
- "Brown fields" adjacent to the site;
- Mapped soil or fill type(s);
- Historic high groundwater level;
- Slopes steeper than 25 percent (not applicable at SAN); and
- Location of septic systems (and expansion area), or underground storage tanks, or permitted gray water systems within 100 feet of a proposed infiltration/ percolation BMP.

C.4.2 Field Investigation

Where the site evaluation indicates potential feasibility for onsite storm water infiltration BMPs, the following field investigations will be necessary to demonstrate suitability and to provide design recommendations.

C.4.2.1 Subsurface Exploration

Subsurface exploration and testing for storm water infiltration BMPs shall include:

- A minimum of two exploratory excavations shall be conducted within 50-feet of each proposed storm water infiltration BMP. The excavations shall extend at least 10 feet below the lowest elevation of the base of the proposed infiltration BMP.
- Soils shall be logged in detail with emphasis on describing the soil profile.
- Identify low permeability or impermeable materials.
- Indicate any evidence of soil contamination.

C.4.2.2 Material Testing and Infiltration/Percolation Testing

Various material testing and in situ infiltration/percolation testing methods and guidance for appropriate factor of safety are discussed in detail in Appendix D. Infiltration testing methods described in Appendix D include surface and shallow excavation methods and deeper subsurface tests.

C.4.2.3 Evaluation of Depth to Groundwater

An evaluation of the depth to groundwater is required to confirm the feasibility of infiltration. Infiltration BMPs may not be feasible in high groundwater conditions (within 10 feet of the base of infiltration/ percolation BMP) unless an exemption is granted by the EAD or FDD. The vertical distance from the base of any infiltration BMP to the seasonal high groundwater mark at the SAN may be less than 10 feet, provided groundwater quality is maintained and the remaining restrictions of Section 3.3 are met.

C.4.3 Reporting Requirements by Geotechnical Engineer

The geotechnical and groundwater investigation report shall address the following key elements, and where appropriate, mitigation recommendations shall be provided.

- Identify areas of the project site where infiltration is likely to be feasible and provide justifications for selection of those areas based on soil types, slopes, proximity to existing features, etc. Include completed and signed Worksheet C.4-1.
- Investigate, evaluate and estimate the vertical infiltration rates and capacities in accordance with the guidance provided in Appendix D which describes infiltration testing and appropriate factor of safety to be applied for infiltration testing results. The site may be broken into sub-basins, each of which has different infiltration rates or capacities.
- Describe the infiltration/ percolation test results and correlation with published infiltration/ percolation rates based on soil parameters or classification. Recommend providing design infiltration/percolation rate(s) at the sub-basins. Use Worksheet D.5-1.

- Investigate the subsurface geological conditions and geotechnical conditions that would affect infiltration or migration of water toward structures, slopes, utilities, or other features. Describe the anticipated flow path of infiltrated water. Indicate if the water will flow into pavement sections, utility trench bedding, wall drains, foundation drains, or other permeable improvements.
- Investigate depth to groundwater and the nature of the groundwater. Include an estimate of the high seasonal groundwater elevations.
- Evaluate proposed use of the site (industrial use, commercial use, etc.), soil and groundwater data and provide a concluding opinion whether proposed storm water infiltration could cause adverse impacts to groundwater quality and if it does cause impacts whether the impacts could be reasonably mitigated or not.
- Estimate the maximum allowable infiltration rates and volumes that could occur at the site that would avoid damage to existing and proposed structures, utilities, slopes, or other features. In addition the report must indicate if the recommended infiltration rate is appropriate based on the conditions exposed during construction.
- Provide a concluding opinion regarding whether or not the proposed onsite storm water infiltration/percolation BMP will result in soil piping, daylight water seepage, slope instability, or ground settlement.
- Recommend measures to substantially mitigate or avoid any potentially detrimental effects of the storm water infiltration BMPs or associated soil response on existing or proposed improvements or structures, utilities, slopes or other features within and adjacent to the site. For example, minimize soil compaction.
- Provide guidance for the selection and location of infiltration BMPs, including the minimum separations between such infiltration BMPs and structures, streets, utilities, manufactured and existing slopes, engineered fills, utilities or other features. Include guidance for measures that could be used to reduce the minimum separations or to mitigate the potential impacts of infiltration BMPs.
- Provide a concluding opinion whether or not proposed infiltration BMPs are in conformance with the following design criteria:
    - Runoff will undergo pretreatment such as sedimentation or filtration prior to infiltration;
    - Pollution prevention and source control BMPs are implemented at a level appropriate to protect groundwater quality for areas draining to infiltration BMPs;
    - The vertical distance from the base of the infiltration BMPs to the seasonal high groundwater mark is greater than 10 feet. As the groundwater basin at SAN does not support beneficial uses, this vertical distance may be reduced provided the groundwater quality is maintained and the remaining restrictions of Section 3.3 are met;
    - The soil through which infiltration is to occur has physical and chemical characteristics (e.g., appropriate cation exchange capacity, organic content, clay content, and infiltration

rate) which are adequate for proper infiltration durations and treatment of runoff for the protection of groundwater beneficial uses; and

- Infiltration BMPs are not used for areas of industrial or light industrial activity, unless source control BMPs to prevent exposure of high threat activities are implemented, or runoff from such activities is first treated or filtered to remove copper, zinc, and other pollutants of concern prior to infiltration.

C.4.4 Reporting Requirements by the Project Design Engineer

Project design engineer has the following responsibilities:

- Complete criteria 4 and 8 in Worksheet C.4-1

Worksheet C.4-1: Categorization of Infiltration Feasibility Condition

Categorization of Infiltration Feasibility Condition			Worksheet C.4-1
Part 1 - Full Infiltration Feasibility Screening Criteria **Would infiltration of the full design volume be feasible from a physical perspective without any undesirable consequences that cannot be reasonably mitigated?**			
Criteri	Screening Question	**Yes**	**No**
1	**Is the estimated reliable infiltration rate below proposed facility locations greater than 0.5 inches per hour?** The response to this Screening Question shall be based on a comprehensive evaluation of the factors presented in Appendix C.2 and Appendix D.		
Provide basis: Summarize findings of studies; provide reference to studies, calculations, maps, data sources, etc. Provide narrative discussion of study/data source applicability.			
2	**Can infiltration greater than 0.5 inches per hour be allowed without increasing risk of geotechnical hazards (slope stability, groundwater mounding, utilities, or other factors) that cannot be mitigated to an acceptable level?** The response to this Screening Question shall be based on a comprehensive evaluation of the factors presented in Appendix C.2.		
Provide basis: Summarize findings of studies; provide reference to studies, calculations, maps, data sources, etc. Provide narrative discussion of study/data source applicability.			
Worksheet C.4-1 Page 2 of 4			

Criteri a	Screening Question	Yes	No
3	**Can infiltration greater than 0.5 inches per hour be allowed without increasing risk of groundwater contamination (shallow water table, storm water pollutants or other factors) that cannot be mitigated to an acceptable level?** The response to this Screening Question shall be based on a comprehensive evaluation of the factors presented in Appendix C.3.		
Provide basis: Summarize findings of studies; provide reference to studies, calculations, maps, data sources, etc. Provide narrative discussion of study/data source applicability.			
4	**Can infiltration greater than 0.5 inches per hour be allowed without causing potential water balance issues such as change of seasonality of ephemeral streams or increased discharge of contaminated groundwater to surface waters?** The response to this Screening Question shall be based on a comprehensive evaluation of the factors presented in Appendix C.3.		
Provide basis: Summarize findings of studies; provide reference to studies, calculations, maps, data sources, etc. Provide narrative discussion of study/data source applicability.			
Part 1 Result*	If all answers to rows 1 - 4 are "**Yes**" a full infiltration design is potentially feasible. The feasibility screening category is **Full Infiltration** If any answer from row 1-4 is "**No**", infiltration may be possible to some extent but would not generally be feasible or desirable to achieve a "full infiltration" design. Proceed to Part 2		

*To be completed using gathered site information and best professional judgment considering the definition of MEP in the MS4 Permit. Additional testing and/or studies may be required by EAD or FDD to substantiate findings.

Worksheet C.4-1 Page 3 of 4			
Part 2 – Partial Infiltration vs. No Infiltration Feasibility Screening Criteria **Would infiltration of water in any appreciable amount be physically feasible without any negative consequences that cannot be reasonably mitigated?**			
Criteria	Screening Question	**Yes**	**No**
5	**Do soil and geologic conditions allow for infiltration in any appreciable rate or volume?** The response to this Screening Question shall be based on a comprehensive evaluation of the factors presented in Appendix C.2 and Appendix D.		
Provide basis: Summarize findings of studies; provide reference to studies, calculations, maps, data sources, etc. Provide narrative discussion of study/data source applicability and why it was not feasible to mitigate low infiltration rates.			
6	**Can Infiltration in any appreciable quantity be allowed without increasing risk of geotechnical hazards (slope stability, groundwater mounding, utilities, or other factors) that cannot be mitigated to an acceptable level**? The response to this Screening Question shall be based on a comprehensive evaluation of the factors presented in Appendix C.2.		
Provide basis: Summarize findings of studies; provide reference to studies, calculations, maps, data sources, etc. Provide narrative discussion of study/data source applicability and why it was not feasible to mitigate low infiltration rates.			

Worksheet C.4-1 Page 4 of 4			
Criteria	Screening Question	**Yes**	**No**
7	**Can Infiltration in any appreciable quantity be allowed without posing significant risk for groundwater related concerns (shallow water table, storm water pollutants or other factors)?** The response to this Screening Question shall be based on a comprehensive evaluation of the factors presented in Appendix C.3.		
Provide basis: Summarize findings of studies; provide reference to studies, calculations, maps, data sources, etc. Provide narrative discussion of study/data source applicability and why it was not feasible to mitigate low infiltration rates.			
8	**Can infiltration be allowed without violating downstream water rights**? The response to this Screening Question shall be based on a comprehensive evaluation of the factors presented in Appendix C.3.		
Provide basis: Summarize findings of studies; provide reference to studies, calculations, maps, data sources, etc. Provide narrative discussion of study/data source applicability and why it was not feasible to mitigate low infiltration rates.			
Part 2 Result*	If all answers from row 5-8 are yes then partial infiltration design is potentially feasible. The feasibility screening category is **Partial Infiltration.** If any answer from row 5-8 is no, then infiltration of any volume is considered to be **infeasible** within the drainage area. The feasibility screening category is **No Infiltration.**		

*To be completed using gathered site information and best professional judgment considering the definition of MEP in the MS4 Permit. Additional testing and/or studies may be required by Agency/Jurisdictions to substantiate findings

C.5 Feasibility Screening Exhibits

Table C.5-1 lists the feasibility screening exhibits that were generated using readily available GIS data sets to assist the project applicant to screen the project site for feasibility.

Table C.5-1: Feasibility Screening Exhibits

Figures	Layer	Intent/Rationale	Data Sources
C.1 Soils	Hydrologic Soil Group – A, B, C, D	Hydrologic Soil Group will aid in determining areas of potential infiltration	SanGIS http://www.sangis.org/
	Hydric Soils	Hydric soils will indicate layers of intermittent saturation that may function like a D soil and should be avoided for infiltration	USDA Web Soil Survey. Hydric soils, (ratings of 100) were classified as hydric. http://websoilsurvey.sc.egov.usda.gov/App/HomePage.htm
C.2: Slopes and Geologic Hazards	Slopes >25%	BMPs are hard to construct on slopes >25% and can potentially cause slope instability (not applicable at SAN	SanGIS http://www.sangis.org/
	Liquefaction Potential	BMPs (particularly infiltration BMPs) must not be sited in areas with high potential for liquefaction or landslides to minimize earthquake/landslide risks	SanGIS http://www.sangis.org/
	Landslide Potential		SanGIS Geologic Hazards layer. Subset of polygons with hazard codes related to landslides was selected. This data is limited to the City of San Diego Boundary. http://www.sangis.org/
C.3: Groundwater Table Elevations	Groundwater Depths	Infiltration BMPs will need to be sited in areas with adequate distance (>10 ft) from the groundwater table, unless groundwater quality is maintained	GeoTracker. Data downloaded for San Diego county from 2014 and 2013. In cases where there were multiple measurements made at the same well, the average was taken over that year. http://geotracker.waterboards.ca.gov/data_download_by_county.asp
C.4: Contaminated Sites	Contaminated soils and/or groundwater sites	Infiltration must limited in areas of contaminated soil/groundwater	GeoTracker. Data downloaded for San Diego county and limited to active cleanup sites http://geotracker.waterboards.ca.gov/

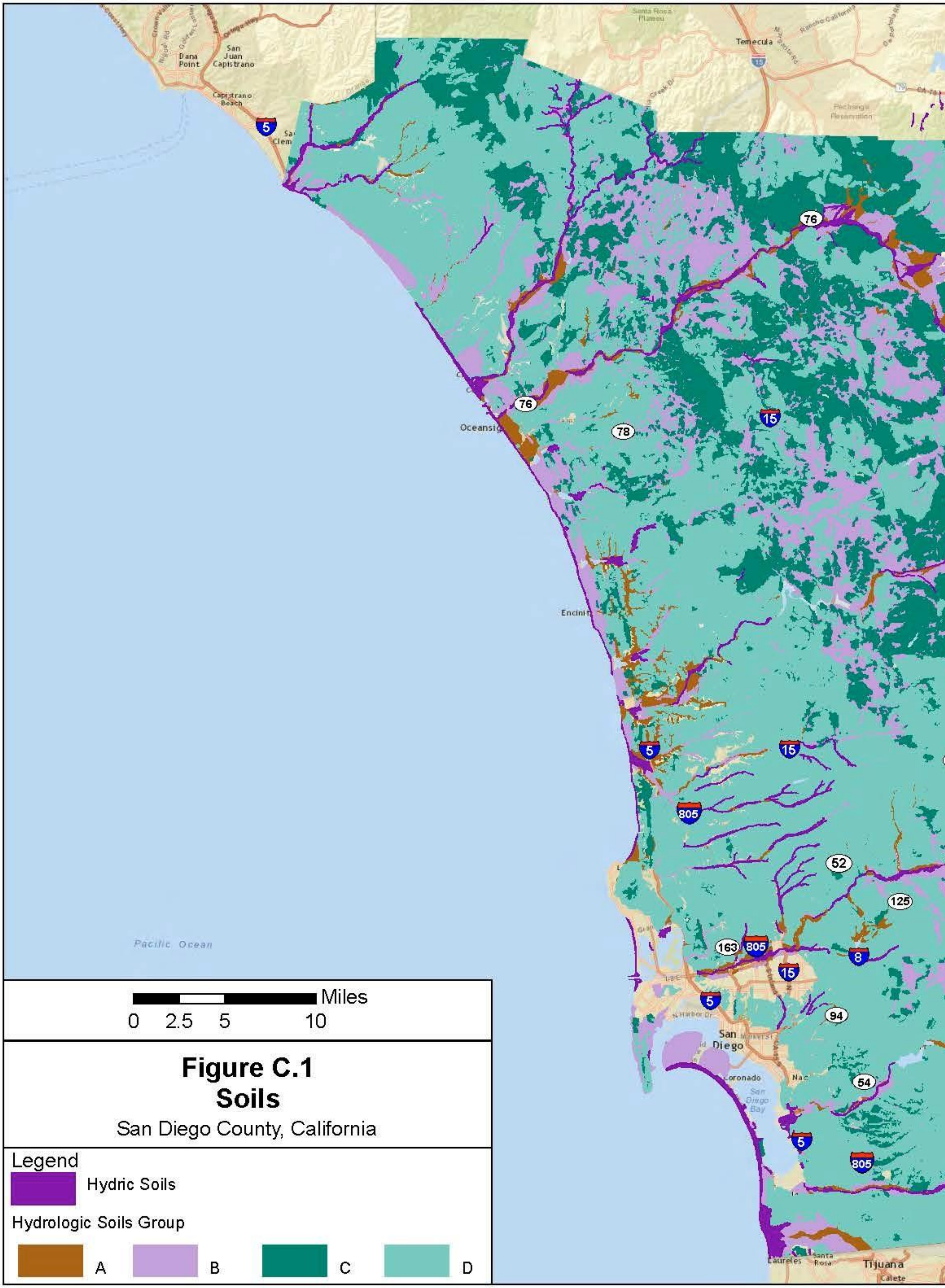


Figure C.1
Soils
San Diego County, California

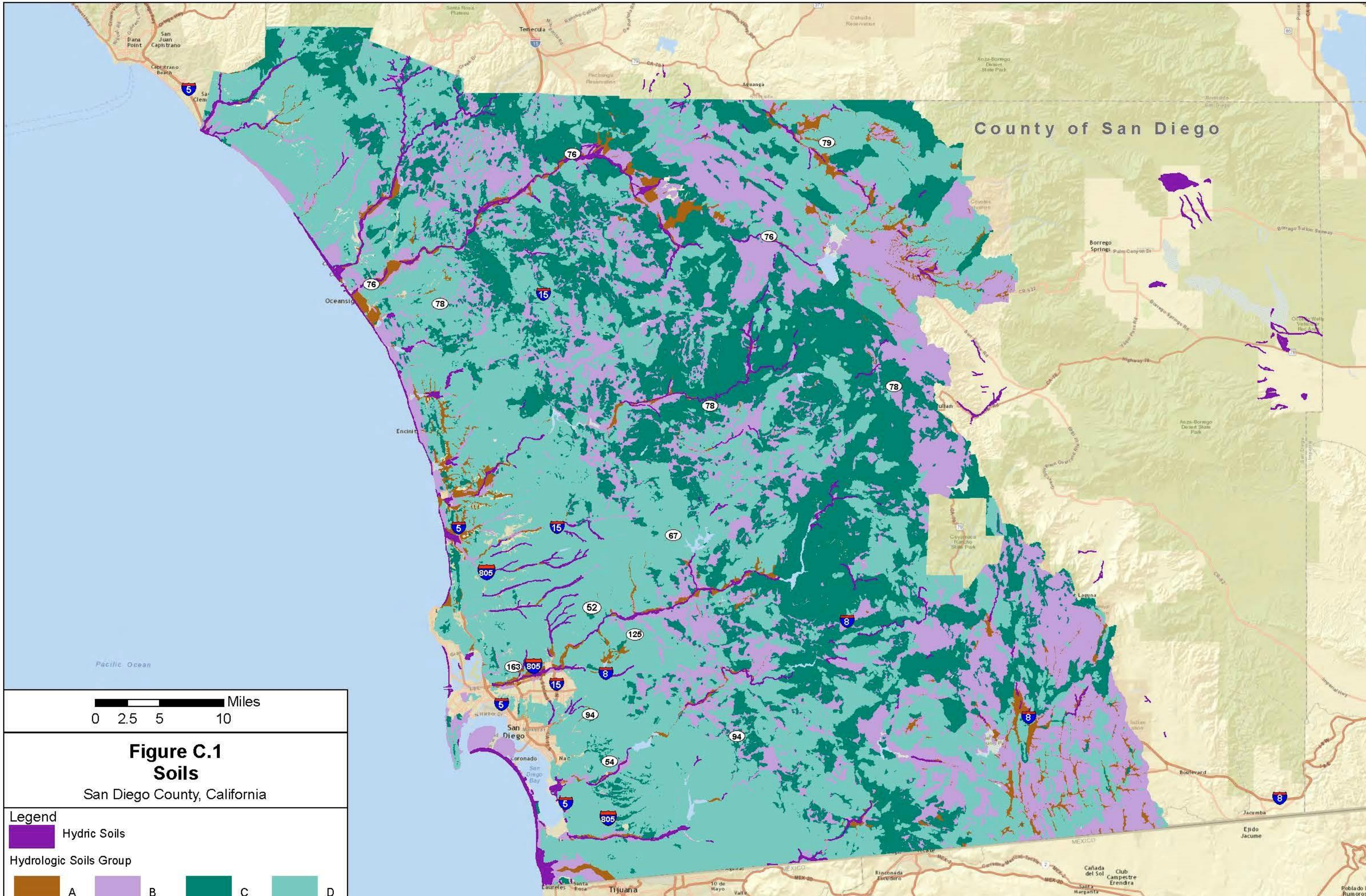


Figure C.1
Soils
San Diego County, California

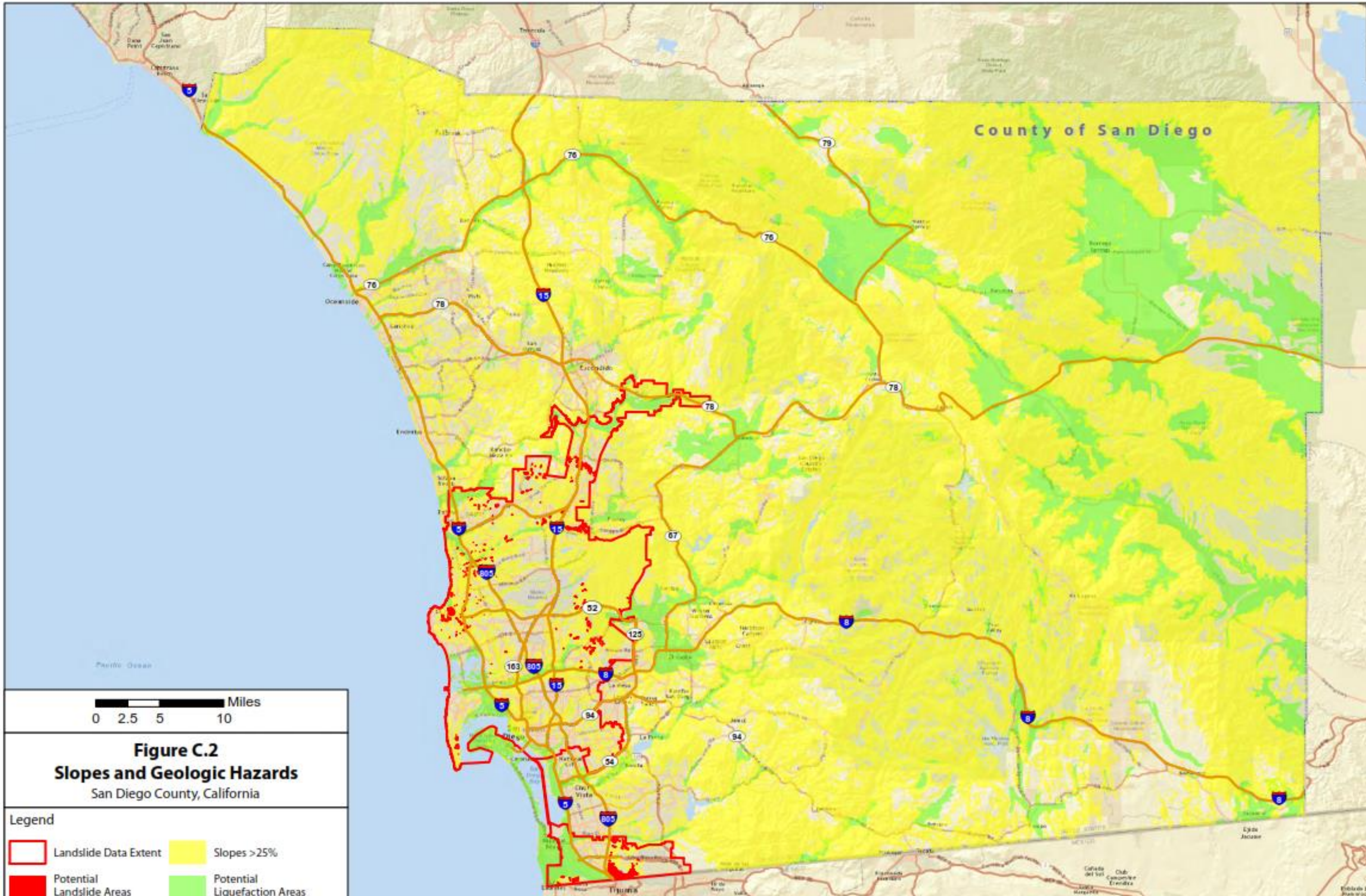


Figure C.2
Slopes and Geologic Hazards
San Diego County, California

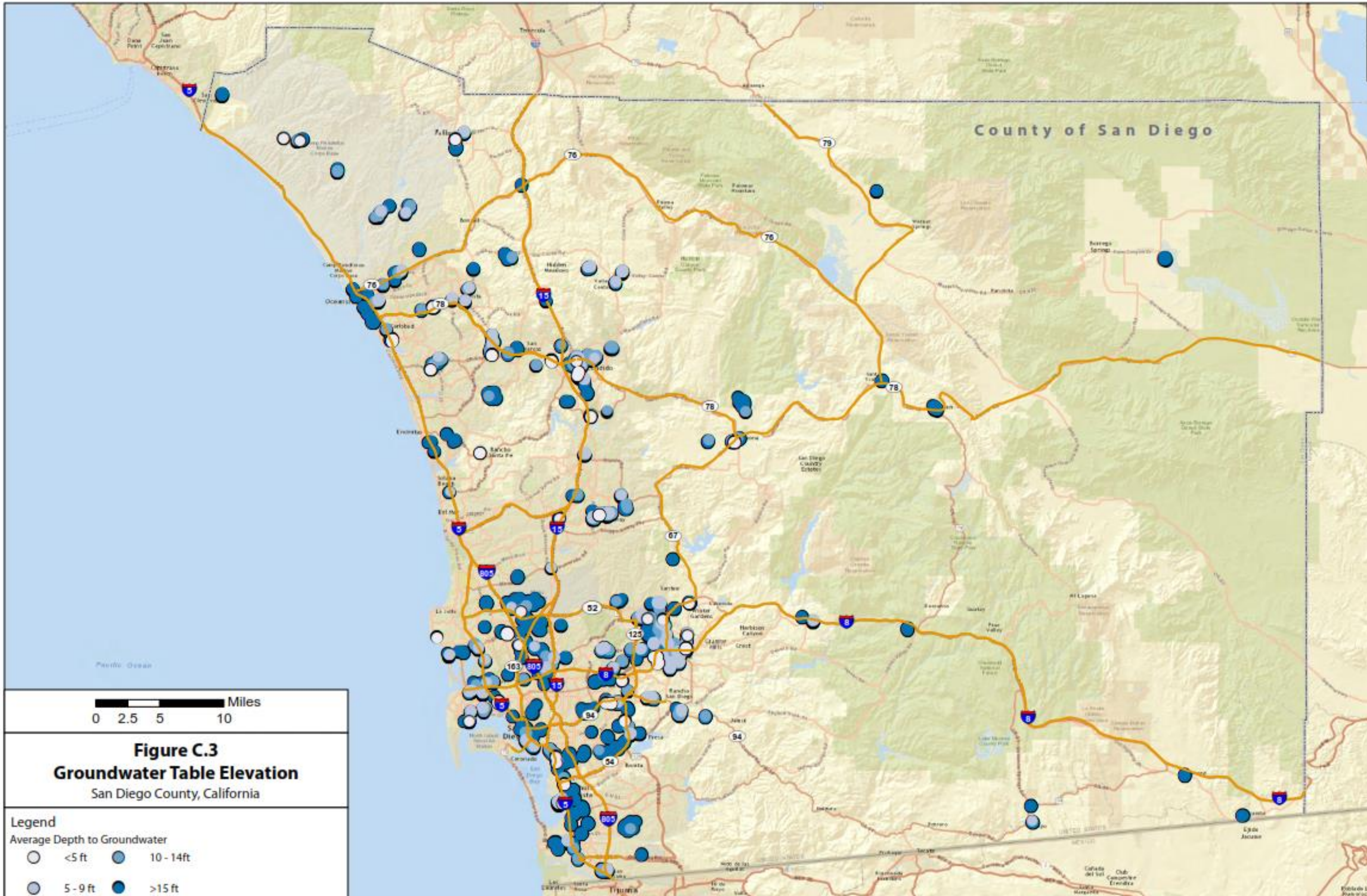


Figure C.3
Groundwater Table Elevation
San Diego County, California

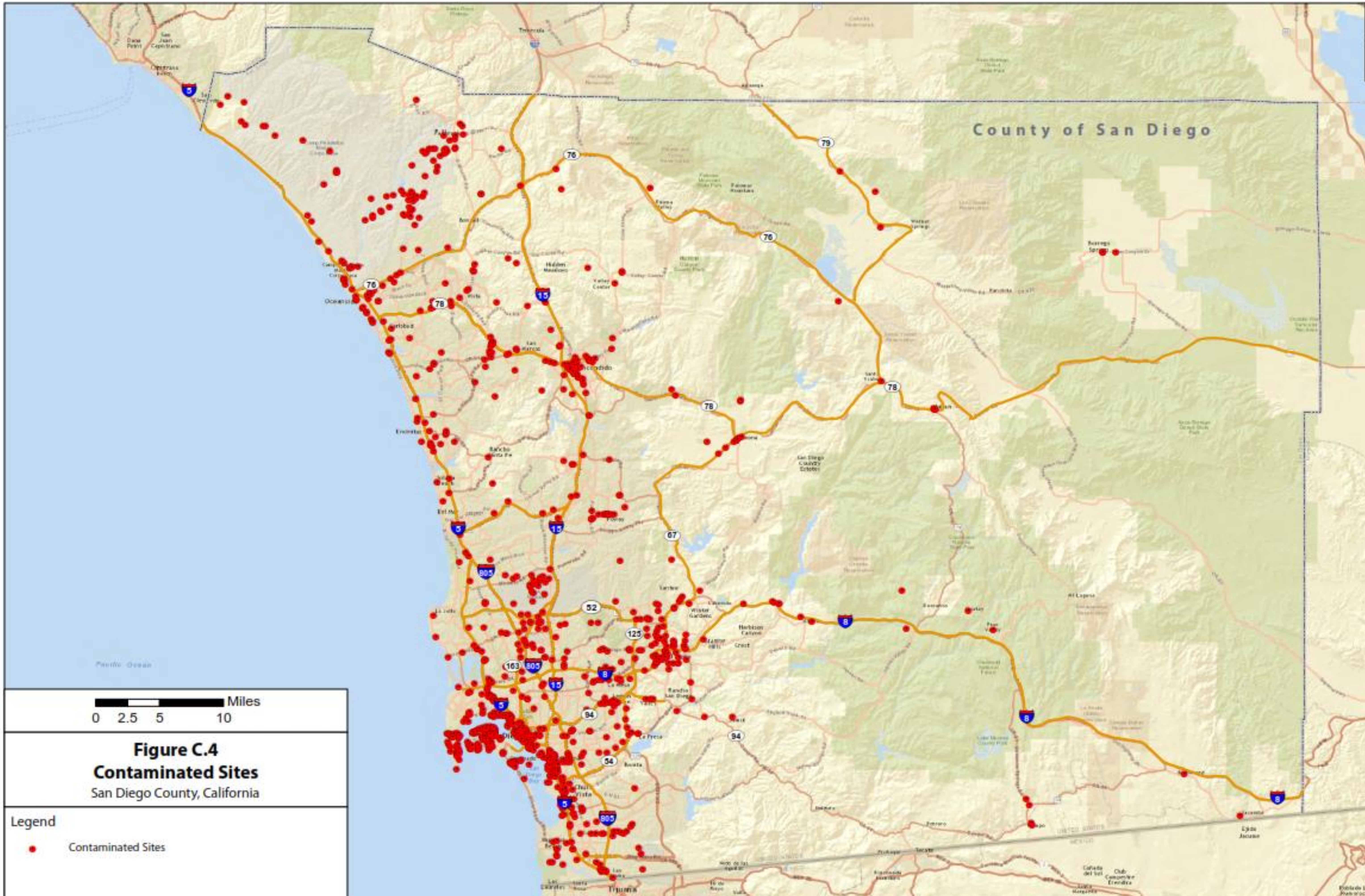


Figure C.4
Contaminated Sites
San Diego County, California

Appendix

D

Approved Infiltration Rate Assessment Methods for Selection of Storm Water BMPs

Appendix D Approved Infiltration Rate Assessment Methods for Selection and Design of Storm Water BMPs

D.1 Introduction

Characterization of potential infiltration rates is a critical step in evaluating the degree to which infiltration can be used to reduce storm water runoff volume. This appendix is intended to provide guidance to help answer the following questions:

1. *How and where does infiltration testing fit into the project development process?*

   Section D.2 discusses the role of infiltration testing in different stage of project development and how to plan a phased investigation approach.

2. *What infiltration rate assessment methods are acceptable?*

   Section D.3 describes the infiltration rate assessment methods that are acceptable.

3. *What factors should be considered in selecting the most appropriate testing method for a project?*

   Section D.4 provides guidance on site-specific considerations that influence which assessment methods are most appropriate.

4. *How should factors of safety be selected and applied to, for BMP selection and design?*

   Section D.5 provides guidance for selecting a safety factor.

Note, that this appendix does not consider other feasibility criteria that may make infiltration infeasible, such as groundwater contamination and geotechnical considerations (these are covered in Appendix C). In general, infiltration testing should only be conducted after other feasibility criteria specified in this manual have been evaluated and cleared.

D.2 Role of Infiltration Testing in Different Stages of Project Development

In the process of planning and designing infiltration facilities, there are a number of ways that infiltration testing or estimation factors into project development, as summarized in Table D.2-1. As part of selecting infiltration testing methods, the geotechnical engineer shall select methods that are applicable to the phase of the project and the associated burden of proof.

Table D.2-1: Role of Infiltration Testing

Project Phase	Key Questions/Burden of Proof	General Assessment Strategies
Site Planning Phase	• Where within the project area is infiltration potentially feasible? • What volume reduction approaches are potentially suitable for my project?	• Use existing data and maps to the extent possible • Use less expensive methods to allow a broader area to be investigated more rapidly • Reach tentative conclusions that are subject to confirmation/refinement at the design phase
BMP Design Phase	• What infiltration rates should be used to design infiltration and biofiltration facilities? • What factor of safety should be applied?	• Use more rigorous testing methods at specific BMP locations • Support or modify preliminary feasibility findings • Estimate design infiltration rates with appropriate factors of safety

D.3 Guidance for Selecting Infiltration Testing Methods

The geotechnical engineer shall select appropriate testing methods for the site conditions, subject to the engineer's discretion and approval of the EAD and FDD, that are adequate to meet the burden of proof that is applicable at each phase of the project design (See Table D.3-1):

- At the planning phase, testing/evaluation method must be selected to provide a reliable estimate of the locations where infiltration is feasible and allow a reasonably confident determination of infiltration feasibilility to support the selection between full infiltration, partial infiltration, and no infiltration BMPs.

- At the design phase, the testing method must be selected to provide a reliable infiltration rate to be used in design. The degree of certainty provided by the selected test should be considered

Table D.3-1 provides a matrix comparison of these methods. Sections D.3.1 to D.3.3 provide a summary of each method. This appendix is not intended to be an exhaustive reference on infiltration testing at this time. It does not attempt to discuss every method for testing, nor is it intended to provide step-by-step procedures for each method. The user is directed to supplemental resources (referenced in this appendix) or other appropriate references for more specific information. **Alternative testing methods are allowed with appropriate rationales, subject to the discretion**

of the FDD and EAD.

In order to select an infiltration testing method, it is important to understand how each test is applied and what specific physical properties the test is designed to measure. Infiltration testing methods vary considerably in these regards. For example, a borehole percolation test is conducted by drilling a borehole, filling a portion of the hole with water, and monitoring the rate of fall of the water. This test directly measures the three dimensional flux of water into the walls and bottom of the borehole. An approximate correction is applied to indirectly estimate the vertical hydraulic conductivity from the results of the borehole test. In contrast, a double-ring infiltrometer test is conducted from the ground surface and is intended to provide a direct estimate of vertical (one-dimensional) infiltration rate at this point. Both of these methods are applicable under different conditions.

Table D.3-1: Comparision of Infiltration Rate Estimation and Testing Methods

Test	Suitability at Planning Level Screening Phase	Suitability at BMP Design Phase
NRCS Soil Survey Maps	Yes, but mapped soil types must be confirmed with site observations. Regional soil maps are known to contain inaccuracies at the scale of typical development sites.	No, unless a strong correlation is developed between soil types and infiltration rates in the direct vicinity of the site and an elevated factor of safety is used.
Grain Size Analysis	Not preferred. Should only be used if a strong correlation has been developed between grain size analysis and measured infiltration rates testing results of site soils.	No
Cone Penetrometer Testing	Not preferred. Should only be used if a strong correlation has been developed between CPT results and measured infiltration rates testing results of site soils.	No
Simple Open Pit Test	Yes	Yes, with appropriate correction for infiltration into side walls and elevated factor of safety.
Open Pit Falling Head Test	Yes	Yes, with appropriate correction for infiltration into side walls and elevated factor of safety.
Double Ring Infiltrometer Test (ASTM 3385)	Yes	Yes
Single Ring Infiltrometer Test	Yes	Yes

Test	Suitability at Planning Level Screening Phase	Suitability at BMP Design Phase
Large-scale Pilot Infiltration Test	Yes, but generally cost prohibitive and too water-intensive for preliminary screening of a large area.	Yes, but should consider relatively large water demand associated with this test.
Smaller-scale Pilot Infiltration Test	Yes	Yes
Well Permeameter Method (USBR 7300-89)	Yes; reliability of this test can be improved by obtaining a continuous core where tests are conducted.	Yes in areas of proposed cut where other tests are not possible; a continuous boring log should be recorded and used to interpret test; should be confirmed with a more direct measurement following excavation.
Borehole Percolation Tests (various methods)	Yes; reliability of this test can be improved by obtaining a continuous core where tests are conducted.	Yes in areas of proposed cut where other tests are not possible; a continuous boring log should be recorded and used to interpret test; should be confirmed with a more direct measurement following excavation.
Laboratory Permeability Tests (e.g., ASTM D2434)	Yes, only suitable for evaluating potential infiltration rates in proposed fill areas. For sites with proposed cut, it is preferred to do a borehole percolation test at the proposed grade instead of analyzing samples in the lab. A combination of both tests may improve reliability.	No. However, may be part of a line of evidence for estimating the design infiltration of partial infiltration BMPs constructed in future compacted fill.

D.3.1 Desktop Approaches and Data Correlation Methods

This section reviews common methods used to evaluate infiltration characteristics based on desktop-available information, such as GIS data. This section also introduces methods for estimating infiltration properties via correlations with other measurements.

D.3.1.1 NRCS Soil Survey Maps

NRCS Soil Survey maps (http://websoilsurvey.nrcs.usda.gov/app/HomePage.htm) can be used to estimate preliminary feasibility conditions, specifically by mapping hydrologic soil groups, soil texture classes, and presence of hydric soils relative to the site layout. For feasibility determinations, mapped conditions must be supplemented with available data from the site (e.g., soil borings, observed soil textures, biological indicators), especially at SAN since the underlying soils are generally undifferentiated bay deposits and hydraulic fill material from San Diego Bay. The presence of D soils, if confirmed by available data, provides a reasonable basis to determine that full infiltration is not feasible for a given DMA.

D.3.1.2 Grain Size Analysis Testing and Correlations to Infiltration Rate

Hydraulic conductivity can be estimated indirectly from correlations with soil grain-size distributions. While this method is approximate, correlations have been relatively well established for some soil conditions. One of the most commonly used correlations between grain size parameters and hydraulic conductivity is the Hazen (1892, 1911) empirical formula (Philips and Kitch, 2011), but a variety of others have been developed. Correlations must be developed based on testing of site-specific soils.

D.3.1.3 Cone Penetrometer Testing and Correlations to Infiltration Rate

Hydraulic conductivity can also be estimated indirectly from cone penetrometer testing (CPT). A cone penetrometer test involves advancing a small probe into the soil and measuring the relative resistance encountered by the probe as it is advanced. The signal returned from this test can be interpreted to yield estimated soil types and the location of key transitions between soil layers. If this method is used, correlations must be developed based on testing of site-specific soils.

D.3.2 Surface and Shallow Excavation Methods

This section describes tests that are conducted at the ground surface or within shallow excavations close to the ground surface. These tests are generally applicable for cases where the bottom of the infiltration system will be near the existing ground surface. They can also be conducted to confirm the results of borehole methods after excavation/site grading has been completed.

D.3.2.1 Simple Open Pit Test

The Simple Open Pit Test is most appropriate for planning level screening of infiltration feasibility. Although it is similar to Open Pit Falling Head tests used for establishing a design infiltration rate (see below), the Simple Open Pit Test is less rigorous and is generally conducted to a lower standard of care. This test can be conducted by a nonprofessional as part of planning level screening phase.

The Simple Open Pit Test is a falling head test in which a hole at least two feet in diameter is filled with water to a level of 6” above the bottom. Water level is checked and recorded regularly until either an hour has passed or the entire volume has infiltrated. The test is repeated two more times in succession and the rate at which the water level falls in the third test is used as the infiltration rate.

This test has the advantage of being inexpensive to conduct. Yet it is believed to be fairly reliable for screening as the dimensions of the test are similar, proportionally, to the dimensions of a typical BMP. The key limitations of this test are that it measures a relatively small area, does not necessarily result in a precise measurement, and may not be uniformly implemented.

Source: City of Portland, 2008. Storm water Management Manual

D.3.2.2 Open Pit Falling Head Test

This test is similar to the Simple Open Pit Test, but covers a larger footprint, includes more specific instructions, returns more precise measurements, and generally should be overseen by a geotechnical professional. Nonetheless, it remains a relatively simple test.

To perform this test, a hole is excavated at least 2 feet wide by 4 feet long (larger is preferred) and to a depth of at least 12 inches. The bottom of the hole should be approximately at the depth of the proposed infiltrating surface of the BMP. The hole is pre-soaked by filling it with water at least a foot above the soil to be tested and leaving it at least 4 hours (or overnight if clays are present). After pre-soaking, the hole is refilled to a depth of 12 inches and allow it to drain for one hour (2 hours for slower soils), measuring the rate at which the water level drops. The test is then repeated until successive trials yield a result with less than 10 percent change.

In comparison to a double-ring infiltrometer, this test has the advantage of measuring infiltration over a larger area and better resembles the dimensionality of a typical small scale BMP. Because it includes both vertical and lateral infiltration, it should be adjusted to estimate design rates for larger scale BMPs.

D.3.2.3 Double Ring Infiltrometer Test (ASTM 3385)

The Double Ring Infiltrometer was originally developed to estimate the saturated hydraulic conductivity of low permeability materials, such as clay liners for ponds, but has seen significant use in storm water applications. The most recent revision of this method from 2009 is known as ASTM 3385-09. The testing apparatus is designed with concentric rings that form an inner ring and an annulus between the inner and outer rings. Infiltration from the annulus between the two rings is intended to saturate the soil outside of the inner ring such that infiltration from the inner ring is restricted primarily to the vertical direction.

To conduct this test, both the center ring and annulus between the rings are filled with water. There is no pre-wetting of the soil in this test. However, a constant head of 1 to 6 inches is maintained for 6 hours, or until a constant flow rate is established. Both the inner flow rate and annular flow rate are recorded, but if they are different, the inner flow rate should be used. There are a variety of approaches that are used to maintain a constant head on the system, including use of a Mariotte tube, constant level float valves, or manual observation and filling. This test must be conducted at the elevation of the proposed infiltrating surface; therefore application of this test is limited in cases where the infiltration surface is a significant distance below existing grade at the time of testing.

This test is generally considered to provide a direct estimate of vertical infiltration rate for the specific point tested and is highly replicable. However, given the small diameter of the inner ring (standard diameter is 12 inches, but it can be larger), this test only measures infiltration rate in a small area. Additionally, given the small quantity of water used in this test compared to larger scale tests, this test may be biased high in cases where the long term infiltration rate is governed by groundwater mounding and the rate at which mounding dissipates (i.e., the capacity of the infiltration receptor). Finally, the added effort and cost of isolating vertical infiltration rate may not necessarily be warranted considering that BMPs typically have a lateral component of infiltration as well. Therefore, while this method has the advantages of being technical rigorous and well standardized, it should not necessarily be assumed to be the most representative test for estimating full-scale infiltration rates. Source: American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) International (2009)

D.3.2.4 Single Ring Infiltrometer Test

The single ring infiltrometer test is not a standardized ASTM test, however it is a relatively well-controlled test and shares many similarities with the ASTM standard double ring infiltrometer test (ASTM 3385-09). This test is a constant head test using a large ring (preferably greater than 40 inches in diameter) usually driven 12 inches into the soil. Water is ponded above the surface. The rate of water addition is recorded and infiltration rate is determined after the flow rate has stabilized. Water can be added either manually or automatically.

The single ring used in this test tends to be larger than the inner ring used in the double ring test. Driving the ring into the ground limits lateral infiltration; however some lateral infiltration is generally considered to occur. Experience in Riverside County (CA) has shown that this test gives results that are close to full-scale infiltration facilities. The primary advantages of this test are that it is relatively simple to conduct and has a larger footprint (compared to the double-ring method) and restricts horizontal infiltration and is more standardized (compared to open pit methods). However, it is still a relatively small scale test and can only be reasonably conducted near the existing ground surface.

D.3.2.5 Large-scale Pilot Infiltration Test

As its name implies, this test is closer in scale to a full-scale infiltration facility. This test was developed by Washington State Department of Ecology specifically for storm water applications.

To perform this test, a test pit is excavated with a horizontal surface area of roughly 100 square feet to a depth that allows 3 to 4 feet of ponding above the expected bottom of the infiltration facility. Water is continually pumped into the system to maintain a constant water level (between 3 and 4 feet about the bottom of the pit, but not more than the estimated water depth in the proposed facility) and the flow rate is recorded. The test is continued until the flow rate stabilizes. Infiltration rate is calculated by dividing the flow rate by the surface area of the pit. Similar to other open pit test, this test is known to result in a slight bias high because infiltration also moves laterally through the walls of the pit during the test. Washington State Department of Ecology requires a correction factor of 0.75 (factor of safety of 1.33) be applied to results.

This test has the advantage of being more resistant to bias from localized soil variability and being more similar to the dimensionality and scale of full scale BMPs. It is also more likely to detect long term decline in infiltration rates associated with groundwater mounding. As such, it remains the preferred test for establishing design infiltration rates in Western Washington (Washington State Department of Ecology, 2012). In a comparative evaluation of test methods, this method was found to provide a more reliable estimate of full-scale infiltration rate than double ring infiltrometer and borehole percolation tests (Philips and Kitch 2011).

The difficulty encountered in this method is that it requires a larger area be excavated than the other methods, and this in turn requires larger equipment for excavation and a greater supply of water. However, this method should be strongly considered when less information is known about spatial variability of soils and/or a higher degree of certainty in estimated infiltration rates is desired.

Source: Washington State Department of Ecology, 2012.

D.3.2.6 Smaller-scale Pilot Infiltration Test

The smaller-scale PIT is conducted similarly to the large-scale PIT but involves a smaller excavation, ranging from 20 to 32 square feet instead of 100 square feet for the large-scale PIT, with similar depths. The primary advantage of this test compared to the full-scale PIT is that it requires less excavation volume and less water. It may be more suitable for small-scale distributed infiltration controls where the need to conduct a greater number of tests outweighs the accuracy that must be obtained in each test, and where groundwater mounding is not as likely to be an issue. Washington State Department of Ecology establishes a correction factor of 0.5 (factor of safety of 2.0) for this test in comparison to 0.75 (factor of safety of 1.33) for the large-scale PIT to account for a greater fraction of water infiltrating through the walls of the excavation and lower degree of certainty related to spatial variability of soils.

D.3.3 Deeper Subsurface Tests

D.3.3.1 Well Permeameter Method (USBR 7300-89)

Well permeameter methods were originally developed for purposes of assessing aquifer permeability and associated yield of drinking water wells. This family of tests is most applicable in situations in which infiltration facilities will be placed substantially below existing grade, which limits the use of surface testing methods.

In general, this test involves drilling a 6 inch to 8 inch test well to the depth of interest and maintaining a constant head until a constant flow rate has been achieved. Water level is maintained with down-hole floats. The Porchet method or the nomographs provided in the USBR Drainage Manual (United States Department of the Interior, Bureau of Reclamation, 1993) are used to convert the measured rate of percolation to an estimate of vertical hydraulic conductivity. A smaller diameter boring may be adequate, however this then requires a different correction factor to account for the increased variability expected.

While these tests have applicability in screening level analysis, considerable uncertainty is introduced in the step of converting direct percolation measurements to estimates of vertical infiltration. Additionally, this testing method is prone to yielding erroneous results cases where the vertical horizon of the test intersects with minor lenses of sandy soils that allow water to dissipate laterally at a much greater rate than would be expected in a full-scale facility. To improve the interpretation of this test method, a continuous bore log should be inspected to determine whether thin lenses of material may be biasing results at the strata where testing is conducted. Consult USBR procedure 7300-89 for more details.

Source: (United States Department of the Interior, Bureau of Reclamation, 1990, 1993)

D.3.3.2 Borehole Percolation Tests (various methods)

Borehole percolation tests were originally developed as empirical tests to estimate the capacity of onsite sewage disposal systems (septic system leach fields), but have more recently been adopted into use for evaluating storm water infiltration. Similar to the well permeameter method, borehole percolation methods primarily measure lateral infiltration into the walls of the boring and are designed for situations in which infiltration facilities will be placed well below current grade. The percolation rate obtained in this test should be converted to an infiltration rate using a technique such as the Porchet method.

This test is generally implemented similarly to the USBR Well Permeameter Method. Per the Riverside County Borehole Percolation method, a hole is bored to a depth at least 5 times the borehole radius. The hole is presoaked for 24 hours (or at least 2 hours if sandy soils with no clay). The hole is filled to approximately the anticipated top of the proposed infiltration basin. Rates of fall are measured for six hours, refilling each half hour (or 10 minutes for sand). Tests are generally repeated until consistent results are obtained.

The same limitations described for the well permeameter method apply to borehole percolation tests, and their applicability is generally limited to initial screening. To improve the interpretation of this test method, a continuous soil core can be extracted from the hole and below the test depth, following testing, to determine whether thin lenses of material may be biasing results at the strata where testing is conducted.

Sources: Riverside County Percolation Test (2011), California Test 750 (Caltrans, 1986), San Bernardino County Percolation Test (1992); USEPA Falling Head Test (USEPA, 1980).

D.4 Specific Considerations for Infiltration Testing

The following subsections are intended to address specific topics that commonly arise in characterizing infiltration rates.

D.4.1 Hydraulic Conductivity versus Infiltration Rate versus Percolation Rate

A common misunderstanding is that the "percolation rate" obtained from a percolation test is equivalent to the "infiltration rate" obtained from tests such as a single or double ring infiltrometer test which is equivalent to the "saturated hydraulic conductivity". In fact, these terms have different meanings. Saturated hydraulic conductivity is an intrinsic property of a specific soil sample under a given degree of compaction. It is a coefficient in Darcy's equation (Darcy 1856) that characterizes the flux of water that will occur under a given gradient. The measurement of saturated hydraulic conductivity in a laboratory test is typically referred to as "permeability", which is a function of the density, structure, stratification, fines, and discontinuities of a given sample under given controlled conditions. In contrast, infiltration rate is an empirical observation of the rate of flux of water into a given soil structure under long term ponding conditions. Similarly to permeability, infiltration rate can be limited by a number of factors including the layering of soil, density, discontinuities, and initial moisture content. These factors control how quickly water can move through a soil. However, infiltration rate can also be influenced by mounding of groundwater, and the rate at which water dissipates horizontally below a BMP – both of which describe the "capacity" of the "infiltration receptor" to accept this water over an extended period. For this reason, an infiltration test should ideally be conducted for a relatively long duration resembling a series of storm events so that the capacity of the infiltration receptor is evaluated as well as the rate at which water can enter the system. Infiltration rates are generally tested with larger diameter holes, pits, or apparatuses intended to enforce a primarily vertical direction of flux.

In contrast, percolation is tested with small diameter holes, and it is mostly a lateral phenomenon. The direct measurement yielded by a percolation test tends to overestimate the infiltration rate, except perhaps in cases in which a BMP has similar dimensionality to the borehole, such as a dry well. Adjustment of percolation rates may be made to an infiltration rate using a technique such as the Porchet Method.

D.4.2 Cut and Fill Conditions

Cut Conditions: Where the proposed infiltration BMP is to be located in a cut condition, the infiltration surface level at the bottom of the BMP might be far below the existing grade. For example, if the infiltration surface of a proposed BMP is to be located at an elevation that is currently beneath 15 feet of planned cut, *how can the proposed infiltration surface be tested to establish a design infiltration rate prior to beginning excavation?* The question can be addressed in two ways: First, one of the deeper subsurface tests described above can be used to provide a planning level screening of potential rates at the elevation of the proposed infiltrating surface. These tests can be conducted at depths exceeding 100 feet, therefore are applicable in most cut conditions. Second, the project can commit to further testing using more reliable methods following bulk excavation to refine or adjust infiltration rates, and/or apply higher factors of safety to borehole methods to account for the inherent uncertainty in these measurements and conversions.

Fill Conditions: There are two types of fills – those that are engineered or documented, and those that are undocumented. Undocumented fills are fills placed without engineering controls or construction quality assurance and are subject to great uncertainty. Engineered fills are generally placed using construction quality assurance procedures and may have criteria for grain-size and fines content, and the properties can be very well understood. However, for engineered fills, infiltration rates may still be quite uncertain due to layering and heterogeneities introduced as part of construction that cannot be precisely controlled.

If the bottom of a BMP (infiltration surface) is proposed to be located in a fill location, the infiltration surface may not exist prior to grading. How then can the infiltration rate be determined? For example, if a proposed infiltration BMP is to be located with its bottom elevation in 10 feet of fill, <u>how could one reasonably establish an infiltration rate prior to the fill being placed?</u>

Where possible, infiltration BMPs on fill material should be designed such that their infiltrating surface extends into native soils. Additionally, for shallow fill depths, fill material can be selectively graded (i.e., high permeability granular material placed below proposed BMPs) to provide reliable infiltration properties until the infiltrating water reaches native soils. In some cases, due to considerable fill depth, the extension of the BMP down to natural soil and/or selective grading of fill material may prove infeasible. In additional, fill material will result in some compaction of now buried native soils potentially reducing their ability to infiltrate. In these cases, because of the uncertainty of fill parameters as described above as well as potential compaction of the native soils, an infiltration BMP may not be feasible.

If the source of fill material is defined and this material is known to be of a granular nature and that the native soils below is permeable and will not be highly compacted, infiltration through compacted fill materials may still be feasible. In this case, a project phasing approach could be used including the following general steps, (1) collect samples from areas expected to be used as borrow sites for fill activities, (2) remold samples to approximately the proposed degree of compaction and measure the saturated hydraulic conductivity of remolded samples using laboratory methods, (3) if infiltration rates appear adequate for infiltration, then apply an appropriate factor of safety and use the initial rates for preliminary design, (4) following placement of fill, conduct in-situ testing to refine design infiltration rates and adjust the design as needed; the infiltration rate of native soil below the fill should also be tested at this time to determine if compaction as a result of fill placement has significantly reduced its infiltration rate. The project geotechnical engineer should be involved in decision making whenever infiltration is proposed in the vicinity of engineered fill structures so that potential impacts of infiltration on the strength and stability of fills and pavement structures can be evaluated.

D.4.3 Effects of Direct and Incidental Compaction

It is widely recognized that compaction of soil has a major influence on infiltration rates (Pitt et al. 2008). However, direct (intentional) compaction is an essential aspect of project construction and indirect compaction (such as by movement of machinery, placement of fill, stockpiling of materials, and foot traffic) can be difficult to avoid in some parts of the project site. Infiltration testing strategies should attempt to measure soils at a degree of compaction that resembles anticipated post-construction conditions.

Ideally, infiltration systems should be located outside of areas where direct compaction will be required and should be staked off to minimize incidental compaction from vehicles and stockpiling. For these conditions, no adjustment of test results is needed.

However, in some cases, infiltration BMPs will be constructed in areas to be compacted. For these areas, it may be appropriate to include field compaction tests or prepare laboratory samples and conducting infiltration testing to approximate the degree of compaction that will occur in post-construction conditions. Alternatively, testing could be conducted on undisturbed soil, and an additional factor of safety could be applied to account for anticipated infiltration after compaction. To develop a factor of safety associated with incidental compaction, samples could compacted to various degrees of compaction, their hydraulic conductivity measured, and a "response curve" developed to relate the degree of compaction to the hydraulic conductivity of the material.

D.4.4 Temperature Effects on Infiltration Rate

The rate of infiltration through soil is affected by the viscosity of water, which in turn is affected by the temperature of water. As such, infiltration rate is strongly dependent on the temperature of the infiltrating water (Cedergren, 1997). For example, Emerson (2008) found that wintertime infiltration rates below a BMP in Pennsylvania were approximately half their peak summertime rates. As such, it is important to consider the effects of temperature when planning tests and interpreting results.

If possible, testing should be conducted at a temperature that approximates the typical runoff temperatures for the site during the times when rainfall occurs. If this is not possible, then the results of infiltration tests should be adjusted to account for the difference between the temperature at the time of testing and the typical temperature of runoff when rainfall occurs. The measured infiltration can be adjusted by the ratio of the viscosity at the test temperature versus the typical temperature when rainfall occurs (Cedergren, 1997), per the following formula:

$$K_{Typical} = K_{Test} \times \left(\frac{\mu_{Test}}{\mu_{Typical}} \right)$$

Where:

$K_{Typical}$ = the typical infiltration rate expected at typical temperatures when rainfall occurs

K_{Test} = the infiltration rate measured or estimated under the conditions of the test
$\mu_{Typical}$ = the viscosity of water at the typical temperature expected when rainfall occurs
μ_{Test} = the viscosity of water at the temperature at which the test was conducted

D.4.5 Number of Infiltration Tests Needed

The heterogeneity inherent in soils implies that all but the smallest proposed infiltration facilities would benefit from infiltration tests in multiple locations. The following requirements apply for in situ infiltration/percolation testing:

- In situ infiltration/ percolation testing shall be conducted at a minimum of two locations within 50-feet of each proposed storm water infiltration/ percolation BMP.
- In situ infiltration/percolation testing shall be conducted using an approved method listed in Table D.3-1
- Testing shall be conducted at approximately the same depth and in the same material as the base of the proposed storm water BMP.

D.5 Selecting a Safety Factor

Should I use a factor of safety for design infiltration rate?

Monitoring of actual facility performance has shown that the full-scale infiltration rate can be much lower than the rate measured by small-scale testing (King County Department of Natural Resources and Parks, 2009). Factors such as soil variability and groundwater mounding may be responsible for much of this difference. Additionally, the infiltration rate of BMPs naturally declines between maintenance cycles as the BMP surface becomes occluded and particulates accumulate in the infiltrative layer.

In the past, infiltration structures have been shown to have a relatively short lifespan. Over 50 percent of infiltration systems either partially or completely failed within the first 5 years of operation (United States EPA. 1999). In a Maryland study on infiltration trenches (Lindsey et al. 1991), 53 percent were not operating as designed, 36 percent were clogged, and 22 percent showed reduced filtration. In a study of 12 infiltration basins (Galli 1992), none of which had built-in pretreatment systems, all had failed within the first two years of operation.

Given the known potential for infiltration BMPs to degrade or fail over time, an appropriate factor of safety applied to infiltration testing results is strongly recommended. This section presents a recommended thought process for selecting a safety factor. This method considers factor of safety to be a function of:

- Site suitability considerations, and
- Design-related considerations.

These factors and the method for using them to compute a safety factor are discussed below. Importantly, this method encourages rigorous site investigation, good pretreatment, and commitments to routine maintenance to provide technically-sound justification for using a lower factor of safety.

D.5.1 Determining Factor of Safety

Worksheet D.5-1, at the end of this section can be used in conjunction with Tables D.5-1 and D.5-2 to determine an appropriate safety factor. Tables D.5-1 and D.5-2 assign point values to design considerations; the values are entered into Worksheet D.5-1, which assign a weighting factor for each design consideration.

The following procedure can be used to estimate an appropriate factor of safety to be applied to the infiltration testing results. When assigning a factor of safety, care should be taken to understand what other factors of safety are implicit in other aspects of the design to avoid incorporating compounding factors of safety that may result in significant over-design.

1. For each consideration shown above, determine whether the consideration is a high, medium, or low concern.
2. For all high concerns in Table D.5-1, assign a factor value of 3, for medium concerns, assign a factor value of 2, and for low concerns assign a factor value of 1.
3. Multiply each of the factors in Table D.5-1 by 0.25 and then add them together. This should yield a number between 1 and 3.
4. For all high concerns in Table D.5-2, assign a factor value of 3, for medium concerns, assign a factor value of 2, and for low concerns assign a factor value of 1.
5. Multiply each of the factors in Table D.5-2 by 0.5 and then add them together. This should yield a number between 1 and 3.
6. Multiply the two safety factors together to get the final combined safety factor. If the combined safety factor is less than 2, then 2 should be used as the safety factor.
7. Divide the tested infiltration rate by the combined safety factor to obtain the adjusted design infiltration rate for use in sizing the infiltration facility.

Note: The minimum combined adjustment factor should not be less than 2.0 and the maximum combined adjustment factor should not exceed 9.0.

D.5.2 Site Suitability Considerations for Selection of an Infiltration Factor of Safety

Considerations related to site suitability include:

- Soil assessment methods – the site assessment extent (e.g., number of borings, test pits, etc.) and the measurement method used to estimate the short-term infiltration rate.
- Predominant soil texture/percent fines – soil texture and the percent of fines can influence the potential for clogging. Finer grained soils may be more susceptible to clogging.
- Site soil variability – site with spatially heterogeneous soils (vertically or horizontally) as determined from site investigations are more difficult to estimate average properties for resulting in a higher level of uncertainty associated with initial estimates.
- Depth to seasonal high groundwater/impervious layer – groundwater mounding may become an issue during excessively wet conditions where shallow aquifers or shallow clay lenses are present.
- These considerations are summarized in Table D.5-1 below, in addition to presenting classification of concern.

Table D.5-1: Suitability Assessment Related Considerations for Infiltration Facility Safety Factors

Consideration	High Concern – 3 points	Medium Concern – 2 points	Low Concern – 1 point
Assessment methods (see explanation below)	Use of soil survey maps or simple texture analysis to estimate short-term infiltration rates Use of well permeameter or borehole methods without accompanying continuous boring log Relatively sparse testing with direct infiltration methods	Use of well permeameter or borehole methods with accompanying continuous boring log Direct measurement of infiltration area with localized infiltration measurement methods (e.g., infiltrometer) Moderate spatial resolution	Direct measurement with localized (i.e., small-scale) infiltration testing methods at relatively high resolution[1] or Use of extensive test pit infiltration measurement methods[2]
Texture Class	Silty and clayey soils with significant fines	Loamy soils	Granular to slightly loamy soils
Site soil variability	Highly variable soils indicated from site assessment, or Unknown variability	Soil borings/test pits indicate moderately homogeneous soils	Soil borings/test pits indicate relatively homogeneous soils
Depth to groundwater/ impervious layer	<5 ft below facility bottom	5-15 ft below facility bottom	>15 below facility bottom

1 - Localized (i.e., small scale) testing refers to methods such as the double-ring infiltrometer and borehole tests)

2 - Extensive infiltration testing refers to methods that include excavating a significant portion of the proposed infiltration area, filling the excavation with water, and monitoring drawdown. The excavation should be to the depth of the proposed infiltration surface and ideally be at least 30 to 100 square feet.

D.5.3 Design Related Considerations for Selection of an Infiltration Factor of Safety

Design related considerations include:

- Level of pretreatment and expected influent sediment loads – credit should be given for good pretreatment to account for the reduced probability of clogging from high sediment loading. Appendix B.6 describes performance criteria for "flow-through treatment" based 80 percent capture of total suspended solids, which provides excellent levels of pretreatment. Additionally, the Washington State Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology provides a certification for "pre-treatment" based on 50 percent removal of TSS, which provides moderate levels of treatment. Current approved technologies are listed at:
- http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/technologies.html. Use of certified technologies can allow a lower factor of safety. Also, facilities designed to capture runoff from relatively clean surfaces such as rooftops are likely to see low sediment loads and therefore may be designed with lower safety factors. Finally, the amount of landscaped area and its vegetation coverage characteristics should be considered. For example in arid areas with more soils exposed, open areas draining to infiltration systems may contribute excessive sediments.
- Compaction during construction – proper construction oversight is needed during construction to ensure that the bottoms of infiltration facility are not impacted by significant incidental compaction. Facilities that use proper construction practices and oversight need less restrictive safety factors.

Table D.5-2: Design Related Considerations for Infiltration Facility Safety Factors

Consideration	High Concern – 3 points	Medium Concern – 2 points	Low Concern – 1 point
Level of pretreatment/ expected influent sediment loads	Limited pretreatment using gross solids removal devices only, such as hydrodynamic separators, racks and screens AND tributary area includes landscaped areas, steep slopes, high traffic areas, road sanding, or any other areas expected to produce high sediment, trash, or debris loads.	Good pretreatment with BMPs that mitigate coarse sediments such as vegetated swales AND influent sediment loads from the tributary area are expected to be moderate (e.g., low traffic, mild slopes, stabilized pervious areas, etc.). Performance of pretreatment consistent with "pretreatment BMP performance criteria" (50% TSS removal) in Appendix B.6	Excellent pretreatment with BMPs that mitigate fine sediments such as bioretention or media filtration OR sedimentation or facility only treats runoff from relatively clean surfaces, such as rooftops/non-sanded road surfaces. Performance of pretreatment consistent with "flow-through treatment control BMP performance criteria" (i.e., 80% TSS removal) in Appendix B.6

Consideration	High Concern – 3 points	Medium Concern – 2 points	Low Concern – 1 point
Redundancy/ resiliency	No "backup" system is provided; the system design does not allow infiltration rates to be restored relatively easily with maintenance	The system has a backup pathway for treated water to discharge if clogging occurs or infiltration rates can be restored via maintenance.	The system has a backup pathway for treated water to discharge if clogging occurs and infiltration rates can be relatively easily restored via maintenance.
Compaction during construction	Construction of facility on a compacted site or increased probability of unintended/ indirect compaction.	Medium probability of unintended/ indirect compaction.	Equipment traffic is effectively restricted from infiltration areas during construction and there is low probability of unintended/ indirect compaction.

D.5.4 Implications of a Factor of Safety in BMP Feasibility and Design

The above method will provide safety factors in the range of 2 to 9. From a simplified practical perspective, this means that the size of the facility will need to increase in area from 2 to 9 times relative to that which might be used without a safety factor. Clearly, numbers toward the upper end of this range will make all but the best locations prohibitive in land area and cost.

In order to make BMPs more feasible and cost effective, steps should be taken to plan and execute the implementation of infiltration BMPs in a way that will reduce the safety factors needed for those projects. A commitment to effective site design and source control thorough site investigation, use of effective pretreatment controls, good construction practices, and restoration of the infiltration rates of soils that are damaged by prior compaction should lower the safety factor that should be applied, to help improve the long term reliability of the system and reduce BMP construction cost. While these practices decrease the recommended safety factor, they do not totally mitigate the need to apply a factor of safety. The minimum recommended safety factor of 2.0 is intended to account for the remaining uncertainty and long-term deterioration that cannot be technically mitigated.

Because there is potential for an applicant to "exaggerate" factor of safety to artificially prove infeasibility, an upper cap on the factor of safety is proposed for feasibility screening. A maximum factor of safety of 2.0 is recommended for infiltration feasibility screening such that an artificially high factor of safety cannot be used to inappropriately rule out infiltration, unless justified. If the site passes the feasibility analysis at a factor of safety of 2.0, then infiltration must investigated, but a higher factor of safety may be selected at the discretion of the design engineer.

Worksheet D.5-1: Factor of Safety and Design Infiltration Rate Worksheet

Factor of Safety and Design Infiltration Rate Worksheet			Worksheet D.5-1		
Factor Category		Factor Description	Assigned Weight (w)	Factor Value (v)	Product (p) p = w x v
A	Suitability Assessment	Soil assessment methods	0.25		
		Predominant soil texture	0.25		
		Site soil variability	0.25		
		Depth to groundwater / impervious layer	0.25		
		Suitability Assessment Safety Factor, $S_A = \Sigma p$			
B	Design	Level of pretreatment/ expected sediment loads	0.5		
		Redundancy/resiliency	0.25		
		Compaction during construction	0.25		
		Design Safety Factor, $S_B = \Sigma p$			
Combined Safety Factor, $S_{total} = S_A \times S_B$					
Observed Infiltration Rate, inch/hr, $K_{observed}$ (corrected for test-specific bias)					
Design Infiltration Rate, in/hr, $K_{design} = K_{observed} / S_{total}$					
Supporting Data					
Briefly describe infiltration test and provide reference to test forms:					

Appendix

E

AUTHORITY BMP DESIGN MANUAL

BMP Design Fact Sheets

Appendix E BMP Design Fact Sheets

The following fact sheets were developed to assist the project applicants with designing BMPs to meet the storm water obligations:

MS4 Category	Manual Category	Design Fact Sheet
Source Control	Source Control	SC: Source Control BMP Requirements
Site Design	Site Design	SD-1: Street Trees SD-5: Impervious Area Dispersion SD-6A: Green Roofs SD-6B: Permeable Pavement (Site Design BMP) SD-8: Rain Barrels
Retention	Harvest and Use	HU-1: Cistern
	Infiltration	INF-1: Infiltration Basins INF-2: Bioretention INF-3: Permeable Pavement (Pollutant Control)
	Partial Retention	PR-1: Biofiltration with Partial Retention
Biofiltration	Biofiltration	BF-1: Biofiltration BF-2: Nutrient Sensitive Media Design BF-3: Proprietary Biofiltration
Flow-through Treatment Control	Flow-through Treatment Control with Alternative Compliance	FT-1: Vegetated Swales FT-2: Media Filters FT-3: Sand Filters FT-4: Dry Extended Detention Basin FT-5: Proprietary Flow-through Treatment Control
		PL: Plant List

E.1 Source Control BMP Requirements

Worksheet E.1-1: Source Control BMP Requirements

How to comply: Projects shall comply with this requirement by implementing all source control BMPs listed in this section that are applicable to their project. Applicability shall be determined through consideration of the development project's features and anticipated pollutant sources. Appendix E.1 provides guidance for identifying source control BMPs applicable to a project. Form H-4 in Appendix A shall be used to document compliance with source control BMP requirements.

How to use this worksheet:

1. Review Column 1 and identify which of these potential sources of storm water pollutants apply to your site. Check each box that applies.
2. Review Column 2 and incorporate all of the corresponding applicable BMPs in your project site plan.
3. Review Columns 3 and 4 and incorporate all of the corresponding applicable permanent controls and operational BMPs in a table in your project-specific storm water management report. Describe your specific BMPs in an accompanying narrative, and explain any special conditions or situations that required omitting BMPs or substituting alternatives.
4. Review Column 5 and incorporate all of the corresponding applicable Authority Source Control BMPs in a table in your project-specific storm water management report. Describe any special conditions that require omitting BMPs or substituting alternatives. Detailed descriptions of BMPs are found in Appendix B of the SAN SWMP (www.san.org/green). Note that all BMPs listed in Appendix B of the SAN SWMP, as applicable, apply to all areas of the Authority jurisdiction.

This page intentionally left blank

If These Sources Will Be on the Project Site …	… Then Your SWQMP Shall Consider These Source Control BMPs			
1 **Potential Sources of Runoff Pollutants**	**2** **Permanent Controls—Show on Drawings**	**3** **Permanent Controls—List in Table and Narrative**	**4** **Operational BMPs—Include in Table and Narrative**	**5** **Authority Source Control BMPs—Include in Table and Narrative**
❑ **A.** Onsite storm drain inlets ❑ Not Applicable	❑ Locations of inlets.	❑ Mark all inlets with the words "No Dumping! Flows to Bay" or similar.	❑ Maintain and periodically repaint or replace inlet markings. ❑ Provide storm water pollution prevention information to new site owners, lessees, or operators. ❑ See applicable operational BMPs in Fact Sheet SC-44, "Drainage System Maintenance," in the CASQA Stormwater Quality Handbooks at www.cabmphandbooks.com. ❑ Include the following in lease agreements: "Tenant shall not allow anyone to discharge anything to storm drains or to store or deposit materials so as to create a potential discharge to storm drains."	❑ BMP SC17 – Storm Drain Maintenance
❑ **B.** Interior floor drains and elevator shaft sump pumps ❑ Not Applicable		❑ State that interior floor drains and elevator shaft sump pumps will be plumbed to sanitary sewer.	❑ Inspect and maintain drains to prevent blockages and overflow.	❑ BMP SC01 – Non-Storm Water Management ❑ BMP SC17 – Storm Drain Maintenance
❑ **C.** Interior parking garages ❑ Not Applicable		❑ State that parking garage floor drains will be plumbed to the sanitary sewer.	❑ Inspect and maintain drains to prevent blockages and overflow.	❑ BMP SC01 – Non-Storm Water Management ❑ BMP SC17 – Storm Drain Maintenance
❑ **D1.** Need for future indoor & structural pest control ❑ Not Applicable		❑ Note building design features that discourage entry of pests.	❑ Provide Integrated Pest Management information to owners, lessees, and operators.	❑ BMP SC09 – Building and Grounds Maintenance

If These Sources Will Be on the Project Site …	… Then Your SWQMP shall consider These Source Control BMPs			
1 **Potential Sources of Runoff Pollutants**	**2** **Permanent Controls—Show on Drawings**	**3** **Permanent Controls—List in Table and Narrative**	**4** **Operational BMPs—Include in Table and Narrative**	**5** **Authority Source Control BMPs—Include in Table and Narrative**
❑ **D2.** Landscape/ Outdoor Pesticide Use ❑ Not Applicable	❑ Show locations of existing trees or areas of shrubs and ground cover to be undisturbed and retained. ❑ Show self-retaining landscape areas, if any. ❑ Show storm water treatment facilities.	State that final landscape plans will accomplish all of the following. ❑ Preserve existing drought tolerant trees, shrubs, and ground cover to the maximum extent possible. ❑ Design landscaping to minimize irrigation and runoff, to promote surface infiltration where appropriate, and to minimize the use of fertilizers and pesticides that can contribute to storm water pollution. ❑ Where landscaped areas are used to retain or detain storm water, specify plants that are tolerant of periodic saturated soil conditions. ❑ Consider using pest-resistant plants, especially adjacent to hardscape. ❑ To ensure successful establishment, select plants appropriate to site soils, slopes, climate, sun, wind, rain, land use, air movement, ecological consistency, and plant interactions.	❑ Maintain landscaping using minimum or no pesticides. ❑ See applicable operational BMPs in Fact Sheet SC-41, "Building and Grounds Maintenance," in the CASQA Stormwater Quality Handbooks at www.cabmphandbooks.com. ❑ Provide IPM information to new owners, lessees and operators.	❑ BMP SC01 – Non-Storm Water Management ❑ BMP SC09 – Building and Grounds Maintenance
❑ **E.** Ponds, decorative fountains, and other water features. ❑ Not Applicable	❑ Show location of water feature and a sanitary sewer cleanout in an accessible area within 10 feet.	❑ If EAD requires the water feature to be plumbed to the sanitary sewer, place a note on the plans and state in the narrative that this connection will be made according to local requirements.	❑ See applicable operational BMPs in Fact Sheet SC-72, "Fountain and Pool Maintenance," in the CASQA Stormwater Quality Handbooks at www.cabmphandbooks.com.	

If These Sources Will Be on the Project Site …	… Then Your SWQMP shall consider These Source Control BMPs			
1 **Potential Sources of Runoff Pollutants**	**2** **Permanent Controls—Show on Drawings**	**3** **Permanent Controls—List in Table and Narrative**	**4** **Operational BMPs—Include in Table and Narrative**	**5** **Authority Source Control BMPs—Include in Table and Narrative**
❑ **F.** Food service ❑ Not Applicable	❑ For restaurants, grocery stores, and other food service operations, show location (indoors or in a covered area outdoors) of a floor sink or other area for cleaning floor mats, containers, and equipment. ❑ On the drawing, show a note that this drain will be connected to a grease interceptor before discharging to the sanitary sewer.	❑ Describe the location and features of the designated cleaning area. ❑ Describe the items to be cleaned in this facility and how it has been sized to ensure that the largest items can be accommodated.		❑ BMP SC01 – Non-Storm Water Management ❑ BMP SC04 – Aircraft, Ground Vehicle, and Equipment Cleaning
❑ **G.** Refuse areas ❑ Not Applicable	❑ Show where site refuse and recycled materials will be handled and stored for pickup. See local municipal requirements for sizes and other details of refuse areas. ❑ If dumpsters or other receptacles are outdoors, show how the designated area will be covered, graded, and paved to prevent run- on and show locations of berms to prevent runoff from the area. Also show how the designated area will be protected from wind dispersal. ❑ Any drains from dumpsters, compactors, and tallow bin areas shall be connected to a grease removal device before discharge to sanitary sewer.	❑ State how site refuse will be handled and provide supporting detail to what is shown on plans. ❑ State that signs will be posted on or near dumpsters with the words "Do not dump hazardous materials here" or similar.	❑ State how the following will be implemented: Provide adequate number of receptacles. Inspect receptacles regularly; repair or replace leaky receptacles. Keep receptacles covered. Prohibit/prevent dumping of liquid or hazardous wastes. Post "no hazardous materials" signs. Inspect and pick up litter daily and clean up spills immediately. Keep spill control materials available on- site. See Fact Sheet SC-34, "Waste Handling and Disposal" in the CASQA Stormwater Quality Handbooks at www.cabmphandbooks.com.	❑ BMP SC08 – Waste Handling and Disposal

If These Sources Will Be on the Project Site …	… Then Your SWQMP shall consider These Source Control BMPs			
1 **Potential Sources of Runoff Pollutants**	**2** **Permanent Controls—Show on Drawings**	**3** **Permanent Controls—List in Table and Narrative**	**4** **Operational BMPs—Include in Table and Narrative Table and Narrative**	**5** **Authority Source Control BMPs—Include in Table and Narrative**
❑ **H.** Industrial processes. ❑ Not Applicable	❑ Show process area.	❑ If industrial processes are to be located onsite, state: "All process activities to be performed indoors where possible. No processes to drain to exterior or to storm drain system."	❑ See Fact Sheet SC-10, "Non- Stormwater Discharges" in the CASQA Stormwater Quality Handbooks at www.cabmphandbooks.com.	❑ BMP SC01 – Non-Storm Water Management ❑ BMP SC02A – Outdoor Equipment Operations and Maintenance Areas ❑ BMP SC02B – Aircraft, Ground Vehicle, and Equipment Maintenance ❑ BMP SC02C – Electric Vehicle Maintenance and Charging
❑ **I.** Outdoor storage of equipment or materials. (See rows J and K for source control measures for vehicle cleaning, repair, and maintenance.) ❑ Not Applicable	❑ Show any outdoor storage areas, including how materials will be covered. Show how areas will be graded and bermed to prevent run-on or runoff from area and protected from wind dispersal. ❑ Storage of non-hazardous liquids shall be covered by a roof and/or drain to the sanitary sewer system, and be contained by berms, dikes, liners, or vaults. ❑ Storage of hazardous materials and wastes must be in compliance with the local hazardous materials ordinance and a Hazardous Materials (HazMat) Management Plan for the site. HazMat Management Plans must be on file with EAD.	❑ Include a detailed description of materials to be stored, storage areas, and structural features to prevent pollutants from entering storm drains. Where appropriate, reference documentation of compliance with the requirements of local Hazardous Materials Programs for: ▪ Hazardous Waste Generation ▪ Hazardous Materials Release Response and Inventory ▪ California Accidental Release Prevention Program ▪ Aboveground Storage Tank ▪ Uniform Fire Code Article 80 Section 103(b) & (c) 1991 ▪ Underground Storage Tank	❑ See the Fact Sheets SC-31, "Outdoor Liquid Container Storage" and SC-33, "Outdoor Storage of Raw Materials" in the CASQA Stormwater Quality Handbooks at www.cabmphandbooks.com.	❑ BMP SC07 – Outdoor Material Storage

If These Sources Will Be on the Project Site …	… Then Your SWQMP shall consider These Source Control BMPs			
1 **Potential Sources of Runoff Pollutants**	**2** **Permanent Controls—Show on Drawings**	**3** **Permanent Controls—List in Table and Narrative**	**4** **Operational BMPs—Include in Table and Narrative**	**5** **Authority Source Control BMPs—Include in Table and Narrative**
❑ **J.** Vehicle and Equipment Cleaning ❑ Not Applicable	❑ Show on drawings as appropriate: (1) Commercial/industrial facilities having vehicle /equipment cleaning needs shall either provide a covered, bermed area for washing activities or discourage vehicle/equipment washing by removing hose bibs and installing signs prohibiting such uses. (2) Washing areas for cars, vehicles, and equipment shall be paved, designed to prevent run-on to or runoff from the area, and plumbed to drain to the sanitary sewer. (3) Commercial car wash facilities shall be designed such that no runoff from the facility is discharged to the storm drain system. Wastewater from the facility shall discharge to the sanitary sewer, or a wastewater reclamation system shall be installed.	❑ If a car wash area is not provided, describe measures taken to discourage onsite car washing and explain how these will be enforced.	Describe operational measures to implement the following (if applicable): ❑ Washwater from aircraft, vehicle and equipment washing operations shall not be discharged to the storm drain system. ❑ Vehicle maintenance shops and similar shall use dry wash methods, capture all wash water, or wash offsite. ❑ See Fact Sheet SC-21, "Vehicle and Equipment Cleaning," in the CASQA Stormwater Quality Handbooks at www.cabmphandbooks.com	❑ BMP SC01 – Non-Storm Water Management ❑ BMP SC04 – Aircraft, Ground Vehicle, and Equipment Cleaning

If These Sources Will Be on the Project Site …	… Then Your SWQMP shall consider These Source Control BMPs			
1 **Potential Sources of Runoff Pollutants**	**2** **Permanent Controls—Show on Drawings**	**3** **Permanent Controls—List in Table and**	**4** **Operational BMPs—Include in Table and Narrative**	**5** **Authority Source Control BMPs—Include in Table and Narrative**
❑ **K.** Vehicle/Equipment Repair and Maintenance ❑ Not Applicable	❑ Accommodate all vehicle equipment repair and maintenance indoors. Or designate an outdoor work area and design the area to protect from rainfall, run-on runoff, and wind dispersal. ❑ Show secondary containment for exterior work areas where motor oil, brake fluid, gasoline, diesel fuel, radiator fluid, acid-containing batteries or other hazardous materials or hazardous wastes are used or stored. Drains shall not be installed within the secondary containment areas. ❑ Add a note on the plans that states either (1) there are no floor drains, or (2) floor drains are connected to wastewater pretreatment systems prior to discharge to the sanitary sewer and an industrial waste discharge permit will be obtained.	❑ State that no vehicle repair or maintenance will be done outdoors, or else describe the required features of the outdoor work area. ❑ State that there are no floor drains or if there are floor drains, note the agency from which an industrial waste discharge permit will be obtained and that the design meets that agency's requirements. ❑ State that there are no tanks, containers or sinks to be used for parts cleaning or rinsing or, if there are, note the agency from which an industrial waste discharge permit will be obtained and that the design meets that agency's requirements.	In the report, note that all of the following restrictions apply to use the site: ❑ No person shall dispose of, nor permit the disposal, directly or indirectly of vehicle fluids, hazardous materials, or rinsewater from parts cleaning into storm drains. ❑ No vehicle fluid removal shall be performed outside a building, nor on asphalt or ground surfaces, whether inside or outside a building, except in such a manner as to ensure that any spilled fluid will be in an area of secondary containment. Leaking vehicle fluids shall be contained or drained from the vehicle immediately. ❑ No person shall leave unattended drip parts or other open containers containing vehicle fluid, unless such containers are in use or in an area of secondary containment.	❑ BMP SC01 – Non-Storm Water Management ❑ BMP SC02A – Outdoor Equipment Operations and Maintenance Areas ❑ BMP SC02B – Aircraft, Ground Vehicle, and Equipment Maintenance ❑ BMP SC02C – Electric Vehicle Maintenance and Charging

If These Sources Will Be on the Project Site …	… Then Your SWQMP shall consider These Source Control BMPs			
1 **Potential Sources of Runoff Pollutants**	**2** **Permanent Controls—Show on Drawings**	**3** **Permanent Controls—List in Table and Narrative**	**4** **Operational BMPs—Include in Table and Narrative**	**5** **Authority Source Control BMPs—Include in Table and Narrative**
❑ **L.** Fuel Dispensing Areas ❑ Not Applicable	❑ Fueling areas[1] shall have impermeable floors (i.e., portland cement concrete or equivalent smooth impervious surface) that are (1) graded at the minimum slope necessary to prevent ponding; and (2) separated from the rest of the site by a grade break that prevents run-on of storm water to the MEP. ❑ Fueling areas shall be covered by a canopy that extends a minimum of ten feet in each direction from each pump. [Alternative: The fueling area must be covered and the cover's minimum dimensions must be equal to or greater than the area within the grade break or fuel dispensing area1.] The canopy [or cover] shall not drain onto the fueling area.		❑ The tenant or property owner shall dry sweep the fueling area routinely. ❑ See the Business Guide Sheet, "Automotive Service—Service Stations" in the CASQA Stormwater Quality Handbooks at www.cabmphandbooks.com.	❑ BMP SC03 – Aircraft, Ground Vehicle, and Equipment Fueling

1. The fueling area shall be defined as the area extending a minimum of 6.5 feet from the corner of each fuel dispenser or the length at which the hose and nozzle assembly may be operated plus a minimum of one foot, whichever is greater.

If These Sources Will Be on the Project Site …	… Then Your SWQMP shall consider These Source Control BMPs			
1 **Potential Sources of Runoff Pollutants**	**2** **Permanent Controls—Show on Drawings**	**3** **Permanent Controls—List in Table and Narrative**	**4** **Operational BMPs—Include in Table and Narrative**	**5** **Authority Source Control BMPs—Include in Table and Narrative**
M. Loading Docks ❑ Not Applicable	❑ Show a preliminary design for the loading dock area, including roofing and drainage. Loading docks shall be covered and/or graded to minimize run-on to and runoff from the loading area. Roof downspouts shall be positioned to direct storm water away from the loading area. Water from loading dock areas should be drained to the sanitary sewer where feasible. Direct connections to storm drains from depressed loading docks are prohibited. ❑ Loading dock areas draining directly to the sanitary sewer shall be equipped with a spill control valve or equivalent device, which shall be kept closed during periods of operation. ❑ Provide a roof overhang over the loading area or install door skirts (cowling) at each bay that enclose the end of the trailer.		❑ Move loaded and unloaded items indoors as soon as possible. ❑ See Fact Sheet SC-30, "Outdoor Loading and Unloading," in the CASQA Stormwater Quality Handbooks at www.cabmphandbooks.com.	❑ BMP SC06 – Outdoor Loading and Unloading of Materials
❑ **N.** Fire Sprinkler Test Water ❑ Not Applicable		❑ Provide a means to drain fire sprinkler test water to the sanitary sewer.	❑ See the note in Fact Sheet SC-41, "Building and Grounds Maintenance," in the CASQA Stormwater Quality Handbooks at www.cabmphandbooks.com.	❑ BMP SC13 – Fire Fighting Foam Discharge

If These Sources Will Be on the Project Site …	… Then Your SWQMP shall consider These Source Control BMPs			
1 **Potential Sources of Runoff Pollutants**	**2** **Permanent Controls—Show on Drawings**	**3** **Permanent Controls—List in Table and Narrative**	**4** **Operational BMPs—Include in Table and Narrative**	**5** **Authority Source Control BMPs—Include in Table and Narrative**
O. Miscellaneous Drain or Wash Water ❑ Boiler drain lines ❑ Condensate drain lines ❑ Rooftop equipment ❑ Drainage sumps ❑ Roofing, gutters, and trim ❑ Not Applicable		❑ Boiler drain lines shall be directly or indirectly connected to the sanitary sewer system and may not discharge to the storm drain system. ❑ Condensate drain lines may discharge to landscaped areas if the flow is small enough that runoff will not occur. Condensate drain lines may not discharge to the storm drain system. Consider harvest and use of condensate. ❑ Rooftop mounted equipment with potential to produce pollutants shall be roofed and/or have secondary containment.		❑ BMP SC01 – Non-Storm Water Management
❑ **P.** Plazas, sidewalks, parking lots, runways, ramp, and taxiways. ❑ Not Applicable			❑ Plazas, sidewalks, parking lots, runways, ramp, and taxiways shall be swept regularly to prevent the accumulation of litter and debris. Debris from pressure washing shall be collected to prevent entry into the storm drain system. Washwater containing any cleaning agent or degreaser shall be collected and discharged to the sanitary sewer and not discharged to a storm drain.	❑ BMP SC01 – Non-Storm Water Management ❑ BMP SC12 – Outdoor Wash Down/Sweeping (Apron Washing, Ramp Scrubbing) ❑ BMP SC15 – Runway Rubber Removal ❑ BMP SC16 – Parking Lots

This page intentionally left blank

E.2 SD-1 Street Trees

MS4 Permit Category
Site Design

Manual Category
Site Design

Applicable Performance Standard
Site Design

Primary Benefits
Volume Reduction

Street Trees (Source: County of San Diego LID Manual – EOA, Inc.)

Description

Trees planted to intercept rainfall and runoff can be used as storm water management measures that provide additional benefits beyond those typically associated with trees, including energy conservation, air quality improvement, and aesthetic enhancement. Typical storm water management benefits associated with trees include:

- **Interception of rainfall** – tree surfaces (roots, foliage, bark, and branches) intercept, evaporate, store, or convey precipitation to the soil before it reaches surrounding impervious surfaces
- **Reduced erosion** – trees protect denuded area by intercepting or reducing the velocity of rain drops as they fall through the tree canopy
- **Increased infiltration** – soil conditions created by roots and fallen leaves promote infiltration
- **Treatment of storm water** – trees provide treatment through uptake of nutrients and other storm water pollutants (phytoremediation) and support of other biological processes that break down pollutants

Typical street tree system components include:

- Trees of the appropriate species for site conditions and constraints
- Available growing space based on tree species, soil type, water availability, surrounding land uses, and project goals
- Optional suspended pavement design to provide structural support for adjacent pavement

without requiring compaction of underlying layers

- Optional root barrier devices as needed; a root barrier is a device installed in the ground, between a tree and the sidewalk, intended to guide roots down and away from the sidewalk in order to prevent sidewalk lifting from tree roots.
- Optional tree grates; to be considered to maximize available space for pedestrian circulation and to protect tree roots from compaction related to pedestrian circulation; tree grates are typically made up of porous material that will allow the runoff to soak through.
- Optional shallow surface depression for ponding of excess runoff
- Optional planter box drain

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Site design BMP to provide incidental treatment. Street trees primarily functions as site design BMPs for incidental treatment. Benefits from street trees are accounted for by adjustment factors presented in Appendix B.2. This credit can apply to non-street trees as well (that meet the same criteria). Trees as a site design BMP are only credited up to 0.25 times the DCV from the project footprint (with a maximum single tree credit volume of 400 ft^3).

Storm water pollutant control BMP to provide treatment. Applicants are allowed to design trees as a pollutant control BMP and obtain credit greater than 0.25 times the DCV from the project footprint (or a credit greater than 400 ft^3 from a single tree). For this option to be approved by the EAD, applicant is required to do infiltration feasibility screening (Appendix C and D) and provide calculations supporting the amount of credit claimed from implementing trees within the project footprint. The EAD has the discretion to request additional analysis before approving credits greater than 0.25 times the DCV from the project footprint (or a credit greater than 400 ft^3 from a single tree).

Design Criteria and Considerations

Street Trees must meet the following design criteria and considerations. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the FDD and EAD if it is determined to be appropriate:

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	**Tree species** is appropriately chosen for the development (private or public). For public rights-of-ways, local planning guidelines and zoning provisions for the permissible species and placement of trees are consulted. A list of trees appropriate for site design that can be used by all county municipalities are provided in Appendix E.20	Proper tree placement and species selection minimizes problems such as pavement damage by surface roots and poor growth.

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	**Location of trees** planted along public streets follows local requirements and guidelines. Vehicle and pedestrian line of sight are considered in tree selection and placement. Unless exemption is granted by the FDD and EAD the following minimum tree separation distance is followed	Roadway safety for both vehicular and pedestrian traffic is a key consideration for placement along public streets.

Improvement	Minimum distance to Street Tree
Traffic Signal, Stop sign	20 feet
Underground Utility lines (except sewer)	5 feet
Sewer Lines	10 feet
Above ground utility structures (Transformers, Hydrants, Utility poles, etc.)	10 feet
Driveways	10 feet
Intersections (intersecting curb lines of two streets)	25 feet

☐	**Underground utilities and overhead wires** are considered in the design and avoided or circumvented. Underground utilities are routed around or through the planter in suspended pavement applications. All underground utilities are protected from water and root penetration.	Tree growth can damage utilities and overhead wires resulting in service interruptions. Protecting utilities routed through the planter prevents damage and service interruptions.

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	**Suspended pavement** design was developed where appropriate to minimize soil compaction and improve infiltration and filtration capabilities. Suspended pavement was constructed with an approved structural cell.	Suspended pavement designs provide structural support without compaction of the underlying layers, thereby promoting tree growth. Recommended structural cells include poured in place concrete columns, Silva Cells manufactured by Deeproot Green Infrastructures and Stratacell and Stratavault systems manufactured by Citygreen Systems.
☐	A minimum soil volume of 2 cubic feet per square foot of canopy projection volume is provided for each tree. Canopy projection area is the ground area beneath the tree, measured at the drip line.	The minimum soil volume ensures that there is adequate storage volume to allow for unrestricted evapotranspiration. A lower amount of soil volume may be allowed at the discretion of the FDD and EAD if certified by a landscape architect or agronomist. The retention credit from the tree is directly proportional to the soil volume provided for the tree.
☐	DCV from the tributary area draining to the tree is equal to or greater than the tree credit volume	The minimum tributary area ensures that the tree receives enough runoff to fully utilize the infiltration and evapotranspiration potential provided. In cases where the minimum tributary area is not provided, the tree credit volume must be reduced proportionately to the actual tributary area.
☐	Inlet opening to the tree that is at least 18 inches wide. A minimum 2 inch drop in grade from the inlet to the finish grade of the tree. Grated inlets are allowed for pedestrian circulation. Grates need to be ADA compliant and have sufficient slip resistance.	Design requirement to ensure that the runoff from the tributary area is not bypassed. Different inlet openings and drops in grade may be allowed at the discretion of the FDD and EAD if calculations are shown that the diversion flow rate (Appendix B.1.2) from the tributary area can be conveyed to the tree. In cases where the inlet capacity is limiting the

Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
	amount of runoff draining to the tree, the tree credit volume must be reduced proportionately.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Site Design

1. Determine the areas where street trees can be used in the site design to achieve incidental treatment. Street trees reduce runoff volumes from the site. Refer to Appendix B.2. Document the proposed tree locations in the SWQMP.

2. When trees are proposed as a storm water pollutant control BMP, applicant must complete feasibility analysis in Appendix C and D and submit detailed calculations for the DCV treated by trees. Document the proposed tree locations, feasibility analysis and sizing calculations in the SWQMP. The following calculations should be performed and the smallest of the three should be used as the volume treated by trees:
    a. Delineate the DMA (tributary area) to the tree and calculate the associated DCV.
    b. Calculate the required diversion flow rate using Appendix B.1.2 and size the inlet required to covey this flow rate to the tree. If the proposed inlet cannot convey the diversion flow rate for the entire tributary area, then the DCV that enters the tree should be proportionally reduced.
        i. For example, 0.5 acre drains to the tree and the associated DCV is 820 ft^3. The required diversion flow rate is 0.10 ft^3/s, but only an inlet that can divert 0.05 ft^3/s could be installed.
        ii. Then the effective DCV draining to the tree = 820 ft^3 * (0.05/0.10) = 420 ft^3
    c. Estimate the amount of storm water treated by the tree by summing the following:
        i. Evapotranspiration credit of 0.1 * amount of soil volume installed; and
        ii. Infiltration credit calculated using sizing procedures in Appendix B.4.

E.3 SD-5 Impervious Area Dispersion

MS4 Permit Category
Site Design

Manual Category
Site Design

Applicable Performance Criteria
Site Design

Primary Benefits
Volume Reduction
Peak Flow Attenuation

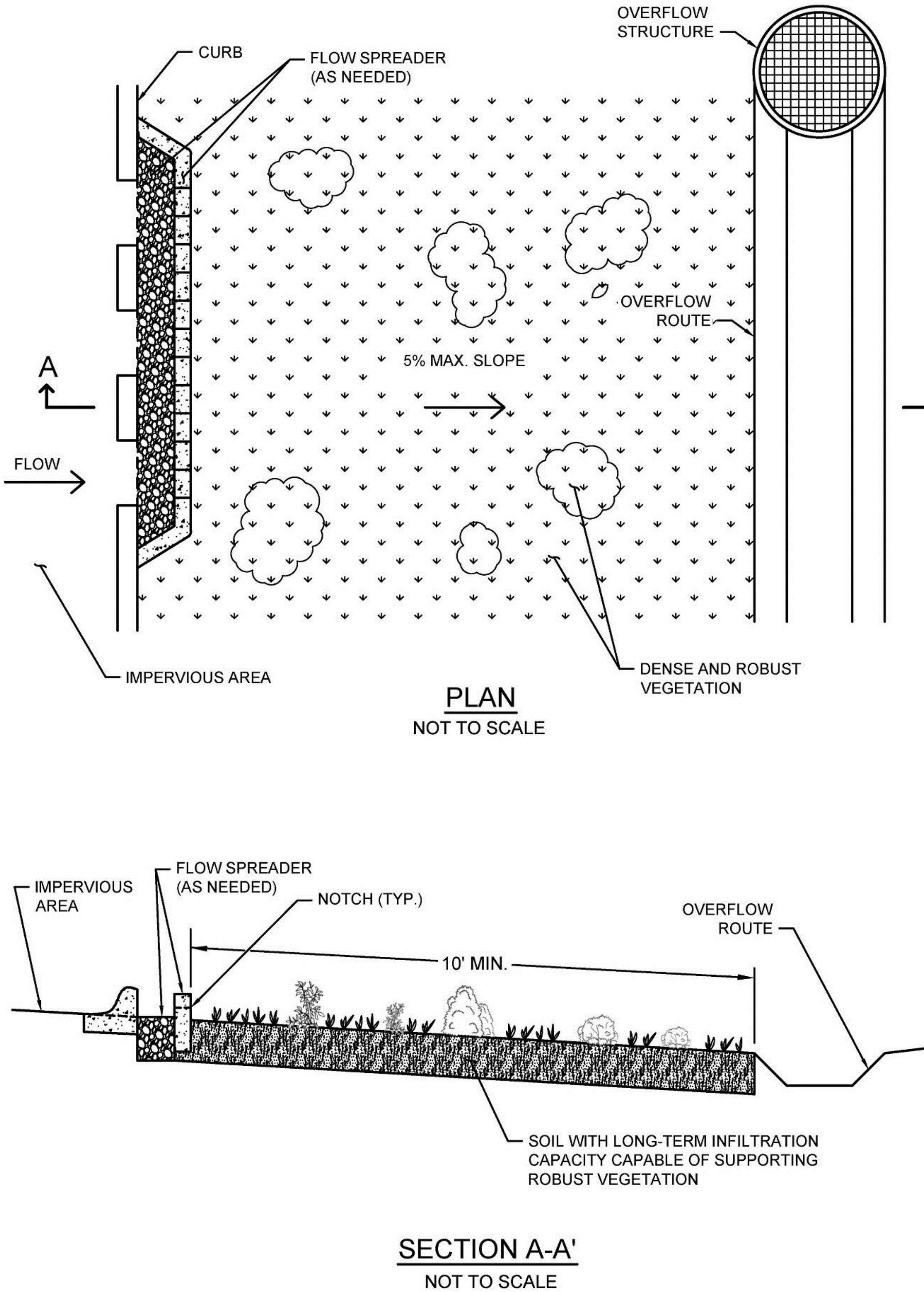
Photo Credit: Orange County Technical Guidance Document

Description

Impervious area dispersion (dispersion) refers to the practice of effectively disconnecting impervious areas from directly draining to the storm drain system by routing runoff from impervious areas such as rooftops (through downspout disconnection), walkways, and driveways onto the surface of adjacent pervious areas. The intent is to slow runoff discharges, and reduce volumes. Dispersion with partial or full infiltration results in significant volume reduction by means of infiltration and evapotranspiration.

Typical dispersion components include:

- An impervious surface from which runoff flows will be routed with minimal piping to limit concentrated inflows
- Splash blocks, flow spreaders, or other means of dispersing concentrated flows and providing energy dissipation as needed
- Dedicated pervious area, typically vegetated, with in-situ soil infiltration capacity for partial or full infiltration
- Optional soil amendments to improve vegetation support, maintain infiltration rates and enhance treatment of routed flows
- Overflow route for excess flows to be conveyed from dispersion area to the storm drain system or discharge point



Typical plan and section view of an Impervious Area Dispersion BMP

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Site design BMP to reduce impervious area and DCV. Impervious area dispersion primarily functions as a site design BMP for reducing the effective imperviousness of a site by providing partial or full infiltration of the flows that are routed to pervious dispersion areas and otherwise slowing down excess flows that eventually reach the storm drain system. This can significantly reduce the DCV for the site.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Dispersion must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the FDD and EAD if it is determined to be appropriate:

Siting and Design		***Intent/Rationale***
☐	Dispersion is over areas with soil types capable of supporting or being amended (e.g., with sand or compost) to support vegetation. Media amendments must be tested to verify that they are not a source of pollutants.	Soil must have long-term infiltration capacity for partial or full infiltration and be able to support vegetation to provide runoff treatment. Amendments to improve plant growth must not have negative impact on water quality.
☐	Dispersion has vegetated sheet flow over a relatively large distance (minimum 10 feet) from inflow to overflow route.	Full or partial infiltration requires relatively large areas to be effective depending on the permeability of the underlying soils.
☐	Pervious areas should be flat (with less than 5% slopes) and vegetated.	Flat slopes facilitate sheet flows and minimize velocities, thereby improving treatment and reducing the likelihood of erosion.
Inflow velocities		
☐	Inflow velocities are limited to 3 ft/s or less or use energy dissipation methods (e.g., riprap, level spreader) for concentrated inflows.	High inflow velocities can cause erosion, scour and/or channeling.
Dedication		
☐	Dispersion areas must be owned by the project owner and be dedicated for the purposes of dispersion to the exclusion of other future uses that might reduce the effectiveness of the dispersion area.	Dedicated dispersion areas prevent future conversion to alternate uses and facilitate continued full and partial infiltration benefits.

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
Vegetation		
☐	Dispersion typically requires dense and robust vegetation for proper function. Drought tolerant species should be selected to minimize irrigation needs. A plant list to aid in selection can be found in Appendix E.20.	Vegetation improves resistance to erosion and aids in runoff treatment.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Site Design

1. Determine the areas where dispersion can be used in the site design to reduce the DCV for pollutant control sizing.
2. Calculate the DCV for storm water pollutant control per Appendix B.2, taking into account reduced runoff from dispersion.
3. Determine if a DMA is considered "Self-retaining" if the impervious to pervious ratio is:
    a. 2:1 when the pervious area is composed of Hydrologic Soil Group A
    b. 1:1 when the pervious area is composed of Hydrologic Soil Group B

E.4 SD-6A: Green Roofs

MS4 Permit Category
Site Design

Manual Category
Site Design

Applicable Performance Standard
Site Design

Primary Benefits
Volume Reduction Peak Flow Attenuation

Location: County of San Diego Operations Center, San Diego, California

Description

Green roofs are vegetated rooftop systems that reduce runoff volumes and rates, treat storm water pollutants through filtration and plant uptake, provide additional landscape amenity, and create wildlife habitat. Additionally, green roofs reduce the heat island effect and provide acoustical control, air filtration and oxygen production. In terms of building design, they can protect against ultraviolet rays and extend the roof lifetime, as well as increase the building insulation, thereby decreasing heating and cooling costs. There are two primary types of green roofs:

- **Extensive** – lightweight, low maintenance system with low-profile, drought tolerant type groundcover in shallow growing medium (6 inches or less)
- **Intensive** – heavyweight, high maintenance system with a more garden-like configuration and diverse plantings that may include shrubs or trees in a thicker growing medium (greater than 6 inches)

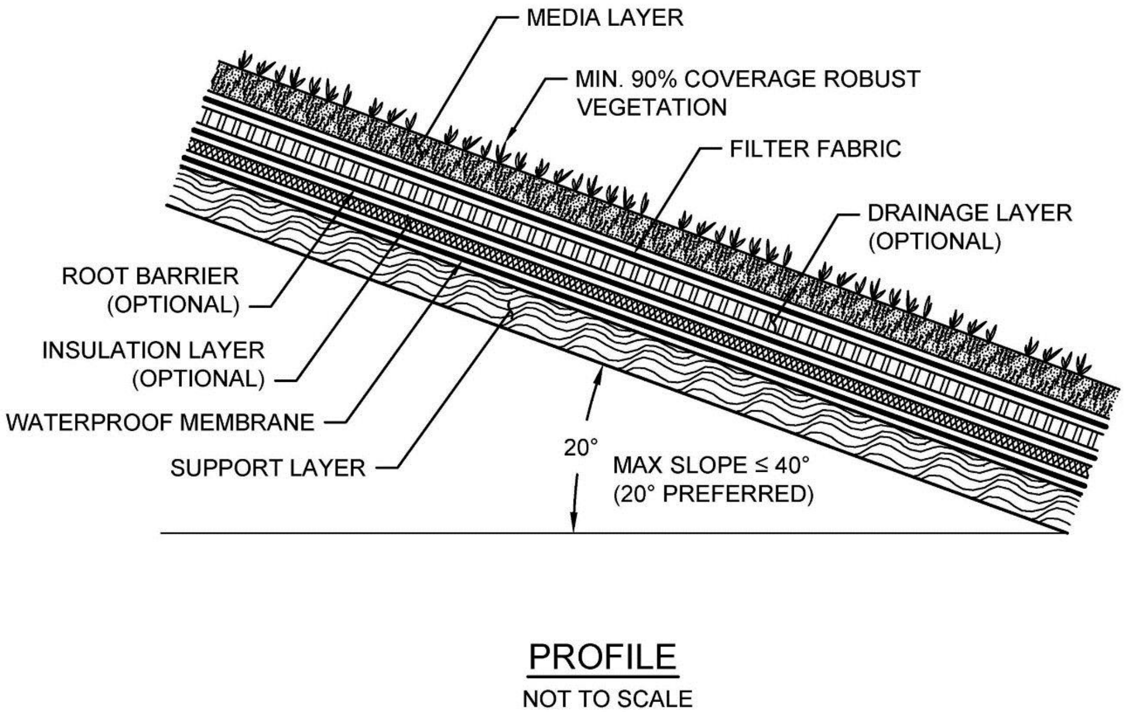
Typical green roof components include, from top to bottom:

- Vegetation that is appropriate to the type of green roof system, climate, and watering conditions
- Media layer (planting mix or engineered media) capable of supporting vegetation growth
- Filter fabric to prevent migration of fines (soils) into the drainage layer
- Optional drainage layer to convey excess runoff
- Optional root barrier
- Optional insulation layer
- Waterproof membrane
- Structural roof support capable of withstanding the additional weight of a green roof

Because SAN is an active airport, additional design considerations include:

- Minimizing animal attractants to prevent bird strikes
- Maintaining height restrictions
- Preventing the release of organic foreign object debris (FOD)

O'Hare International Airport has successfully installed green roofs on 12 facilities. Additional references for airport-specific installation, including plant species recommendations, can be found at http://www.flychicago.com/OHare/EN/AboutUs/Sustainability/Vegetated-Roofs.aspx. A landscape architect should be consulted to identify climate-specific species that meet the necessary restrictions for airport design.



Typical profile of a Green Roof BMP

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Site design BMP to provide incidental treatment. Green roofs can be used as a site design feature to reduce the impervious area of the site through replacing conventional roofing. This can reduce the DCV and flow control requirements for the site.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Green roofs must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the FDD and EAD if it is determined to be appropriate:

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Roof slope is ≤ 40% (Roofs that are ≤ 20% are preferred).	Steep roof slopes increases project complexity and requires supplemental anchoring.
☐	Structural roof capacity design supports the calculated additional load (lbs/sq. ft) of the vegetation growing medium and additional drainage and barrier layers.	Inadequate structural capacity increases the risk for roof failure and harm to the building and occupants.

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Design and construction is planned to be completed by an experienced green roof specialist.	A green roof specialist will minimize complications in implementation and potential structural issues that are critical to green roof success.
☐	Green roof location and extent must meet fire safety provisions.	Green roof design must not negatively impact fire safety.
☐	Maintenance access is included in the green roof design.	Maintenance will facilitate proper functioning of drainage and irrigation components and allow for removal of undesirable vegetation and soil testing, as needed.
☐	Green roof location will not violate airport building height restrictions.	Green roof design must not interfere with airport operation.
Vegetation		
☐	Vegetation is suitable for the green roof type, climate and expected watering conditions. Perennial, self-sowing plants that are drought-tolerant (e.g., sedums, succulents) and require little to no fertilizer, pesticides or herbicides are recommended. Vegetation pre-grown at grade may allow plants to establish prior to facing harsh roof conditions.	Plants suited to the design and expected growing environment are more likely to survive.
☐	Vegetation is capable of covering ≥ 90% the roof surface.	Benefits of green roofs are greater with more surface vegetation.
☐	Vegetation is robust and erosion-resistant in order to withstand the anticipated rooftop environment (e.g., heat, cold, high winds).	Weak plants will not survive in extreme rooftop environments.
☐	Vegetation is fire resistant.	Vegetation that will not burn easily decreases the chance for fire and harm to the building and occupants.
☐	Vegetation considers roof sun exposure and shaded areas based on roof slope and location.	The amount of sunlight the vegetation receives can inhibit growth therefore the beneficial effects of a vegetated roof.
☐	Vegetation is unattractive for animal food production and species habitat.	Minimizing animal attraction is necessary to avoid bird strikes and maintain safety.

	Siting and Design	***Intent/Rationale***
☐	Vegetation is highly durable and wind resistant.	Plant fragility may increase FOD and compromise safety.
☐	An irrigation system (e.g., drip irrigation system) is included as necessary to maintain vegetation.	Proper watering will increase plant survival, especially for new plantings.
☐	Media is well-drained and is the appropriate depth required for the green roof type and vegetation supported.	Unnecessary water retention increases structural loading. An adequate media depth increases plant survival.
☐	A filter fabric is used to prevent migration of media fines through the system.	Migration of media can cause clogging of the drainage layer.
☐	A drainage layer is provided if needed to convey runoff safely from the roof. The drainage layer can be comprised of gravel, perforated sheeting, or other drainage materials.	Inadequate drainage increases structural loading and the risk of harm to the building and occupants.
☐	A root barrier comprised of dense material to inhibit root penetration is used if the waterproof membrane will not provide root penetration protection.	Root penetration can decrease the integrity of the underlying structural roof components and increase the risk of harm to the building and occupants.
☐	An insulation layer is included as needed to protect against the water in the drainage layer from extracting building heat in the winter and cool air in the summer.	Regulating thermal impacts of green roofs will aid in controlling building heating and cooling costs.
☐	A waterproof membrane is used to prevent the roof runoff from vertically migrating and damaging the roofing material. A root barrier may be required to prevent roots from compromising the integrity of the membrane.	Water-damaged roof materials increase the risk of harm to the building and occupants.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Site Design

1. Determine the areas where green roofs can be used in the site design to replace conventional roofing to reduce the DCV. These green roof areas can be credited toward reducing runoff generated through representation in storm water calculations as pervious, not impervious, areas but are not credited for storm water pollutant control.
2. Calculate the DCV per Appendix B.2.

E.5 SD-6B Permeable Pavement (Site Design BMP)

Photo Credit: San Diego Low Impact Development Design Manual

Description

Permeable pavement is pavement that allows for percolation through void spaces in the pavement surface into subsurface layers. Permeable pavements reduce runoff volumes and rates and can provide pollutant control via infiltration, filtration, sorption, sedimentation, and biodegradation processes. When used as a site design BMP, the subsurface layers are designed to provide storage of storm water runoff so that outflow rates can be controlled via infiltration into subgrade soils. Varying levels of storm water treatment and flow control can be provided depending on the size of the permeable pavement system relative to its drainage area and the underlying infiltration rates. As a site design BMP permeable pavement areas are designed to be self-retaining and are designed primarily for direct rainfall. Self-retaining permeable pavement areas have a ratio of total drainage area (including permeable pavement) to area of permeable pavement of 1.5:1 or less. Permeable pavement surfaces can be constructed from modular paver units or paver blocks, pervious concrete, porous asphalt, and turf pavers. Sites designed with permeable pavements can significantly reduce the impervious area of the project. Reduction in impervious surfaces decreases the DCV and can reduce the footprint of treatment control and flow control BMPs.

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Site design BMP to reduce impervious area and DCV. Permeable pavement without an underdrain can be used as a site design feature to reduce the impervious area of the site by replacing traditional pavements, including roadways, parking lots, emergency access lanes, sidewalks, trails and driveways.

Typical Permeable Pavement Components (Top to Bottom)
Permeable surface layer
Bedding layer for permeable surface
Aggregate storage layer with optional underdrain(s)
Optional final filter course layer over uncompacted existing subgrade

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Site Design

1. Determine the areas where permeable pavements can be used in the site design to replace conventional pavements to reduce the DCV. These areas can be credited toward reducing runoff generated through representation in storm water calculations as pervious, not impervious, areas but are not credited for storm water pollutant control.
2. Calculate the DCV per Appendix B.2, taking into account reduced runoff from permeable pavement areas.

E.6 SD-8 Rain Barrels

Photo Credit: San Diego Low Impact Development Design Manual

Description

Rain barrels are containers that can capture rooftop runoff and store it for future use. With controlled timing and volume release, the captured rainwater can be used for irrigation or alternative grey water between storm events, thereby reducing runoff volumes and associated pollutants to downstream waterbodies. Rain barrels tend to be smaller systems, less than 100 gallons. Treatment can be achieved when rain barrels are used as part of a treatment train along with other BMPs that use captured flows in applications that do not result in discharges into the storm drain system. Rooftops are the ideal tributary areas for rain barrels.

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Site design BMP to reduce effective impervious area and DCV. Barrels can be used as a site design feature to reduce the effective impervious area of the site by removing roof runoff from the site discharge. This can reduce the DCV and flow control requirements for the site.

Typical Rain Barrel Components
Storage container, barrel or tank for holding captured flows
Inlet and associated valves and piping
Outlet and associated valves and piping
Overflow outlet
Optional pump
Optional first flush diverters
Optional roof, supports, foundation, level indicator, and other accessories

Important Considerations

Maintenance: Rain barrels require regular monitoring and cleaning to ensure that they do not become clogged with leaves or other debris.
Economics: Rain barrels have low installation costs.
Limitations: Due to San Diego's arid climate, some rain barrels may fill only a few times each year.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Site Design

1. Determine the areas where rain barrels can be used in the site design to capture roof runoff to reduce the DCV. Rain barrels reduce the effective impervious area of the site by removing roof runoff from the site discharge.
2. Calculate the DCV per Appendix B.2, taking into account reduced runoff from permeable pavement areas.

E.7 HU-1 Cistern

MS4 Permit Category
Retention

Manual Category
Harvest and Use

Applicable Performance Standards
Pollutant Control
Flow Control

Primary Benefits
Volume Reduction
Peak Flow Attenuation

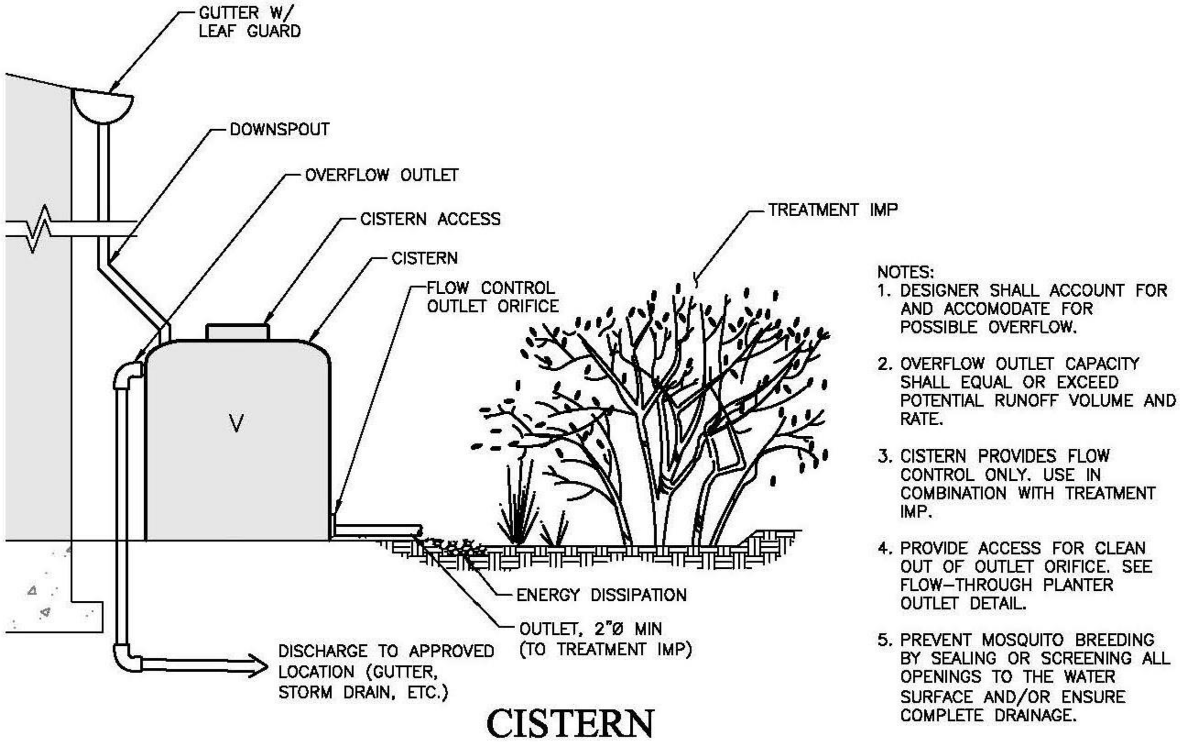
Photo Credit: Water Environment Research Foundation: WERF.org

Description

Cisterns are containers that can capture rooftop runoff and store it for future use. With controlled timing and volume release, the captured rainwater can be used for irrigation or alternative grey water between storm events, thereby reducing runoff volumes and associated pollutants to downstream water bodies. Cisterns are larger systems (generally>100 gallons) that can be self-contained aboveground or below ground systems. Treatment can be achieved when cisterns are used as part of a treatment train along with other BMPs that use captured flows in applications that do not result in discharges into the storm drain system. Rooftops are the ideal tributary areas for cisterns.

Typical cistern components include:

- Storage container, barrel or tank for holding captured flows
- Inlet and associated valves and piping
- Outlet and associated valves and piping
- Overflow outlet
- Optional pump
- Optional first flush diverters
- Optional roof, supports, foundation, level indicator, and other accessories



Source: City of San Diego Storm Water Standards

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Site design BMP to reduce effective impervious area and DCV. Cisterns can be used as a site design feature to reduce the effective impervious area of the site by removing roof runoff from the site discharge. This can reduce the DCV and flow control requirements for the site.

Harvest and use for storm water pollutant control. Typical uses for captured flows include irrigation, toilet flushing, cooling system makeup, and vehicle and equipment washing.

Integrated storm water flow control and pollutant control configuration. Cisterns provide flow control in the form of volume reduction and/or peak flow attenuation and storm water treatment through elimination of discharges of pollutants. Additional flow control can be achieved by sizing the cistern to include additional detention storage and/or real-time automated flow release controls.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Cisterns must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the EAD if it is determined to be appropriate:

	Siting and Design	***Intent/Rationale***
☐	Cisterns are sized to detain the full DCV of contributing area and empty within 36 hours.	Draining the cistern makes the storage volume available to capture the next storm. The applicant has an option to use a different drawdown time up to 96 hours if the volume of the facility is adjusted using the percent capture method in Appendix B.4.2. If drawdown time is greater than 96 hours, a vector control plan must be submitted to EAD.
☐	Cisterns are fitted with a flow control device such as an orifice or a valve to limit outflow in accordance with drawdown time requirements.	Flow control provides flow attenuation benefits and limits cistern discharge to downstream facilities during storm events.
☐	Cisterns are designed to drain completely, leaving no standing water, and all entry points are fitted with traps or screens, or sealed.	Complete drainage and restricted entry prevents mosquito habitat.
☐	Leaf guards and/or screens are provided to prevent debris from accumulating in the cistern.	Leaves and organic debris can clog the outlet of the cistern.
☐	Access is provided for maintenance and the cistern outlets are accessible and designed to allow easy cleaning.	Properly functioning outlets are needed to maintain proper flow control in accordance with drawdown time requirements.
☐	Cisterns must be designed and sited such that overflow will be conveyed safely overland to the storm drain system or discharge point.	Safe overflow conveyance prevents flooding and damage of property.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Site Design and Storm Water Pollutant Control

1. Calculate the DCV for site design per Appendix B.
2. Determine the locations on the site where cisterns can be located to capture and detain the DCV from roof areas without subsequent discharge to the storm drain system. Cisterns are best located in close proximity to building and other roofed structures to minimize piping. Cisterns can also be used as part of a treatment train upstream by increasing pollutant control through delayed runoff to infiltration BMPs such as bioretention without underdrain facilities.

3. Use the sizing worksheet in Appendix B.3 to determine if full or partial capture of the DCV is achievable.
4. The remaining DCV to be treated should be calculated for use in sizing downstream BMP(s).

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach when Storm Water Flow Control is Applicable

If control of flow rates and/or duration is desired on an Authority project, significant cistern volumes will typically be required, and therefore the following steps should be taken prior to determination of site design and storm water pollutant control. Pre-development and post-project flow rates and durations should be determined as discussed in Chapter 6 of the Copermittees' original Model BMP Design Manual. (As previously indicated in this Manual, development within Authority jurisdiction is not subject to hydromodification management requirements, however this sub-section remains as a reference).

1. Verify that cistern siting and design criteria have been met. Design for flow control can be achieved using various design configurations, shapes, and quantities of cisterns.
2. Iteratively determine the cistern storage volume required to provide detention storage to reduce flow rates and durations to allowable limits. Flow rates and durations can be controlled from detention storage by altering outlet structure orifice size(s) and/or water control valve operation.
3. Verify that the cistern is drawdown within 36 hours. The drawdown time can be estimated by dividing the storage volume by the rate of use of harvested water.
4. If the cistern cannot fully provide the flow rate and duration control required by this manual, a downstream structure with additional storage volume or infiltration capacity such as a biofiltration can be used to provide remaining flow control.

E.8 INF-1 Infiltration Basin

MS4 Permit Category
Retention

Manual Category
Infiltration

Applicable Performance Standard
Pollutant Control
Flow Control

Primary Benefits
Volume Reduction
Peak Flow Attenuation

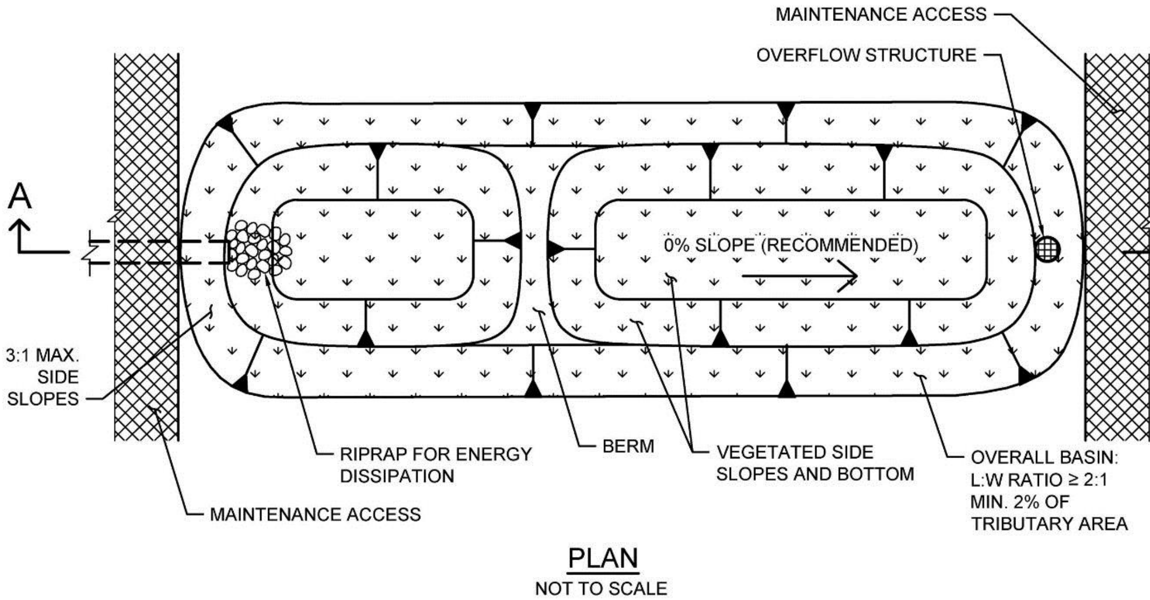
Photo Credit: http://www.stormwaterpartners.com/facilities/basin.html

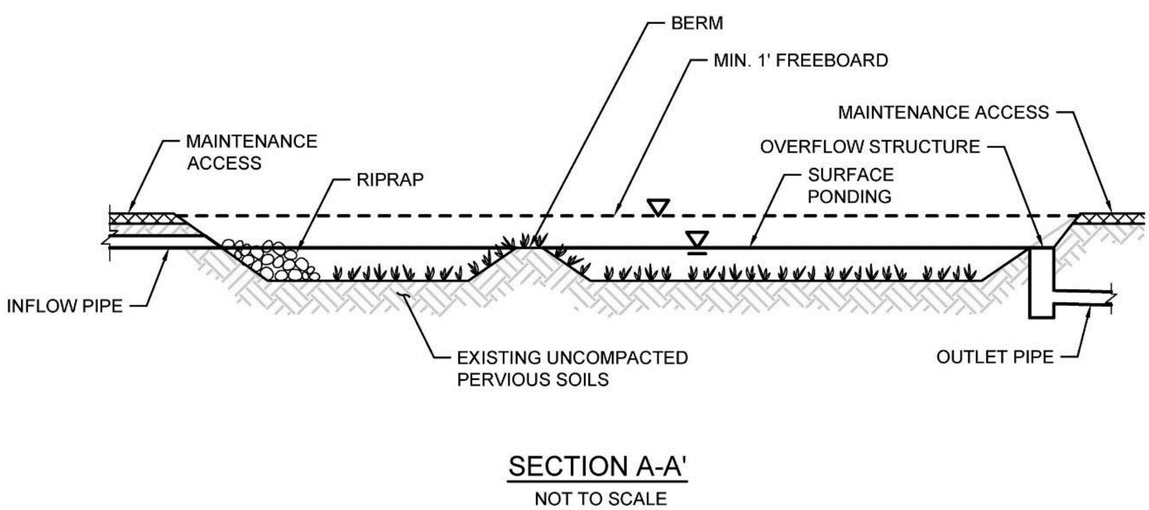
Description

An infiltration basin typically consists of an earthen basin with a flat bottom constructed in naturally pervious soils. An infiltration basin retains storm water and allows it to evaporate and/or percolate into the underlying soils. The bottom of an infiltration basin is typically vegetated with native grasses or turf grass; however other types of vegetation can be used if they can survive periodic inundation and long inter-event dry periods. Treatment is achieved primarily through infiltration, filtration, sedimentation, biochemical processes and plant uptake. Infiltration basins can be constructed as linear **trenches** or as **underground infiltration galleries**.

Typical infiltration basin components include:

- Inflow distribution mechanisms (e.g., perimeter flow spreader or filter strips)
- Energy dissipation mechanism for concentrated inflows (e.g., splash blocks or riprap)
- Forebay to provide pretreatment surface ponding for captured flows
- Vegetation selected based on basin use, climate, and ponding depth
- Uncompacted native soils at the bottom of the facility
- Overflow structure





Typical plan and section view of an Infiltration BMP

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Full infiltration BMP for storm water pollutant control. Infiltration basins can be used as a pollutant control BMP, designed to infiltrate runoff from direct rainfall as well as runoff from adjacent areas that are tributary to the BMP. Infiltration basins must be designed with an infiltration storage volume (a function of the surface ponding volume) equal to the full DCV and able to meet drawdown time limitations.

Integrated storm water flow control and pollutant control configuration. Infiltration basins can also be designed for flow rate and duration control by providing additional infiltration storage through increasing the surface ponding volume.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Infiltration basins must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the FDD and EAD if it is determined to be appropriate:

	Siting and Design	***Intent/Rationale***
☐	Placement observes geotechnical recommendations regarding potential hazards (e.g., slope stability, landslides, liquefaction zones) and setbacks (e.g., slopes, foundations, utilities).	Must not negatively impact existing site geotechnical concerns.
☐	Selection and design of basin is based on infiltration feasibility criteria and appropriate design infiltration rate (See Appendix C and D).	Must operate as a full infiltration design and must be supported by drainage area and in-situ infiltration rate feasibility findings.
☐	Finish grade of the facility is ≤ 2% (0% recommended).	Flatter surfaces reduce erosion and channelization with the facility.
☐	Settling forebay has a volume ≥ 25% of facility volume below the forebay overflow.	A forebay to trap sediment can decrease frequency of required maintenance.
☐	Infiltration of surface ponding is limited to a 36-hour drawdown time.	Prolonged surface ponding reduce volume available to capture subsequent storms. The applicant has an option to use a different drawdown time up to 96 hours if the volume of the facility is adjusted using the percent capture method in Appendix B.4.2.
☐	Minimum freeboard provided is ≥1 foot.	Freeboard minimizes risk of uncontrolled surface discharge.
☐	Side slopes are = 3H:1V or shallower.	Gentler side slopes are safer, less prone to erosion, able to establish vegetation more quickly and easier to maintain.

Inflow and Overflow Structures

	Siting and Design	Intent/Rationale
☐	Inflow and outflow structures are accessible by required equipment (e.g., vactor truck) for inspection and maintenance.	Maintenance will prevent clogging and ensure proper operation of the flow control structures.
☐	Inflow velocities are limited to 3 ft/s or less or use energy dissipation methods (e.g., riprap, level spreader) for concentrated inflows.	High inflow velocities can cause erosion, scour and/or channeling.
☐	Overflow is safely conveyed to a downstream storm drain system or discharge point. Size overflow structure to pass 100-year peak flow for on-line basins and water quality peak flow for off-line basins.	Planning for overflow lessens the risk of property damage due to flooding.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Storm Water Pollutant Control

To design infiltration basins for storm water pollutant control only (no flow control required), the following steps should be taken:

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement and basin area requirements, forebay volume, and maximum slopes for basin sides and bottom.
2. Calculate the DCV per Appendix B based on expected site design runoff for tributary areas.
3. Use the sizing worksheet (Appendix B.4) to determine if full infiltration of the DCV is achievable based on the infiltration storage volume calculated from the surface ponding area and depth for a maximum 36-hour drawdown time. The drawdown time can be estimated by dividing the average depth of the basin by the design infiltration rate. Appendix D provides guidance on evaluating a site's infiltration rate.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Storm Water Pollutant Treatment and Flow Control

If control of flow rates and/or durations is desired on an Authority project, significant surface ponding volume will typically be required, and therefore the following steps should be taken prior to determination of storm water pollutant control design. Pre-development and post-project flow rates and durations should be determined as discussed in Chapter 6 of the Copermittees' original Model BMP Design Manual. (As previously indicated in this Manual, development within Authority jurisdiction is not subject to hydromodification management requirements, however this sub-section remains as a reference).

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement and basin area requirements, forebay volume, and maximum slopes for basin sides and bottom.
2. Iteratively determine the surface ponding required to provide infiltration storage to reduce flow rates and durations to allowable limits while adhering to the maximum 36-hour drawdown time. Flow rates and durations can be controlled using flow splitters that route the appropriate inflow amounts to the infiltration basin and bypass excess flows to the downstream storm drain system or discharge point.
3. If an infiltration basin cannot fully provide the flow rate and duration control required by this manual, an upstream or downstream structure with appropriate storage volume such as an underground vault can be used to provide additional control.
4. After the infiltration basin has been designed to meet flow control requirements, calculations must be completed to verify if storm water pollutant control requirements to treat the DCV have been met.

E.9 INF-2 Bioretention

MS4 Permit Category
Retention

Manual Category
Infiltration

Applicable Performance Standard
Pollutant Control Flow Control

Primary Benefits
Volume Reduction Treatment Peak Flow Attenuation

Photo Credit: Ventura County Technical Guidance Document

Description

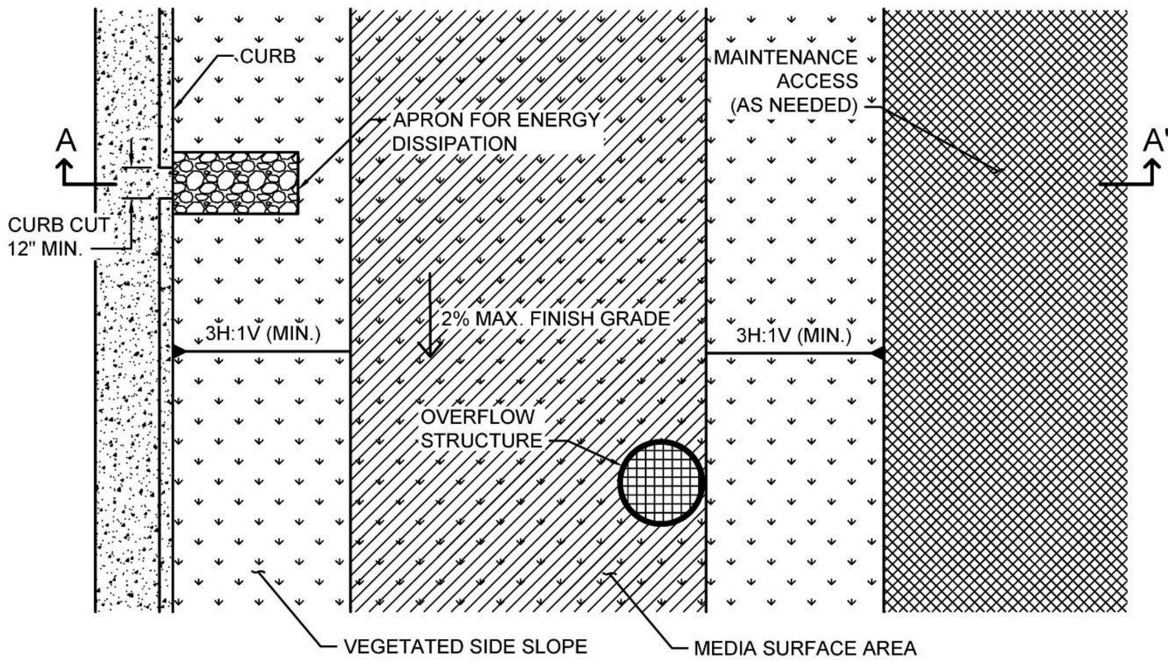
Bioretention (bioretention without underdrain) facilities are vegetated surface water systems that filter water through vegetation and soil, or engineered media prior to infiltrating into native soils. These facilities are designed to infiltrate the full DCV. Bioretention facilities are commonly incorporated into the site within parking lot landscaping, along roadsides, and in open spaces. They can be constructed inground or partially aboveground, such as planter boxes with open bottoms (no impermeable liner at the bottom) to allow infiltration. Treatment is achieved through filtration, sedimentation, sorption, infiltration, biochemical processes and plant uptake.

Typical bioretention without underdrain components include:

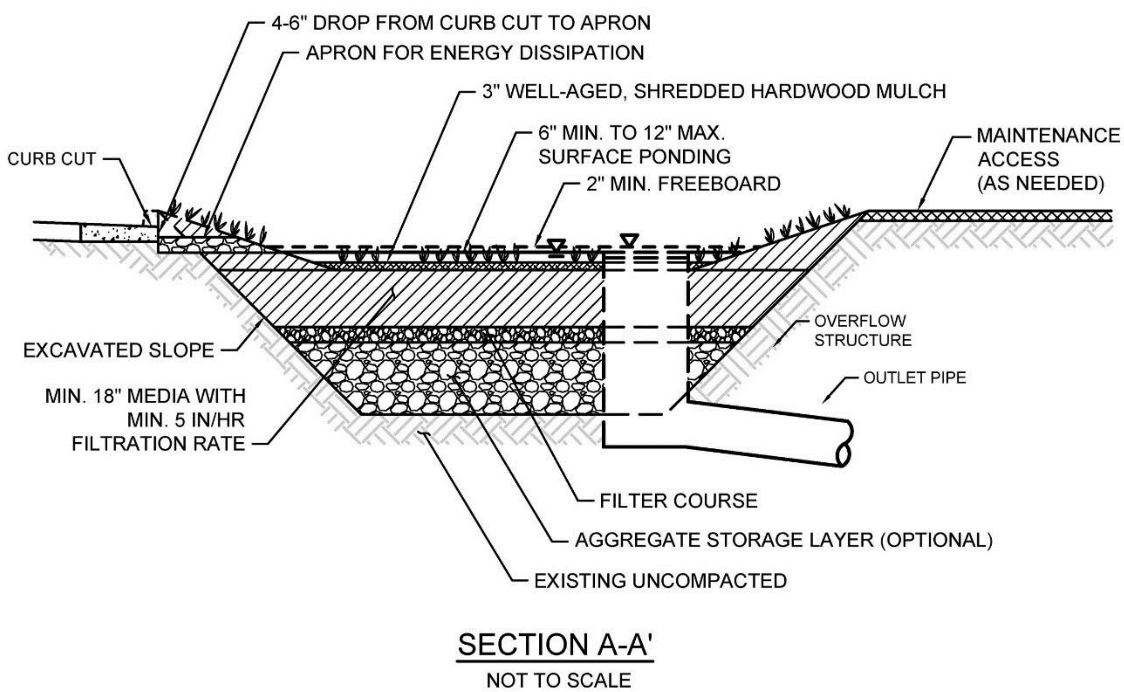
- Inflow distribution mechanisms (e.g, perimeter flow spreader or filter strips)
- Energy dissipation mechanism for concentrated inflows (e.g., splash blocks or riprap)
- Shallow surface ponding for captured flows
- Side slope and basin bottom vegetation selected based on expected climate and ponding depth
- Non-floating mulch layer (optional)
- Media layer (planting mix or engineered media) capable of supporting vegetation growth
- Filter course layer consisting of aggregate to prevent the migration of fines into uncompacted native soils or the optional aggregate storage layer
- Optional aggregate storage layer for additional infiltration storage
- Uncompacted native soils at the bottom of the facility
- Overflow structure

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

- **Full infiltration BMP for storm water pollutant control.** Bioretention can be used as a pollutant control BMP designed to infiltrate runoff from direct rainfall as well as runoff from adjacent tributary areas. Bioretention facilities must be designed with an infiltration storage volume (a function of the ponding, media and aggregate storage volumes) equal to the full DCV and able to meet drawdown time limitations.
- **Integrated storm water flow control and pollutant control configuration.** Bioretention facilities can be designed to provide flow rate and duration control. This may be accomplished by providing greater infiltration storage with increased surface ponding and/or aggregate storage volume for storm water flow control.



PLAN
NOT TO SCALE



SECTION A-A'
NOT TO SCALE

Typical plan and section view of a Bioretention BMP

Design Criteria and Considerations

Bioretention must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the FDD and EAD if it is determined to be appropriate:

	Siting and Design	***Intent/Rationale***
☐	Placement observes geotechnical recommendations regarding potential hazards (e.g., slope stability, landslides, liquefaction zones) and setbacks (e.g., slopes, foundations, utilities).	Must not negatively impact existing site geotechnical concerns.
☐	Selection and design of BMP is based on infiltration feasibility criteria and appropriate design infiltration rate presented in Appendix C and D.	Must operate as a full infiltration design and must be supported by drainage area and in-situ infiltration rate feasibility findings.
☐	Contributing tributary area is ≤ 5 acres (≤ 1 acre preferred).	Bigger BMPs require additional design features for proper performance. Contributing tributary area greater than 5 acres may be allowed at the discretion of the FDD and EAD if the following conditions are met: 1) incorporate design features (e.g. flow spreaders) to minimizing short circuiting of flows in the BMP and 2) incorporate additional design features requested by the Authority for proper performance of the regional BMP.
☐	Finish grade of the facility is ≤ 2%. In long bioretention facilities where the potential for internal erosion and channelization exists, the use of check dams is required.	Flatter surfaces reduce erosion and channelization within the facility. Internal check dams reduce velocity and dissipate energy.
	Surface Ponding	
☐	Surface ponding is limited to a 24-hour drawdown time.	24-hour drawdown time is recommended for plant health. Surface ponding drawdown time greater than 24-hours but less than 96 hours may be allowed at the discretion of the FDD and EAD if certified by a landscape architect or agronomist.

	Siting and Design	***Intent/Rationale***
☐	Surface ponding depth is ≥ 6 and ≤ 12 inches.	Surface ponding capacity lowers subsurface storage requirements. Deep surface ponding raises safety concerns. Surface ponding depth greater than 12 inches (for additional pollutant control or surface outlet structures or flow-control orifices) may be allowed at the discretion of the FDD and EAD if the following conditions are met: 1) surface ponding depth drawdown time is less than 24 hours; and 2) safety issues and fencing requirements are considered (typically ponding greater than 18" will require a fence and/or flatter side slopes) and 3) potential for elevated clogging risk is considered.
☐	A minimum of 12 inches of freeboard is provided.	Freeboard provides room for head over overflow structures and minimizes risk of uncontrolled surface discharge.
☐	Side slopes are stabilized with vegetation and are ≥ 3H: 1V.	Gentler side slopes are safer, less prone to erosion, able to establish vegetation more quickly and easier to maintain.
Vegetation		
☐	Plantings are suitable for the climate and expected ponding depth. A plant list to aid in selection can be found in Appendix E.20.	Plants suited to the climate and ponding depth are more likely to survive.
☐	An irrigation system with a connection to water supply is provided as needed.	Seasonal irrigation might be needed to keep plants healthy.
Mulch (Optional)		
☐	A minimum of 3 inches of well-aged, shredded hardwood mulch that has been stockpiled or stored for at least 12 months is provided. Mulch must be non-floating to avoid clogging of overflow structure.	Mulch will suppress weeds and maintain moisture for plant growth. Aging mulch kills pathogens and weed seeds and allows beneficial microbes to multiply.
Media Layer		

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Media maintains a minimum filtration rate of 5 in/hr over lifetime of facility. A minimum initial filtration rate of 10 in/hr is recommended.	A high filtration rate through the soil mix minimizes clogging potential and allows flows to quickly enter the aggregate storage layer, thereby minimizing bypass.
☐	Media is a minimum 18 inches deep, meeting either of these two media specifications: City of San Diego Storm Water Standards, Appendix F (February 2016, unless superseded by more recent edition) **<u>or</u>** County of San Diego Low Impact Development Handbook: Appendix G -Bioretention Soil Specification (June 2014, unless superseded by more recent edition).	A deep media layer provides additional filtration and supports plants with deeper roots. Standard specifications shall be followed.
☐	Alternatively, for proprietary designs and custom media mixes not meeting the media specifications contained in the 2016 City Storm Water Standards or County LID Manual, the media meets the pollutant treatment performance criteria in Section F.1.	For non-standard or proprietary designs, compliance with F.1 ensures that adequate treatment performance will be provided.
☐	Media surface area is 3% of contributing area times adjusted runoff factor or greater. Unless demonstrated that the BMP surface area can be smaller than 3%	Greater surface area to tributary area ratios decrease loading rates per square foot and therefore increase longevity. Adjusted runoff factor is to account for site design BMPs implemented upstream of the BMP (such as rain barrels, impervious area dispersion, etc.). Refer to Appendix B.2 guidance. Use Worksheet B.5-1 Line 26 to estimate the minimum surface area required per this criteria.
	Filter Course Layer (Optional)	
☐	A filter course is used to prevent migration of fines through layers of the facility. Filter fabric is not used.	Migration of media can cause clogging of the aggregate storage layer void spaces or subgrade. Filter fabric is more likely to clog.

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Filter course is washed and free of fines.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog the facility and impede infiltration.
☐	Filter course calculations assessing suitability for particle migration prevention have been completed.	Gradation relationship between layers can evaluate factors (e.g., bridging, permeability, and uniformity) to determine if particle sizing is appropriate or if an intermediate layer is needed.
	Aggregate Storage Layer (Optional)	
☐	Class 2 Permeable per Caltrans specification 68-1.025 is recommended for the storage layer. Washed, open-graded crushed rock may be used, however a 4-6 inch washed pea gravel filter course layer at the top of the crushed rock is required.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog the aggregate storage layer void spaces or subgrade.
☐	Maximum aggregate storage layer depth is determined based on the infiltration storage volume that will infiltrate within a 36-hour drawdown time.	A maximum drawdown time to facilitate provision of adequate storm water storage for the next storm event.
	Inflow and Overflow Structures	
☐	Inflow and overflow structures are accessible for inspection and maintenance. Overflow structures must be connected to downstream storm drain system or appropriate discharge point.	Maintenance will prevent clogging and ensure proper operation of the flow control structures.
☐	Inflow velocities are limited to 3 ft/s or less or use energy dissipation methods (e.g., riprap, level spreader) for concentrated inflows.	High inflow velocities can cause erosion, scour and/or channeling.
☐	Curb cut inlets are at least 12 inches wide, have a 4-6 inch reveal (drop) and an apron and energy dissipation as needed.	Inlets must not restrict flow and apron prevents blockage from vegetation as it grows in. Energy dissipation prevents erosion.
☐	Overflow is safely conveyed to a downstream storm drain system or discharge point. Size overflow structure to pass 100-year peak flow for on-line basins and water quality peak flow for off-line basins.	Planning for overflow lessens the risk of property damage due to flooding.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Storm Water Pollutant Control Only

To design bioretention for storm water pollutant control only (no flow control required), the following steps should be taken:

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement and basin area requirements, maximum side and finish grade slope, and the recommended media surface area tributary ratio.
2. Calculate the DCV per Appendix B based on expected site design runoff for tributary areas.
3. Use the sizing worksheet to determine if full infiltration of the DCV is achievable based on the available infiltration storage volume calculated from the bioretention without underdrain footprint area, effective depths for surface ponding, media and aggregate storage layers, and in-situ soil design infiltration rate for a maximum 36-hour drawdown time for the aggregate storage layer, with surface ponding no greater than a maximum 24-hour drawdown. The drawdown time can be estimated by dividing the average depth of the basin by the design infiltration rate of the underlying soil. Appendix D provides guidance on evaluating a site's infiltration rate. A generic sizing worksheet is provided in Appendix B.4.
4. Where the DCV cannot be fully infiltrated based on the site or bioretention constraints, an underdrain can be added to the design (use biofiltration with partial retention factsheet).

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach when Storm Water Flow Control is Applicable

If control of flow rates and/or durations is desired on an Authority project, significant surface ponding and/or aggregate storage volumes will typically be required, and therefore the following steps should be taken prior to determination of storm water pollutant control design. Pre-development and post-project flow rates and durations shall be determined as discussed in Chapter 6 of the Copermittees' original Model BMP Design Manual. (As previously indicated in this Manual, development within Authority jurisdiction is not subject to hydromodification management requirements, however this sub-section remains as a reference).

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement requirements, maximum side and finish grade slopes, and the recommended media surface area tributary area ratio. Design for flow control can be achieved using various design configurations.
2. Iteratively determine the facility footprint area, surface ponding and/or aggregate storage layer depth required to provide infiltration storage to reduce flow rates and durations to allowable limits while adhering to the maximum drawdown times for surface ponding and aggregate storage. Flow rates and durations can be controlled using flow splitters that route the appropriate inflow amounts to the bioretention facility and bypass excess flows to the downstream storm drain system or discharge point.
3. If bioretention without underdrain facility cannot fully provide the flow rate and duration control required by the MS4 permit, an upstream or downstream structure with appropriate storage volume such as an underground vault can be used to provide additional control.

4. After bioretention without underdrain BMPs have been designed to meet flow control requirements, calculations must be completed to verify if storm water pollutant control requirements to treat the DCV have been met.

E.10 INF-3 Permeable Pavement (Pollutant Control)

MS4 Permit Category

Retention
Flow-through Treatment Control

Manual Category

Infiltration
Flow-through Treatment Control

Applicable Performance Standard

Pollutant Control
Flow Control

Primary Benefits

Volume Reduction
Peak Flow Attenuation

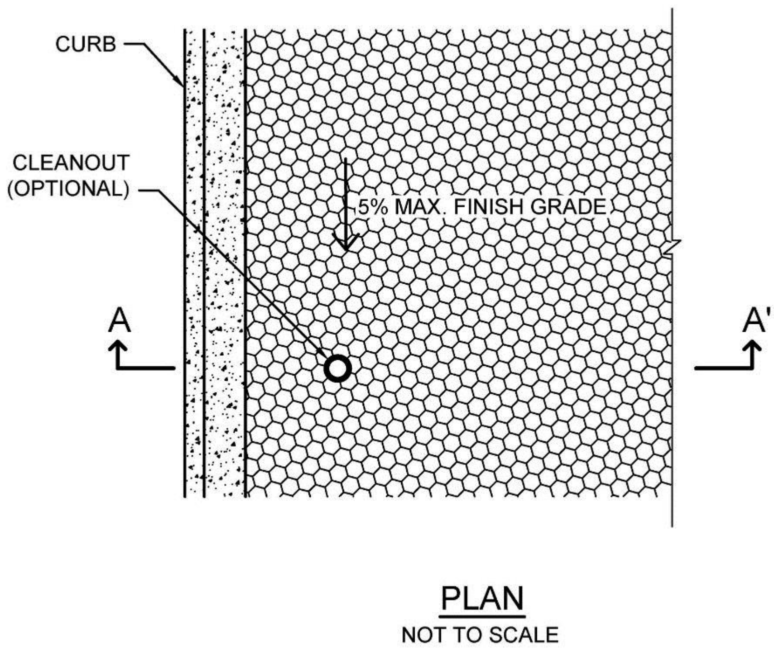
Location: Kellogg Park, San Diego, California

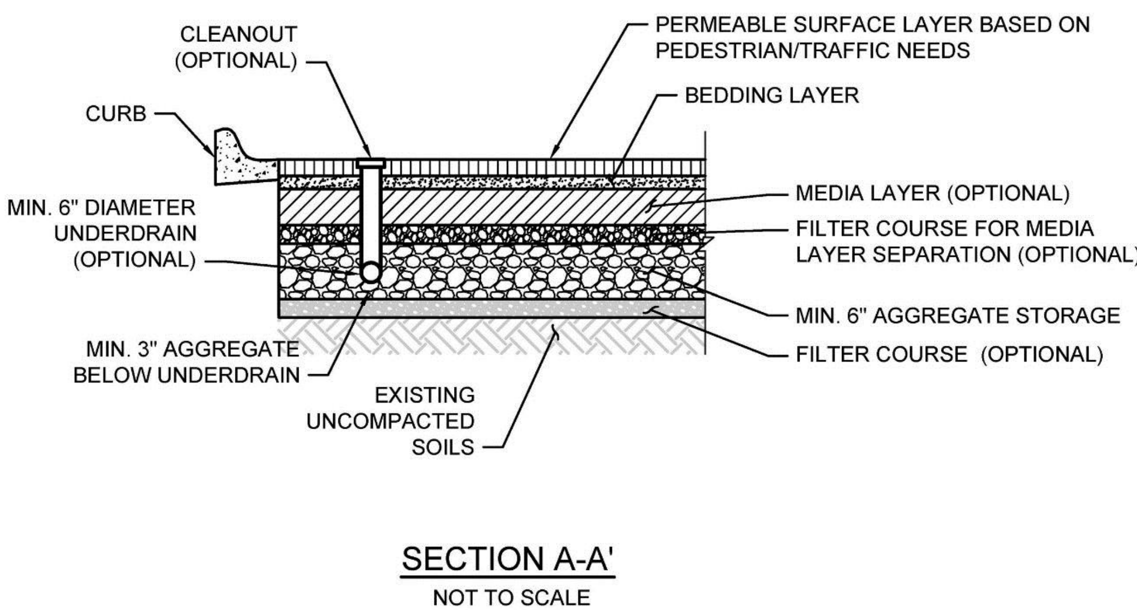
Description

Permeable pavement is pavement that allows for percolation through void spaces in the pavement surface into subsurface layers. The subsurface layers are designed to provide storage of storm water runoff so that outflows, primarily via infiltration into subgrade soils or release to the downstream conveyance system, can be at controlled rates. Varying levels of storm water treatment and flow control can be provided depending on the size of the permeable pavement system relative to its drainage area, the underlying infiltration rates, and the configuration of outflow controls. Pollutant control permeable pavement is designed to receive runoff from a larger tributary area than site design permeable pavement (see SD-6B). Pollutant control is provided via infiltration, filtration, sorption, sedimentation, and biodegradation processes.

Typical permeable pavement components include, from top to bottom:

- Permeable surface layer
- Bedding layer for permeable surface
- Aggregate storage layer with optional underdrain(s)
- Optional final filter course layer over uncompacted existing subgrade





Typical plan and Section view of a Permeable Pavement BMP

Subcategories of permeable pavement include modular paver units or paver blocks, pervious concrete, porous asphalt, and turf pavers. These subcategory variations differ in the material used for the permeable surface layer but have similar functions and characteristics below this layer.

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Site design BMP to reduce impervious area and DCV. See site design option SD-6B.

Full infiltration BMP for storm water pollutant control. Permeable pavement without an underdrain and without impermeable liners can be used as a pollutant control BMP, designed to infiltrate runoff from direct rainfall as well as runoff from adjacent areas that are tributary to the pavement. The system must be designed with an infiltration storage volume (a function of the aggregate storage volume) equal to the full DCV and able to meet drawdown time limitations.

Partial infiltration BMP with flow-through treatment for storm water pollutant control. Permeable pavement can be designed so that a portion of the DCV is infiltrated by providing an underdrain with infiltration storage below the underdrain invert. The infiltration storage depth should be determined by the volume that can be reliably infiltrated within drawdown time limitations. Water discharged through the underdrain is considered flow-through treatment and is not considered biofiltration treatment. Storage provided above the underdrain invert is included in the flow-through treatment volume.

Flow-through treatment BMP for storm water pollutant control. The system may be lined and/or installed over impermeable native soils with an underdrain provided at the bottom to carry away filtered runoff. Water quality treatment is provided via unit treatment processes other than infiltration. This configuration is considered to provide flow-through treatment, not biofiltration treatment. Significant aggregate storage provided above the underdrain invert can provide detention storage, which can be controlled via inclusion of an orifice in an outlet structure at the downstream end of the underdrain. **PDPs have the option to add saturated storage to the flow-through configuration in order to reduce the DCV that the BMP is required to treat.** Saturated storage can be added to this design by including an upturned elbow installed at the downstream end of the underdrain or via an internal weir structure designed to maintain a specific water level elevation. The DCV can be reduced by the amount of saturated storage provided.

Integrated storm water flow control and pollutant control configuration. With any of the above configurations, the system can be designed to provide flow rate and duration control. This may include having a deeper aggregate storage layer that allows for significant detention storage above the underdrain, which can be further controlled via inclusion of an outlet structure at the downstream end of the underdrain.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Permeable pavements must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the FDD and EAD if it is determined to be appropriate:

	Siting and Design	***Intent/Rationale***
☐	Placement observes geotechnical recommendations regarding potential hazards (e.g., slope stability, landslides, liquefaction zones) and setbacks (e.g., slopes, foundations, utilities).	Must not negatively impact existing site geotechnical concerns.
☐	Selection must be based on infiltration feasibility criteria.	Full or partial infiltration designs must be supported by drainage area feasibility findings.
☐	An impermeable liner or other hydraulic restriction layer is included if site constraints indicate that infiltration should not be allowed.	Lining prevents storm water from impacting groundwater and/or sensitive environmental or geotechnical features. Incidental infiltration, when allowable, can aid in pollutant removal and groundwater recharge.
☐	Permeable pavement is not placed in an area with significant overhanging trees or other vegetation.	Leaves and organic debris can clog the pavement surface.
☐	For pollutant control permeable pavement, the ratio of the total drainage area (including the permeable pavement) to the permeable pavement should not exceed 4:1.	Higher ratios increase the potential for clogging but may be acceptable for relatively clean tributary areas.
☐	Finish grade of the permeable pavement has a slope ≤ 5%.	Flatter surfaces facilitate increased runoff capture.
☐	Minimum depth to groundwater and bedrock ≥ 10 ft.	A minimum separation facilitates infiltration and lessens the risk of negative groundwater impacts.
☐	Contributing tributary area includes effective sediment source control and/or pretreatment measures such as raised curbed or grass filter strips.	Sediment can clog the pavement surface.
☐	Direct discharges to permeable pavement are only from downspouts carrying "clean" roof runoff that are equipped with filters to remove gross solids.	Roof runoff typically carries less sediment than runoff from other impervious surfaces and is less likely to clog the pavement surface.

	Siting and Design	Intent/Rationale
Permeable Surface Layer		
☐	Permeable surface layer type is appropriately chosen based on pavement use and expected vehicular loading.	Pavement may wear more quickly if not durable for expected loads or frequencies.
☐	Permeable surface layer type is appropriate for expected pedestrian traffic.	Expected demographic and accessibility needs (e.g., adults, children, seniors, runners, high-heeled shoes, wheelchairs, strollers, bikes) requires selection of appropriate surface layer type that will not impede pedestrian needs.
Bedding Layer for Permeable Surface		
☐	Bedding thickness and material is appropriate for the chosen permeable surface layer type.	Porous asphalt requires a 2- to 4-inch layer of asphalt and a 1- to 2-inch layer of choker course (single-sized crushed aggregate, one-half inch) to stabilize the surface. Pervious concrete also requires an aggregate course of clean gravel or crushed stone with a minimum amount of fines. Permeable Interlocking Concrete Paver requires 1 or 2 inches of sand or No. 8 aggregate to allow for leveling of the paver blocks. Similar to Permeable Interlocking Concrete Paver, plastic grid systems also require a 1- to 2-inch bedding course of either gravel or sand. For Permeable Interlocking Concrete Paver and plastic grid systems, if sand is used, a geotextile should be used between the sand course and the reservoir media to prevent the sand from migrating into the stone media.
☐	Aggregate used for bedding layer is washed prior to placement.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog the permeable

	Siting and Design	Intent/Rationale
		pavement system aggregate storage layer void spaces or underdrain.
Media Layer (Optional) –used between bedding layer and aggregate storage layer to provide pollutant treatment control		
☐	The pollutant removal performance of the media layer is documented by the applicant.	Media used for BMP design should be shown via research or testing to be appropriate for expected pollutants of concern and flow rates.
☐	A filter course is provided to separate the media layer from the aggregate storage layer.	Migration of media can cause clogging of the aggregate storage layer void spaces or underdrain.
☐	If a filter course is used, calculations assessing suitability for particle migration prevention have been completed.	Gradation relationship between layers can evaluate factors (e.g., bridging, permeability, and uniformity) to determine if particle sizing is appropriate or if an intermediate layer is needed.
☐	Consult permeable pavement manufacturer to verify that media layer provides required structural support.	Media must not compromise the structural integrity or intended uses of the permeable pavement surface.
Aggregate Storage Layer		
☐	Aggregate used for the aggregate storage layer is washed and free of fines.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog aggregate storage layer void spaces or underdrain.
☐	Minimum layer depth is 6 inches and for infiltration designs, the maximum depth is determined based on the infiltration storage volume that will infiltrate within a 36-hour drawdown time.	A minimum depth of aggregate provides structural stability for expected pavement loads.
Underdrain and Outflow Structures		
☐	Underdrains and outflow structures, if used, are accessible for inspection and maintenance.	Maintenance will improve the performance and extend the life of the permeable pavement system.
☐	Underdrain outlet elevation should be a minimum of 3 inches above the bottom elevation of the aggregate storage layer.	A minimal separation from subgrade or the liner lessens the risk of fines entering the underdrain and can improve hydraulic performance by allowing perforations to remain unblocked.

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Minimum underdrain diameter is 6 inches.	Smaller diameter underdrains are prone to clogging.
☐	Underdrains are made of slotted, PVC pipe conforming to ASTM D 3034 or equivalent or corrugated, HDPE pipe conforming to AASHTO 252M or equivalent.	Slotted underdrains provide greater intake capacity, clog resistant drainage, and reduced entrance velocity into the pipe, thereby reducing the chances of solids migration.
Filter Course (Optional)		
☐	Filter course is washed and free of fines.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog subgrade and impede infiltration.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Site Design

1. Determine the areas where permeable pavement can be used in the site design to replace traditional pavement to reduce the impervious area and DCV. These permeable pavement areas can be credited toward reducing runoff generated through representation in storm water calculations as pervious, not impervious, areas but are not credited for storm water pollutant control. These permeable pavement areas should be designed as self-retaining with the appropriate tributary area ratio identified in the design criteria.
2. Calculate the DCV per Appendix B, taking into account reduced runoff from self-retaining permeable pavement areas.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Storm Water Pollutant Control Only

To design permeable pavement for storm water pollutant control only (no flow control required), the following steps should be taken:

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement requirements, maximum finish grade slope, and the recommended tributary area ratio for non-self-retaining permeable pavement. If infiltration is infeasible, the permeable pavement can be designed as flow-through treatment per the sizing worksheet. If infiltration is feasible, calculations should follow the remaining design steps.
2. Calculate the DCV per Appendix B based on expected site design runoff for tributary areas.
3. Use the sizing worksheet to determine if full or partial infiltration of the DCV is achievable based on the available infiltration storage volume calculated from the permeable pavement footprint, aggregate storage layer depth, and in-situ soil design infiltration rate for a maximum 36-hour drawdown time. The applicant has an option to use a different drawdown time up to 96 hours if the volume of the facility is adjusted using the percent capture method in Appendix

B.4.2.

4. Where the DCV cannot be fully infiltrated based on the site or permeable pavement constraints, an underdrain must be incorporated above the infiltration storage to carry away runoff that exceeds the infiltration storage capacity.
5. The remaining DCV to be treated should be calculated for use in sizing downstream BMP(s).

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach when Storm Water Flow Control is Applicable

If control of flow rates and/or durations is desired on an Authority project, significant aggregate storage volumes will typically be required, and therefore the following steps should be taken prior to determination of storm water pollutant control design. Pre-development and post-project flow rates and durations should be determined as discussed in Chapter 6 of the Copermittees' original Model BMP Design Manual. (As previously indicated in this Manual, development within Authority jurisdiction is not subject to hydromodification management requirements, however this sub-section remains as a reference).

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement requirements, maximum finish grade slope, and the recommended tributary area ratio for non-self-retaining permeable pavement. Design for flow control can be achieving using various design configurations, but a flow-thru treatment design will typically require a greater aggregate storage layer volume than designs which allow for full or partial infiltration of the DCV.
2. Iteratively determine the area and aggregate storage layer depth required to provide infiltration and/or detention storage to reduce flow rates and durations to allowable limits. Flow rates and durations can be controlled from detention storage by altering outlet structure orifice size(s) and/or water control levels. Multi-level orifices can be used within an outlet structure to control the full range of flows.
3. If the permeable pavement system cannot fully provide the flow rate and duration control required by this manual, a downstream structure with sufficient storage volume such as an underground vault can be used to provide remaining controls.
4. After permeable pavement has been designed to meet flow control requirements, calculations must be completed to verify if storm water pollutant control requirements to treat the DCV have been met.

E.11 PR-1 Biofiltration with Partial Retention

Location: 805 and Bonita Road, Chula vista, CA.

MS4 Permit Category

NA

Manual Category

Partial Retention

Applicable Performance Standard

Pollutant Control

Flow Control

Primary Benefits

Volume Reduction

Treatment

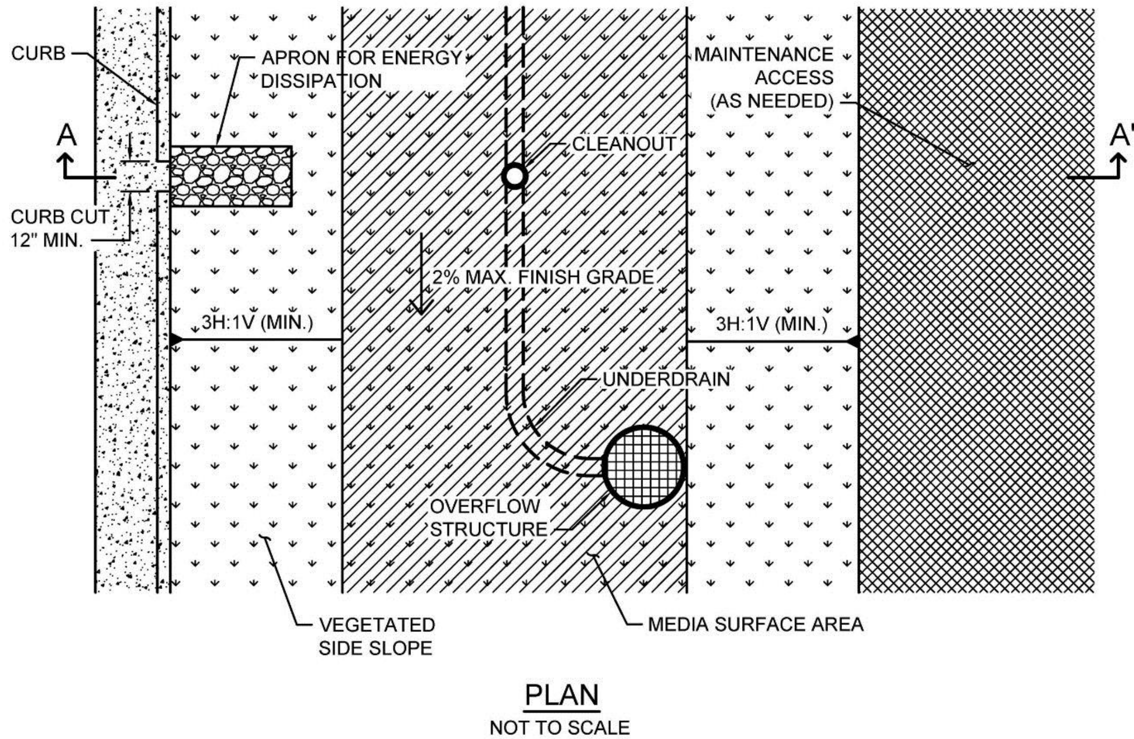
Peak Flow Attenuation

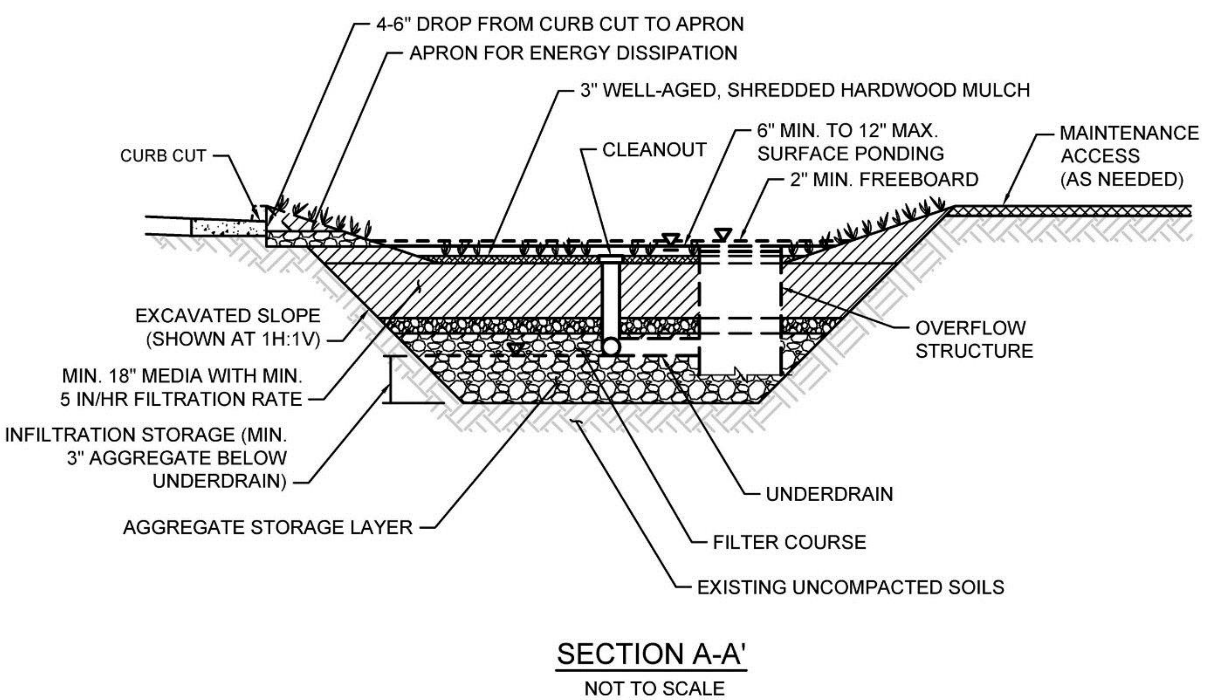
Description

Biofiltration with partial retention (partial infiltration and biofiltration) facilities are vegetated surface water systems that filter water through vegetation, and soil or engineered media prior to infiltrating into native soils, discharge via underdrain, or overflow to the downstream conveyance system. Where feasible, these BMPs have an elevated underdrain discharge point that creates storage capacity in the aggregate storage layer. Biofiltration with partial retention facilities are commonly incorporated into the site within parking lot landscaping, along roadsides, and in open spaces. They can be constructed in ground or partially aboveground, such as planter boxes with open bottoms to allow infiltration. Treatment is achieved through filtration, sedimentation, sorption, infiltration, biochemical processes and plant uptake.

Typical biofiltration with partial retention components include:

- Inflow distribution mechanisms (e.g, perimeter flow spreader or filter strips)
- Energy dissipation mechanism for concentrated inflows (e.g., splash blocks or riprap)
- Shallow surface ponding for captured flows
- Side Slope and basin bottom vegetation selected based on climate and ponding depth
- Non-floating mulch layer (Optional)
- Media layer (planting mix or engineered media) capable of supporting vegetation growth
- Filter course layer consisting of aggregate to prevent the migration of fines into uncompacted native soils or the optional aggregate storage layer
- Aggregate storage layer with underdrain(s)
- Uncompacted native soils at the bottom of the facility
- Overflow structure





Typical plan and Section view of a Biofiltration with Partial Retention BMP

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Partial infiltration BMP with biofiltration treatment for storm water pollutant control. Biofiltration with partial retention can be designed so that a portion of the DCV is infiltrated by providing infiltration storage below the underdrain invert. The infiltration storage depth should be determined by the volume that can be reliably infiltrated within drawdown time limitations. Water discharged through the underdrain is considered biofiltration treatment. Storage provided above the underdrain within surface ponding, media, and aggregate storage is included in the biofiltration treatment volume.

Integrated storm water flow control and pollutant control configuration. The system can be designed to provide flow rate and duration control by primarily providing increased surface ponding and/or having a deeper aggregate storage layer. This will allow for significant detention storage, which can be controlled via inclusion of an orifice in an outlet structure at the downstream end of the underdrain.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Biofiltration with partial retention must meet the following design criteria and considerations. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the FDD and EAD if it is determined to be appropriate:

Siting and Design		*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Placement observes geotechnical recommendations regarding potential hazards (e.g., slope stability, landslides, liquefaction zones) and setbacks (e.g., slopes, foundations, utilities).	Must not negatively impact existing site geotechnical concerns.
☐	Selection and design of basin is based on infiltration feasibility criteria and appropriate design infiltration rate (See Appendix C and D).	Must operate as a partial infiltration design and must be supported by drainage area and in-situ infiltration rate feasibility findings.
☐	Contributing tributary area shall be ≤ 5 acres (≤ 1 acre preferred).	Bigger BMPs require additional design features for proper performance. Contributing tributary area greater than 5 acres may be allowed at the discretion of the FDD and EAD if the following conditions are met: 1) incorporate design features (e.g. flow spreaders) to minimizing short circuiting of flows in the BMP and 2) incorporate additional

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
		design features requested by the FDD for proper performance of the regional BMP.
☐	Finish grade of the facility is ≤ 2%.	Flatter surfaces reduce erosion and channelization within the facility.
Surface Ponding		
☐	Surface ponding is limited to a 24-hour drawdown time.	Surface ponding limited to 24 hours for plant health. Surface ponding drawdown time greater than 24-hours but less than 96 hours may be allowed at the discretion of the FDD and EAD if certified by a landscape architect or agronomist.
☐	Surface ponding depth is ≥ 6 and ≤ 12 inches.	Surface ponding capacity lowers subsurface storage requirements. Deep surface ponding raises safety concerns. Surface ponding depth greater than 12 inches (for additional pollutant control or surface outlet structures or flow-control orifices) may be allowed at the discretion of the FDD and EAD if the following conditions are met: 1) surface ponding depth drawdown time is less than 24 hours; and 2) safety issues and fencing requirements are considered (typically ponding greater than 18" will require a fence and/or flatter side slopes) and 3) potential for elevated clogging risk is considered.
☐	A minimum of 12 inches of freeboard is provided.	Freeboard provides room for head over overflow structures and minimizes risk of uncontrolled surface discharge.
☐	Side slopes are stabilized with vegetation and are = 3H:1V or shallower.	Gentler side slopes are safer, less prone to erosion, able to establish vegetation more quickly and easier to maintain.
Vegetation		

	Siting and Design	***Intent/Rationale***
☐	Plantings are suitable for the climate and expected ponding depth. A plant list to aid in selection can be found in Appendix E.20	Plants suited to the climate and ponding depth are more likely to survive.
☐	An irrigation system with a connection to water supply should be provided as needed.	Seasonal irrigation might be needed to keep plants healthy.
Mulch (Optional)		
☐	A minimum of 3 inches of well-aged, shredded hardwood mulch that has been stockpiled or stored for at least 12 months is provided. Mulch must be non-floating to avoid clogging of overflow structure.	Mulch will suppress weeds and maintain moisture for plant growth. Aging mulch kills pathogens and weed seeds and allows the beneficial microbes to multiply.
Media Layer		
☐	Media maintains a minimum filtration rate of 5 in/hr over lifetime of facility. An initial filtration rate of 8 to 12 in/hr is recommended to allow for clogging over time; the initial filtration rate should not exceed 12 inches per hour.	A filtration rate of at least 5 inches per hour allows soil to drain between events, and allows flows to relatively quickly enter the aggregate storage layer, thereby minimizing bypass. The initial rate should be higher than long term target rate to account for clogging over time. However an excessively high initial rate can have a negative impact on treatment performance, therefore an upper limit is needed.
☐	Media is a minimum 18 inches deep, meeting either of these two media specifications: City of San Diego Storm Water Standards Appendix F (February 2016, unless superseded by more recent edition) **<u>or</u>** County of San Diego Low Impact Development Handbook: Appendix G -Bioretention Soil Specification (June 2014, unless superseded by more recent edition). Alternatively, for proprietary designs and custom media mixes not meeting the media specifications contained in the 2016 City Storm	A deep media layer provides additional filtration and supports plants with deeper roots. Standard specifications shall be followed. For non-standard or proprietary designs, compliance with Appendix F.1 ensures that adequate treatment performance will be provided.

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
	Water Standards or County LID Manual, the media meets the pollutant treatment performance criteria in Section F.1.	
☐	Media surface area is 3% of contributing area times adjusted runoff factor or greater. Unless demonstrated that the BMP surface area can be smaller than 3%.	Greater surface area to tributary area ratios: a) maximizes volume retention as required by the MS4 Permit and b) decrease loading rates per square foot and therefore increase longevity. Adjusted runoff factor is to account for site design BMPs implemented upstream of the BMP (such as rain barrels, impervious area dispersion, etc.). Refer to Appendix B.2 guidance. Use Worksheet B.5-1 Line 26 to estimate the minimum surface area required per this criteria.
☐	Where receiving waters are impaired or have a TMDL for nutrients, the system is designed with nutrient sensitive media design (see fact sheet BF-2).	Potential for pollutant export is partly a function of media composition; media design must minimize potential for export of nutrients, particularly where receiving waters are impaired for nutrients.
Filter Course Layer		
☐	A filter course is used to prevent migration of fines through layers of the facility. Filter fabric is not used.	Migration of media can cause clogging of the aggregate storage layer void spaces or subgrade. Filter fabric is more likely to clog.
☐	Filter course is washed and free of fines.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog the facility
☐	Filter course calculations assessing suitability for particle migration prevention have been completed.	Gradation relationship between layers can evaluate factors (e.g., bridging, permeability, and uniformity) to determine if particle sizing is appropriate or if an intermediate layer is needed.
Aggregate Storage Layer		

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Class 2 Permeable per Caltrans specification 68-1.025 is recommended for the storage layer. Washed, open-graded crushed rock may be used, however a 4-6 inch washed pea gravel filter course layer at the top of the crushed rock is required.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog the aggregate storage layer void spaces or subgrade.
☐	Maximum aggregate storage layer depth below the underdrain invert is determined based on the infiltration storage volume that will infiltrate within a 36-hour drawdown time.	A maximum drawdown time is needed for vector control and to facilitate providing storm water storage for the next storm event.
	Inflow, Underdrain, and Outflow Structures	
☐	Inflow, underdrains and outflow structures are accessible for inspection and maintenance.	Maintenance will prevent clogging and ensure proper operation of the flow control structures.
☐	Inflow velocities are limited to 3 ft/s or less or use energy dissipation methods. (e.g., riprap, level spreader) for concentrated inflows.	High inflow velocities can cause erosion, scour and/or channeling.
☐	Curb cut inlets are at least 12 inches wide, have a 4-6 inch reveal (drop) and an apron and energy dissipation as needed.	Inlets must not restrict flow and apron prevents blockage from vegetation as it grows in. Energy dissipation prevents erosion.
☐	Underdrain outlet elevation should be a minimum of 3 inches above the bottom elevation of the aggregate storage layer.	A minimal separation from subgrade or the liner lessens the risk of fines entering the underdrain and can improve hydraulic performance by allowing perforations to remain unblocked.
☐	Minimum underdrain diameter is 6 inches.	Smaller diameter underdrains are prone to clogging.
☐	Underdrains are made of slotted, PVC pipe conforming to ASTM D 3034 or equivalent or corrugated, HDPE pipe conforming to AASHTO 252M or equivalent.	Slotted underdrains provide greater intake capacity, clog resistant drainage, and reduced entrance velocity into the pipe, thereby reducing the chances of solids migration.
☐	An underdrain cleanout with a minimum 6-inch diameter and lockable cap is placed every 250 to 300 feet as required based on underdrain length.	Properly spaced cleanouts will facilitate underdrain maintenance.

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Overflow is safely conveyed to a downstream storm drain system or discharge point. Size overflow structure to pass 100-year peak flow for on-line infiltration basins and water quality peak flow for off-line basins.	Planning for overflow lessens the risk of property damage due to flooding.

Nutrient Sensitive Media Design

To design biofiltration with partial retention with underdrain for storm water pollutant control only (no flow control required), the following steps should be taken:

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Storm Water Pollutant Control Only

To design biofiltration with partial retention and an underdrain for storm water pollutant control only (no flow control required), the following steps should be taken:

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement requirements, contributing tributary area, maximum side and finish grade slopes, and the recommended media surface area tributary ratio.
2. Calculate the DCV per Appendix B based on expected site design runoff for tributary areas.
3. Generalized sizing procedure is presented in Appendix B.5. The surface ponding should be verified to have a maximum 24-hour drawdown time.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach when Storm Water Flow Control is Applicable

If control of flow rates and/or durations is desired on an Authority project, significant surface ponding and/or aggregate storage volumes will typically be required, and therefore the following steps should be taken prior to determination of storm water pollutant control design. Pre-development and post-project flow rates and durations should be determined as discussed in Chapter 6 of the Copermittees' original Model BMP Design Manual. (As previously indicated in this Manual, development within Authority jurisdiction is not subject to hydromodification management requirements, however this sub-section remains as a reference).

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement requirements, contributing tributary area, maximum side and finish grade slopes, and the recommended media surface area tributary ratio.
2. Iteratively determine the facility footprint area, surface ponding and/or aggregate storage layer depth required to provide detention and/or infiltration storage to reduce flow rates and durations to allowable limits. Flow rates and durations can be controlled from detention storage by altering outlet structure orifice size(s) and/or water control levels. Multi-level orifices can be used within an outlet structure to control the full range of flows.
3. If biofiltration with partial retention cannot fully provide the flow rate and duration control

required by this manual, an upstream or downstream structure with significant storage volume such as an underground vault can be used to provide remaining controls.

4. After biofiltration with partial retention has been designed to meet flow control requirements, calculations must be completed to verify if storm water pollutant control requirements to treat the DCV have been met.

E.12 BF-1 Biofiltration

MS4 Permit Category

Biofiltration

Manual Category

Biofiltration

Applicable Performance Standard

Pollutant Control
Flow Control

Primary Benefits

Treatment
Volume Reduction (Incidental)
Peak Flow Attenuation (Optional)

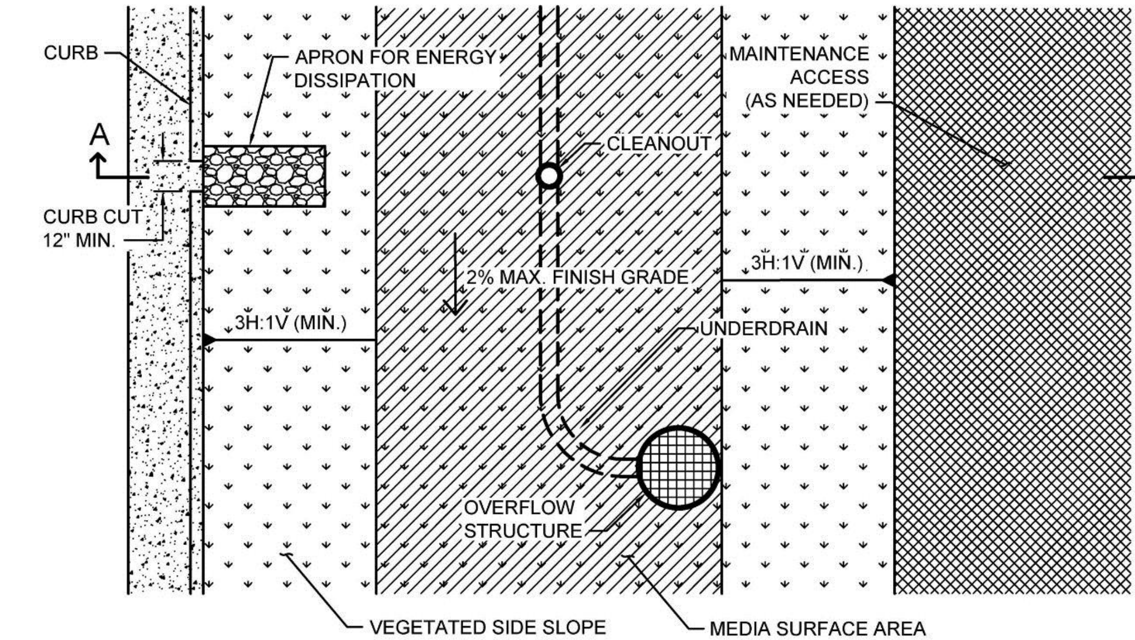
Location: 43rd Street and Logan Avenue, San Diego, California

Description

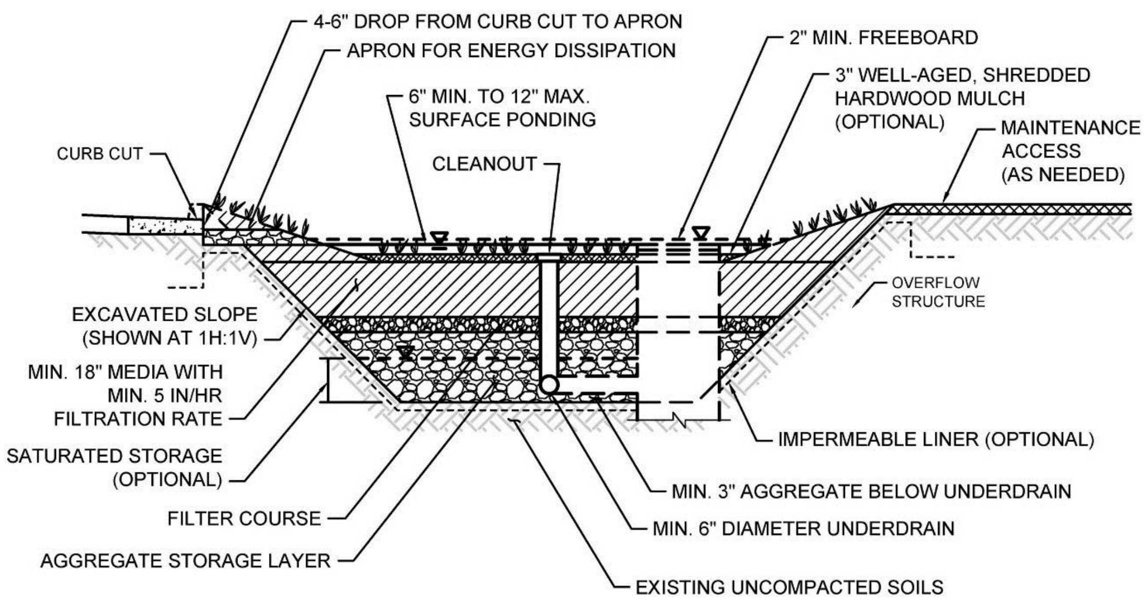
Biofiltration (Bioretention with underdrain) facilities are vegetated surface water systems that filter water through vegetation, and soil or engineered media prior to discharge via underdrain or overflow to the downstream conveyance system. Bioretention with underdrain facilities are commonly incorporated into the site within parking lot landscaping, along roadsides, and in open spaces. Because these types of facilities have limited or no infiltration, they are typically designed to provide enough hydraulic head to move flows through the underdrain connection to the storm drain system. Treatment is achieved through filtration, sedimentation, sorption, biochemical processes and plant uptake.

Typical bioretention with underdrain components include:

- Inflow distribution mechanisms (e.g, perimeter flow spreader or filter strips)
- Energy dissipation mechanism for concentrated inflows (e.g., splash blocks or riprap)
- Shallow surface ponding for captured flows
- Side slope and basin bottom vegetation selected based on expected climate and ponding depth
- Non-floating mulch layer (Optional)
- Media layer (planting mix or engineered media) capable of supporting vegetation growth
- Filter course layer consisting of aggregate to prevent the migration of fines into uncompacted native soils or the aggregate storage layer
- Aggregate storage layer with underdrain(s)
- Impermeable liner or uncompacted native soils at the bottom of the facility
- Overflow structure



PLAN
NOT TO SCALE



SECTION A-A'
NOT TO SCALE

Typical plan and Section view of a Biofiltration BMP

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Biofiltration Treatment BMP for storm water pollutant control. The system is lined or un-lined to provide incidental infiltration, and an underdrain is provided at the bottom to carry away filtered runoff. This configuration is considered to provide biofiltration treatment via flow through the media layer. Storage provided above the underdrain within surface ponding, media, and aggregate storage is considered included in the biofiltration treatment volume. Saturated storage within the aggregate storage layer can be added to this design by raising the underdrain above the bottom of the aggregate storage layer or via an internal weir structure designed to maintain a specific water level elevation.

Integrated storm water flow control and pollutant control configuration. The system can be designed to provide flow rate and duration control by primarily providing increased surface ponding and/or having a deeper aggregate storage layer above the underdrain. This will allow for significant detention storage, which can be controlled via inclusion of an outlet structure at the downstream end of the underdrain.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Bioretention with underdrain must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the FDD and EAD if it is determined to be appropriate:

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Placement observes geotechnical recommendations regarding potential hazards (e.g., slope stability, landslides, liquefaction zones) and setbacks (e.g., slopes, foundations, utilities).	Must not negatively impact existing site geotechnical concerns.
☐	An impermeable liner or other hydraulic restriction layer is included if site constraints indicate that infiltration or lateral flows should not be allowed.	Lining prevents storm water from impacting groundwater and/or sensitive environmental or geotechnical features. Incidental infiltration, when allowable, can aid in pollutant removal and groundwater recharge.
☐	Contributing tributary area shall be ≤ 5 acres (≤ 1 acre preferred).	Bigger BMPs require additional design features for proper performance. Contributing tributary area greater than 5 acres may be allowed at the discretion of the FDD and EAD if the following conditions are met: 1) incorporate design features (e.g. flow spreaders) to minimizing short circuiting of flows in

Siting and Design		*Intent/Rationale*
		the BMP and 2) incorporate additional design features requested by the FDD for proper performance of the regional BMP.
☐	Finish grade of the facility is ≤ 2%.	Flatter surfaces reduce erosion and channelization within the facility.
Surface Ponding		
☐	Surface ponding is limited to a 24-hour drawdown time.	Surface ponding limited to 24 hours for plant health. Surface ponding drawdown time greater than 24-hours but less than 96 hours may be allowed at the discretion of the EAD if certified by a landscape architect or agronomist.
☐	Surface ponding depth is ≥ 6 and ≤ 12 inches.	Surface ponding capacity lowers subsurface storage requirements. Deep surface ponding raises safety concerns. Surface ponding depth greater than 12 inches (for additional pollutant control or surface outlet structures or flow-control orifices) may be allowed at the discretion of the FDD and EAD if the following conditions are met: 1) surface ponding depth drawdown time is less than 24 hours; and 2) safety issues and fencing requirements are considered (typically ponding greater than 18" will require a fence and/or flatter side slopes) and 3) potential for elevated clogging risk is considered.
☐	A minimum of 12 inches of freeboard is provided.	Freeboard provides room for head over overflow structures and minimizes risk of uncontrolled surface discharge.
☐	Side slopes are stabilized with vegetation and are = 3H:1V or shallower.	Gentler side slopes are safer, less prone to erosion, able to establish vegetation more quickly and easier to maintain.
Vegetation		

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Plantings are suitable for the climate and expected ponding depth. A plant list to aid in selection can be found in Appendix E.20.	Plants suited to the climate and ponding depth are more likely to survive.
☐	An irrigation system with a connection to water supply should be provided as needed.	Seasonal irrigation might be needed to keep plants healthy.
Mulch (Optional)		
☐	A minimum of 3 inches of well-aged, shredded hardwood mulch that has been stockpiled or stored for at least 12 months is provided.	Mulch will suppress weeds and maintain moisture for plant growth. Aging mulch kills pathogens and weed seeds and allows the beneficial microbes to multiply.
Media Layer		
☐	Media maintains a minimum filtration rate of 5 in/hr over lifetime of facility. An initial filtration rate of 8 to 12 in/hr is recommended to allow for clogging over time; the initial filtration rate should not exceed 12 inches per hour.	A filtration rate of at least 5 inches per hour allows soil to drain between events. The initial rate should be higher than long term target rate to account for clogging over time. However an excessively high initial rate can have a negative impact on treatment performance, therefore an upper limit is needed.
☐	Media is a minimum 18 inches deep, meeting either of these two media specifications: City of San Diego Storm Water Standards Appendix F (February 2016, unless superseded by more recent edition) **<u>or</u>** County of San Diego Low Impact Development Handbook: Appendix G -Bioretention Soil Specification (June 2014, unless superseded by more recent edition). Alternatively, for proprietary designs and custom media mixes not meeting the media specifications contained in the 2016 City Storm Water Standards or County LID Manual, the media meets the pollutant treatment performance criteria in Section F.1.	A deep media layer provides additional filtration and supports plants with deeper roots. Standard specifications shall be followed. For non-standard or proprietary designs, compliance with F.1 ensures that adequate treatment performance will be provided.

	Siting and Design	Intent/Rationale
☐	Media surface area is 3% of contributing area times adjusted runoff factor or greater. Unless demonstrated that the BMP surface area can be smaller than 3%.	Greater surface area to tributary area ratios: a) maximizes volume retention as required by the MS4 Permit and b) decrease loading rates per square foot and therefore increase longevity. Adjusted runoff factor is to account for site design BMPs implemented upstream of the BMP (such as rain barrels, impervious area dispersion, etc.). Refer to Appendix B.2 guidance. Use Worksheet B.5-1 Line 26 to estimate the minimum surface area required per this criteria.
☐	Where receiving waters are impaired or have a TMDL for nutrients, the system is designed with nutrient sensitive media design (see fact sheet BF-2).	Potential for pollutant export is partly a function of media composition; media design must minimize potential for export of nutrients, particularly where receiving waters are impaired for nutrients.
Filter Course Layer		
☐	A filter course is used to prevent migration of fines through layers of the facility. Filter fabric is not used.	Migration of media can cause clogging of the aggregate storage layer void spaces or subgrade. Filter fabric is more likely to clog.
☐	Filter course is washed and free of fines.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog the facility and impede infiltration.
☐	Filter course calculations assessing suitability for particle migration prevention have been completed.	Gradation relationship between layers can evaluate factors (e.g., bridging, permeability, and uniformity) to determine if particle sizing is appropriate or if an intermediate layer is needed.
Aggregate Storage Layer		
☐	Class 2 Permeable per Caltrans specification 68-1.025 is recommended for the storage layer. Washed, open-graded crushed rock may be used, however a 4-6 inch washed pea gravel	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog the aggregate storage layer void spaces or subgrade.

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
	filter course layer at the top of the crushed rock is required.	
☐	The depth of aggregate provided (12-inch typical) and storage layer configuration is adequate for providing conveyance for underdrain flows to the outlet structure.	Proper storage layer configuration and underdrain placement will minimize facility drawdown time.
Inflow, Underdrain, and Outflow Structures		
☐	Inflow, underdrains and outflow structures are accessible for inspection and maintenance.	Maintenance will prevent clogging and ensure proper operation of the flow control structures.
☐	Inflow velocities are limited to 3 ft/s or less or use energy dissipation methods. (e.g., riprap, level spreader) for concentrated inflows.	High inflow velocities can cause erosion, scour and/or channeling.
☐	Curb cut inlets are at least 12 inches wide, have a 4-6 inch reveal (drop) and an apron and energy dissipation as needed.	Inlets must not restrict flow and apron prevents blockage from vegetation as it grows in. Energy dissipation prevents erosion.
☐	Underdrain outlet elevation should be a minimum of 3 inches above the bottom elevation of the aggregate storage layer.	A minimal separation from subgrade or the liner lessens the risk of fines entering the underdrain and can improve hydraulic performance by allowing perforations to remain unblocked.
☐	Minimum underdrain diameter is 6 inches.	Smaller diameter underdrains are prone to clogging.
☐	Underdrains are made of slotted, PVC pipe conforming to ASTM D 3034 or equivalent or corrugated, HDPE pipe conforming to AASHTO 252M or equivalent.	Slotted underdrains provide greater intake capacity, clog resistant drainage, and reduced entrance velocity into the pipe, thereby reducing the chances of solids migration.
☐	An underdrain cleanout with a minimum 6-inch diameter and lockable cap is placed every 250 to 300 feet as required based on underdrain length.	Properly spaced cleanouts will facilitate underdrain maintenance.
☐	Overflow is safely conveyed to a downstream storm drain system or discharge point Size overflow structure to pass 100-year peak flow	Planning for overflow lessens the risk of property damage due to flooding.

Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
for on-line infiltration basins and water quality peak flow for off-line basins.	

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Storm Water Pollutant Control Only

To design bioretention with underdrain for storm water pollutant control only (no flow control required), the following steps should be taken:

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement requirements, contributing tributary area, maximum side and finish grade slopes, and the recommended media surface area tributary ratio.
2. Calculate the DCV per Appendix B based on expected site design runoff for tributary areas.
3. Use the sizing worksheet presented in Appendix B.5 to size biofiltration BMPs.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach when Storm Water Flow Control is Applicable

If control of flow rates and/or durations is desired on an Authority project, significant surface ponding and/or aggregate storage volumes will typically be required, and therefore the following steps should be taken prior to determination of storm water pollutant control design. Pre-development and post-project flow rates and durations should be determined as discussed in Chapter 6 of the Copermittees' original Model BMP Design Manual. (As previously indicated in this Manual, development within Authority jurisdiction is not subject to hydromodification management requirements, however this sub-section remains as a reference).

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement requirements, contributing tributary area, maximum side and finish grade slopes, and the recommended media surface area tributary ratio.
2. Iteratively determine the facility footprint area, surface ponding and/or aggregate storage layer depth required to provide detention storage to reduce flow rates and durations to allowable limits. Flow rates and durations can be controlled from detention storage by altering outlet structure orifice size(s) and/or water control levels. Multi-level orifices can be used within an outlet structure to control the full range of flows.
3. If bioretention with underdrain cannot fully provide the flow rate and duration control required by this manual, an upstream or downstream structure with significant storage volume such as an underground vault can be used to provide remaining controls.
4. After bioretention with underdrain has been designed to meet flow control requirements, calculations must be completed to verify if storm water pollutant control requirements to treat the DCV have been met.

E.13 BF-2 Nutrient Sensitive Media Design

Some studies of bioretention with underdrains have observed export of nutrients, particularly inorganic nitrogen (nitrate and nitrite) and dissolved phosphorus. This has been observed to be a short-lived phenomenon in some studies or a long term issue in some studies. The composition of the soil media, including the chemistry of individual elements is believed to be an important factor in the potential for nutrient export. Organic amendments, often compost, have been identified as the most likely source of nutrient export. The quality and stability of organic amendments can vary widely.

The biofiltration media specifications contained in the County of San Diego Low Impact Development Handbook: Appendix G -Bioretention Soil Specification (June 2014, unless superseded by more recent edition) and the City of San Diego Low Impact Development Design Manual (page B-18) (July 2011, unless superseded by more recent edition) were developed with consideration of the potential for nutrient export. These specifications include criteria for individual component characteristics and quality in order to control the overall quality of the blended mixes. As of the publication of this manual, the June 2014 County of San Diego specifications provide more detail regarding mix design and quality control.

The City and County specifications noted above were developed for general purposes to meet permeability and treatment goals. In cases where the BMP discharges to receiving waters with nutrient impairments or nutrient TMDLs, the biofiltration media should be designed with the specific goal of minimizing the potential for export of nutrients from the media. Therefore, in addition to adhering to the City or County media specifications, the following guidelines should be followed:

1. Select plant palette to minimize plant nutrient needs

A landscape architect or agronomist should be consulted to select a plant palette that minimizes nutrient needs. Utilizing plants with low nutrient needs results in less need to enrich the biofiltration soil mix. If nutrient quantity is then tailored to plants with lower nutrient needs, these plants will generally have less competition from weeds, which typically need higher nutrient content. The following practices are recommended to minimize nutrient needs of the plant palette:

- **Utilize native, drought-tolerant plants and grasses where possible.** Native plants generally have a broader tolerance for nutrient content, and can be longer lived in leaner/lower nutrient soils.

- **Start plants from smaller starts or seed.** Younger plants are generally more tolerant of lower nutrient levels and tend to help develop soil structure as they grow. Given the lower cost of smaller plants, the project should be able to accept a plant mortality rate that is somewhat higher than starting from larger plants and providing high organic content.

2. Minimize excess nutrients in media mix

Once the low-nutrient plant palette is established (item 1), the landscape architect and/or agronomist should be consulted to assist in the design of a biofiltration media to balance the interests of plant establishment, water retention capacity (irrigation demand), and the potential for nutrient export. The following guidelines should be followed:

- **The mix should not exceed the nutrient needs of plants.** In conventional landscape design, the nutrient needs of plants are often exceeded intentionally in order to provide a factor of safety for plant survival. This practice must be avoided in biofiltration media as excess nutrients will increase the chance of export. The mix designer should keep in mind that nutrients can be added later (through mulching, tilling of amendments into the surface), but it is not possible to remove nutrients, once added.

- **The actual nutrient content and organic content of the selected organic amendment source should be determined when specifying mix proportions.** Nutrient content (i.e., C:N ratio; plant extractable nutrients) and organic content (i.e, % organic material) are relatively inexpensive to measure via standard agronomic methods and can provide important information about mix design. If mix design relies on approximate assumption about nutrient/organic content and this is not confirmed with testing (or the results of prior representative testing), it is possible that the mix could contain much more nutrient than intended.

- **Nutrients are better retained in soils with higher cation exchange capacity.** Cation exchange capacity can be increased through selection of organic material with naturally high cation exchange capacity, such as peat or coconut coir pith, and/or selection of inorganic material with high cation exchange capacity such as some sands or engineered minerals (e.g., low P-index sands, zeolites, rhyolites, etc). Including higher cation exchange capacity materials would tend to reduce the net export of nutrients. Natural silty materials also provide cation exchange capacity; however potential impacts to permeability need to be considered.

- **Focus on soil structure as well as nutrient content.** Soil structure is loosely defined as the ability of the soil to conduct and store water and nutrients as well as the degree of aeration of the soil. Soil structure can be more important than nutrient content in plant survival and biologic health of the system. If a good soil structure can be created with very low amounts of organic amendment, plants survivability should still be provided. While soil structure generally develops with time, biofiltration media can be designed to promote earlier development of soil structure. Soil structure is enhanced by the use of amendments with high humus content (as found in well-aged organic material). In addition, soil structure can be enhanced through the use of organic material with a distribution of particle sizes (i.e., a more heterogeneous mix).

- **Consider alternatives to compost.** Compost, by nature, is a material that is continually evolving and decaying. It can be challenging to determine whether tests previously done on a given compost stock are still representative. It can also be challenging to determine how the properties of the compost will change once placed in the media bed. More stable materials such as aged coco coir pith, peat, biochar, shredded bark, and/or other amendments should be considered.

With these considerations, it is anticipated that less than 10 percent organic amendment by volume could be used, while still balancing plant survivability and water retention. If compost is used, designers should strongly consider utilizing less than 10 percent by volume.

3. Design with partial retention and/or internal water storage

An internal water storage zone, as described in Fact Sheet PR-1 is believed to improve retention of nutrients. For lined systems, an internal water storage zone worked by providing a zone that fluctuates between aerobic and anaerobic conditions, resulting in nitrification/denitrification. In soils that will allow infiltration, a partial retention design (PR-1) allows significant volume reduction and can also promote nitrification/denitrification.

Acknowledgment: This fact sheet has been adapted from the Orange County Technical Guidance Document (May 2011). It was originally developed based on input from: Deborah Deets, City of Los Angeles Bureau of Sanitation, Drew Ready, Center for Watershed Health, Rick Fisher, ASLA, City of Los Angeles Bureau of Engineering, Dr. Garn Wallace, Wallace Laboratories, Glen Dake, GDML, and Jason Schmidt, Tree People. The guidance provided herein does not reflect the individual opinions of any individual listed above and should not be cited or otherwise attributed to those listed.

E.14 BF-3 Proprietary Biofiltration Systems

The purpose of this fact sheet is to help explain the potential role of proprietary BMPs in meeting biofiltration requirements, when full retention of the DCV is not feasible. The fact sheet does not describe design criteria like the other fact sheets in this appendix because this information varies by BMP product model.

Criteria for Use of a Proprietary BMP as a Biofiltration BMP

A proprietary BMP may be acceptable as a "biofiltration BMP" under the following conditions:

(1) The BMP meets the minimum design criteria listed in Appendix F, including the pollutant treatment performance standard in Appendix F.1;

(2) The BMP is designed and maintained in a manner consistent with its performance certifications (See explanation in Appendix F.2); <u>and</u>

(3) The BMP is acceptable at the discretion of the EAD. In determining the acceptability of a BMP, the EAD should consider, as applicable, (a) the data submitted; (b) representativeness of the data submitted; (c) consistency of the BMP performance claims with pollutant control objectives; certainty of the BMP performance claims; (d) for projects within the public right of way and/or capital projects: maintenance requirements, cost of maintenance activities, relevant previous local experience with operation and maintenance of the BMP type, ability to continue to operate the system in event that the vending company is no longer operating as a business; and (e) other relevant factors. If a proposed BMP is not accepted by the EAD, a written explanation/reason will be provided to the applicant..

Guidance for Sizing a Proprietary BMP as a Biofiltration BMP

Proprietary biofiltration BMPs must meet the same sizing guidance as non-proprietary BMPs. Sizing is typically based on capturing and treating 1.50 times the DCV not reliably retained. Guidance for sizing biofiltration BMPs to comply with requirements of this manual is provided in Appendix F.2.

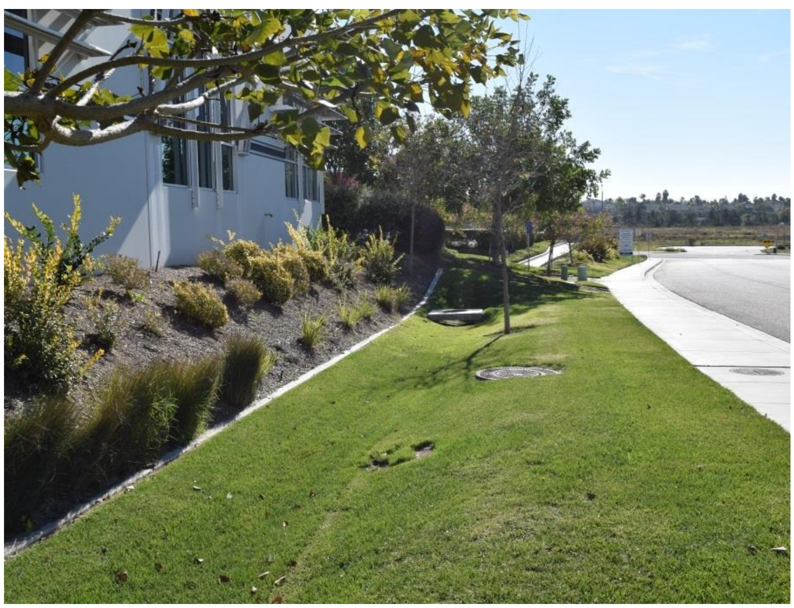
E.15 FT-1 Vegetated Swales

MS4 Permit Category
Flow-through Treatment Control

Manual Category
Flow-through Treatment Control

Applicable Performance Standard
Pollutant Control

Primary Benefits
Treatment Volume Reduction (Incidental) Peak Flow Attenuation



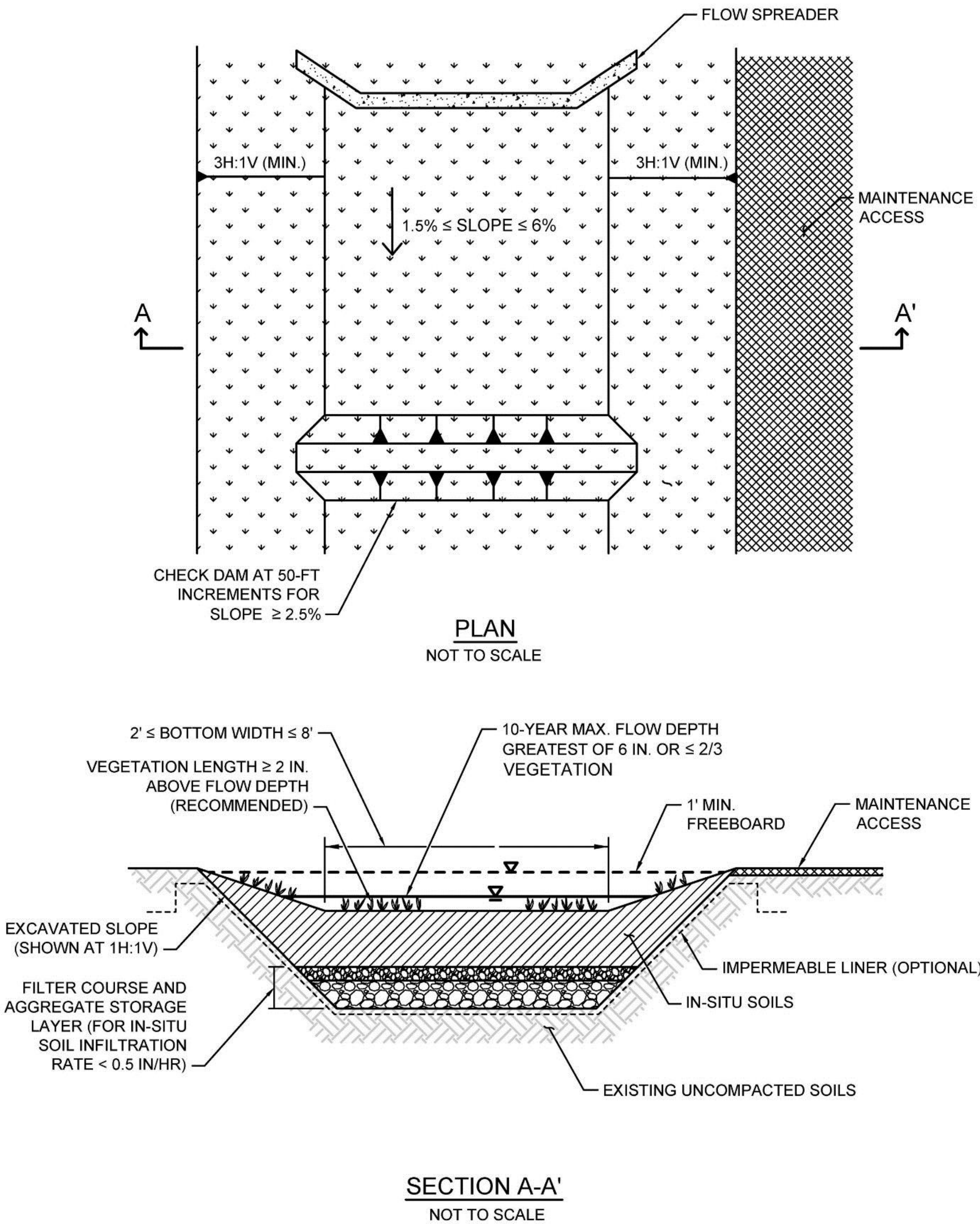
Location: Eastlake Business Center, Chula Vista, California; Photo Credit: Eric Mosolgo

Description

Vegetated swales are shallow, open channels that are designed to remove storm water pollutants by physically straining/filtering runoff through vegetation in the channel. Swales can be used in place of traditional curbs and gutters and are well-suited for use in linear transportation corridors to provide both conveyance and treatment via filtration. An effectively designed vegetated swale achieves uniform sheet flow through densely vegetated areas. When soil conditions allow, infiltration and volume reduction are enhanced by adding a gravel drainage layer underneath the swale. Vegetated swales with a subsurface media layer can provide enhanced infiltration, water retention, and pollutant-removal capabilities. Pollutant removal effectiveness can also be maximized by increasing the hydraulic residence time of water in swale using weirs or check dams.

Typical vegetated swale components include:

- Inflow distribution mechanisms (e.g., flow spreader)
- Surface flow
- Vegetated surface layer
- Check dams (if required)
- Optional aggregate storage layer with underdrain(s)



Typical plan and Section view of a Vegetated Swale BMP

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Site design BMP to reduce runoff volumes and storm peaks. Swales without underdrains are an alternative to lined channels and pipes and can provide volume reduction through infiltration. Swales can also reduce the peak runoff discharge rate by increasing the time of concentration of the site and decreasing runoff volumes and velocities.

Flow-through treatment BMP for storm water pollutant control. The system is lined or un-lined to provide incidental infiltration with an underdrain and designed to provide pollutant removal through settling and filtration in the channel vegetation (usually grasses). This configuration is considered to provide flow-through treatment via horizontal surface flow through the swale. Sizing for flow-through treatment control is based on the surface flow rate through the swale that meets water quality treatment performance objectives.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Vegetated swales must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the FDD and EAD if it is determined to be appropriate:

Siting and Design		*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Placement observes geotechnical recommendations regarding potential hazards (e.g., slope stability, landslides, and liquefaction zones) and setbacks (e.g., slopes, foundations, utilities).	Must not negatively impact existing site geotechnical concerns.
☐	An impermeable liner or other hydraulic restriction layer is included if site constraints indicate that infiltration or lateral flows should not be allowed.	Lining prevents storm water from impacting groundwater and/or sensitive environmental or geotechnical features. Incidental infiltration, when allowable, can aid in pollutant removal and groundwater recharge.
☐	Contributing tributary area ≤ 2 acres.	Higher ratios increase the potential for clogging but may be acceptable for relatively clean tributary areas.
☐	Longitudinal slope is ≥ 1.5% and ≤ 6%.	Flatter swales facilitate increased water quality treatment while minimum slopes prevent ponding.
☐	For site design goal, in-situ soil infiltration rate ≥ 0.5 in/hr (if < 0.5 in/hr, an underdrain is required and design goal is for pollutant control only).	Well-drained soils provide volume reduction and treatment. An underdrain should only be provided when soil infiltration rates are low or per geotechnical or groundwater concerns.

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
Surface Flow		
☐	Maximum flow depth is ≤ 6 inches or ≤ $^2/_3$ the vegetation length, whichever is greater. Ideally, flow depth will be ≥ 2 inches below shortest plant species.	Flow depth must fall within the height range of the vegetation for effective water quality treatment via filtering.
	A minimum of 1 foot of freeboard is provided.	Freeboard minimizes risk of uncontrolled surface discharge.
☐	Cross sectional shape is trapezoidal or parabolic with side slopes ≥ 3H:1V.	Gentler side slopes are safer, less prone to erosion, able to establish vegetation more quickly and easier to maintain.
☐	Bottom width is ≥ 2 feet and ≤ 8 feet.	A minimum of 2 feet minimizes erosion. A maximum of 8 feet prevents channel braiding.
☐	Minimum hydraulic residence time ≥ 10 minutes.	Longer hydraulic residence time increases pollutant removal.
☐	Swale is designed to safely convey the 10-yr storm event unless a flow splitter is included to allow only the water quality event.	Planning for larger storm events lessens the risk of property damage due to flooding.
☐	Flow velocity is ≤ 1 ft/s for water quality event. Flow velocity for 10-yr storm event is ≤ 3 ft/s.	Lower flow velocities provide increased pollutant removal via filtration and minimize erosion.
Vegetated Surface Layer (amendment with media is Optional)		
☐	Soil is amended with 2 inches of media mixed into the top 6 inches of in-situ soils, as needed, to promote plant growth (optional). For enhanced pollutant control, 2 feet of media can be used in place of in-situ soils. Media meets either of these two media specifications: City of San Diego Storm Water Standards Appendix F, February 2016); Or County of San Diego Low Impact Development Handbook, June 2014: Appendix G -Bioretention Soil Specification.	Amended soils aid in plant establishment and growth. Media replacement for in-situ soils can improve water quality treatment and site design volume reduction.

	Siting and Design	***Intent/Rationale***
☐	Vegetation is appropriately selected low-growing, erosion-resistant plant species that effectively bind the soil, thrive under site-specific climatic conditions and require little or no irrigation.	Plants suited to the climate and expected flow conditions are more likely to survive.
Check Dams		
☐	Check dams are provided at 50-foot increments for slopes ≥ 2.5%.	Check dams prevent erosion and increase the hydraulic residence time by lowering flow velocities and providing ponding opportunities.
Filter Course Layer (For Underdrain Design)		
☐	A filter course is used to prevent migration of fines through layers of the facility. Filter fabric is not used.	Migration of media can cause clogging of the aggregate storage layer void spaces or subgrade. Filter fabric is more likely to clog.
☐	Filter course is washed and free of fines.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog the facility and impede infiltration.
☐	Filter course calculations assessing suitability for particle migration prevention have been completed.	Gradation relationship between layers can evaluate factors (e.g., bridging, permeability, and uniformity) to determine if particle sizing is appropriate or if an intermediate layer is needed.
Aggregate Storage Layer (For Underdrain Design)		
☐	The depth of aggregate provided (12-inch typical) and storage layer configuration is adequate for providing conveyance for underdrain flows to the outlet structure.	Proper storage layer configuration and underdrain placement will minimize facility drawdown time.
☐	Aggregate used for the aggregate storage layer is washed and free of fines.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog aggregate storage layer void spaces or underdrain.
Inflow and Underdrain Structures		
☐	Inflow and underdrains are accessible for inspection and maintenance.	Maintenance will prevent clogging and ensure proper operation of the flow control structures.

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Underdrain outlet elevation should be a minimum of 3 inches above the bottom elevation of the aggregate storage layer.	A minimal separation from subgrade or the liner lessens the risk of fines entering the underdrain and can improve hydraulic performance by allowing perforations to remain unblocked.
☐	Minimum underdrain diameter is 6 inches.	Smaller diameter underdrains are prone to clogging.
☐	Underdrains are made of slotted, PVC pipe conforming to ASTM D 3034 or equivalent or corrugated, HDPE pipe conforming to AASHTO 252M or equivalent.	Slotted underdrains provide greater intake capacity, clog resistant drainage, and reduced entrance velocity into the pipe, thereby reducing the chances of solids migration.
☐	An underdrain cleanout with a minimum 6-inch diameter and lockable cap is placed every 250 to 300 feet as required based on underdrain length.	Properly spaced cleanouts will facilitate underdrain maintenance.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Site Design

1. Determine the areas where vegetated swales can be used in the site design to replace traditional curb and gutter facilities and provide volume reduction through infiltration.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Storm Water Pollutant Control Only

To design vegetated swales for storm water pollutant control only, the following steps should be taken:

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including bottom width and longitudinal and side slope requirements.
2. Calculate the design flow rate per Appendix B based on expected site design runoff for tributary areas.
3. Use the sizing worksheet to determine flow-through treatment sizing of the vegetated swale and if flow velocity, flow depth, and hydraulic residence time meet required criteria. Swale configuration should be adjusted as necessary to meet design requirements.

E.16 FT-2 Media Filters

MS4 Permit Category
Flow-through Treatment Control

Manual Category
Flow-through Treatment Control

Applicable Performance Standard
Pollutant Control Flow Control

Primary Benefits
Treatment Peak Flow Attenuation (Optional)

Photo Credit: Contech Stormwater Solutions

Description

Media filters are manufactured devices that consist of a series of modular filters packed with engineered media that can be contained in a catch basin, manhole, or vault that provide treatment through filtration and sedimentation. The manhole or vault may be divided into multiple chambers where the first chamber acts as a presettling basin for removal of coarse sediment while the next chamber acts as the filter bay and houses the filter cartridges. A variety of media types are available from various manufacturers that can target pollutants of concern via primarily filtration, sorption, ion exchange, and precipitation. **Specific products must be selected to meet the flow-through BMP selection requirements described in Appendix B.6**. Treatment effectiveness is contingent upon proper maintenance of filter units.

Typical media filter components include:

- Vault for flow storage and media housing
- Inlet and outlet
- Media filters

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Flow-through treatment BMP for storm water pollutant control. Water quality treatment is provided through filtration. This configuration is considered to provide flow-through treatment, not biofiltration treatment. Storage provided within the vault restricted by an outlet is considered detention storage and is included in calculations for the flow-through treatment volume.

Integrated storm water flow control and pollutant control configuration. Media filters can also be designed for flow rate and duration control via additional detention storage. The vault storage can be designed to accommodate higher volumes than the storm water pollutant control volume and can utilize multi-stage outlets to mitigate both the duration and rate of flows within a prescribed range.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Media filters must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the FDD and EAD if it is determined to be appropriate:

Siting and Design		***Intent/Rationale***
☐	Placement observes geotechnical recommendations regarding potential hazards (e.g., slope stability, landslides, and liquefaction zones) and setbacks (e.g., slopes, foundations, utilities).	Must not negatively impact existing site geotechnical concerns.
☐	Recommended for tributary areas with limited available surface area or where surface BMPs would restrict uses.	Maintenance needs may be more labor intensive for media filters than surface BMPs. Lack of surface visibility creates additional risk that maintenance needs may not be completed in a timely manner.
☐	Vault storage drawdown time ≤96 hours.	Provides vector control.
☐	Vault storage drawdown time ≤36 hours if the vault is used for equalization of flows for pollutant treatment.	Provides required capacity to treat back to back storms. Exception to the 36 hour drawdown criteria is allowed if additional vault storage is provided using the curves in Appendix B.4.2.
Inflow and Outflow Structures		
☐	Inflow and outflow structures are accessible by required equipment (e.g., vactor truck) for inspection and maintenance.	Maintenance will prevent clogging and ensure proper operation of the flow control structures.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Storm Water Pollutant Control Only

To design a media filter for storm water pollutant control only (no flow control required), the following steps should be taken

1. Verify that the selected BMP complies with BMP selection requirements in Appendix B.6.
2. Verify that placement and tributary area requirements have been met.
3. Calculate the required DCV and/or flow rate per Appendix B.6.3 based on expected site design runoff for tributary areas.
4. Media filter can be designed either for DCV or flow rate. To estimate the drawdown time, divide the vault storage by the treatment rate of media filters.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach when Storm Water Flow Control is Applicable

If control of flow rates and/or durations is desired on an Authority project, significant vault storage volume will typically be required, and therefore the following steps should be taken prior to determination of storm water pollutant control design. Pre-development and post-project flow rates and durations should be determined as discussed in Chapter 6 of the Copermittees' original Model BMP Design Manual. (As previously indicated in this Manual, development within Authority jurisdiction is not subject to hydromodification management requirements, however this sub-section remains as a reference).

1. Verify that placement and tributary area requirements have been met.
2. Iteratively determine the vault storage volume required to provide detention storage to reduce flow rates and durations to allowable limits. Flow rates and durations can be controlled from detention storage by altering outlet structure orifice size(s) and/or water control levels. Multi-level orifices can be used within an outlet structure to control the full range of flows to MS4.
3. If a media filter cannot fully provide the flow rate and duration control required by this manual, an upstream or downstream structure with appropriate storage volume such as an underground vault can be used to provide remaining controls.
4. After the media filter has been designed to meet flow control requirements, calculations must be completed to verify if storm water pollutant control requirements to treat the DCV have been met.
5. Verify that the vault drawdown time is 96 hours or less. To estimate the drawdown time:
    a. Divide the vault volume by the filter surface area.
    b. Divide the result (a) by the design filter rate.

E.17 FT-3 Sand Filters

MS4 Permit Category
Flow-through Treatment Control

Manual Category
Flow-through Treatment Control

Applicable Performance Standard
Pollutant Control
Flow Control

Primary Benefits
Treatment
Volume Reduction (Incidental)
Peak Flow Attenuation (Optional)

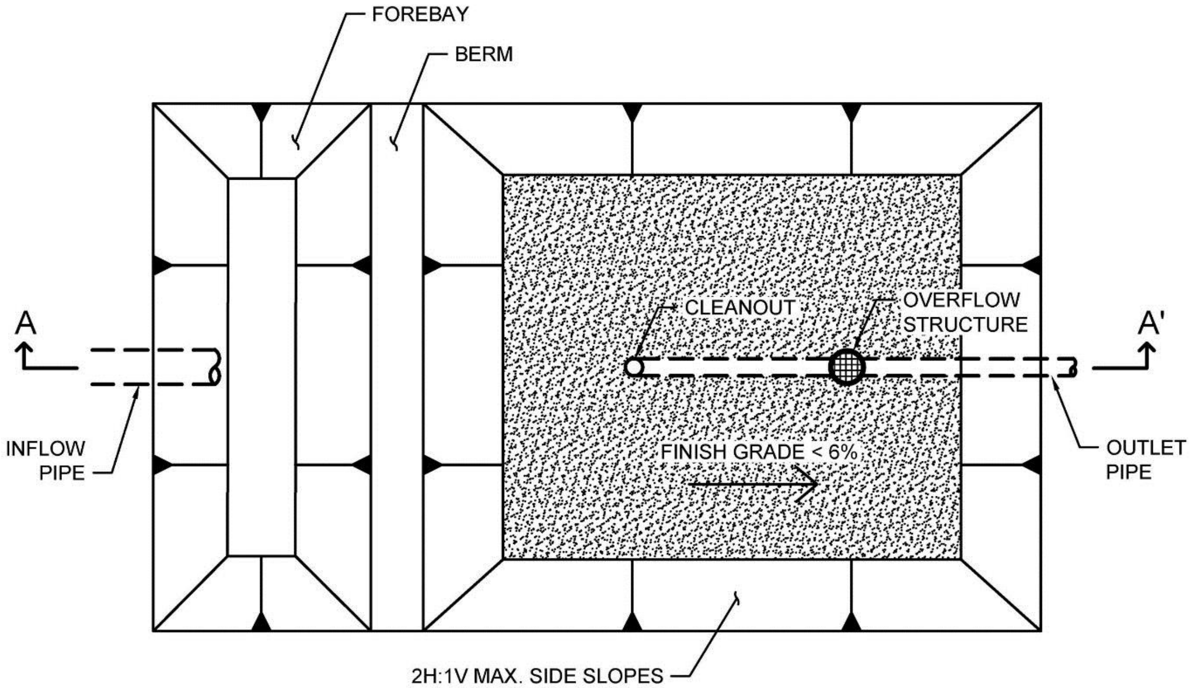
Photo Credit: City of San Diego LID Manual

Description

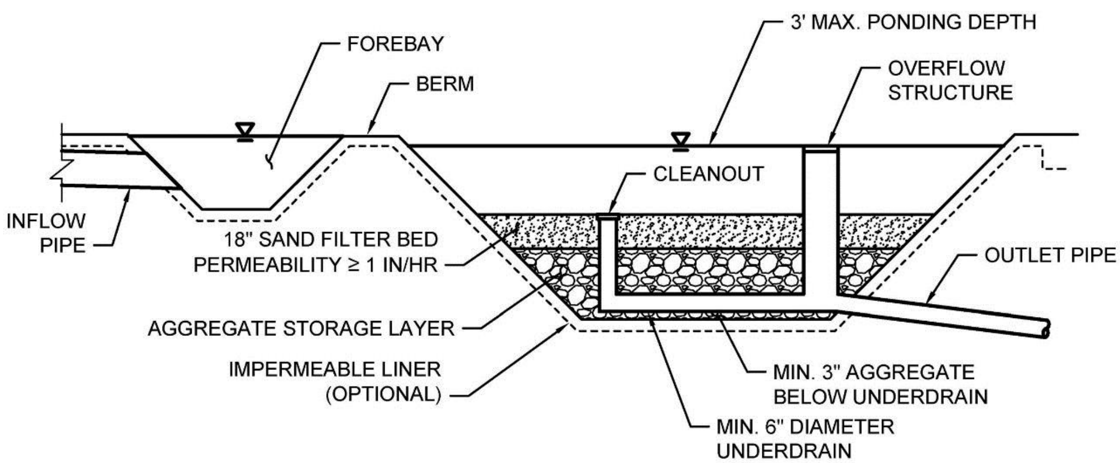
Sand filters operate by filtering storm water through a constructed sand bed with an underdrain system. Runoff enters the filter and spreads over the surface. Sand filter beds can be enclosed within concrete structures or within earthen containment. As flows increase, water backs up on the surface of the filter where it is held until it can percolate through the sand. The treatment pathway is downward (vertical) through the media to an underdrain system that is connected to the downstream storm drain system. As storm water passes through the sand, pollutants are trapped on the surface of the filter, in the small pore spaces between sand grains or are adsorbed to the sand surface. The high filtration rates of sand filters, which allow a large runoff volume to pass through the media in a short amount of time, can provide efficient treatment for storm water runoff.

Typical sand filter components include:

- Forebay for pretreatment/energy dissipation
- Surface ponding for captured flows
- Sand filter bed
- Aggregate storage layer with underdrain(s)
- Overflow structure



PLAN
NOT TO SCALE



SECTION A-A'
NOT TO SCALE

Typical plan and Section view of a Sand Filter BMP

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Flow-through treatment BMP for storm water pollutant control. The system is lined or un-lined to provide incidental infiltration, and an underdrain is provided at the bottom to carry away filtered runoff. This configuration is considered to provide flow-through treatment via vertical flow through the sand filter bed. Storage provided above the underdrain within surface ponding, the sand filter bed, and aggregate storage is considered included in the flow-through treatment volume. Saturated storage within the aggregate storage layer can be added to this design by including an upturned elbow installed at the downstream end of the underdrain or via an internal weir structure designed to maintain a specific water level elevation.

Integrated storm water flow control and pollutant control configuration. The system can be designed to provide flow rate and duration control by primarily providing increased surface ponding and/or having a deeper aggregate storage layer above the underdrain. This will allow for significant detention storage, which can be controlled via inclusion of an outlet structure at the downstream end of the underdrain.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Sand filters must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the FDD and EAD if it is determined to be appropriate:

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Placement observes geotechnical recommendations regarding potential hazards (e.g., slope stability, landslides, and liquefaction zones) and setbacks (e.g., slopes, foundations, utilities).	Must not negatively impact existing site geotechnical concerns.
☐	An impermeable liner or other hydraulic restriction layer is included if site constraints indicate that infiltration or lateral flows should not be allowed.	Lining prevents storm water from impacting groundwater and/or sensitive environmental or geotechnical features. Incidental infiltration, when allowable, can aid in pollutant removal and groundwater recharge.
☐	Contributing tributary area (≤ 5 acres).	Bigger BMPs require additional design features for proper performance. Contributing tributary area greater than 5 acres may be allowed at the discretion of the FDD and EAD if the following conditions are met: 1) incorporate design features (e.g. flow spreaders) to minimizing short circuiting of flows in the BMP and 2) incorporate additional design features requested by the

Siting and Design		*Intent/Rationale*
		FDD for proper performance of the regional BMP.
☐	Finish grade of facility is < 6%.	Flatter surfaces reduce erosion and channelization within the facility.
☐	Earthen side slopes are ≥ 3H:1V.	Gentler side slopes are safer, less prone to erosion, able to establish vegetation more quickly and easier to maintain.
☐	Surface ponding is limited to a 36-hour drawdown time.	Provides required capacity to treat back to back storms. Exception to the 36 hour drawdown criteria is allowed if additional surface storage is provided using the curves in Appendix B.4.2.
☐	Surface ponding is limited to a 96-hour drawdown time.	Prolonged surface ponding can create a vector hazard.
☐	Maximum ponding depth does not exceed 3 feet.	Surface ponding capacity lowers subsurface storage requirements and results in lower cost facilities. Deep surface ponding raises safety concerns.
☐	Sand filter bed consists of clean washed concrete or masonry sand (passing ¼ inch sieve) or sand similar to the ASTM C33 gradation.	Washing sand will help eliminate fines that could clog the void spaces of the aggregate storage layer.
☐	Sand filter bed permeability is at least 1 in/hr.	A high filtration rate through the media allows flows to quickly enter the aggregate storage layer, thereby minimizing bypass.
☐	Sand filter bed depth is at least 18 inches deep.	Different pollutants are removed in various zones of the media using several mechanisms. Some pollutants bound to sediment, such as metals, are typically removed within 18 inches of the media.
☐	Aggregate storage should be washed, bank-run gravel.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog the aggregate storage layer void spaces or subgrade.
☐	The depth of aggregate provided (12-inch typical) and storage layer configuration is adequate for providing conveyance for underdrain flows to the outlet structure.	Proper storage layer configuration and underdrain placement will minimize facility drawdown time.

	Siting and Design	Intent/Rationale
☐	Inflow, underdrains and outflow structures are accessible for inspection and maintenance.	Maintenance will prevent clogging and ensure proper operation of the flow control structures.
☐	Inflow must be non-erosive sheet flow (≤ 3 ft/s) unless an energy-dissipation device, flow diversion/splitter or forebay is installed.	Concentrated flow and/or excessive volumes can cause erosion in a sand filter and can be detrimental to the treatment capacity of the system.
☐	Underdrain outlet elevation should be a minimum of 3 inches above the bottom elevation of the aggregate storage layer.	A minimal separation from subgrade or the liner lessens the risk of fines entering the underdrain and can improve hydraulic performance by allowing perforations to remain unblocked.
☐	Minimum underdrain diameter is 6 inches.	Smaller diameter underdrains are prone to clogging.
☐	Underdrains should be made of slotted, PVC pipe conforming to ASTM D 3034 or equivalent or corrugated, HDPE pipe conforming to AASHTO 252M or equivalent.	Slotted underdrains provide greater intake capacity, clog resistant drainage, and reduced entrance velocity into the pipe, thereby reducing the chances of solids migration.
☐	Overflow is safely conveyed to a downstream storm drain system or discharge point.	Planning for overflow lessens the risk of property damage due to flooding.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Storm Water Pollutant Control Only

To design a sand filter for storm water pollutant control only (no flow control required), the following steps should be taken:

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement requirements, contributing tributary area, and maximum finish grade slope.
2. Calculate the required DCV and/or flow rate per Appendix B.6.3 based on expected site design runoff for tributary areas.
3. Sand filter can be designed either for DCV or flow rate. To estimate the drawdown time, divide the average ponding depth by the permeability of the filter sand.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach when Storm Water Flow Control is Applicable

If control of flow rates and/or durations is desired on an Authority project, significant surface ponding and/or aggregate storage volumes will typically be required, and therefore the following steps should be taken prior to determination of storm water pollutant control design. Pre-development and post-project flow rates and durations should be determined as discussed in Chapter 6 of the Copermittees' original Model BMP Design Manual. (As previously indicated in this Manual, development within Authority jurisdiction is not subject to hydromodification management requirements, however this sub-section remains as a reference).

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement requirements, contributing tributary area, and maximum finish grade slope.
2. Iteratively determine the facility footprint area, surface ponding and/or aggregate storage layer depth required to provide detention storage to reduce flow rates and durations to allowable limits. Flow rates and durations can be controlled from detention storage by altering outlet structure orifice size(s) and/or water control levels. Multi-level orifices can be used within an outlet structure to control the full range of flows.
3. If a sand filter cannot fully provide the flow rate and duration control required by the MS4 permit, an upstream or downstream structure with appropriate storage volume such as an underground vault can be used to provide remaining controls.
4. After the sand filter has been designed to meet flow control requirements, calculations must be completed to verify if storm water pollutant control requirements to treat the DCV have been met.

E.18 FT-4 Dry Extended Detention Basin

MS4 Permit Category
Flow-through Treatment Control

Manual Category
Flow-through Treatment Control

Applicable Performance Standard
Pollutant Control
Flow Control

Primary Benefits
Treatment
Volume Reduction (Incidental)
Peak Flow Attenuation

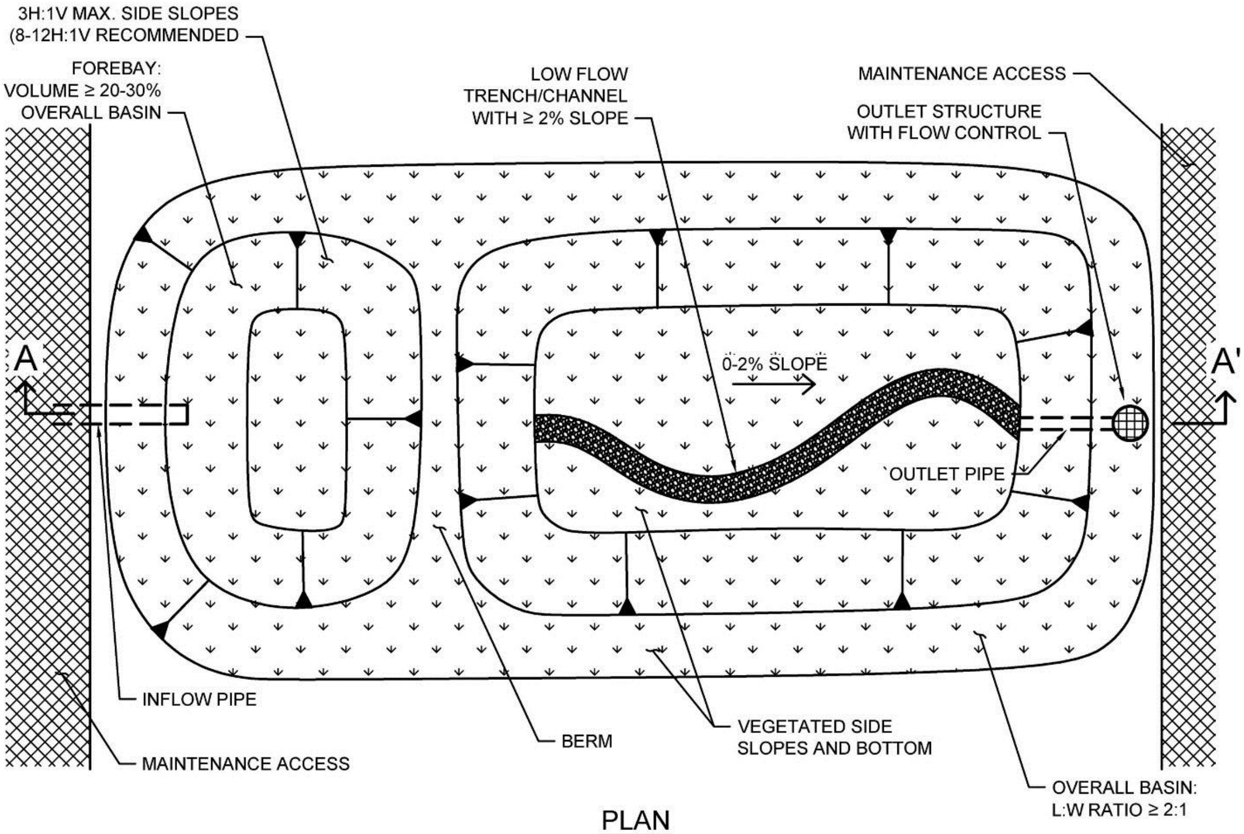
Location: Rolling Hills Ranch, Chula Vista, California; Photo Credit: Eric Mosolgo

Description

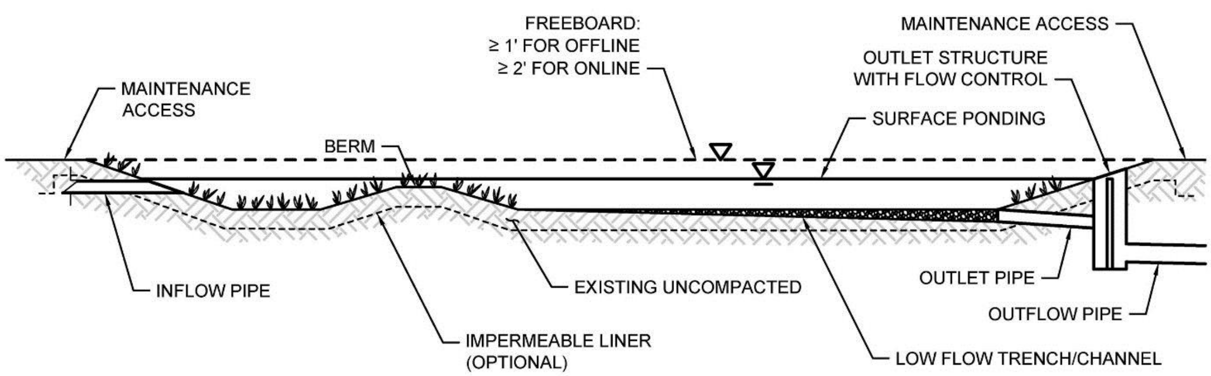
Dry extended detention basins are basins that have been designed to detain storm water for an extended period to allow sedimentation and typically drain completely between storm events. A portion of the dissolved pollutant load may also be removed by filtration, uptake by vegetation, and/or through infiltration. The slopes, bottom, and forebay of dry extended detention basins are typically vegetated. Considerable storm water volume reduction can occur in dry extended detention basins when they are located in permeable soils and are not lined with an impermeable barrier. dry extended detention basins are generally appropriate for developments of ten acres or larger, and have the potential for multiple uses including parks, playing fields, tennis courts, open space, and overflow parking lots. They can also be used to provide flow control by modifying the outlet control structure and providing additional detention storage.

Typical dry extended detention basins components include:

- Forebay for pretreatment
- Surface ponding for captured flows
- Vegetation selected based on basin use, climate, and ponding depth
- Low flow channel, outlet, and overflow device
- Impermeable liner or uncompacted native soils at the bottom of the facility



PLAN
NOT TO SCALE



SECTION A-A'
NOT TO SCALE

Typical plan and Section view of a Dry Extended Detention Basin BMP

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Flow-through treatment BMP for storm water pollutant control. The system is lined or un-lined to provide incidental infiltration and designed to detain storm water to allow particulates and associated pollutants to settle out. This configuration is considered to provide flow-through treatment, not biofiltration treatment. Storage provided as surface ponding above a restricted outlet invert is considered detention storage and is included in calculations for the flow-through treatment volume.

Integrated storm water flow control and pollutant control configuration. Dry extended detention basins can also be designed for flow control. The surface ponding can be designed to accommodate higher volumes than the storm water pollutant control volume and can utilize multi-stage outlets to mitigate both the duration and rate of flows within a prescribed range.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Dry extended detention basins must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the FDD and EAD if it is determined to be appropriate:

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Placement observes geotechnical recommendations regarding potential hazards (e.g., slope stability, landslides, and liquefaction zones) and setbacks (e.g., slopes, foundations, utilities).	Must not negatively impact existing site geotechnical concerns.
☐	An impermeable liner or other hydraulic restriction layer is included if site constraints indicate that infiltration or lateral flows should not be allowed.	Lining prevents storm water from impacting groundwater and/or sensitive environmental or geotechnical features. Incidental infiltration, when allowable, can aid in pollutant removal and groundwater recharge.
☐	Contributing tributary area is large (typically ≥ 10 acres).	Dry extended detention basins require significant space and are more cost-effective for treating larger drainage areas.
☐	Longitudinal basin bottom slope is 0 - 2%.	Flatter slopes promote ponding and settling of particles.
☐	Basin length to width ratio is ≥ 2:1 (L:W).	A larger length to width ratio provides a longer flow path to promote settling.
☐	Forebay is included that encompasses 20 - 30% of the basin volume.	A forebay to trap sediment can decrease frequency of required maintenance.

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Side slopes are ≥ 3H:1V.	Gentler side slopes are safer, less prone to erosion, able to establish vegetation more quickly and easier to maintain.
☐	Surface ponding drawdown time is between 24 and 96 hours.	Minimum drawdown time of 24 hours allows for adequate settling time and maximizes pollutant removal. Maximum drawdown time of 96 hours provides vector control.
☐	Minimum freeboard provided is ≥1 foot for offline facilities and ≥2 feet for online facilities.	Freeboard provides room for head over overflow structures and minimizes risk of uncontrolled surface discharge.
☐	Inflow and outflow structures are accessible by required equipment (e.g., vactor truck) for inspection and maintenance.	Maintenance will prevent clogging and ensure proper operation of the flow control structures.
☐	A low flow channel or trench with a ≥ 2% slope is provided. A gravel infiltration trench is provided where infiltration is allowable.	Aids in draining or infiltrating dry weather flows.
☐	Overflow is safely conveyed to a downstream storm drain system or discharge point. Size overflow structure to pass 100-year peak flow.	Planning for overflow lessens the risk of property damage due to flooding.
☐	The maximum rate at which runoff is discharged is set below the erosive threshold for the site.	Extended low flows can have erosive effects.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Storm Water Pollutant Control Only

To design dry extended detention basins for storm water pollutant control only (no flow control required), the following steps should be taken:

1. Verify that siting and criteria have been met, including placement requirements, contributing tributary area, forebay volume, and maximum slopes for basin sides and bottom.
2. Calculate the DCV per Appendix B based on expected site design runoff for tributary areas.
3. Use the sizing worksheet to determine flow-through treatment sizing of the surface ponding of the dry extended detention basin, which includes calculations for a maximum 96-hour drawdown time.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach when Storm Water Flow Control is Applicable

If control of flow rates and/or durations is desired on an Authority project, significant surface ponding volume will typically be required, and therefore the following steps should be taken prior to determination of storm water pollutant control design. Pre-development and post-project flow rates and durations should be determined as discussed in Chapter 6 of the Copermittees' original Model BMP Design Manual. (As previously indicated in this Manual, development within Authority jurisdiction is not subject to hydromodification management requirements, however this sub-section remains as a reference).

1. Verify that siting and criteria have been met, including placement requirements, tributary area, and maximum slopes for basin sides and bottom.
2. Iteratively determine the surface ponding required to provide detention storage to reduce flow rates and durations to allowable limits. Flow rates and durations can be controlled from detention storage by altering outlet structure orifice size(s) and/or water control levels. Multi-level orifices can be used within an outlet structure to control the full range of flows.
3. If a dry extended detention basin cannot fully provide the flow rate and duration control required by this manual, an upstream or downstream structure with appropriate storage volume such as an additional basin or underground vault can be used to provide remaining controls.
4. After the dry extended detention basin has been designed to meet flow control requirements, calculations must be completed to verify if storm water pollutant control requirements to treat the DCV have been met.

E.19 FT-5 Proprietary Flow-Through Treatment Control BMPs

The purpose of this fact sheet is to help explain the potential role of proprietary BMPs in meeting flow thru treatment control BMP requirements. The fact sheet does not describe design criteria like the other fact sheets in this appendix because this information varies by BMP product model.

Criteria for Use of a Proprietary BMP as a Flow-Through Treatment Control BMP

A proprietary BMP may be acceptable as a "flow-through treatment control BMP" under the following conditions:

(1) The BMP is selected and sized consistent with the method and criteria described in Appendix B.6;

(2) The BMP is designed and maintained in a manner consistent with its performance certifications (See explanation in Appendix B.6); and

(3) The BMP is acceptable at the discretion of the EAD. In determining the acceptability of a BMP, the EAD should consider, as applicable, (a) the data submitted; (b) representativeness of the data submitted; (c) consistency of the BMP performance claims with pollutant control objectives; certainty of the BMP performance claims; (d) for projects within the public right of way and/or capital projects: maintenance requirements, cost of maintenance activities, relevant previous local experience with operation and maintenance of the BMP type, ability to continue to operate the system in event that the vending company is no longer operating as a business; and (e) other relevant factors. If a proposed BMP is not accepted by the EAD, a written explanation/reason will be provided to the applicant..

Guidance for Sizing Proprietary BMPs

Proprietary flow-through BMPs must meet the same sizing guidance as other flow-through treatment control BMPs. Guidance for sizing flow-through BMPs to comply with requirements of this manual is provided in Appendix B.6.

This page intentionally left blank

E.20 PL Plant List

Plant Name		Irrigation Requirements		Preferred Location in Basin		Applicable Bioretention Sections (Un-Lined Facilities)				Applicability to Flow-Through Planter? (Lined Facility)	
Latin Name	Common Name	Temporary Irrigation during Plant Establishment Period	Permanent Irrigation (Drip / Spray)[1]	Basin Bottom	Basin Side Slopes	Section A Treatment-Only Bioretention in Hydrologic Soil Group A or B Soils	Section B Treatment-Only Bioretention in Hydrologic Soil Group C or D soils	Section C Treatment Plus Flow Control Bioretention in Hydrologic Soil Group A or B Soils	Section D Treatment Plus Flow Control Bioretention in Hydrologic Soil Group C or D Soils	**NO** Applicable to Un-lined Facilities Only (Bioretention Only)	**YES** Can Use in Lined or Un-Lined Facility (Flow-Through Planter OR Bioretention)
TREES[2]											
Alnus rhombifolia	White Alder	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Platanus racemosa	California Sycamore	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Salix lasiolepis	Arroyo Willow	X			X	X	X	X	X	X	
Salix lucida	Lance-Leaf Willow	X			X	X	X	X	X	X	
Sambucus mexicana	Blue Elderberry	X			X	X	X	X	X	X	
SHRUBS / GROUNDCOVER											
Achillea millefolium	Yarrow	X			X	X	X				X
Agrostis palens	Thingrass	X			X	X	X	X	X		X
Anemopsis californica	Yerba Manza	X			X	X	X	X	X		X
Baccharis douglasii	Marsh Baccahris	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		X
Carex praegracillis	California Field Sedge	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		X
Carex spissa	San Diego Sedge	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		X
Carex subfusca	Rusty Sedge	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Distichlis spicata	Salt Grass	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		X
Eleocharis macrostachya	Pale Spike Rush	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		X
Festuca rubra	Red Fescue	X	X	X	X	X	X				X
Festuca californica	California Fescue	X	X		X	X	X				X
Iva hayesiana	Hayes Iva	X			X	X	X				X
Juncus Mexicana	Mexican Rush	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Jucus patens	California Gray Rush	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Leymus condensatus 'Canyon Prince'	Canyon Prince Wild Rye	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Mahonia nevinii	Nevin's Barberry	X			X	X	X	X	X		X
Muhlenburgia rigens	Deergrass	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Mimulus cardinalis	Scarlet Monkeyflower	X		X	X	X	X				X
Ribes speciosum	Fushia Flowering Goose.	X			X	X	X				X
Rosa californica	California Wild Rose	X	X		X	X	X				X
Scirpus cenuus	Low Bullrush	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		X
Sisyrinchium bellum	Blue-eyed Grass	X			X	X	X				X

1. All plants will benefit from some supplemental irrigation during hot dry summer months, particularly those on basin side slopes and further inland.
2. All trees should be planted a min. of 10' away from any drain pipes or structures.

This page intentionally left blank

Appendix

F

AUTHORITY BMP DESIGN MANUAL

Biofiltration Standard and Checklist

Appendix F Biofiltration Standard and Checklist

Introduction

The MS4 Permit and this manual define a specific category of storm water pollutant treatment BMPs called "biofiltration BMPs." The MS4 Permit (Section E.3.c.1) states:

Biofiltration BMPs must be designed to have an appropriate hydraulic loading rate to maximize storm water retention and pollutant removal, as well as to prevent erosion, scour, and channeling within the BMP, and must be sized to:

a) **Treat 1.5 times the DCV not reliably retained onsite, OR**

b) **Treat the DCV not reliably retained onsite with a flow-through design that has a total volume, including pore spaces and pre-filter detention volume, sized to hold at least 0.75 times the portion of the DCV not reliably retained onsite.**

A project applicant must be able to affirmatively demonstrate that a given BMP is designed and sized in a manner consistent with this definition to be considered as a "biofiltration BMP" as part of a compliant storm water management plan. Retention is defined in the MS4 Permit as evapotranspiration, infiltration, and harvest and use of storm water vs. discharge to a surface water system.

Contents and Intended Uses

This appendix contains a checklist of the key underlying criteria that must be met for a BMP to be considered a biofiltration BMP. The purpose of this checklist is to facilitate consistent review and approval of biofiltration BMPs that meet the "biofiltration standard" defined by the MS4 Permit.

This checklist includes specific design criteria that are essential to defining a system as a biofiltration BMP; however it does not present a complete design basis. This checklist was used to develop BMP Fact Sheets for PR-1 biofiltration with partial retention and BF-1 biofiltration, which do present a complete design basis. Therefore, biofiltration BMPs that substantially meet all aspects of the Fact sheets PR-1 or BF-1 should be able to complete this checklist without additional documentation beyond what would already be required for a project submittal.

Other biofiltration BMP designs[1] (including both non-proprietary and proprietary designs) may also meet the underlying MS4 Permit requirements to be considered biofiltration BMPs. These BMPs may be classified as biofiltration BMPs if they (1) meet the minimum design criteria listed in this appendix, including the pollutant treatment performance standard in Appendix F.1, (2) are designed and maintained in a manner consistent with their performance certifications (See explanation in Appendix F.2), if applicable, and (3) are acceptable at the discretion of the EAD. The applicant may be required to provide additional studies and/or required to meet additional design criteria beyond the scope of this document in order to demonstrate that these criteria are met.

Organization

The checklist in this appendix is organized into the seven (7) main objectives associated with biofiltration BMP design. It describes the associated minimum criteria that must be met in order to qualify a biofiltration BMP as meeting the biofiltration standard. The seven main objectives are listed below. Specific design criteria and associated manual references associated with each of these objectives is provided in the checklist in the following section.

1. Biofiltration BMPs shall be allowed only as described in the BMP selection process in this manual (i.e., retention feasibility hierarchy).

2. Biofiltration BMPs must be sized using acceptable sizing methods described in this manual.

3. Biofiltration BMPs must be sited and designed to achieve maximum feasible infiltration and evapotranspiration.

4. Biofiltration BMPs must be designed with a hydraulic loading rate to maximize pollutant retention, preserve pollutant control/sequestration processes, and minimize potential for pollutant washout.

5. Biofiltration BMPs must be designed to promote appropriate biological activity to support and maintain treatment processes.

6. Biofiltration BMPs must be designed to prevent erosion, scour, and channeling within the BMP.

7. Biofiltration BMP must include operations and maintenance design features and planning

[1] Defined as biofiltration designs that do not conform to the specific design criteria described in Fact Sheets PR-1 or BF-1. This category includes proprietary BMPs that are sold by a vendor as well as non-proprietary BMPs that are designed and constructed of primarily of more elementary construction materials.

considerations to provide for continued effectiveness of pollutant and flow control functions.

Biofiltration Criteria Checklist

The applicant shall provide documentation of compliance with each criterion in this checklist as part of the project submittal. The right column of this checklist identifies the submittal information that is recommended to document compliance with each criterion. Biofiltration BMPs that substantially meet all aspects of Fact Sheets PR-1 or BF-1 should still use this checklist; however additional documentation (beyond what is already required for project submittal) should not be required.

1. Biofiltration BMPs shall be allowed to be used only as described in the BMP selection process based on a documented feasibility analysis.

Intent: This manual defines a specific prioritization of pollutant treatment BMPs, where BMPs that retain water (retained includes evapotranspired, infiltrated, and/or harvested and used) must be used before considering BMPs that have a biofiltered discharge to the MS4 or surface waters. Use of a biofiltration BMP in a manner in conflict with this prioritization (i.e., without a feasibility analysis justifying its use) is not permitted, regardless of the adequacy of the sizing and design of the system.

☐	The project applicant has demonstrated that it is not technically feasible to retain the full DCV onsite.	Document feasibility analysis and findings in SWQMP per Appendix C.

2. Biofiltration BMPs must be sized using acceptable sizing methods.

Intent: The MS4 Permit and this manual defines specific sizing methods that must be used to size biofiltration BMPs. Sizing of biofiltration BMPs is a fundamental factor in the amount of storm water that can be treated and also influences volume and pollutant retention processes.

☐	The project applicant has demonstrated that biofiltration BMPs are sized to meet one of the biofiltration sizing options available (Appendix B.5).	Submit sizing worksheets (Appendix B.5) or other equivalent documentation with the SWQMP.

3. Biofiltration BMPs must be sited and designed to achieve maximum feasible infiltration and evapotranspiration.

Intent: Various decisions about BMP placement and design influence how much water is retained via infiltration and evapotranspiration. The MS4 Permit requires that biofiltration BMPs achieve maximum feasible retention (evapotranspiration and infiltration) of storm water volume.

☐	The biofiltration BMP is sited to allow for maximum infiltration of runoff volume based on the feasibility factors considered in site planning efforts. It is also designed to maximize evapotranspiration through the use of amended media and plants (biofiltration designs without amended media and plants may be permissible; see Item 5).	Document site planning and feasibility analyses in SWQMP per Section 5.4.
☐	For biofiltration BMPs categorized as "Partial Infiltration Condition" the infiltration storage depth in the biofiltration design has been selected to drain in 36 hours (+/-25%) or an alternative value shown to maximize infiltration on the site.	Included documentation of estimated infiltration rate per Appendix D; provide calculations using Appendix B.4 and B.5 to show that the infiltration storage depth meets this criterion. Note, depths that are too shallow or too deep may not be acceptable.
☐	For biofiltration BMP locations categorized as "Partial Infiltration Condition," the infiltration storage is over the entire bottom of the biofiltration BMP footprint.	Document on plans that the infiltration storage covers the entire bottom of the BMP (i.e., not just underdrain trenches); or an equivalent footprint elsewhere on the site.
☐	For biofiltration BMP locations categorized as "Partial Infiltration Condition," the sizing factor used for the infiltration storage area is not less than the minimum biofiltration BMP sizing factors calculated using Worksheet B.5.1 to achieve 40% average annual percent capture within the BMP or downstream of the BMP. .	Provide a table that compares the minimum sizing factor per Appendix B.5 to the provided sizing factor. Note: The infiltration storage area could be a separate storage feature located downstream of the biofiltration BMP, not necessarily within the same footprint.
☐	An impermeable liner or other hydraulic restriction layer is only used when needed to avoid geotechnical and/or subsurface contamination issues in locations identified as "No Infiltration Condition."	If using an impermeable liner or hydraulic restriction layer, provide documentation of feasibility findings per Appendix C that recommend the use of this feature.
☐	The use of "compact" biofiltration BMP design[2] is permitted only in conditions identified as "No Infiltration Condition" and where site-specific documentation demonstrates that the use of larger footprint biofiltration BMPs would be infeasible.	Provide documentation of feasibility findings that recommend no infiltration is feasible. Provide site-specific information to demonstrate that a larger footprint biofiltration BMP would not be feasible.

[2] Compact biofiltration BMPs are defined as features with infiltration storage footprint less than the minimum sizing factors required to achieve 40% volume retention. Note that if a biofiltration BMP is accompanied by an infiltrating area downstream that has a footprint equal to at least the minimum sizing factors calculated using

4. Biofiltration BMPs must be designed with a hydraulic loading rate to maximize pollutant retention, preserve pollutant control processes, and minimize potential for pollutant washout.

Intent: Various decisions about biofiltration BMP design influence the degree to which pollutants are retained. The MS4 Permit requires that biofiltration BMPs achieve maximum feasible retention of storm water pollutants.

☐	Media selected for the biofiltration BMP meets minimum quality and material specifications per 2016 City Storm Water Standards or County LID Manual, including the maximum allowable design filtration rate and minimum thickness of media. **OR**	Provide documentation that media meets the specifications in 2016 City Storm Water Standards or County LID Manual.
☐	Alternatively, for proprietary designs and custom media mixes not meeting the media specifications contained in the 2016 City Storm Water Standards or County LID Manual, field scale testing data are provided to demonstrate that proposed media meets the pollutant treatment performance criteria in Section F.1 below.	Provide documentation of performance information as described in Section F.1.
☐	To the extent practicable, filtration rates are outlet controlled (e.g., via an underdrain and orifice/weir) instead of controlled by the infiltration rate of the media.	Include outlet control in designs or provide documentation of why outlet control is not practicable.
☐	The water surface drains to at least 12 inches below the media surface within 24 hours from the end of storm event flow to preserve plant health and promote healthy soil structure.	Include calculations to demonstrate that drawdown rate is adequate. Surface ponding drawdown time greater than 24-hours but less than 96 hours may be allowed at the discretion of the EAD and FDD if certified by a landscape architect or agronomist.

Worksheet B.5.1 assuming a partial infiltration condition, then it is not considered to be a compact biofiltration BMP for the purpose of Item 4 of the checklist. For potential configurations with a higher rate biofiltration BMP upstream of an larger footprint infiltration area, the BMP would still need to comply with Item 5 of this checklist for pollutant treatment effectiveness.

☐	If nutrients are a pollutant of concern, design of the biofiltration BMP follows nutrient-sensitive design criteria.	Follow specifications for nutrient sensitive design in Fact Sheet BF-2. Or provide alternative documentation that nutrient treatment is addressed and potential for nutrient release is minimized.
☐	Media gradation calculations or geotextile selection calculations demonstrate that migration of media between layers will be prevented and permeability will be preserved.	Follow specification for choking layer or geotextile in Fact Sheet PR-1 or BF-1. Or include calculations to demonstrate that choking layer is appropriately specified.
	5. Biofiltration BMPs must be designed to promote appropriate biological activity to support and maintain treatment processes. Intent: Biological processes are an important element of biofiltration performance and longevity.	
☐	Plants have been selected to be tolerant of project climate, design ponding depths and the treatment media composition.	Provide documentation justifying plant selection. Refer to the plant list in Appendix E.20.
☐	Plants have been selected to minimize irrigation requirements.	Provide documentation describing irrigation requirements for establishment and long term operation.
☐	Plant location and growth will not impede expected long-term media filtration rates and will enhance long term infiltration rates to the extent possible.	Provide documentation justifying plant selection. Refer to the plant list in Appendix E.20.
☐	If plants are not part of the biofiltration design, other biological processes are supported as needed to sustain treatment processes (e.g., biofilm in a subsurface flow wetland).	For biofiltration designs without plants, describe the biological processes that will support effective treatment and how they will be sustained.
	6. Biofiltration BMPs must be designed with a hydraulic loading rate to prevent erosion, scour, and channeling within the BMP. Intent: Erosion, scour, and/or channeling can disrupt treatment processes and reduce biofiltration effectiveness.	
☐	Scour protection has been provided for both sheet flow and pipe inflows to the BMP, where needed.	Provide documentation of scour protection as described in Fact Sheets PR-1 or BF-1 or approved equivalent.
☐	Where scour protection has not been provided, flows into and within the BMP are kept to non-erosive velocities.	Provide documentation of design checks for erosive velocities as described in Fact Sheets PR-1 or BF-1 or approved equivalent.

☐	For proprietary BMPs, the BMP is used in a manner consistent with manufacturer guidelines and conditions of its third-party certification[3] (i.e., maximum tributary area, maximum inflow velocities, etc., as applicable).	Provide copy of manufacturer recommendations and conditions of third-party certification.

7. Biofiltration BMP must include operations and maintenance design features and planning considerations for continued effectiveness of pollutant and flow control functions.

Intent: Biofiltration BMPs require regular maintenance in order provide ongoing function as intended. Additionally, it is not possible to foresee and avoid potential issues as part of design; therefore plans must be in place to correct issues if they arise.

☐	The biofiltration BMP O&M plan describes specific inspection activities, regular/periodic maintenance activities and specific corrective actions relating to scour, erosion, channeling, media clogging, vegetation health, and inflow and outflow structures.	Include O&M plan with project submittal as described in Chapter 7.
☐	Adequate site area and features have been provided for BMP inspection and maintenance access.	Illustrate maintenance access routes, setbacks, maintenance features as needed on project water quality plans.
☐	For proprietary biofiltration BMPs, the BMP maintenance plan is consistent with manufacturer guidelines and conditions of its third-party certification (i.e., maintenance activities, frequencies).	Provide copy of manufacturer recommendations and conditions of third-party certification.

[3] Certifications or verifications issued by the Washington Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology program and the New Jersey Corporation for Advanced Technology programs are typically accompanied by a set of guidelines regarding appropriate design and maintenance conditions that would be consistent with the certification/verification

F.1 Pollutant Treatment Performance Standard

Standard biofiltration BMPs that are designed following the criteria in Fact Sheets PR-1 and BF-1 are presumed to the meet the pollutant treatment performance standard associated with biofiltration BMPs. This presumption is based on the MS4 Permit Fact Sheet which cites analyses of standard biofiltration BMPs conducted in the Ventura County Technical Guidance Manual (July 2011).

For BMPs that do not meet the biofiltration media specification and/or the range of acceptable media filtration rates described in Fact Sheet, PR-1 and BF-1, additional documentation must be provided to demonstrate that adequate pollutant treatment performance is provided to be considered a biofiltration BMP. Project applicants have three options for documenting compliance:

1) Project applicants may provide documentation to substantiate that the minor modifications to the design is expected to provide equal or better pollutant removal performance for the project pollutants of concern than would be provided by a biofiltration design that complies with the criteria in Fact Sheets PR-1 and BF-1. Minor modifications are design elements that deviate only slightly from standard design criteria and are expected to either not impact performance or to improve performance compared to standard biofiltration designs. The reviewing agency has the discretion to accept or reject this documentation and/or request additional documentation to substantiate equivalent or better performance to BF-1 or PR-1, as applicable. Examples of minor deviations include:

    - Different particle size distribution of aggregate, with documentation that system filtration rate will meet specifications.

    - Alternative source of organic components, with documentation of material suitability and stability from appropriate testing agency.

    - Specialized amendments to provide additional treatment mechanisms, and which have negligible potential to upset other treatment mechanisms or otherwise deteriorate performances.

2) For proprietary BMPs, project applicants may provide evidence that the BMP has been certified for use as part of the Washington State Technology Assessment Protocol-Ecology certification program and meets each of the following requirements:

    a. The applicant must demonstrate (using the checklist in this Appendix) that the BMP meets all other conditions to be considered as a biofiltration BMP. For example, a cartridge media filter or hydrodynamic separator would not meet biofiltration BMP design criteria regardless of Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology certification because they do not support effective biological processes.

b. The applicant must select BMPs that have an active Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology certification, with General Use Level Designation for the appropriate project pollutants of concern as identified in Table F.1-1. The list of certified technologies is updated as new technologies are approved (link below). Technologies with Pilot Use Level Designation and Conditional Use Level Designations are not acceptable. Refer to: http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/technologies.html.

c. The applicant must demonstrate that BMP is being used in a manner consistent with all conditions of the Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology certification while meeting the flow rate or volume design criteria that is required for biofiltration BMPs under this manual. Conditions of Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology certification are available by clicking on the technology name at the website listed in bullet b. Additional discussion about sizing of proprietary biofiltration BMPs to comply with applicable sizing standards is provided below in Section F.2.

d. For projects within the public right of way and/or capital projects: the product must be acceptable to the EAD and FDD with respect to maintainability and long term operation of the product. In determining the acceptability of a product the EAD and FDD should consider, as applicable, maintenance requirements, cost of maintenance activities, relevant previous local experience with operation and maintenance of the BMP type, ability to continue to operate the system in event that the vending company is no longer operating as a business, and other relevant factors. If a proposed BMP is not accepted by the EAD and/or FDD, a written explanation/reason will be provided to the applicant.

3) For BMPs that do not fall into options 1 or 2 above, the EAD and FDD may allow the applicant to submit alternative third-party documentation that the pollutant treatment performance of the system is consistent with the performance levels associated with the necessary Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology certifications. Table F.1-1 describes the required levels of certification and Table F.l-2 describes the pollutant treatment performance levels associated with each level of certification. Acceptance of this approach is at the sole discretion of the EAD and FDD. If a proposed BMP is not accepted by the EAD and/or FDD, a written explanation/reason will be provided to the applicant. If Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology certifications are not available, preference shall be given to:

   a. Verified third-party, field-scale testing performance under the Technology Acceptance Reciprocity Partnership Tier II Protocol. This protocol is no longer operated, however this is considered to be a valid protocol and historic verifications are considered to be representative provided that product models being proposed are consistent with those that were tested. Technology Acceptance Reciprocity Partnership verifications were conducted under New Jersey Corporation for Advance Testing and are archived at the website linked below. Note that Technology Acceptance Reciprocity Partnership verifications must be matched to pollutant treatment standards in Table F.1-2 then matched to an equivalent Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology certification in Table F.1-1.

b. Verified third-party, field-scale testing performance under the New Jersey Corporation for Advance Testing protocol. Note that New Jersey Corporation for Advance Testing verifications must be matched to pollutant treatment standards in Table F.1-2 then matched to an equivalent Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology certification in Table F.1-1.

A list of field-scale verified technologies under Technology Acceptance Reciprocity Partnership Tier II and New Jersey Corporation for Advance Testing can be accessed at: http://www.njcat.org/verification-process/technology-verification-database.html (refer to field verified technologies only).

Table F.1-1: Required Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology Certifications for Polltuants of Concern for Biofiltration Performance Standard

Project Pollutant of Concern	Required Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology Certification for Biofiltration Performance Standard
Trash	Basic Treatment OR Phosphorus Treatment OR Enhanced Treatment
Sediments	Basic Treatment OR Phosphorus Treatment OR Enhanced Treatment
Oil and Grease	Basic Treatment OR Phosphorus Treatment OR Enhanced Treatment
Nutrients	Phosphorus Treatment[1]
Metals	Enhanced Treatment
Pesticides	Basic Treatment (including filtration)[2] OR Phosphorus Treatment OR Enhanced Treatment
Organics	Basic Treatment (including filtration)[2] OR Phosphorus Treatment OR Enhanced Treatment
Bacteria and Viruses	Basic Treatment (including bacteria removal processes)[3] OR Phosphorus Treatment OR Enhanced Treatment

1 – There is no Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology equivalent for nitrogen compounds; however systems that are designed to retain phosphorus (as well as meet basic treatment designation), generally also provide treatment of nitrogen compounds. Where nitrogen is a pollutant of concern, relative performance of available certified systems for nitrogen removal should be considered in BMP selection.

2 – Pesticides, organics, and oxygen demanding substances are typically addressed by particle filtration consistent with the level of treatment required to achieve Basic treatment certification; if a system with Basic treatment certification does not provide filtration, it is not acceptable for pesticides, organics or oxygen demanding substances.

3 – There is no Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology equivalent for pathogens (viruses and bacteria), and testing data are limited because of typical sample hold times. Systems with Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology Basic Treatment must be include one or more significant bacteria removal process such as media filtration, physical sorption, predation, reduced redox conditions, and/or solar inactivation. Where design options are available to enhance pathogen removal (i.e., pathogen-specific media mix offered by vendor), this design variation should be used.

Table F.1-2: Performance Standards for Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology Certification

Performance Goal	Influent Range	Criteria
Basic Treatment	20 – 100 mg/L TSS	Effluent goal ≤ 20 mg/L TSS
	100 – 200 mg/L TSS	≥ 80% TSS removal
	>200 mg/L TSS	> 80% TSS removal, effluent not to exceed 100 mg/L TSS
Enhanced (Dissolved Metals) Treatment	Dissolved copper 0.005 – 0.02 mg/L	Must meet basic treatment goal and better than basic treatment currently defined as >30% dissolved copper removal
	Dissolved zinc 0.02 – 0.3 mg/L	Must meet basic treatment goal and better than basic treatment currently defined as >60% dissolved zinc removal
Phosphorous Treatment	Total phosphorous 0.1 – 0.5 mg/L	Must meet basic treatment goal and exhibit ≥50% total phosphorous removal
Oil Treatment	Total petroleum hydrocarbon > 10 mg/L	No ongoing or recurring visible sheen in effluent Daily average effluent Total petroleum hydrocarbon concentration < 10 mg/L Maximum effluent Total petroleum hydrocarbon concentration for a 15 mg/L for a discrete (grab) sample
Pretreatment	50 – 100 mg/L TSS	≤ 50 mg/L TSS
	≥ 200 mg/L TSS	≥ 50% TSS removal

F.2 Guidance on Sizing and Design of Non-Standard Biofiltration BMPs

This section explains the general process for design and sizing of non-standard biofiltration BMPs. This section assumes that the BMPs have been selected based on the criteria in Section F.1.

F.2.1 Guidance on Design per Conditions of Certification/Verification

The biofiltration standard and checklist in this appendix requires that "the BMP is used in a manner consistent with manufacturer guidelines and conditions of its third-party certification." Practically, what this means is that the BMP is used in the same way in which it was tested and certified. For example, it is not acceptable for a BMP of a given size to be certified/verified with a 100 gallon per minute treatment rate and be applied at a 150 gallon per minute treatment rate in a design.
Certifications or verifications issued by the Washington Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology program and the Technology Acceptance Reciprocity Partnership or New Jersey Corporation for Advance Testing programs are typically accompanied by a set of guidelines regarding appropriate design and maintenance conditions that would be consistent with the certification/verification. It is common for these approvals to specify the specific model of BMP, design capacity for given unit sizes, type of media that is the basis for approval, and/or other parameter. The applicant must demonstrate conclusively that the proposed application of the BMP is consistent with these criteria.

For alternate non-proprietary systems that do not have a Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology / Technology Acceptance Reciprocity Partnership / New Jersey Corporation for Advance Testing certification (but which still must provide quantitative data per Appendix F.1), it must be demonstrate that the configuration and design proposed for the project is reasonably consistent with the configuration and design under which the BMP was tested to demonstrate compliance with Appendix F.1.

F.2.2 Sizing of Flow-Based Biofiltration BMP

This sizing method is <u>only</u> available when the BMP meets the pollutant treatment performance standard in Appendix F.1.

Proprietary biofiltration BMPs are typically designed as a flow-based BMPs (i.e., a constant treatment capacity with negligible storage volume). Additionally, proprietary biofiltration is only acceptable if no infiltration is feasible and where site-specific documentation demonstrates that the use of larger footprint biofiltration BMPs would be infeasible or if the proprietary biofiltration BMP is supplemented with a downstream retention BMP that achieves volume reduction equivalent to a non-proprietary BMP sized in accordance with Worksheet B.5-1. The applicable sizing method for biofiltration is therefore reduced to: <u>Treat 1.5 times the DCV</u>.

The following steps should be followed to demonstrate that the system is sized to treat 1.5 times the

DCV.

1. Calculate the flow rate required to meet the pollutant treatment performance standard without scaling for the 1.5 factor. Options include either:
   - Calculate the runoff flow rate from a 0.2 inch per hour uniform intensity precipitation event (See methodology Appendix B.6.3), or
   - Conduct a continuous simulation analysis to compute the size required to capture and treat 80 percent of average annual runoff; for small catchments, 5-minute precipitation data should be used to account for short time of concentration. Nearest rain gage with 5-minute precipitation data is allowed for this analysis.
2. Multiply the flow rate from Step 1 by 1.5 to compute the design flow rate for the biofiltration system.
3. Based on the conditions of certification/verification (discussed above), establish the design capacity, as a flow rate, of a given sized unit.
4. Demonstrates that an appropriate unit size and number of units is provided to provide a flow rate that meets the required flow rate from Step 2.
5. Provide a downstream retention BMP that achieves volume reduction equivalent to a non-proprietary BMP sized in accordance with Worksheet B.5-1.

This page intentionally left blank

Appendix

G

AUTHORITY BMP DESIGN MANUAL

Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

February 2016

Appendix G Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

G.1 Guidance for Continuous Simulation Hydrologic Modeling for Hydromodification Management Studies in San Diego County Region 9

G.1.1 Introduction

Continuous simulation hydrologic modeling is used to demonstrate compliance with the performance standards for hydromodification management in San Diego. Although hydromodification management requirements do not apply at SAN, per Section 2 of this manual, this Appendix is included as reference for the design of structural BMPs where appropriate and required, as noted throughout Appendix B.

There are several available hydrologic models that can perform continuous simulation analyses. Each has different methods and parameters for determining the amount of rainfall that becomes runoff, and for representing the hydraulic operations of certain structural BMPs such as biofiltration with partial retention or biofiltration. This Appendix is intended to:

- Identify acceptable models for continuous simulation hydrologic analyses for hydromodification management;
- Provide guidance for selecting climatology input to the models;
- Provide standards for rainfall loss parameters to be used in the models;
- Provide standards for defining physical characteristics of LID components; and
- Provide guidance for demonstrating compliance with performance standards for hydromodification management.

This Appendix is not a user's manual for any of the acceptable models, nor a comprehensive manual for preparing a hydrologic model. This Appendix provides guidance for selecting model input parameters for the specific purpose of hydromodification management studies. The model preparer must be familiar with the user's manual for the selected software to determine how the parameters are entered to the model.

G.1.2 Software for Continuous Simulation Hydrologic Modeling

The following software models may be used for hydromodification management studies in San Diego:

- HSPF – Hydrologic Simulation Program-FORTRAN, distributed by USEPA, public domain.
- SDHM – San Diego Hydrology Model, distributed by Clear Creek Solutions, Inc. This is an HSPF-based model with a proprietary interface that has been customized for use in San Diego for hydromodification management studies.
- SWMM – Storm Water Management Model, distributed by USEPA, public domain.

Third-party and proprietary software, such as XPSWMM or PCSWMM, may be used for hydromodification management studies in San Diego, provided that:

- Input and output data from the software can interface with public domain software such as SWMM. In other words, input files from the third party software should have sufficient functionality to allow export to public domain software for independent validation.
- The software's hydromodification control processes are substantiated.

G.1.3 Climatology Parameters

G.1.3.1 Rainfall

In all software applications for preparation of hydromodification management studies in San Diego, rainfall data must be selected from approved data sets that have been prepared for this purpose. As part of the development of the March 2011 Final HMP, long-term hourly rainfall records were prepared for public use. The rainfall record files are provided on the Project Clean Water website. The rainfall station map is provided in the March 2011 Final HMP and is included in this Appendix as Figure G.1-1.

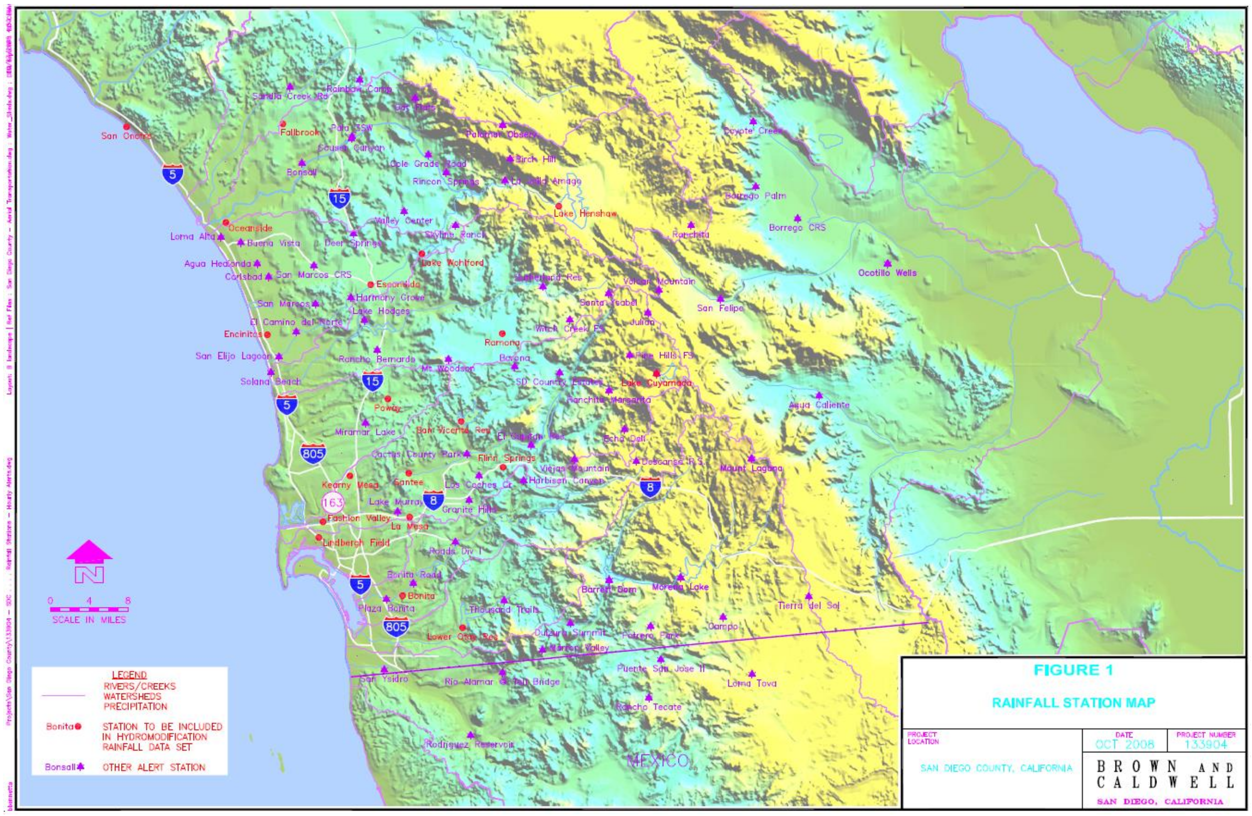


Figure G.1-1: Rainfall Station Map

Project applicants preparing continuous simulation models shall select the most appropriate rainfall data set from the rainfall record files provided on the Project Clean Water website. For a given project location, the following factors should be considered in the selection of the appropriate rainfall data set:

- In most cases, the rainfall data set in closest proximity to the project site will be the appropriate choice (refer to the rainfall station map).
- In some cases, the rainfall data set in closest proximity to the project site may not be the most applicable data set. Such a scenario could involve a data set with an elevation significantly different from the project site. In addition to a simple elevation comparison, the project proponent may also consult with the San Diego County's average annual precipitation isopluvial map, which is provided in the San Diego County Hydrology Manual (2003). Review of this map could provide an initial estimate as to whether the project site is in a similar rainfall zone as compared to the rainfall stations. Generally, precipitation totals in San Diego County increase with increasing elevation.
- Where possible, rainfall data sets should be chosen so that the data set and the project location are both located in the same topographic zone (coastal, foothill, mountain) and major

watershed unit (Upper San Luis Rey, Lower San Luis Rey, Upper San Diego River, Lower San Diego River, etc.).

For SDHM users, the approved rainfall data sets are pre-loaded into the software package. SDHM users may select the appropriate rainfall gage within the SDHM program. HSPF or SWMM users shall download the appropriate rainfall record from the Project Clean Water website and load it into the software program.

Both the pre-development and post-project model simulation period shall encompass the entire rainfall record provided in the approved rainfall data set. Scaling the rainfall data is not permitted.

G.1.3.2 Potential Evapotranspiration

Project applicants preparing continuous simulation models shall select a data set from the sources described below to represent potential evapotranspiration.

For HSPF users, this parameter may be entered as an hourly time series. The hourly time series that was used to develop the BMP Sizing Calculator parameters is provided on the project clean water website and may be used for hydromodification management studies in San Diego. For SDHM users, the hourly evaporation data set is pre-loaded into the program. HSPF users may download the evaporation record from the Project Clean Water website and load it into the software program.

For HSPF or SWMM users, this parameter may be entered as monthly values in inches per month or inches per day. Monthly values may be obtained from the California Irrigation Management Information System "Reference Evapotranspiration Zones" brochure and map (herein "CIMIS ETo Zone Map"), prepared by California Department of Water Resources, dated January 2012. The CIMIS ETo Zone Map is available from www.cimis.gov, and is provided in this Appendix as Figure G.1-2. Determine the appropriate reference evapotranspiration zone for the project from the CIMIS ETo Zone Map. The monthly average reference evapotranspiration values are provided below in Table G.1-1.

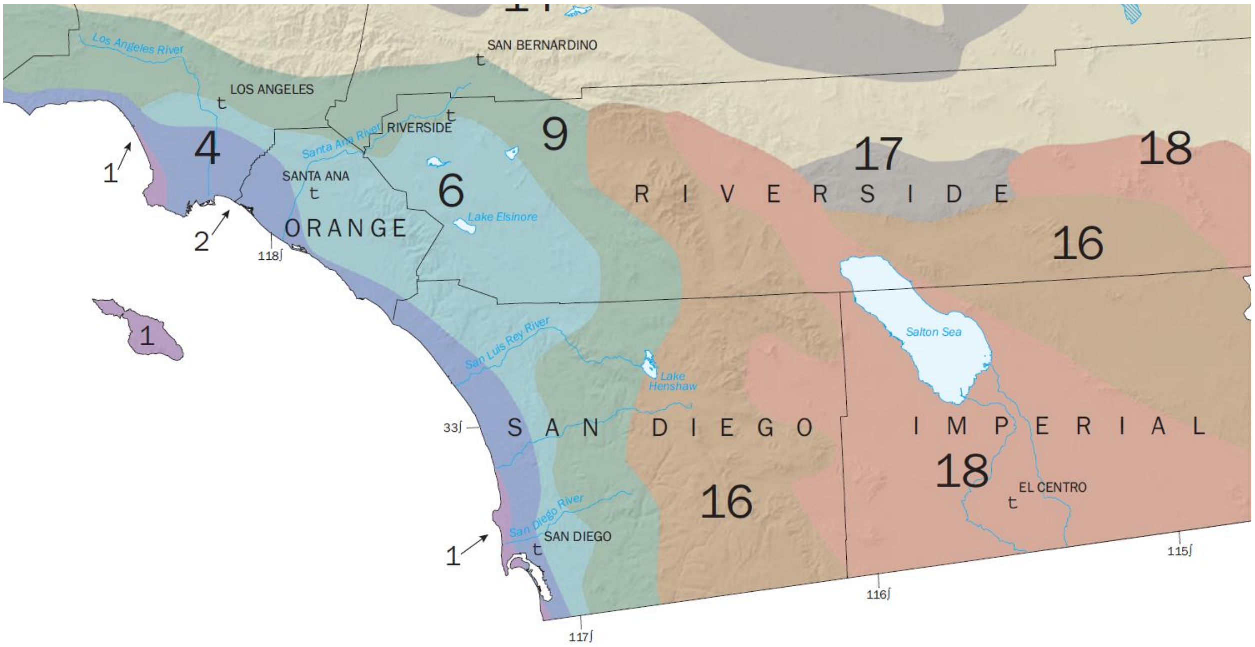


Figure G.1-2: California Irrigation Management Information System "Reference Evapotranspiration Zones"

Table G.1-1: Monthly Average Reference Evapotranspiration by ETo Zone (inches/month and inches/day) for use in SWMM Models for Hydromodification Management Studies in San Diego County CIMIS Zones 1, 4, 6, 9, and 16 (See CIMIS ETo Zone Map)

	January	February	March	April	May	June	July	August	September	October	November	December
Zone	in/month	in/month	in/month	in/month	in/month	in/month	in/month	in/month	in/month	in/month	in/month	in/month
1	0.93	1.4	2.48	3.3	4.03	4.5	4.65	4.03	3.3	2.48	1.2	0.62
4	1.86	2.24	3.41	4.5	5.27	5.7	5.89	5.58	4.5	3.41	2.4	1.86
6	1.86	2.24	3.41	4.8	5.58	6.3	6.51	6.2	4.8	3.72	2.4	1.86
9	2.17	2.8	4.03	5.1	5.89	6.6	7.44	6.82	5.7	4.03	2.7	1.86
16	1.55	2.52	4.03	5.7	7.75	8.7	9.3	8.37	6.3	4.34	2.4	1.55
	January	February	March	April	May	June	July	August	September	October	November	December
Days	31	28	31	30	31	30	31	31	30	31	30	31
Zone	in/day	in/day	in/day	in/day	in/day	in/day	in/day	in/day	in/day	in/day	in/day	in/day
1	0.030	0.050	0.080	0.110	0.130	0.150	0.150	0.130	0.110	0.080	0.040	0.020
4	0.060	0.080	0.110	0.150	0.170	0.190	0.190	0.180	0.150	0.110	0.080	0.060
6	0.060	0.080	0.110	0.160	0.180	0.210	0.210	0.200	0.160	0.120	0.080	0.060
9	0.070	0.100	0.130	0.170	0.190	0.220	0.240	0.220	0.190	0.130	0.090	0.060
16	0.050	0.090	0.130	0.190	0.250	0.290	0.300	0.270	0.210	0.140	0.080	0.050

G.1.4 LAND CHARACTERISTICS AND LOSS PARAMETERS

In all software applications for preparation of hydromodification management studies in San Diego, rainfall loss parameters must be consistent with this Appendix unless the preparer can provide documentation to substantiate use of other parameters, subject to local jurisdiction approval. HSPF and SWMM use different processes and different sets of parameters. SDHM is based on HSPF, therefore parameters for SDHM and HSPF are presented together in Section G.1.4.1. Parameters that have been pre-loaded into SDHM may be used for other HSPF hydromodification management studies outside of SDHM. Parameters for SWMM are presented separately in Section G.1.4.2.

G.1.4.1 Rainfall Loss Parameters for HSPF and SDHM

Rainfall losses in HSPF are characterized by PERLND/PWATER parameters and IMPLND parameters, which describe processes occurring when rainfall lands on pervious lands and impervious lands, respectively. "BASINS Technical Notice 6, Estimating Hydrology and Hydraulic Parameters for HSPF," prepared by the USEPA, dated July 2000, provides details regarding these parameters and summary tables of possible ranges of these parameters. Table G.1-2, excerpted from the above-mentioned document, presents the ranges of these parameters.

For HSPF studies for hydromodification management in San Diego, PERLND/PWATER parameters and IMPLND parameters shall fall within the "possible" range provided in EPA Technical Note 6. To select specific parameters, HSPF users may use the parameters established for development of the San Diego BMP Sizing Calculator, and/or the parameters that have been established for SDHM. Parameters for the San Diego BMP Sizing Calculator and SDHM are based on research conducted specifically for HSPF modeling in San Diego.

Documentation of parameters selected for the San Diego BMP Sizing Calculator is presented in the document titled, San Diego BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology, prepared by Brown and Caldwell, dated January 2012 (herein "BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology"). The PERLND/PWATER parameters selected for development of the San Diego BMP Sizing Calculator represent a single composite pervious land cover that is representative of most pre-development conditions for sites that would commonly be managed by the BMP Sizing Calculator. The parameters shown below in Table G.1-3 are excerpted from the BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology.

Table G.1-2: HSPF PERLND/PWATER and IMPLND Parameters from EPA Technical Note 6

Name	Definition	Units	Range of Values				Function of …	Comment
			Typical		Possible			
			Min	Max	Min	Max		
PWAT – PARM2								
FOREST	Fraction forest cover	none	0.0	0.50	0.0	0.95	Forest cover	Only impact when SNOW is active
LZSN	Lower Zone Nominal Soil Moisture Storage	inches	3.0	8.0	2.0	15.0	Soils, climate	**Calibration**
INFILT	Index to Infiltration Capacity	in/hr	0.01	0.25	0.001	0.50	Soils, land use	**Calibration**, divides surface and subsurface flow
LSUR	Length of overland flow	feet	200	500	100	700	Topography	Estimate from high resolution topo maps or GIS
SLSUR	Slope of overland flow plane	ft/ft	0.01	0.15	0.001	0.30	Topography	Estimate from high resolution topo maps or GIS
KVARY	Variable groundwater recession	1/inches	0.0	3.0	0.0	5.0	Baseflow recession variation	Used when recession rate varies with GW levels
AGWRC	Base groundwater recession	none	0.92	0.99	0.85	0.999	Baseflow recession	**Calibration**
PWAT – PARM3								
PETMAX	Temp below which ET is reduced	deg. F	35.0	45.0	32.0	48.0	Climate, vegetation	Reduces ET near freezing, when SNOW is active
PETMIN	Temp below which ET is set to zero	deg. F	30.0	35.0	30.0	40.0	Climate, vegetation	Reduces ET near freezing, when SNOW is active
INFEXP	Exponent in infiltration equation	none	2.0	2.0	1.0	3.0	Soils variability	Usually default to 2.0
INFILD	Ratio of max/mean infiltration capacities	none	2.0	2.0	1.0	3.0	Soils variability	Usually default to 2.0
DEEPFR	Fraction of GW inflow to deep recharge	none	0.0	0.20	0.0	0.50	Geology, GW recharge	Accounts for subsurface losses
BASETP	Fraction of remaining ET from baseflow	none	0.0	0.05	0.0	0.20	Riparian vegetation	Direct ET from riparian vegetation
AGWETP	Fraction of remaining ET from active GW	none	0.0	0.05	0.0	0.20	Marsh/wetlands extent	Direct ET from shallow GW
PWAT – PARM4								
CEPSC	Interception storage capacity	inches	0.03	0.20	0.01	0.40	Vegetation type/density, land use	Monthly values usually used
UZSN	Upper zone nominal soil moisture storage	inches	0.10	1.0	0.05	2.0	Surface soil conditions, land use	Accounts for near surface retention
NSUR	Manning's n (roughness) for overland flow	none	0.15	0.35	0.05	0.50	Surface conditions, residue, etc.	Monthly values often used for croplands
INTFW	Interflow inflow parameter	none	1.0	3.0	1.0	10.0	Soils, topography, land use	**Calibration**, based on hydrograph separation
IRC	Interflow recession parameter	none	0.5	0.70	0.30	0.85	Soils, topography, land use	Often start with a value of 0.7, and then adjust
LZETP	Lower zone ET parameter	none	0.2	0.70	0.1	0.9	Vegetation type/density, root depth	**Calibration**
IWAT – PARM2								
LSUR	Length of overland flow	feet	50	150	50	250	Topography, drainage system	Estimate from maps, GIS, or field survey
SLSUR	Slope of overland flow plane	ft/ft	0.01	0.05	0.001	0.15	Topography, drainage	Estimate from maps, GIS, or field survey
NSUR	Manning's n (roughness) for overland flow	none	0.03	0.10	0.01	0.15	Impervious surface conditions	Typical range is 0.05 to 0.10 for roads/parking lots
RETSC	Retention storage capacity	inches	0.03	0.10	0.01	0.30	Impervious surface conditions	Typical range is 0.03 to 0.10 for roads/parking lots
IWAT – PARM3 (PETMAX and PETMIN, same values as shown for PWAT – PARM3)								

Table G.1-3: HSPF PERLND/PWATER Parameters from BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology

		Hydrologic Soil Group A			Hydrologic Soil Group B			Hydrologic Soil Group C			Hydrologic Soil Group D		
	Slope	5%	10%	15%	5%	10%	15%	5%	10%	15%	5%	10%	15%
PWAT_PARM2	Units												
FOREST	None	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
LZSN	inches	5.2	4.8	4.5	5.0	4.7	4.4	4.8	4.5	4.2	4.8	4.5	4.2
INFILT	in/hr	0.090	0.070	0.045	0.070	0.055	0.040	0.050	0.040	0.032	0.040	0.030	0.020
LSUR	Feet	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	200
SLSUR	ft/ft	0.05	0.1	0.15	0.05	0.1	0.15	0.05	0.1	0.15	0.05	0.1	0.15
KVARY	1/inches	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
AGWRC	None	0.92	0.92	0.92	0.92	0.92	0.92	0.92	0.92	0.92	0.92	0.92	0.92
PWAT_PARM3													
PETMAX (F)	F	35	35	35	35	35	35	35	35	35	35	35	35
PETMIN (F)	F	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30
INFEXP	None	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
INFILD	None	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
DEEPFR	None	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4
BASETP	None	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05
AGEWTP	None	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05
PWAT_PARM4													
CEPSC	inches	0.08	0.08	0.08	0.08	0.08	0.08	0.08	0.08	0.08	0.08	0.08	0.08
UZSN	inches	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6
NSUR	None	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2
INTFW	None	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5
IRC	None	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7
LZETP	None	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5

Parameters within SDHM are documented in "San Diego Hydrology Model User Manual," prepared by Clear Creek Solutions, Inc. (as of the development of the Manual, the current version of the SDHM User Manual is dated January 2012). Parameters established for SDHM represent "grass" (non-turf grasslands), "dirt," "gravel," and "urban" cover. The documented PERLND and IMPLND parameters for the various land covers and soil types have been pre-loaded into SDHM. SDHM users shall use the parameters that have been pre-loaded into the program without modification unless the preparer can provide documentation to substantiate use of other parameters.

G.1.4.2 Rainfall Loss Parameters for SWMM

In SWMM, rainfall loss parameters (parameters that describe processes occurring when rainfall lands on pervious lands and impervious lands) are entered in the "subcatchment" module. In addition to specifying parameters, the SWMM user must also select an infiltration model.

The SWMM Manual provides details regarding the subcatchment parameters and summary tables of possible ranges of these parameters. For SWMM studies for hydromodification management in San Diego, subcatchment parameters shall fall within the range provided in the SWMM Manual. Some of the parameters depend on the selection of the infiltration model. For consistency across the San Diego region, SWMM users shall use the Green-Ampt infiltration model for hydromodification management studies. Table G.1-4 presents SWMM subcatchment parameters for use in hydromodification management studies in the San Diego region.

Table G.1-4: Subcatchment Parameters for SWMM Studies for Hydromodification Management in San Diego

SWMM Parameter Name	Unit	Range	Use in San Diego
Name X-Coordinate Y-Coordinate Description Tag Rain Gage Outlet	N/A	N/A – project-specific	Project-specific
Area	acres (ac)	Project-specific	Project-specific
Width	feet (ft)	Project-specific	Project-specific
% Slope	percent (%)	Project-specific	Project-specific
% Imperv	percent (%)	Project-specific	Project-specific
N-imperv	--	0.011 – 0.024 presented in Table A.6 of SWMM Manual	default use 0.012 for smooth concrete, otherwise provide documentation of other surface consistent with Table A.6 of SWMM Manual
N-Perv	--	0.05 – 0.80 presented in Table A.6 of SWMM Manual	default use 0.15 for short prairie grass, otherwise provide documentation of other surface consistent with Table A.6 of SWMM Manual
Dstore-Imperv	inches	0.05 – 0.10 inches presented in Table A.5 of SWMM Manual	0.05
Dstore-Perv	inches	0.10 – 0.30 inches presented in Table A.5 of SWMM Manual	0.10
%ZeroImperv	percent (%)	0% – 100%	25%
Subarea routing	--	OUTLET IMPERVIOUS PERVIOUS	Project-specific, typically OUTLET
Percent Routed	%	0% – 100%	Project-specific, typically 100%
Infiltration	Method	HORTON GREEN_AMPT CURVE_NUMBER	GREEN_AMPT

SWMM Parameter Name	Unit	Range	Use in San Diego
Suction Head (Green-Ampt)	Inches	1.93 – 12.60 presented in Table A.2 of SWMM Manual	Hydrologic Soil Group A: 1.5 Hydrologic Soil Group B: 3.0 Hydrologic Soil Group C: 6.0 Hydrologic Soil Group D: 9.0
Conductivity (Green-Ampt)	Inches per hour	0.01 – 4.74 presented in Table A.2 of SWMM Manual by soil texture class 0.00 – ≥0.45 presented in Table A.3 of SWMM Manual by hydrologic soil group	Hydrologic Soil Group A: 0.3 Hydrologic Soil Group B: 0.2 Hydrologic Soil Group C: 0.1 Hydrologic Soil Group D: 0.025 Note: reduce conductivity by 25% in the post-project condition when native soils will be compacted. Conductivity may also be reduced by 25% in the pre-development condition model for redevelopment areas that are currently concrete or asphalt but must be modeled according to their underlying soil characteristics. For fill soils in post-project condition, see Section G.1.4.3.
Initial Deficit (Green-Ampt)		The difference between soil porosity and initial moisture content. Based on the values provided in Table A.2 of SWMM Manual, the range for completely dry soil would be 0.097 to 0.375	Hydrologic Soil Group A: 0.30 Hydrologic Soil Group B: 0.31 Hydrologic Soil Group C: 0.32 Hydrologic Soil Group D: 0.33 Note: in long-term continuous simulation, this value is not important as the soil will reach equilibrium after a few storm events regardless of the initial moisture content specified.
Groundwater	yes/no	yes/no	NO
LID Controls			Project Specific

SWMM Parameter Name	Unit	Range	Use in San Diego
Snow Pack Land Uses Initial Buildup Curb Length			Not applicable to hydromodification management studies

G.1.4.3 Pervious Area Rainfall Loss Parameters in Post-Project Condition (HSPF, SDHM, and SWMM)

The following guidance applies to HSPF, SDHM, and SWMM. When modeling pervious areas in the post-project condition, fill soils shall be modeled as hydrologic soil group Type D soils, or the project applicant may provide an actual expected infiltration rate for the fill soil based on testing (must be approved by the FDD and EAD for use in the model). Where landscaped areas on fill soils will be re-tilled and/or amended in the post-project condition, the landscaped areas may be modeled as Type C soils. Areas to be re-tilled and/or amended in the post-project condition must be shown on the project plans. For undisturbed pervious areas (i.e., native soils, no fill), use the actual hydrologic soil group, the same as in the pre-development condition.

G.1.5 MODELING STRUCTURAL BMPS (PONDS AND LID FEATURES)

There are many ways to model structural BMPs. There are standard modules for several pond or LID elements included in SDHM and SWMM. Users may also set up project-specific stage-storage-discharge relationships representing structural BMPs. Regardless of the modeling method, certain characteristics of the structural BMP, including infiltration of water from the bottom of the structural BMP into native soils, porosity of bioretention soils and/or gravel sublayers, and other program-specific parameters must be consistent with those presented below, unless the preparer can provide documentation to substantiate use of other parameters, subject to local jurisdiction approval. The geometry of structural BMPs is project-specific and shall match the project plans.

G.1.5.1 Infiltration into Native Soils Below Structural BMPs

Infiltration into native soils below structural BMPs may be modeled as a constant outflow rate equal to the project site-specific design infiltration rate (Worksheet D.5-1) multiplied by the area of the infiltrating surface (and converted to cubic feet per second). This infiltration rate is not the same as an infiltration parameter used in the calculation of rainfall losses, such as the HSPF INFILT parameter or the Green-Ampt conductivity parameter in the SWMM subcatchment module. It must be site-specific and must be determined based on the methods presented in Appendix D of this manual.

For preliminary analysis when site-specific geotechnical investigation has not been completed, project applicants proposing infiltration into native soils as part of the structural BMP design shall prepare a sensitivity analysis to determine a potential range for the structural BMP size based on a range of potential infiltration rates. As shown in Appendices C and D of this manual, many factors influence the ability to infiltrate storm water. Therefore even when soils types A and B are present, which are generally expected to infiltrate storm water, the possibility that a very low infiltration rate could be determined at design level must be considered. The range of potential infiltration rates for preliminary analysis is shown below in Table G.1-5.

Table G.1-5: Range of Potential Infiltration Rates to be Studied for Sensitivity Analysis when Native Infiltration is Proposed but Site-Specific Geotechnical Investigation has not been Completed

Hydrologic Soil Group at Location of Proposed Structural BMP	Low Infiltration Rate for Preliminary Study (inches/hour)	High Infiltration Rate for Preliminary Study (inches/hour)
A	0.02	2.4
B	0.02	0.52
C	0	0.08
D	0	0.02

The infiltration rates shown above are for preliminary investigation only. Final design of a structural BMP must be based on the project site-specific design infiltration rate (Worksheet D.5-1).

G.1.5.2 Structural BMPs That Do Not Include Sub-Layers (Ponds)

To model a pond, basin, or other depressed area that does not include processing runoff through sublayers of amended soil and/or gravel, create a stage storage discharge relationship for the pond, and supply the information to the model according to the program requirements. For HSPF users, the stage-storage-discharge relationship is provided in FTABLES. SDHM users may use the TRAPEZOIDAL POND element for a trapezoidal pond or IRREGULAR POND element to request the program to create the stage-storage-discharge relationship, use the SSD TABLE element to supply a user-created stage-storage-discharge relationship, or use other available modules such as TANK or VAULT. For SWMM users, the stage-storage relationship is supplied in the storage unit module, and the stage-discharge relationship may be represented by various other modules such as the orifice, weir, or outlet modules. Stage-storage and stage-discharge curves for structural BMPs must be fully documented in the project-specific HMP report and must be consistent with the structural BMP(s) shown on project plans.

For user-created stage-discharge relationships, refer to local drainage manual criteria for equations representing hydraulic behavior of outlet structures. Users relying on the software to develop the stage-discharge relationship may use the equations built into the program. This manual does not recommend that all program modules calculating stage-discharge relationships must be uniform because the flows to be controlled for hydromodification management are low flows, calculated differently from the single-storm event peak flows studied for flood control purposes, and hydromodification management performance standards do not represent any performance standard for flood control drainage design. Note that for design of emergency outlet structures, and any calculations related to single-storm event routing for flood control drainage design, stage-discharge calculations must be consistent with the local drainage design requirements. This may require separate calculations for stage-discharge relationship pursuant to local manuals. The HMP flow rates shall not be used for flood control calculations.

G.1.5.3 Structural BMPs That Include Sub-Layers (Bioretention and Other LID)

G.1.5.3.1 Characteristics of Engineered Soil Media

The engineered soil media used in bioretention, biofiltration with partial retention, and biofiltration structural BMPs is a sandy loam. The following parameters presented in Table G.1-6 are characteristics of a sandy loam for use in continuous simulation models.

Table G.1-6: Characteristics of Sandy Loam to Represent Engineered Soil Media in Continuous Simulation for Hydromodification Management Studies in San Diego

Soil Texture	Porosity	Field Capacity	Wilting Point	Conductivity	Suction Head
Sandy Loam	0.4	0.2	0.1	5 inches/hour	1.5 inches

- Porosity is the volume of pore space (voids) relative to the total volume of soil (as a fraction).
- Field Capacity is the volume of pore water relative to total volume after the soil has been allowed to drain fully (as a fraction). Below this level, vertical drainage of water through the soil layer does not occur.
- Wilting point is the volume of pore water relative to total volume for a well dried soil where only bound water remains (as a fraction). The moisture content of the soil cannot fall below this limit.
- Conductivity is the hydraulic conductivity for the fully saturated soil (in/hr or mm/hr).
- Suction head is the average value of soil capillary suction along the wetting front (inches or mm).

Figures G.1-3 and G.1-4, from http://www.stevenswater.com/articles/irrigationscheduling.aspx, illustrate unsaturated soil and soil saturation, field capacity, and wilting point.

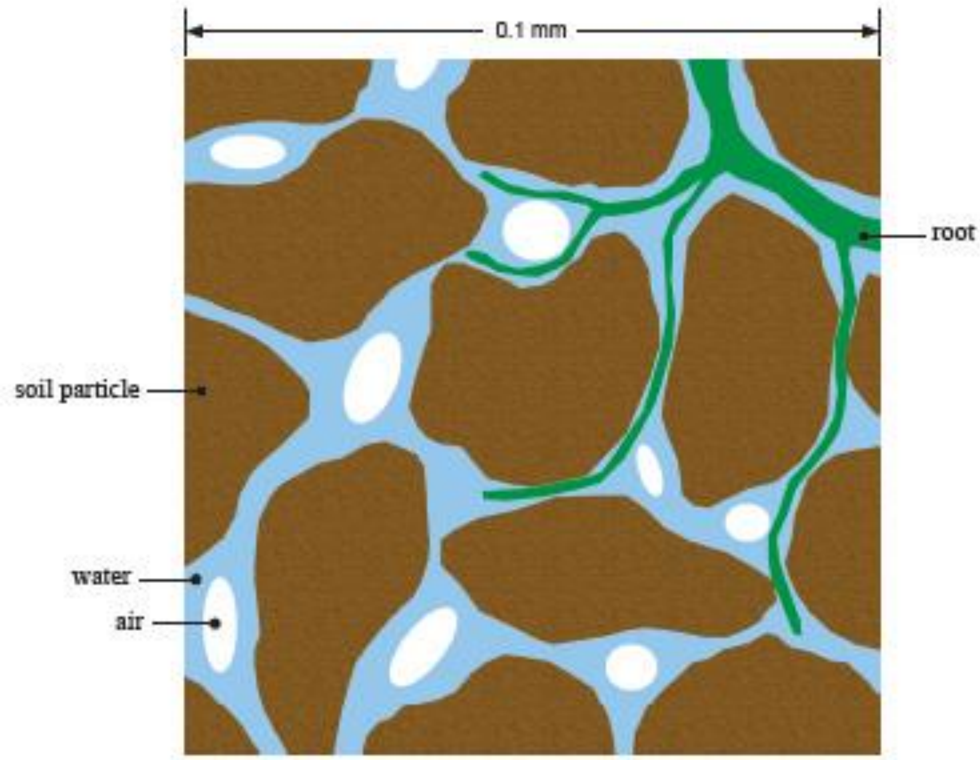


Figure G.1-3: Unsaturated Soil Composition

Unsaturated soil is composed of solid particles, organic material and pores. The pore space will contain air and water.

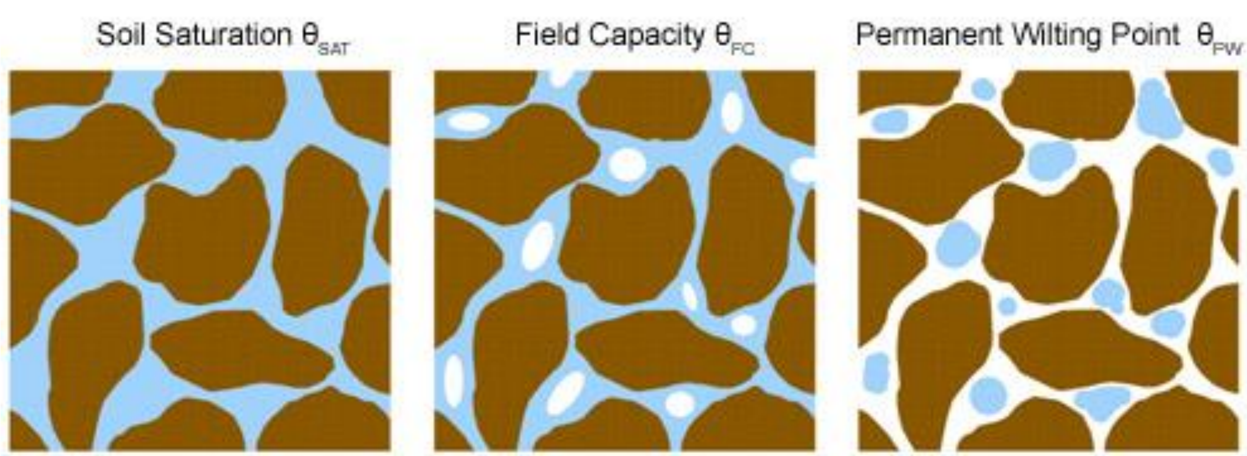


Figure G.1-4: Soil saturation, field capacity, and wilting point

G.1.5.3.2 Characteristics of Gravel

For the purpose of hydromodification management studies, it may be assumed that water moves freely through gravel, not limited by hydraulic properties of the gravel. For the purpose of calculating available volume, use porosity of 0.4, or void ratio of 0.67. Porosity is equal to void ratio divided by (1 + void ratio).

G.1.5.3.3 Additional Guidance for SDHM Users

The module titled "bioretention/rain garden element" may be used to represent bioretention or biofiltration BMPs. SDHM users using the available "bioretention/rain garden element" shall customize the soil media characteristics to use the parameters from Table G.1-6 above, and select "gravel" for gravel sublayers. All other input variables are project-specific. "Native infiltration" refers to infiltration from the bottom of the structural BMP into the native soil. This variable is project-specific, see Section G.1.5.1.

G.1.5.3.4 Additional Guidance for SWMM Users

The "bio-retention cell" LID control may be used to represent bioretention or biofiltration BMPs. Table G.1-7 provides parameters required for the standard "bio-retention cell" available in SWMM. The parameters are entered in the LID Control Editor.

Table G.1-7: Parameters for SWMM "Bio-Retention Cell" Module for Hydromodification Management Studies in San Diego

SWMM Parameter Name	Unit	Use in San Diego
Surface		
Berm Height also known as Storage Depth	inches	Project-specific
Vegetative Volume Fraction also known as Vegetative Cover Fraction	---	0
Surface Roughness	---	0 (this parameter is not applicable to bio-retention cell)
Surface Slope	---	0 (this parameter is not applicable to bio-retention cell)
Soil		
Thickness	inches	project-specific
Porosity	---	0.40
Field Capacity	---	0.2

SWMM Parameter Name	Unit	Use in San Diego
Wilting Point	---	0.1
Conductivity	Inches/hour	5
Conductivity Slope	---	5
Suction Head	inches	1.5
Storage		
Thickness also known as Height	inches	Project-specific
Void Ratio	---	0.67
Seepage Rate also known as Conductivity	Inches/hour	Conductivity from the storage layer refers to infiltration from the bottom of the structural BMP into the native soil. This variable is project-specific, see Section G.5.1. Use 0 if the bio-retention cell includes an impermeable liner
Clogging Factor	---	0
Underdrain		
Flow Coefficient Also known as Drain Coefficient	---	Project-specific
Flow Exponent Also known as Drain Exponent	---	Project-specific, typically 0.5
Offset Height Also known as Drain Offset Height	Inches	Project-specific

G.1.6 FLOW FREQUENCY AND DURATION

The continuous simulation model will generate a flow record corresponding to the frequency of the rainfall data input as its output. This flow record must then be processed to determine pre-development and post-project flow rates and durations. Compliance with hydromodification management requirements of this manual is achieved when results for flow duration meet the performance standards. The performance standard is as follows (also presented in Chapter 6 of this manual):

1. For flow rates ranging from 10 percent, 30 percent or 50 percent of the pre-development 2-year runoff event ($0.1Q_2$, $0.3Q_2$, or $0.5Q_2$) to the pre-development 10-year runoff event (Q_{10}), the post-project discharge rates and durations must not exceed the pre-development rates and

durations by more than 10 percent. The specific lower flow threshold will depend on the erosion susceptibility of the receiving stream for the project site (see Section 6.3.4).

To demonstrate that a flow control facility meets the hydromodification management performance standard, a flow duration summary must be generated and compared for pre-development and post-project conditions. The following guidelines shall be used for determining flow rates and durations.

G.1.6.1 Determining Flow Rates from Continuous Hourly Flow Output

Flow rates for hydromodification management studies in San Diego must be based on partial duration series analysis of the continuous hourly flow output. Partial duration series frequency calculations consider multiple storm events in a given year. To construct the partial duration series:

1. Parse the continuous hourly flow data into discrete runoff events. The following separation criteria may be used for separation of flow events: a new discrete event is designated when the flow falls below an artificially low flow value based on a fraction of the contributing watershed area (e.g., 0.002 to 0.005 cfs/acre) for a time period of 24 hours. Project applicants may consider other separation criteria provided the separation interval is not more than 24 hours and the criteria is clearly described in the submittal document.
2. Rank the peak flows from each discrete flow event, and compute the return interval or plotting position for each event.

Readers who are unfamiliar with how to compute the partial-duration series should consult reference books or online resources for additional information. For example, Hydrology for Engineers, by Linsley et all, 1982, discusses partial-duration series on pages 373-374 and computing recurrence intervals or plotting positions on page 359. Handbook of Applied Hydrology, by Chow, 1964, contains a detailed discussion of flow frequency analysis, including Annual Exceedance, Partial-Duration and Extreme Value series methods, in Chapter 8. The US Geological Survey (USGS) has several hydrologic study reports available online that use partial duration series statistics (see http://water.usgs.gov/ and http://water.usgs.gov/osw/bulletin17b/AGU_Langbein_1949.pdf).

Pre-development Q_2 and Q_{10} shall be determined from the partial duration analysis for the pre-development hourly flow record. Pre-development Q_{10} is the upper threshold of flow rates to be controlled in the post-project condition. The lower flow threshold is a fraction of the pre-development Q_2 determined based on the erosion susceptibility of the receiving stream. Simply multiply the pre-development Q_2 by the appropriate fraction (e.g., $0.1Q_2$) to determine the lower flow threshold.

G.1.6.2 Determining Flow Durations from Continuous Hourly Flow Output

Flow durations must be summarized within the range of flows to control. Flow duration statistics provide a simple summary of how often a particular flow rate is exceeded. To prepare this summary:

1. Rank the entire hourly runoff time series output.

2. Extract the portion of the ranked hourly time series output from the lower flow threshold to the upper flow threshold – this is the portion of the record to be summarized.
3. Divide the applicable portion of the record into 100 equal flow bins (compute the difference between the upper flow threshold (cfs) and lower flow threshold (cfs) and divide this value by 99 to establish the flow bin size).
4. Count the number of hours of flow that fall into each flow bin.

Both pre-development and post-project flow duration summary must be based on the entire length of the flow record. Compare the post-project flow duration summary to the pre-development flow duration summary to determine if it meets performance criteria for post-project flow rates and durations (criteria presented under Section G.1.6).

G.2 Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Management BMPs

Jurisdictional Update:

1. Due to the changes to the flow control performance standard (removal of flow frequency criteria and revision to flow duration criteria), sizing factors, which were developed under the 2007 MS4 Permit, may be retired from use. Designs based on sizing factors would be conservative compared to designs based on the revised flow control performance standard. Use of sizing factors is at the discretion of the FDD and EAD.

This section presents sizing factors for design of flow control structural BMPs based on the sizing factor method identified in Chapter 6.3.5.1. The sizing factors are re-printed from the "San Diego BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology," dated January 2012, prepared by Brown and Caldwell (herein "BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology"). The sizing factors are linked to the specific details and descriptions that were presented in the BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology, with limited options for modifications. The sizing factors were developed based on the 2007 MS4 Permit. Although the sizing factors were developed under the 2007 MS4 Permit, the unit runoff ratios and some sizing factors developed for flow control facility sizing may still be applied at the discretion of the FDD and EAD. Some of the original sizing factors developed based on the 2007 MS4 Permit and presented in the BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology are not compatible with new requirements of the 2013 MS4 Permit, and therefore are not included in this manual. The sizing factor method is intended for simple studies that do not include diversion, do not include significant offsite area draining through the project from upstream, and do not include offsite area downstream of the project area. Use of the sizing factors is limited to the specific structural BMPs described in this Appendix. Sizing factors are available for the following specific structural BMPs:

- Full infiltration condition:
    - **Infiltration**: sizing factors available for A and B soils represent a below-ground structure (dry well)
    - **Bioretention**: sizing factors available for A and B soils represent a bioretention area with engineered soil media and gravel storage layer, with no underdrain and no impermeable liner
- Partial infiltration condition:
    - **Biofiltration with partial retention**: sizing factors available for C and D soils represent a bioretention area with engineered soil media and gravel storage layer, with an underdrain, with gravel storage below the underdrain, with no impermeable liner
- No infiltration condition:

- **Biofiltration**: sizing factors available for C and D soils represent a bioretention area with engineered soil media and gravel storage layer, with an underdrain, without gravel storage below the underdrain, with no impermeable liner
- **Biofiltration (formerly known as "flow-through planter") with impermeable liner**: sizing factors available for C and D soils represent a biofiltration system with engineered soil media and gravel storage layer, with an underdrain, with or without gravel storage below the underdrain, with an impermeable liner

- Other:
  - **Cistern**: sizing factors available for A, B, C, or D soils represent a vessel with a low flow orifice outlet to meet the hydromodification management performance standard.

Sizing factors were created based on three rainfall basins: Lindbergh Field, Oceanside, and Lake Wohlford.

The following information is needed to use the sizing factors:

- Determine the appropriate rainfall basin for the project site from Figure G.2-1, Rainfall Basin Map
- Hydrologic soil group at the project site (use available information pertaining to existing underlying soil type such as soil maps published by the Natural Resources Conservation Service)
- Pre-development and post-project slope categories (low = 0% – 5%, moderate = 5% – 15%, steep = >15%)
- Area tributary to the structural BMP
- Area weighted runoff factor (C) for the area draining to the BMP from Table G.2-1. Note: runoff coefficients and adjustments presented in Appendices B.1 and B.2 are for pollutant control only and are not applicable for hydromodification management studies
- Fraction of Q2 to control (see Chapter 6.3.4)

When using the sizing factor method, Worksheet G.2-1 may be used to present the calculations of the required minimum areas and/or volumes of BMPs as applicable.

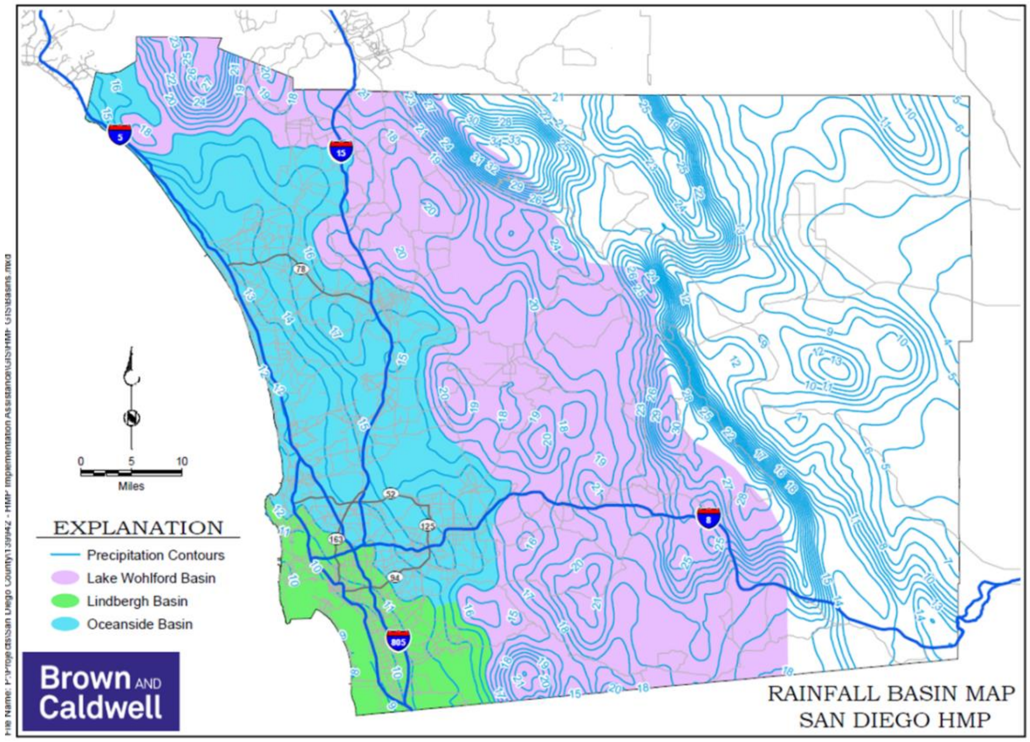


Figure G.2-1: Appropriate Rain Gauge for Project Sites

Table G.2-1: Runoff factors for surfaces draining to BMPs for Hydromodification Sizing Factor Method

Surface	Runoff Factor
Roofs	1.0
Concrete	1.0
Pervious Concrete	0.10
Porous Asphalt	0.10
Grouted Unit Pavers	1.0
Solid Unit Pavers on granular base, min. 3/16 inch joint space	0.20
Crushed Aggregate	0.10
Turf block	0.10
Amended, mulched soils	0.10
Landscape	0.10

Worksheet G.2-1: Sizing Factor Worksheet

Site Information			
Project Name:		Hydrologic Unit	
Project Applicant:		Rain: Gauge:	
Jurisdiction:		Total Project Area:	
Assessor's Parcel Number :		Low Flow Threshold:	
BMP Name:		BMP Type:	

Areas Draining to BMP						Sizing Factors			Minimum BMP Size		
DMA Name	Area (sf)	Soil Type	Pre-Project Slope	Post Project Surface Type	Runoff Factor (From Table G.2-1)	Surface Area	Surface Volume	Subsurface Volume	Surface Area (sf)	Surface Volume (cf)	Subsurface Volume (cf)
Total DMA Area								Minimum BMP Size*			
								Proposed BMP Size*			

*Minimum BMP Size = Total of rows above.

*Proposed BMP Size ≥ Minimum BMP size.

G.2.1 Unit Runoff Ratios

Table G.2-2 presents unit runoff ratios for calculating pre-development Q_2, to be used when applicable to determine the lower flow threshold for low flow orifice sizing for biofiltration with partial retention, biofiltration, biofiltration with impermeable liner, or cistern BMPs. There is no low flow orifice in the infiltration BMP or bioretention BMP. The unit runoff ratios are re-printed from the BMP Sizing Calculator methodology. Unit runoff ratios for "urban" and "impervious" cover categories were not transferred to this manual due to the requirement to control runoff to pre-development condition (see Chapter 6.3.3).

How to use the unit runoff ratios:

Obtain unit runoff ratio from Table G.2-2 based on the project's rainfall basin, hydrologic soil group, and pre-development slope (for redevelopment projects, pre-development slope may be considered if historic topographic information is available, otherwise use pre-project slope). Multiply the area tributary to the structural BMP (A, acres) by the unit runoff ratio (Q2, cfs/acre) to determine the pre-development Q2 to determine the lower flow threshold, to use for low flow orifice sizing.

Table G.2-2: Unit Runoff Ratios for Sizing Factor Method

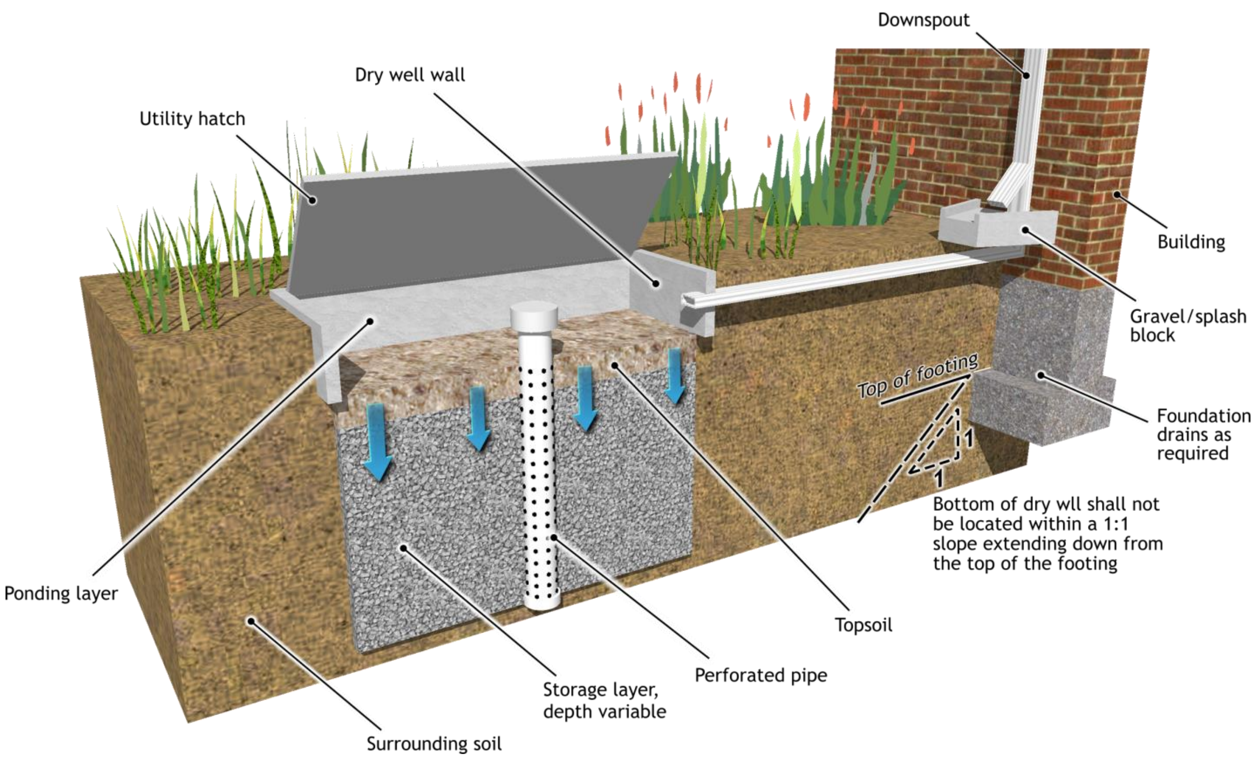
Unit Runoff Ratios for Sizing Factor Method					
Rain Gauge	Soil	Cover	Slope	Q_2 (cfs/acre)	Q_{10} (cfs/ac)
Lake Wohlford	A	Scrub	Low	0.136	0.369
Lake Wohlford	A	Scrub	Moderate	0.207	0.416
Lake Wohlford	A	Scrub	Steep	0.244	0.47
Lake Wohlford	B	Scrub	Low	0.208	0.414
Lake Wohlford	B	Scrub	Moderate	0.227	0.448
Lake Wohlford	B	Scrub	Steep	0.253	0.482
Lake Wohlford	C	Scrub	Low	0.245	0.458
Lake Wohlford	C	Scrub	Moderate	0.253	0.481
Lake Wohlford	C	Scrub	Steep	0.302	0.517
Lake Wohlford	D	Scrub	Low	0.253	0.48
Lake Wohlford	D	Scrub	Moderate	0.292	0.516

Unit Runoff Ratios for Sizing Factor Method					
Rain Gauge	Soil	Cover	Slope	Q_2 (cfs/acre)	Q_{10} (cfs/ac)
Lake Wohlford	D	Scrub	Steep	0.351	0.538
Oceanside	A	Scrub	Low	0.035	0.32
Oceanside	A	Scrub	Moderate	0.093	0.367
Oceanside	A	Scrub	Steep	0.163	0.42
Oceanside	B	Scrub	Low	0.08	0.365
Oceanside	B	Scrub	Moderate	0.134	0.4
Oceanside	B	Scrub	Steep	0.181	0.433
Oceanside	C	Scrub	Low	0.146	0.411
Oceanside	C	Scrub	Moderate	0.185	0.433
Oceanside	C	Scrub	Steep	0.217	0.458
Oceanside	D	Scrub	Low	0.175	0.434
Oceanside	D	Scrub	Moderate	0.212	0.455
Oceanside	D	Scrub	Steep	0.244	0.571
Lindbergh	A	Scrub	Low	0.003	0.081
Lindbergh	A	Scrub	Moderate	0.018	0.137
Lindbergh	A	Scrub	Steep	0.061	0.211
Lindbergh	B	Scrub	Low	0.011	0.134
Lindbergh	B	Scrub	Moderate	0.033	0.174
Lindbergh	B	Scrub	Steep	0.077	0.23
Lindbergh	C	Scrub	Low	0.028	0.19
Lindbergh	C	Scrub	Moderate	0.075	0.232
Lindbergh	C	Scrub	Steep	0.108	0.274
Lindbergh	D	Scrub	Low	0.05	0.228
Lindbergh	D	Scrub	Moderate	0.104	0.266
Lindbergh	D	Scrub	Steep	0.143	0.319

G.2.2 Sizing Factors for "Infiltration" BMP

Table G.2-3 presents sizing factors for calculating the required surface area (A) and volume (V1) for an infiltration BMP. There is no underdrain and therefore no low flow orifice in the infiltration BMP. Sizing factors were developed for hydrologic soil groups A and B only. This BMP is not applicable in hydrologic soil groups C and D. The infiltration BMP is a below-ground structure (dry well) that consists of three layers:

- Ponding layer: a nominal 6-inch ponding layer should be included below the access hatch to allow for water spreading and infiltration during intense storms.
- Soil layer [topsoil layer]: 12 inches of soil should be included to remove pollutants.
- Free draining layer [storage layer]: The drywell is sized assuming a 6-foot deep free draining layer. However, designers could use shallower facility depths [provided the minimum volume and surface area are met].



Infiltration Facility BMP Example Illustration

Reference: "San Diego BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology," prepared by Brown and Caldwell, dated January 2012

How to use the sizing factors for flow control BMP Sizing:

Obtain sizing factors from Table G.2-3 based on the project's lower flow threshold fraction of Q2, hydrologic soil group, pre-development slope, and rain gauge (rainfall basin). Multiply the area tributary to the structural BMP (A, square feet) by the area weighted runoff factor (C, unitless) (see Table G.2-1) by the sizing factors to determine the required surface area (A, square feet) and volume (V1, cubic feet) for the infiltration BMP. The civil engineer shall provide the necessary volume and surface area of the BMP on the plans.

Additional steps to use this BMP as a combined pollutant control and flow control BMP:

To use this BMP as a combined pollutant control and flow control BMP, determine the size of the BMP using the sizing factors, then refer to Appendix B.4 to check whether the BMP meets performance standards for infiltration for pollutant control. If necessary, increase the surface area to meet the drawdown requirement for pollutant control.

Table G.2-3: Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Infiltration BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Infiltration BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V_1	V_2
$0.5Q_2$	A	Flat	Lindbergh	0.040	0.1040	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.040	0.1040	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Steep	Lindbergh	0.035	0.0910	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Flat	Lindbergh	0.058	0.1495	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.055	0.1430	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Steep	Lindbergh	0.050	0.1300	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	D	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	D	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	D	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Flat	Oceanside	0.045	0.1170	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Moderate	Oceanside	0.045	0.1170	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Steep	Oceanside	0.040	0.1040	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Flat	Oceanside	0.065	0.1690	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Moderate	Oceanside	0.065	0.1690	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Steep	Oceanside	0.060	0.1560	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	D	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Infiltration BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V_1	V_2
$0.5Q_2$	D	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	D	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Flat	L Wohlford	0.050	0.1300	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.050	0.1300	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Steep	L Wohlford	0.040	0.1040	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Flat	L Wohlford	0.078	0.2015	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.075	0.1950	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Steep	L Wohlford	0.065	0.1690	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	D	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	D	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	D	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Flat	Lindbergh	0.040	0.1040	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.040	0.1040	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Steep	Lindbergh	0.035	0.0910	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Flat	Lindbergh	0.058	0.1495	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.055	0.1430	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Steep	Lindbergh	0.050	0.1300	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	D	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	D	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	D	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Flat	Oceanside	0.045	0.1170	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Moderate	Oceanside	0.045	0.1170	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Steep	Oceanside	0.040	0.1040	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Flat	Oceanside	0.065	0.1690	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Moderate	Oceanside	0.065	0.1690	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Steep	Oceanside	0.060	0.1560	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Infiltration BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V_1	V_2
$0.3Q_2$	C	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	D	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	D	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	D	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Flat	L Wohlford	0.050	0.1300	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.050	0.1300	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Steep	L Wohlford	0.040	0.1040	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Flat	L Wohlford	0.078	0.2015	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.075	0.1950	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Steep	L Wohlford	0.065	0.1690	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	D	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	D	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	D	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Flat	Lindbergh	0.040	0.1040	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.040	0.1040	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Steep	Lindbergh	0.035	0.0910	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Flat	Lindbergh	0.058	0.1495	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.055	0.1430	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Steep	Lindbergh	0.050	0.1300	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	D	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	D	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	D	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Flat	Oceanside	0.045	0.1170	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Moderate	Oceanside	0.045	0.1170	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Steep	Oceanside	0.040	0.1040	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Flat	Oceanside	0.065	0.1690	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Moderate	Oceanside	0.065	0.1690	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Steep	Oceanside	0.060	0.1560	N/A

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Infiltration BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V_1	V_2
$0.1Q_2$	C	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	D	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	D	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	D	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Flat	L Wohlford	0.050	0.1300	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.050	0.1300	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Steep	L Wohlford	0.040	0.1040	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Flat	L Wohlford	0.078	0.2015	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.075	0.1950	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Steep	L Wohlford	0.065	0.1690	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	D	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	D	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	D	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A

Q_2 = 2-year pre-project flow rate based upon partial duration analysis of long-term hourly rainfall records

A = Surface area sizing factor for flow control

V_1 = Infiltration volume sizing factor for flow control

Definitions for "N/A"

- Soil groups A and B: N/A in column V2 means there is no V2 element in this infiltration BMP for soil groups A and B
- Soil groups C and D: N/A across all elements (A, V1, V2) means sizing factors were not developed for an infiltration BMP for soil groups C and D

G.2.3 Sizing Factors for Bioretention

Table G.2-4 presents sizing factors for calculating the required surface area (A) and surface volume (V1) for the bioretention BMP. The bioretention BMP consists of two layers:

- Ponding layer: 10-inches active storage, [minimum] 2-inches of freeboard above overflow relief
- Growing medium: 18-inches of soil [bioretention soil media]

This BMP is applicable in soil groups A and B. This BMP does not include an underdrain or a low flow orifice. This BMP does not include an impermeable layer at the bottom of the facility to prevent infiltration into underlying soils, regardless of hydrologic soil group. If a facility is to be lined, the designer must use the sizing factors for biofiltration with impermeable layer (formerly known as "flow-through planter").

How to use the sizing factors for flow control BMP Sizing:

Obtain sizing factors from Table G.2-4 based on the project's lower flow threshold fraction of Q2, hydrologic soil group, pre-development slope, and rain gauge (rainfall basin). Multiply the area tributary to the structural BMP (A, square feet) by the area weighted runoff factor (C, unitless) (see Table G.2-1) by the sizing factors to determine the required surface area (A, square feet) and surface volume (V1, cubic feet). Note the surface volume is the ponding layer. The BMP must also include 18 inches of bioretention soil media which does not contribute to V1. The civil engineer shall provide the necessary volume and surface area of the BMP on the plans.

Additional steps to use this BMP as a combined pollutant control and flow control BMP:

To use this BMP as a combined pollutant control and flow control BMP, determine the size of the BMP using the sizing factors, then refer to Appendix B.4 to check whether the BMP meets performance standards for infiltration for pollutant control. If necessary, adjust the surface area, depth of storage layer, or depth of growing medium as needed to meet pollutant control standards.

Table G.2-4: Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Bioretention BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Bioretention BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V_1	V_2
$0.5Q_2$	A	Flat	Lindbergh	0.060	0.0500	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.055	0.0458	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Steep	Lindbergh	0.045	0.0375	N/A

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Bioretention BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V_1	V_2
$0.5Q_2$	B	Flat	Lindbergh	0.093	0.0771	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.085	0.0708	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Steep	Lindbergh	0.065	0.0542	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	D	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	D	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	D	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Flat	Oceanside	0.070	0.0583	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Moderate	Oceanside	0.065	0.0542	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Steep	Oceanside	0.060	0.0500	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Flat	Oceanside	0.098	0.0813	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Moderate	Oceanside	0.090	0.0750	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Steep	Oceanside	0.075	0.0625	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	D	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	D	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	D	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Flat	L Wohlford	0.050	0.0417	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.045	0.0375	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Steep	L Wohlford	0.040	0.0333	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Flat	L Wohlford	0.048	0.0396	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.045	0.0375	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Steep	L Wohlford	0.040	0.0333	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	D	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	D	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	D	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Bioretention BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V_1	V_2
$0.3Q_2$	A	Flat	Lindbergh	0.060	0.0500	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.055	0.0458	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Steep	Lindbergh	0.045	0.0375	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Flat	Lindbergh	0.098	0.0813	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.090	0.0750	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Steep	Lindbergh	0.070	0.0583	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	D	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	D	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	D	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Flat	Oceanside	0.070	0.0583	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Moderate	Oceanside	0.065	0.0542	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Steep	Oceanside	0.060	0.0500	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Flat	Oceanside	0.098	0.0813	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Moderate	Oceanside	0.090	0.0750	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Steep	Oceanside	0.075	0.0625	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	D	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	D	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	D	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Flat	L Wohlford	0.050	0.0417	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.045	0.0375	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Steep	L Wohlford	0.040	0.0333	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Flat	L Wohlford	0.060	0.0500	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.055	0.0458	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Steep	L Wohlford	0.045	0.0375	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Bioretention BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V_1	V_2
$0.3Q_2$	D	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	D	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	D	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Flat	Lindbergh	0.060	0.0500	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.055	0.0458	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Steep	Lindbergh	0.045	0.0375	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Flat	Lindbergh	0.100	0.0833	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.095	0.0792	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Steep	Lindbergh	0.080	0.0667	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	D	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	D	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	D	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Flat	Oceanside	0.070	0.0583	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Moderate	Oceanside	0.065	0.0542	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Steep	Oceanside	0.060	0.0500	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Flat	Oceanside	0.103	0.0854	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Moderate	Oceanside	0.090	0.0750	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Steep	Oceanside	0.075	0.0625	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	D	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	D	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	D	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Flat	L Wohlford	0.050	0.0417	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.045	0.0375	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Steep	L Wohlford	0.040	0.0333	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Flat	L Wohlford	0.090	0.0750	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.085	0.0708	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Steep	L Wohlford	0.065	0.0542	N/A

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Bioretention BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V_1	V_2
$0.1Q_2$	C	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	D	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	D	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	D	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A

Q_2 = 2-year pre-project flow rate based upon partial duration analysis of long-term hourly rainfall records

A = Surface area sizing factor for flow control

V_1 = Surface volume sizing factor for flow control

Definitions for "N/A"

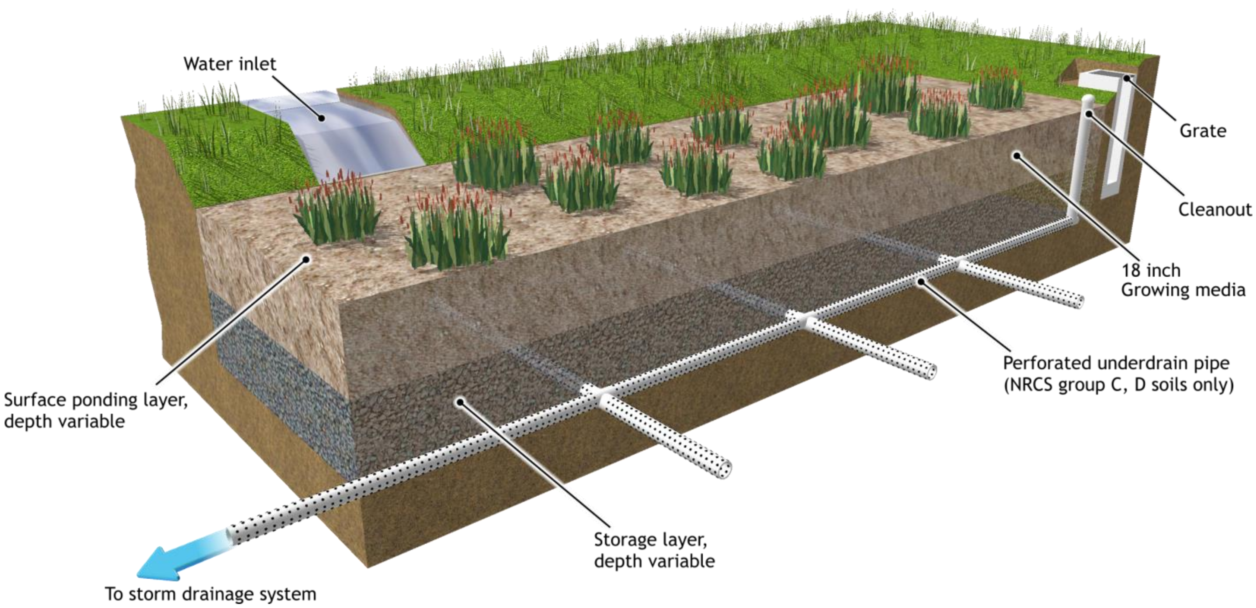
- Soil groups A and B: N/A in column V2 means there is no V2 element in this bioretention BMP for soil groups A and B
- Soil groups C and D: N/A in all elements (A, V1, V2) for soil groups C and D means sizing factors developed for "bioretention" in soil groups C and D under the 2007 MS4 Permit are not applicable in the "bioretention" category under the 2013 MS4 Permit because they were developed with the assumption that an underdrain is operating. Refer to Appendix G.2.4, Sizing Factors for Biofiltration with Partial Retention and Biofiltration

G.2.4 Sizing Factors for Biofiltration with Partial Retention and Biofiltration

Table G.2-5 presents sizing factors for calculating the required surface area (A), surface volume (V1), and sub-surface volume (V2) for a biofiltration with partial retention and biofiltration BMP. The BMPs consist of three layers:

- Ponding layer: 10-inches active storage, [minimum] 2-inches of freeboard above overflow relief
- Growing medium: 18-inches of soil [bioretention soil media]
- Storage layer: 30-inches of gravel at 40 percent porosity [18 inches active storage above underdrain is required, additional dead storage depth below underdrain is optional and can vary]

This BMP is applicable in soil groups C and D. This BMP includes an underdrain with a low flow orifice 18 inches (1.5 feet) below the bottom of the growing medium. This BMP can include additional dead storage below the underdrain. This BMP does not include an impermeable layer at the bottom of the facility to prevent infiltration into underlying soils, regardless of hydrologic soil group. If a facility is to be lined, the designer must use the sizing factors for biofiltration with impermeable liner (formerly known as "flow-through planter").



Biofiltration BMP Example Illustration

Reference: "San Diego BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology," prepared by Brown and Caldwell, dated January 2012

How to use the sizing factors for flow control BMP Sizing:

Obtain sizing factors from Table G.2-5 based on the project's lower flow threshold fraction of Q2, hydrologic soil group, pre-development slope, and rain gauge (rainfall basin). Multiply the area tributary to the structural BMP (A, square feet) by the area weighted runoff factor (C, unitless) (see Table G.2-1) by the sizing factors to determine the required surface area (A, square feet), surface volume (V1, cubic feet), and sub-surface volume (V2, cubic feet). Select a low flow orifice for the underdrain that will discharge the lower flow threshold flow when there is 1.5 feet of head over the underdrain orifice. The civil engineer shall provide the necessary volume and surface area of the BMP and the underdrain and orifice detail on the plans.

Additional steps to use this BMP as a combined pollutant control and flow control BMP:

To use this BMP as a combined pollutant control and flow control BMP, determine the size of the BMP using the sizing factors. For BMPs without dead storage below the underdrain, then refer to Appendix B.5 and Appendix F to check whether the BMP meets performance standards for biofiltration for pollutant control. If necessary, adjust the surface area, depth of storage layer, or depth of growing medium as needed to meet pollutant control standards. For BMPs with dead storage below the underdrain, refer to Appendix B.4 to determine the portion of the DCV to be infiltrated for pollutant control, then Appendix B.5 and Appendix F to check whether the BMP meets performance standards for biofiltration for pollutant control for the balance of the DCV. If necessary, adjust the surface area, depth of storage layer, or depth of growing medium as needed to meet pollutant control standards.

Table G.2-5: Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Biofiltration with Partial Retention and Biofiltration BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Biofiltration with Partial Retention and Biofiltration BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V_1	V_2
$0.5Q_2$	A	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Flat	Lindbergh	0.100	0.0833	0.0600
$0.5Q_2$	C	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.100	0.0833	0.0600
$0.5Q_2$	C	Steep	Lindbergh	0.075	0.0625	0.0450
$0.5Q_2$	D	Flat	Lindbergh	0.080	0.0667	0.0480

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Biofiltration with Partial Retention and Biofiltration BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V_1	V_2
$0.5Q_2$	D	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.080	0.0667	0.0480
$0.5Q_2$	D	Steep	Lindbergh	0.060	0.0500	0.0360
$0.5Q_2$	A	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Flat	Oceanside	0.075	0.0625	0.0450
$0.5Q_2$	C	Moderate	Oceanside	0.075	0.0625	0.0450
$0.5Q_2$	C	Steep	Oceanside	0.060	0.0500	0.0360
$0.5Q_2$	D	Flat	Oceanside	0.065	0.0542	0.0390
$0.5Q_2$	D	Moderate	Oceanside	0.065	0.0542	0.0390
$0.5Q_2$	D	Steep	Oceanside	0.050	0.0417	0.0300
$0.5Q_2$	A	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Flat	L Wohlford	0.065	0.0542	0.0390
$0.5Q_2$	C	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.065	0.0542	0.0390
$0.5Q_2$	C	Steep	L Wohlford	0.050	0.0417	0.0300
$0.5Q_2$	D	Flat	L Wohlford	0.055	0.0458	0.0330
$0.5Q_2$	D	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.055	0.0458	0.0330
$0.5Q_2$	D	Steep	L Wohlford	0.045	0.0375	0.0270
$0.3Q_2$	A	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Flat	Lindbergh	0.110	0.0917	0.0660

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Biofiltration with Partial Retention and Biofiltration BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V_1	V_2
$0.3Q_2$	C	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.110	0.0917	0.0660
$0.3Q_2$	C	Steep	Lindbergh	0.085	0.0708	0.0510
$0.3Q_2$	D	Flat	Lindbergh	0.100	0.0833	0.0600
$0.3Q_2$	D	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.100	0.0833	0.0600
$0.3Q_2$	D	Steep	Lindbergh	0.070	0.0583	0.0420
$0.3Q_2$	A	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Flat	Oceanside	0.100	0.0833	0.0600
$0.3Q_2$	C	Moderate	Oceanside	0.100	0.0833	0.0600
$0.3Q_2$	C	Steep	Oceanside	0.080	0.0667	0.0480
$0.3Q_2$	D	Flat	Oceanside	0.085	0.0708	0.0510
$0.3Q_2$	D	Moderate	Oceanside	0.085	0.0708	0.0510
$0.3Q_2$	D	Steep	Oceanside	0.065	0.0542	0.0390
$0.3Q_2$	A	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Flat	L Wohlford	0.075	0.0625	0.0450
$0.3Q_2$	C	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.075	0.0625	0.0450
$0.3Q_2$	C	Steep	L Wohlford	0.060	0.0500	0.0360
$0.3Q_2$	D	Flat	L Wohlford	0.065	0.0542	0.0390
$0.3Q_2$	D	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.065	0.0542	0.0390
$0.3Q_2$	D	Steep	L Wohlford	0.050	0.0417	0.0300
$0.1Q_2$	A	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Biofiltration with Partial Retention and Biofiltration BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V_1	V_2
$0.1Q_2$	B	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Flat	Lindbergh	0.145	0.1208	0.0870
$0.1Q_2$	C	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.145	0.1208	0.0870
$0.1Q_2$	C	Steep	Lindbergh	0.120	0.1000	0.0720
$0.1Q_2$	D	Flat	Lindbergh	0.160	0.1333	0.0960
$0.1Q_2$	D	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.160	0.1333	0.0960
$0.1Q_2$	D	Steep	Lindbergh	0.115	0.0958	0.0690
$0.1Q_2$	A	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Flat	Oceanside	0.130	0.1083	0.0780
$0.1Q_2$	C	Moderate	Oceanside	0.130	0.1083	0.0780
$0.1Q_2$	C	Steep	Oceanside	0.110	0.0917	0.0660
$0.1Q_2$	D	Flat	Oceanside	0.130	0.1083	0.0780
$0.1Q_2$	D	Moderate	Oceanside	0.130	0.1083	0.0780
$0.1Q_2$	D	Steep	Oceanside	0.065	0.0542	0.0390
$0.1Q_2$	A	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Flat	L Wohlford	0.110	0.0917	0.0660
$0.1Q_2$	C	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.110	0.0917	0.0660
$0.1Q_2$	C	Steep	L Wohlford	0.090	0.0750	0.0540
$0.1Q_2$	D	Flat	L Wohlford	0.100	0.0833	0.0600
$0.1Q_2$	D	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.100	0.0833	0.0600
$0.1Q_2$	D	Steep	L Wohlford	0.075	0.0625	0.0450

Q_2 = 2-year pre-project flow rate based upon partial duration analysis of long-term hourly rainfall records

A = Surface area sizing factor for flow control

V_1 = Surface volume sizing factor for flow control

V_2 = Subsurface volume sizing factor for flow control

Definitions for "N/A"

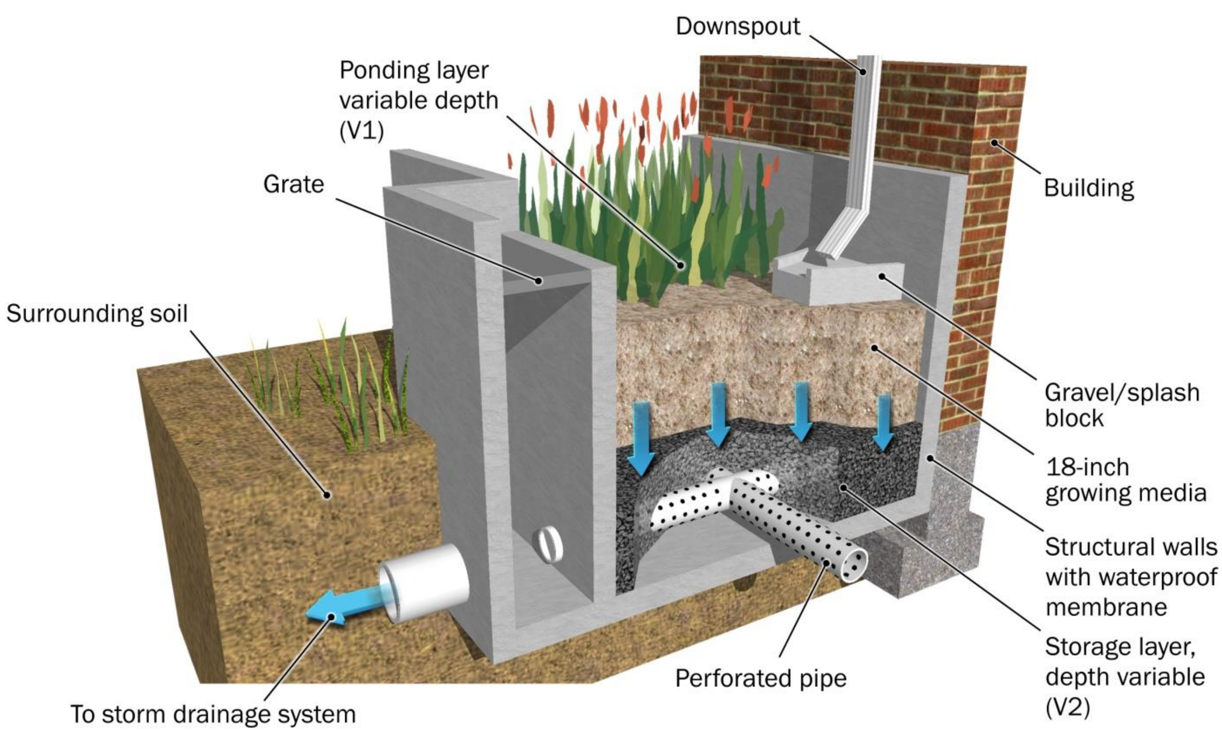
- Soil groups A and B: N/A in all elements (A, V1, V2) for soil groups A and B means sizing factors were not developed for biofiltration (i.e., with an underdrain) for soil groups A and B. If no underdrain is proposed, refer to Appendix G.2.3, Sizing Factors for Bioretention. If an underdrain is proposed, use project-specific continuous simulation modeling.

G.2.5 Sizing Factors for Biofiltration with Impermeable Liner

Table G.2-6 presents sizing factors for calculating the required surface area (A), surface volume (V1), and sub-surface volume (V2) for a biofiltration BMP with impermeable liner (formerly known as flow-through planter). The BMP consists of three layers:

- Ponding layer: 10-inches active storage, [minimum] 2-inches of freeboard above overflow relief
- Growing medium: 18-inches of soil [bioretention soil media]
- Storage layer: 30-inches of gravel at 40 percent porosity [18 inches active storage above underdrain is required, additional dead storage depth below underdrain is optional and can vary]

This BMP includes an underdrain with a low flow orifice 18 inches (1.5 feet) below the bottom of the growing medium. This BMP includes an impermeable liner to prevent infiltration into underlying soils.



Biofiltration with impermeable liner BMP Example Illustration

Reference: "San Diego BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology," prepared by Brown and Caldwell, dated January 2012

How to use the sizing factors for flow control BMP Sizing:

Obtain sizing factors from Table G.2-6 based on the project's lower flow threshold fraction of Q2, hydrologic soil group, pre-development slope, and rain gauge (rainfall basin). Multiply the area tributary to the structural BMP (A, square feet) by the area weighted runoff factor (C, unitless) (see Table G.2-1) by the sizing factors to determine the required surface area (A, square feet), surface volume (V1, cubic feet), and sub-surface volume (V2, cubic feet). Select a low flow orifice for the underdrain that will discharge the lower flow threshold flow when there is 1.5 feet of head over the underdrain orifice. The civil engineer shall provide the necessary volume and surface area of the BMP and the underdrain and orifice detail on the plans.

Additional steps to use this BMP as a combined pollutant control and flow control BMP:

To use this BMP as a combined pollutant control and flow control BMP, determine the size using the sizing factors, then refer to Appendix B.5 and Appendix F to check whether the BMP meets performance standards for biofiltration for pollutant control. If necessary, adjust the surface area, depth of growing medium, or depth of storage layer as needed to meet pollutant control standards.

Table G.2-6: Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Biofiltration BMPs (formerly known as Flow-Through Planters) Designed Using Sizing Factor Method

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Biofiltration with Impermeable Liner BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V_1	V_2
$0.5Q_2$	A	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Flat	Lindbergh	0.115	0.0958	0.0690
$0.5Q_2$	C	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.115	0.0958	0.0690
$0.5Q_2$	C	Steep	Lindbergh	0.080	0.0667	0.0480
$0.5Q_2$	D	Flat	Lindbergh	0.085	0.0708	0.0510
$0.5Q_2$	D	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.085	0.0708	0.0510
$0.5Q_2$	D	Steep	Lindbergh	0.065	0.0542	0.0390
$0.5Q_2$	A	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Biofiltration with Impermeable Liner BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V_1	V_2
$0.5Q_2$	B	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Flat	Oceanside	0.075	0.0625	0.0450
$0.5Q_2$	C	Moderate	Oceanside	0.075	0.0625	0.0450
$0.5Q_2$	C	Steep	Oceanside	0.065	0.0542	0.0390
$0.5Q_2$	D	Flat	Oceanside	0.070	0.0583	0.0420
$0.5Q_2$	D	Moderate	Oceanside	0.070	0.0583	0.0420
$0.5Q_2$	D	Steep	Oceanside	0.050	0.0417	0.0300
$0.5Q_2$	A	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Flat	L Wohlford	0.070	0.0583	0.0420
$0.5Q_2$	C	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.070	0.0583	0.0420
$0.5Q_2$	C	Steep	L Wohlford	0.050	0.0417	0.0300
$0.5Q_2$	D	Flat	L Wohlford	0.055	0.0458	0.0330
$0.5Q_2$	D	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.055	0.0458	0.0330
$0.5Q_2$	D	Steep	L Wohlford	0.045	0.0375	0.0270
$0.3Q_2$	A	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Flat	Lindbergh	0.130	0.1083	0.0780
$0.3Q_2$	C	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.130	0.1083	0.0780
$0.3Q_2$	C	Steep	Lindbergh	0.100	0.0833	0.0600
$0.3Q_2$	D	Flat	Lindbergh	0.105	0.0875	0.0630
$0.3Q_2$	D	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.105	0.0875	0.0630
$0.3Q_2$	D	Steep	Lindbergh	0.075	0.0625	0.0450

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Biofiltration with Impermeable Liner BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V_1	V_2
$0.3Q_2$	A	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Flat	Oceanside	0.105	0.0875	0.0630
$0.3Q_2$	C	Moderate	Oceanside	0.105	0.0875	0.0630
$0.3Q_2$	C	Steep	Oceanside	0.085	0.0708	0.0510
$0.3Q_2$	D	Flat	Oceanside	0.090	0.0750	0.0540
$0.3Q_2$	D	Moderate	Oceanside	0.090	0.0750	0.0540
$0.3Q_2$	D	Steep	Oceanside	0.070	0.0583	0.0420
$0.3Q_2$	A	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Flat	L Wohlford	0.085	0.0708	0.0510
$0.3Q_2$	C	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.085	0.0708	0.0510
$0.3Q_2$	C	Steep	L Wohlford	0.060	0.0500	0.0360
$0.3Q_2$	D	Flat	L Wohlford	0.065	0.0542	0.0390
$0.3Q_2$	D	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.065	0.0542	0.0390
$0.3Q_2$	D	Steep	L Wohlford	0.050	0.0417	0.0300
$0.1Q_2$	A	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Flat	Lindbergh	0.250	0.2083	0.1500
$0.1Q_2$	C	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.250	0.2083	0.1500
$0.1Q_2$	C	Steep	Lindbergh	0.185	0.1542	0.1110

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Biofiltration with Impermeable Liner BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V_1	V_2
$0.1Q_2$	D	Flat	Lindbergh	0.200	0.1667	0.1200
$0.1Q_2$	D	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.200	0.1667	0.1200
$0.1Q_2$	D	Steep	Lindbergh	0.130	0.1083	0.0780
$0.1Q_2$	A	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Flat	Oceanside	0.190	0.1583	0.1140
$0.1Q_2$	C	Moderate	Oceanside	0.190	0.1583	0.1140
$0.1Q_2$	C	Steep	Oceanside	0.140	0.1167	0.0840
$0.1Q_2$	D	Flat	Oceanside	0.160	0.1333	0.0960
$0.1Q_2$	D	Moderate	Oceanside	0.160	0.1333	0.0960
$0.1Q_2$	D	Steep	Oceanside	0.105	0.0875	0.0630
$0.1Q_2$	A	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Flat	L Wohlford	0.135	0.1125	0.0810
$0.1Q_2$	C	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.135	0.1125	0.0810
$0.1Q_2$	C	Steep	L Wohlford	0.105	0.0875	0.0630
$0.1Q_2$	D	Flat	L Wohlford	0.110	0.0917	0.0660
$0.1Q_2$	D	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.110	0.0917	0.0660
$0.1Q_2$	D	Steep	L Wohlford	0.080	0.0667	0.0480

Q_2 = 2-year pre-project flow rate based upon partial duration analysis of long-term hourly rainfall records

A = Surface area sizing factor for flow control

V_1 = Surface volume sizing factor for flow control

V_2 = Subsurface volume sizing factor for flow control

Definitions for "N/A"

- Soil groups A and B: N/A in all elements (A, V1, V2) for soil groups A and B means sizing factors were not developed for biofiltration (i.e., with an underdrain) for soil groups A and B. If no underdrain is proposed, refer to Appendix G.2.3, Sizing Factors for Bioretention. If an underdrain is proposed, use project-specific continuous simulation modeling.

G.2.6 Sizing Factors for "Cistern" BMP

Table G.2-7 presents sizing factors for calculating the required volume (V1) for a cistern BMP. In this context, a "cistern" is a detention facility that stores runoff and releases it at a controlled rate. A cistern can be a component of a harvest and use system, however the sizing factor method will not account for any retention occurring in the system. The sizing factors were developed assuming runoff is released from the cistern. The sizing factors presented in this section are to meet the hydromodification management performance standard only. The cistern BMP is based on the following assumptions:

- Cistern configuration: The cistern is modeled as a 4-foot tall vessel. However, designers could use other configurations (different cistern heights), as long as the lower outlet orifice is sized to properly restrict outflows and the minimum required volume is provided.
- Cistern upper outlet: The upper outlet from the cistern would consist of a weir or other flow control structure with the overflow invert set at an elevation of 7/8 of the water height associated with the required volume of the cistern – V1. For the assumed 4-foot water depth in the cistern associated with the sizing factor analysis, the overflow invert is assumed to be located at an elevation of 3.5 feet above the bottom of the cistern. The overflow weir would be sized to pass the peak design flow based on the tributary drainage area.

How to use the sizing factors:

Obtain sizing factors from Table G.2-7 based on the project's lower flow threshold fraction of Q_2, hydrologic soil group, pre-development slope, and rain gauge (rainfall basin). Multiply the area tributary to the structural BMP (A, square feet) by the area weighted runoff factor (C, unitless) (see Table G.2-1) by the sizing factors to determine the required volume (V_1, cubic feet). Select a low flow orifice that will discharge the lower flow threshold flow when there is 4 feet of head over the lower outlet orifice (or adjusted head as appropriate if the cistern configuration is not 4 feet tall). The civil engineer shall provide the necessary volume of the BMP and the lower outlet orifice detail on the plans.

Additional steps to use this BMP as a combined pollutant control and flow control BMP:

A cistern could be a component of a full retention, partial retention, or no retention BMP depending on how the outflow is disposed. However use of the sizing factor method for design of the cistern in a combined pollutant control and flow control system is not recommended. The sizing factor method for designing a cistern does not account for any retention or storage occurring in BMPs combined with the cistern (i.e., cistern sized using sizing factors may be larger than necessary because sizing factor method does not recognize volume losses occurring in other elements of a combined system). Furthermore when the cistern is designed using the sizing factor method, the cistern outflow must be set to the low flow threshold flow for the drainage area, which may be inconsistent with requirements for other elements of a combined system. To optimize a system in which a cistern provides temporary storage for runoff to be either used onsite (harvest and use), infiltrated, or biofiltered, project-specific continuous simulation modeling is recommended. Refer to Sections 5.6 and 6.3.6.

Table G.2-7: Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Cistern Facilities Designed Using Sizing Factor Method

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Cistern Facilities Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V_1	V_2
$0.5Q_2$	A	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1200	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1000	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1000	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	0.3900	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	0.2000	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1200	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1200	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1200	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1000	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	D	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1000	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	D	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1000	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	D	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	0.0800	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	0.1600	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	0.1400	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	0.1200	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	0.1900	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	0.1600	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	0.1400	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	0.1400	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	0.1400	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	0.1200	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	D	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	0.1200	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	D	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	0.1200	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	D	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	0.1000	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1800	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1400	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	A	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	0.0800	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	0.2100	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	B	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	0.2000	N/A

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Cistern Facilities Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V_1	V_2
$0.5Q_2$	B	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1400	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1400	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1400	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	C	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1000	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	D	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1000	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	D	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1000	N/A
$0.5Q_2$	D	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	0.0800	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1200	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1000	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1000	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	0.5900	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	0.3600	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1800	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1800	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1800	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1400	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	D	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1400	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	D	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1400	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	D	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	0.0800	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	0.1600	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	0.1400	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	0.1200	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	0.2200	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	0.1800	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	0.1600	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	0.1600	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	0.1600	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	0.1400	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	D	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	0.1400	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	D	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	0.1400	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	D	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	0.1200	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1800	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1400	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	A	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	0.0800	N/A

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Cistern Facilities Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V_1	V_2
$0.3Q_2$	B	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	0.2600	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	0.2400	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	B	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1800	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1800	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1800	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	C	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1400	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	D	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1400	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	D	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1400	N/A
$0.3Q_2$	D	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1000	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1200	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1000	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1000	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	0.5400	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	0.7800	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	0.3400	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	0.3600	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	0.3600	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	0.2400	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	D	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	0.2600	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	D	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	0.2600	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	D	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1600	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	0.1600	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	0.1400	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	0.1200	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	0.5100	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	0.3400	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	0.2400	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	0.2600	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	0.2600	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	0.2000	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	D	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	0.2000	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	D	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	0.2000	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	D	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	0.1800	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1800	N/A

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Cistern Facilities Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	**Soil Group**	**Slope**	**Rain Gauge**	**A**	**V_1**	**V_2**
$0.1Q_2$	A	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1400	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	0.0800	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	0.4400	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	0.4000	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	B	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	0.3200	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	0.3200	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	0.3200	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	C	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	0.2200	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	D	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	0.2400	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	D	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	0.2400	N/A
$0.1Q_2$	D	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1800	N/A

Q_2 = 2-year pre-project flow rate based upon partial duration analysis of long-term hourly rainfall records
A = Bioretention surface area sizing factor (not applicable under this manual standards – use methods presented in Chapter 5 and Appendix B or Appendix F to size bioretention or biofiltration facility for pollutant control)
V_1 = Cistern volume sizing factor

Definitions for "N/A"

- Column V2: N/A in column V2 means there is no V2 element in the cistern BMP
- Column A: N/A in column A means there is no A element in the cistern BMP. Note sizing factors previously created for sizing a bioretention or biofiltration facility downstream of a cistern under the 2007 MS4 Permit are not applicable under the MS4 Permit.

Appendix

H

AUTHORITY BMP DESIGN MANUAL

Forms and Checklists

February 2016

Appendix H Forms and Checklists

The following Forms/Checklists/Worksheets were developed for use by the project applicant to document the storm water management design. These forms represent the forms not included as part of the Standard and PDP SWQMP Templates in Appendix A:

- I-7: Harvest and Use Feasibility Screening Checklist
- I-8: Categorization of Infiltration Feasibility Condition
- I-9: Factor of Safety and Design Infiltration Rate

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Harvest and Use Feasibility Checklist</th><th>Form H-7</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">1. Is there a demand for harvested water (check all that apply) at the project site that is reliably present during the wet season?
☐ Toilet and urinal flushing
☐ Landscape irrigation
☐ Other:_______________</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">2. If there is a demand; estimate the anticipated average wet season demand over a period of 36 hours. Guidance for planning level demand calculations for toilet/urinal flushing and landscape irrigation is provided in Section B.3.2.
[Provide a summary of calculations here]</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">3. Calculate the DCV using worksheet B-2.1.
DCV = ___________ (cubic feet)</td></tr>
<tr><td>3a. Is the 36 hour demand greater than or equal to the DCV?
☐ Yes / ☐ No ⇨
⇩</td><td>3b. Is the 36 hour demand greater than 0.25DCV but less than the full DCV?
☐ Yes / ☐ No ⇨
⇩</td><td>3c. Is the 36 hour demand less than 0.25DCV?
☐ Yes
⇩</td></tr>
<tr><td>Harvest and use appears to be feasible. Conduct more detailed evaluation and sizing calculations to confirm that DCV can be used at an adequate rate to meet drawdown criteria.</td><td>Harvest and use may be feasible. Conduct more detailed evaluation and sizing calculations to determine feasibility. Harvest and use may only be able to be used for a portion of the site, or (optionally) the storage may need to be upsized to meet long term capture targets while draining in longer than 36 hours.</td><td>Harvest and use is considered to be infeasible.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Is harvest and use feasible based on further evaluation?
☐ Yes, refer to Appendix E to select and size harvest and use BMPs.
☐ No, select alternate BMPs.</td></tr>
</table>

Categorization of Infiltration Feasibility Condition	Form H-8

Part 1 - Full Infiltration Feasibility Screening Criteria

Would infiltration of the full design volume be feasible from a physical perspective without any undesirable consequences that cannot be reasonably mitigated?

Criteria	Screening Question	Yes	No
1	**Is the estimated reliable infiltration rate below proposed facility locations greater than 0.5 inches per hour?** The response to this Screening Question shall be based on a comprehensive evaluation of the factors presented in Appendix C.2 and Appendix D.		

Provide basis:

Summarize findings of studies; provide reference to studies, calculations, maps, data sources, etc. Provide narrative discussion of study/data source applicability.

Criteria	Screening Question	Yes	No
2	**Can infiltration greater than 0.5 inches per hour be allowed without increasing risk of geotechnical hazards (slope stability, groundwater mounding, utilities, or other factors) that cannot be mitigated to an acceptable level?** The response to this Screening Question shall be based on a comprehensive evaluation of the factors presented in Appendix C.2.		

Provide basis:

Summarize findings of studies; provide reference to studies, calculations, maps, data sources, etc. Provide narrative discussion of study/data source applicability.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="4">Form H-8 Page 2 of 4</th></tr>
<tr><th>Criteri a</th><th>Screening Question</th><th>Yes</th><th>No</th></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>Can infiltration greater than 0.5 inches per hour be allowed without increasing risk of groundwater contamination (shallow water table, storm water pollutants or other factors) that cannot be mitigated to an acceptable level? The response to this Screening Question shall be based on a comprehensive evaluation of the factors presented in Appendix C.3.</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">Provide basis:

Summarize findings of studies; provide reference to studies, calculations, maps, data sources, etc. Provide narrative discussion of study/data source applicability.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>Can infiltration greater than 0.5 inches per hour be allowed without causing potential water balance issues such as change of seasonality of ephemeral streams or increased discharge of contaminated groundwater to surface waters? The response to this Screening Question shall be based on a comprehensive evaluation of the factors presented in Appendix C.3.</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">Provide basis:

Summarize findings of studies; provide reference to studies, calculations, maps, data sources, etc. Provide narrative discussion of study/data source applicability.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Part 1 Result *</td><td colspan="2">If all answers to rows 1 - 4 are “Yes” a full infiltration design is potentially feasible. The feasibility screening category is Full Infiltration

If any answer from row 1-4 is “No”, infiltration may be possible to some extent but would not generally be feasible or desirable to achieve a “full infiltration” design. Proceed to Part 2</td><td></td></tr>
</table>

*To be completed using gathered site information and best professional judgment considering the definition of MEP in the MS4 Permit. Additional testing and/or studies may be required by Agency/Jurisdictions to substantiate findings

Form H-8 Page 3 of 4

Part 2 – Partial Infiltration vs. No Infiltration Feasibility Screening Criteria

Would infiltration of water in any appreciable amount be physically feasible without any negative consequences that cannot be reasonably mitigated?

Criteria	Screening Question	Yes	No
5	**Do soil and geologic conditions allow for infiltration in any appreciable rate or volume?** The response to this Screening Question shall be based on a comprehensive evaluation of the factors presented in Appendix C.2 and Appendix D.		

Provide basis:

Summarize findings of studies; provide reference to studies, calculations, maps, data sources, etc. Provide narrative discussion of study/data source applicability and why it was not feasible to mitigate low infiltration rates.

Criteria	Screening Question	Yes	No
6	**Can Infiltration in any appreciable quantity be allowed without increasing risk of geotechnical hazards (slope stability, groundwater mounding, utilities, or other factors) that cannot be mitigated to an acceptable level**? The response to this Screening Question shall be based on a comprehensive evaluation of the factors presented in Appendix C.2.		

Provide basis:

Summarize findings of studies; provide reference to studies, calculations, maps, data sources, etc. Provide narrative discussion of study/data source applicability and why it was not feasible to mitigate low infiltration rates.

Form H-8 Page 4 of 4			
Criteria	Screening Question	**Yes**	**No**
7	**Can Infiltration in any appreciable quantity be allowed without posing significant risk for groundwater related concerns (shallow water table, storm water pollutants or other factors)?** The response to this Screening Question shall be based on a comprehensive evaluation of the factors presented in Appendix C.3.		
Provide basis: Summarize findings of studies; provide reference to studies, calculations, maps, data sources, etc. Provide narrative discussion of study/data source applicability and why it was not feasible to mitigate low infiltration rates.			
8	**Can infiltration be allowed without violating downstream water rights**? The response to this Screening Question shall be based on a comprehensive evaluation of the factors presented in Appendix C.3.		
Provide basis: Summarize findings of studies; provide reference to studies, calculations, maps, data sources, etc. Provide narrative discussion of study/data source applicability and why it was not feasible to mitigate low infiltration rates.			
Part 2 Result*	If all answers from row 5-8 are yes then partial infiltration design is potentially feasible. The feasibility screening category is **Partial Infiltration.** If any answer from row 5-8 is no, then infiltration of any volume is considered to be **infeasible** within the drainage area. The feasibility screening category is **No Infiltration.**		

*To be completed using gathered site information and best professional judgment considering the definition of MEP in the MS4 Permit. Additional testing and/or studies may be required by Agency/Jurisdictions to substantiate findings

Factor of Safety and Design Infiltration Rate Worksheet				Form H-9	
Factor Category		Factor Description	Assigned Weight (w)	Factor Value (v)	Product (p) p = w x v
A	Suitability Assessment	Soil assessment methods	0.25		
		Predominant soil texture	0.25		
		Site soil variability	0.25		
		Depth to groundwater / impervious layer	0.25		
		Suitability Assessment Safety Factor, $S_A = \Sigma p$			
B	Design	Level of pretreatment/ expected sediment loads	0.5		
		Redundancy/resiliency	0.25		
		Compaction during construction	0.25		
		Design Safety Factor, $S_B = \Sigma p$			
Combined Safety Factor, $S_{total} = S_A \times S_B$					
Observed Infiltration Rate, inch/hr, $K_{observed}$ (corrected for test-specific bias)					
Design Infiltration Rate, in/hr, $K_{design} = K_{observed} / S_{total}$					

Supporting Data
Briefly describe infiltration test and provide reference to test forms:

Appendix

I

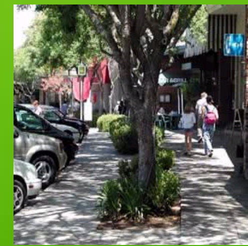
USEPA Green Streets Handbook

Appendix I USEPA Green Streets Handbook

The following handbook is attached to provide guidance on green streets design. New or retrofit sidewalks, and retrofit or redeveloped existing paved alleys, streets, and roads, may qualify for PDP exemption if they are designed in accordance with the following handbook. The project proponent should consult with the EAD and FDD for additional restrictions on PDP exemption.








Managing Wet Weather with Green Infrastructure

Municipal Handbook

Green Streets

Managing Wet Weather with Green Infrastructure

Municipal Handbook

Green Streets

prepared by

Robb Lukes
Christopher Kloss
Low Impact Development Center

The Municipal Handbook is a series of documents
to help local officials implement green infrastructure in their communities.

December 2008

EPA-833-F-08-009

Front Cover Photos
Top: rain garden; permeable pavers; rain barrel;
planter; tree boxes.
Large photo: green alley in Chicago

Green Streets

Introduction

By design and function, urban areas are covered with impervious surfaces: roofs, roads, sidewalks, and parking lots. Although all contribute to stormwater runoff, the effects and necessary mitigation of the various types of surfaces can vary significantly. Of these, roads and travel surfaces present perhaps the largest urban pollution sources and also one of the greatest opportunities for green infrastructure use.

The Federal Highway Administration (FHA) estimates that more than 20% of U.S. roads are in urban areas.[1] Urban roads, along with sidewalks and parking lots, are estimated to constitute almost two-thirds of the total impervious cover and contribute a similar ratio of runoff.[2] While a significant source of runoff, roads are also a part of the infrastructure system, conveying stormwater along gutters to inlets and the buried pipe network. Effective road drainage, translated as moving stormwater into the conveyance system quickly, has been a design priority while opportunities for enhanced environmental management have been overlooked especially in the urban environment.

Table 1. Examples of Stormwater Pollutants Typical of Roads.[3, 4]

Pollutant	Source	Effects
Trash	---	Physical damage to aquatic animals and fish, release of poisonous substances
Sediment/solids	Construction, unpaved areas	Increased turbidity, increased transport of soil bound pollutants, negative effects on aquatic organisms reproduction and function
Metals • Copper • Zinc • Lead • Arsenic	 • Vehicle brake pads • Vehicle tires, motor oil • Vehicle emissions and engines • Vehicle emissions, brake linings, automotive fluids	Toxic to aquatic organisms and can accumulate in sediments and fish tissues
Organics associated with petroleum (e.g., PAHs)	Vehicle emissions, automotive fluids, gas stations	Toxic to aquatic organisms
Nutrients	Vehicle emissions, atmospheric deposition	Promotes eutrophication and depleted dissolved oxygen concentrations

The altered flow regime from traditional roadways, increased runoff volume, more frequent runoff events, and high runoff peak flows, are damaging to the environment and a risk to property downstream. These erosive flows in receiving streams will cause down cutting and channel shifting in some places and excessive sedimentation in others. The unnatural flow regime destroys stream habitat and disrupts aquatic systems.

Compounding the deliberate rapid conveyance of stormwater, roads also are prime collection sites for pollutants. Because roads are a component of the stormwater conveyance system, are impacted by atmospheric deposition, and exposed to vehicles, they collect a wide suite of pollutants and deliver them into the conveyance system and ultimately receiving streams (See Table 1). The metals, combustion by-products, and automotive fluids from vehicles can present a toxic mix that combines with the ubiquitous nutrients, trash, and suspended solids.

> **Green Streets** achieve multiple benefits, such as improved water quality and more livable communities, through the integration of stormwater treatment techniques which use natural processes and landscaping.

While other impervious surfaces can be replaced, for example using green roofs to decrease the amount of impervious roof surface, for the most part, impervious roads will, for some time to come, constitute a significant percentage of urban imperviousness because of their current widespread existence. Reducing road widths and other strategies to limit the amount of impervious surface are critical, but truly addressing road runoff requires mitigating its effects.

Roads present many opportunities for green infrastructure application. One principle of green infrastructure involves reducing and treating stormwater close to its source. Urban transportation right-of-ways integrated with green techniques are often called "green streets". Green streets provide a source control for a main contributor of stormwater runoff and pollutant load. In addition, green infrastructure approaches complement street facility upgrades, street aesthetic improvements, and urban tree canopy efforts that also make use of the right-of-way and allow it to achieve multiple goals and benefits. Using the right-of-way for treatment also links green with gray infrastructure by making use of the engineered conveyance of roads and providing connections to conveyance systems when needed.

Green streets are beneficial for new road construction and retrofits. They can provide substantial economic benefits when used in transportation applications. Billions of dollars are spent annually on road construction and rehabilitation, with a large percentage focused on rehabilitation especially in urban areas. Coordinating green infrastructure installation with broader transportation improvements can significantly reduce the marginal cost of stormwater management by including it within larger infrastructure improvements. Also, and not unimportantly, right-of-way installations allow for easy public maintenance. A large municipal concern regarding green infrastructure use is maintenance; using roads and right-of-ways as locations for green infrastructure not only addresses a significant pollutant source, but also alleviates access and maintenance concerns by using public space.

In urban areas, roads present many opportunities for coordinated green infrastructure use. Some municipalities are capitalizing on the benefits gained by introducing green infrastructure in transportation applications. This paper will evaluate programs and policies that have been used to successfully integrate green infrastructure into roads and right-of-ways.

Green Street Designs

Green streets can incorporate a wide variety of design elements including street trees, permeable pavements, bioretention, and swales. Although the design and appearance of green streets will vary, the functional goals are the same: provide source control of stormwater, limit its transport and pollutant conveyance to the collection system, restore predevelopment hydrology to the extent possible, and provide environmentally enhanced roads. Successful application of green techniques will encourage soil and vegetation contact and infiltration and retention of stormwater.

Alternative Street Designs (Street Widths)

A green street design begins before any BMPs are considered. When building a new street or streets, the layout and street network must be planned to respect the existing hydrologic functions of the land (preserve wetlands, buffers, high-permeability soils, etc.) and to minimize the impervious area. If retrofitting or redeveloping a street, opportunities to eliminate unnecessary impervious area should be explored.

Implementation Hurdles

Many urban and suburban streets, sized to meet code requirements for emergency service vehicles and provide a free flow of traffic, are oversized for their typical everyday functions. The Uniform Fire Code requires that streets have a *minimum 20 feet of unobstructed width;* a street with parking on both sides would require a width of at least 34 feet. In addition to stormwater concerns, wide streets have many detrimental implications on neighborhood livability, traffic conditions, and pedestrian safety.[5]

Oregon State Code Granting Authority for Street Standards to Local Government

ORS 92.044 - Local governments shall *supersede and prevail over any specifications and standards for roads and streets set forth in a uniform fire code adopted by the State Fire Marshal, a municipal fire department or a county firefighting agency*.... Local governments shall consider the needs of the fire department or fire-fighting agency when adopting the final specifications and standards.

The Transportation Growth and Management Program of Oregon, through a Stakeholder Design Team, developed a guide for reducing street widths titled the *Neighborhood Street Design Guidelines.*[6] The document provides a helpful framework for cities to conduct an inclusive review of street design profiles with the goal of reducing widths. Solutions for accommodating emergency vehicles while minimizing street widths are described in the document. They include alternative street parking configurations, vehicle pullout space, connected street networks, prohibiting parking near intersections, and smaller block lengths.

Figure 1. The street-side swale and adjacent porous concrete sidewalk are located in the High Point neighborhood of Seattle, WA
(Source: Abby Hall, US EPA).

In 1997, Oregon, which has adopted the *Uniform Fire Code,* specifically granted local government the authority to establish alternative street design standards but requires them to consult with fire departments before standards are adopted. Table 2 provides examples of alternative street widths allowed in U.S. jurisdictions.[7]

Swales

Swales are vegetated open channels designed to accept sheet flow runoff and convey it in broad shallow flow. The intent of swales is to reduce stormwater volume through infiltration, improve water quality through vegetative and soil filtration, and reduce flow velocity by increasing channel roughness. In the simple roadside grassed form, they have been a common historical component of road design. Additional benefit can be attained through more complex forms of swales, such as those with amended soils, bioretention soils, gravel storage areas, underdrains, weirs, and thick diverse vegetation.

Implementation Hurdles

There is a common misconception of open channel drainage being at the bottom of a street development hierarchy in which curb and gutter are at the top. Seattle's Street Edge Alternative Project and other natural drainage swale pilot projects have demonstrated that urban swales not only mitigate stormwater impacts, but they can also enhance the urban environment.[8]

Table 2. Examples of Alternative Street Widths

Jurisdiction	Street Width	Parking Condition
Phoenix, AZ	28'	parking both sides
Santa Rosa, CA	30' 26'-28' 20' 20'	parking both sides, <1000ADT parking one side no parking neck downs @ intersection
Orlando, FL	28' 22'	parking both sides, res. Lots<55' wide parking both sides, res. Lots>55' wide
Birmingham, MI	26' 20'	parking both sides parking one side
Howard County, MD	24'	parking unregulated
Kirkland, WA	12' 20' 24' 28'	alley parking one side parking both sides – low density only parking both sides
Madison, WI	27' 28'	parking both sides, <3DU/AC parking both sides, 3-10 DU/AC

ADT: Average Daily Traffic DU/AC: dwelling units per acre

Bioretention Curb Extensions and Sidewalk Planters

Bioretention is a versatile green street strategy. Bioretention features can be tree boxes taking runoff from the street, indistinguishable from conventional tree boxes. Bioretention features can also be attractive attention grabbing planter boxes or curb extensions. Many natural processes occur within bioretention cells: infiltration and storage reduces runoff volumes and attenuates peak flows; biological and chemical reactions occur in the mulch, soil matrix, and root zone; and stormwater is filtered through vegetation and soil.

Figure 2. This bioretention area takes runoff from the street through a trench drain in the sidewalk as well as runoff from the sidewalk through curb cuts *(Source: Abby Hall, US EPA).*

Implementation Hurdles

A few municipal DOT programs have instituted green street requirements in roadway projects, but as of yet, specifications for street bioretention have not yet been incorporated into municipal DOT specifications. Many cities do have street bioretention pilot projects; two of the well documented programs are noted in the table. Several concerns and considerations have prevented standard implementation of bioretention by DOTs.

Table 3. Municipalities with Swale Specifications and Standard Details

Municipality	Document	Section Title	Section #
City of Austin[9]	Standard Specifications and Standard Details	Grass-Lined Swale and Grass-Lined Swale with Stone Center	627S
City of Seattle[10]	2008 Standard Specifications for Municipal Construction	Natural Drainage Systems	7-21

Table 4. Municipalities with Bioretention Pilot Projects in the Right-of-Way

Municipality	Bioretention Type	Document
Maplewood, MN	Rain gardens	*Implementing Rainwater in Urban Stormwater Management* [11]
Portland, OR	• Curb extensions • Planters • Rain gardens	*2006 Stormwater Management Facility Monitoring Report* [12]

The diversity of shapes, sizes, and layouts bioretention can take is a significant obstacle to their incorporation with DOT specifications and standards. Street configurations, topography, soil conditions, and space availability are some of the factors that will influence the design of the bioretention facility. These variables make documentation of each new bioretention project all the more important. By building a menu of templates from local bioretention projects, future projects with similar conditions will be easier to implement and cost less to design. The documentation should include copies of the details and specifications for the materials used. A section on construction and operation issues, costs, lessons learned, and recommendations for similar designs should also be included in project documentation. Portland's Bureau of Environmental Services has proven adept at documenting each of its Green Streets projects and making them accessible online.[13]

Utilities are a chief constraint to implementing bioretention as a retrofit in urban areas. The Prince George's County, MD Bioretention Design Specifications and Criteria manual recommends applying the same clearance criteria recommended for storm drainage pipes.[14] Municipal design standards should specify the appropriate clearance from bioretention or allowable traversing.

Prince George's County, MD - 2.12.1.16 Utility Clearance

Utility clearances that apply to storm drainage pipe and structure placement also apply to bioretention. Standard utility clearances for storm drainage pipes have been established at 1' vertical and 5' horizontal. However, bioretention systems are shallow, non-structural IMP's consisting of mostly plant and soil components, (often) with a flexible underdrain discharge pipe. For this reason, other utilities may traverse a bioretention facility without adverse impact. Conduits and other utility lines may cross through the facility but construction and maintenance operations must include safeguard provisions. In some instances, bioretention could be utilized where utility conflicts would make structural BMP applications impractical.

Plants are another common concern of municipal staff, whether it is maintenance, salt tolerance, or plant height with regard to safety and security. Cities actively implementing LID practices in public spaces maintain lists of plants which fit the vegetated stormwater management practice niche. These are plants that flourish in the regional climate conditions, are adapted to periodic flooding, are low maintenance, and, if in cold climates, salt tolerant. Most often these plants are natives, but sometimes an approved non-native will best fit necessary criteria. A municipal plant list should be periodically updated based on maintenance experience, and vegetation health surveys.

Permeable Pavement

Permeable pavement comes in four forms: permeable concrete, permeable asphalt, permeable interlocking concrete pavers, and grid pavers. Permeable concrete and asphalt are similar to their impervious counterparts but are open graded or have reduced fines and typically have a special binder added. Methods for pouring, setting, and curing these permeable pavements also differ from the impervious versions. The concrete and grid pavers are modular systems. Concrete pavers are installed with gaps between them that allow water to pass through to the base. Grid pavers are typically a durable plastic matrix that can be filled with gravel or vegetation. All of the permeable pavement systems have an aggregate base in common which provides structural support, runoff storage, and pollutant removal through filtering and adsorption. Aside from a rougher unfinished surface, permeable concrete and asphalt look very similar to their impervious versions. Permeable concrete and asphalt and certain permeable concrete pavers are ADA compliant.

Implementation Hurdles

Of all the green streets practices, municipal DOTs have been arguably most cautious about implementing permeable pavements, though it should be noted that some DOTs have, for decades, specified open-graded asphalt for low use roadways because of lower cost; to minimize vehicle hydroplaning; and to reduce road noise. The reticence to implement on a large-scale, however, is understandable given the lack of predictability and experience behind impervious pavements. However, improved technology, new and ongoing research, and a growing number of pilot projects are dispelling common myths about permeable pavements.

Figure 3. Pervious pavers used in the roadway of a neighborhood development in Wilsonville, OR *(Source: Abby Hall, US EPA).*

The greatest concern among DOT staff seems to be a perceived lack of long-term performance and maintenance data. Universities and DOTs began experimenting with permeable pavements in parking lots, maintenance yards, and pedestrian areas as early as twenty years ago in the U.S., even earlier in Europe. There is now a wealth of data on permeable pavements successfully used for these purposes in nearly every climate region of the country. In recent years, the cities of Portland, OR, Seattle, WA, and Waterford, CT and several private developments have constructed permeable pavement pilots within the roadway with positive results.

> Permeable pavement concerns in the roadway often raise concerns of safety, maintenance, and durability. Municipalities can replace impervious surfaces in other non-critical areas such as sidewalks, alleys, and municipal parking lots. These types of applications help municipalities build experience and a market for the technology.

The two typical maintenance activities are periodic sweeping and vacuuming. The City of Olympia, WA has experimented with several methods of clearing debris from permeable concrete sidewalks. Each of the methods was evaluated on the ease of use, debris removal, and the performance pace. The cost analysis by Olympia, WA found that the maintenance cost for pervious pavement was still lower than the traditional pavement when the cost of stormwater management was considered.

Table 5. Municipalities with Permeable Pavement Specifications and Standard Details

Municipality	Document	Section Title	Section #
Portland	2007 Standard Construction Specifications	Unit Pavers (includes permeable pavers)	00760
Olympia	WSDOT Specification	Pervious Concrete Sidewalks	8-30

Freeze/thaw and snow plows are the major concerns for permeable pavements in cold climate communities. However, these concerns have proven to be generally unwarranted when appropriate design and maintenance practices are employed. A well designed permeable pavement structure will always drain and never freeze solid. The air voids in the pavement allow plenty of space for moisture to freeze and ice crystals to expand. Also, rapid drainage through the pavement eliminates the occurrence of freezing puddles and black ice. Cold climate municipalities will need to make adjustments to snow plowing and deicing programs for permeable pavement areas. Snow plow blades must be raised enough to prevent scraping the surface of permeable pavements, particularly paver systems. Also, sand should not be applied.

Table 6. A Study in Olympia, WA Comparison of the cost of permeable concrete sidewalks to the cost of traditional impervious sidewalks[15]

Traditional Concrete Sidewalk		Permeable Concrete Sidewalk	
Construction Cost	Maintenance Cost	Construction Cost	Maintenance Cost
$5,003,000*	$156,000	$2,615,000*	$147,000
Total = $5,159,000 $101.16 per square yard		Total = $2,762,000 $54.16 per square yard	

*The cost of stormwater management (stormwater pond) for the added impervious surface is factored into the significantly higher cost of constructing the traditional concrete sidewalk. Maintenance of the stormwater pond is also factored into the traditional concrete sidewalk maintenance cost.

Sidewalk trees and tree boxes

Figure 4. Trees planted at the same time but with different soil volumes, Washington DC
(Source: Casey Trees)

From reducing the urban heat island effect and reducing stormwater runoff to improving the urban aesthetic and improving air quality, much is expected of street trees. Street trees are even good for the economy. Customers spend 12% more in shops on streets lined with trees than on those without trees.[16] However, most often street trees are given very little space to grow in often inhospitable environments. The soil around street trees often becomes compacted during the construction of paved surfaces and minimized as underground utilities encroach on root space. If tree roots are surrounded by compacted soils or are deprived of air and water by impervious streets and sidewalks, their growth will be stunted, their health will decline, and their expected life span will be cut short. By providing adequate soil volume and a good soil mixture, the benefits obtained from a street tree multiply. To obtain a healthy soil volume, trees can simply be provided larger tree boxes, or structural soils, root paths, or "silva cells" can be used under sidewalks or other paved areas to expand root zones. These allow tree roots the space they need to grow to full size. This increases the health of the tree and provides the benefits of a mature sized tree, such as shade and air quality benefits, sooner than a tree with confined root space.

Table 7. Healthy Tree Volume and Permeable Pavement Specifications and Standard Details

Jurisdictions	Minimum Soil Volume		Section Title	Section #
Prince William County, VA	Large tree Medium tree Small tree	970 cf 750 cf 500 cf	Design Construction Manual (Sec 800)	Table 8-8
Alexandria, VA		300 cf	Landscape Guidelines	II.B. (2)

Implementation Hurdles

Providing an adequate root volume for trees comes down to a trade off between space in the right-of-way and added construction costs. The least expensive way to obtain the volume needed for roots to grow to full size is providing adequate space unhindered by utilities or other encroachments. However, it is often hard to reserve space dedicated just to street trees in an urban right-of-way with so many other uses competing for the room they need. As a result, some creative solutions, though they cost more to install, have become useful alternatives in crowded subsurface space. Structural soils, root paths, and "silva cells" leave void space for roots and still allow sidewalks to be constructed near trees.

Root Paths can be used to increase tree root volume by connecting a small tree root volume with a larger subsurface volume nearby. A tunnel-like system extends from the tree underneath a sidewalk and connects to an open space on the other side.

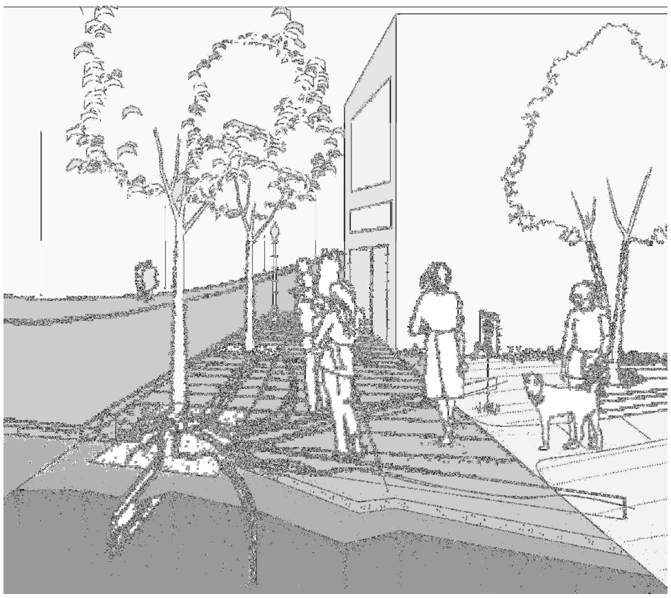


Figure 5. Root Paths direct tree roots under paving and into better soil areas for tree root growth
(Source: Arlington County, VA).

Silva Cells[17] are another option for supporting sidewalks near trees while still providing enough space for roots to grow. These plastic milk crate-like frames fit together and act as a supporting structure for a sidewalk while leaving room for uncompacted soil and roots inside the frame.

Permeable pavement sidewalks are another enhancement to the root space. They provide moisture and air to roots under sidewalks. Soils under permeable pavements can still become compacted. Structural soils[18] are a good companion tree planting practice to permeable pavement. When planting a tree in structural soils an adequate tree root volume is excavated and filled with a mix of stone and soil that still provides void space for healthy roots and allows for sidewalks, plazas or other paved surfaces to be constructed over them.

Case Studies

Portland, OR: Green Street Pilot Projects

Portland, Oregon is a national leader in developing green infrastructure. Portland's innovation in stormwater management was necessitated by the need to satisfy a Combined Sewer Overflow consent decree, Safe Drinking Water Act requirements, impending Total Maximum Daily Load limitations, Superfund cleanup measures and basement flooding. Through the 1990s, over 3 billion gallons of combined sewer overflow discharged to the Willamette River every year.[19] All of these factors plus leadership and local desires to create green solutions and industries compelled the city to implement green infrastructure as a complement to adding capacity to the sewer system with large pipe overflow interceptors. Despite gaps in long-term performance data, Portland took a proactive approach in implementing green infrastructure pilot projects.

Portland's green infrastructure pilot projects have their roots in the city's 2001 Sustainable Infrastructure Committee. The committee, consisting of representatives from Portland's three infrastructure management Bureaus, documented the city's ongoing efforts toward sustainable infrastructure, gathered research on green infrastructure projects from around the country, and identified opportunities for local pilots.[20, 21, 22]

Figure 6. Silva cell structures support the sidewalk while providing root space for street trees
(Source: Deep Root Partners, LP).

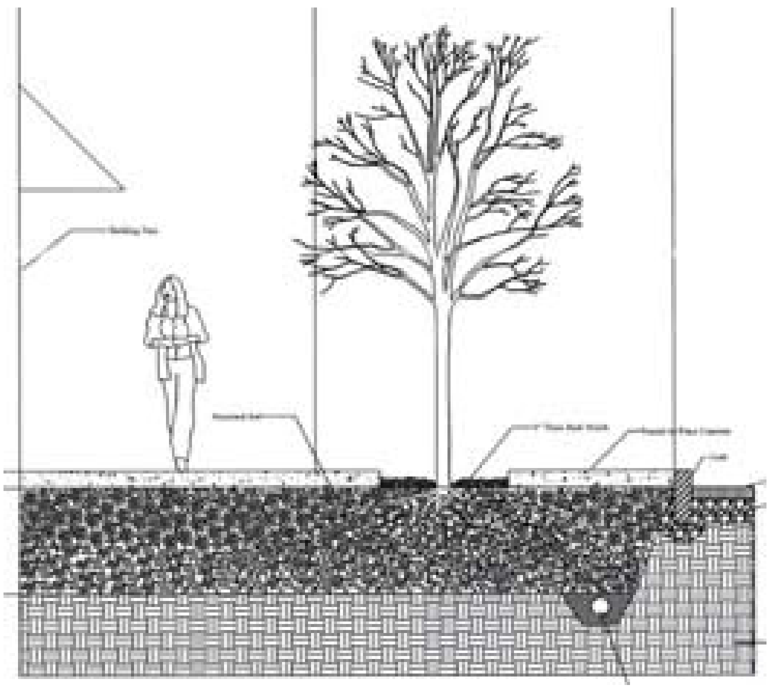


Figure 7. Structural soils provide void space for root growth and load-bearing for sidewalk
(Source: Urban Horticulture Institute, Cornell University).

One of the Bureau of Environmental Services' (BES) earliest green infrastructure retrofit projects within the right-of-way was a set of two stormwater curb extensions on NE Siskiyou Street. Portland had been retrofitting many streets with curb extensions for the purpose of pedestrian safety, but this was the first done for the purpose of treating street runoff. In a simulated 25-year storm event flow test, the curb extensions captured 85% of the runoff volume that would be discharged to the combined sewer system and reduced peak flow by 88%.[23]

Between 2003 and 2007, Portland designed and implemented a variety of Green Street pilots. Funding sources for these projects have come from BES, Portland Department of Transportation, U.S. EPA, and an Innovative Wet Weather Fund. BES combined funds with an EPA grant to create the Innovative Wet Weather Fund. In 2004, nearly $3 million from the Innovative Wet Weather Fund was budgeted for a long list of projects from city green roofs, public-private projects, and a number of pilot projects within the right-of-way.[24] Several pilots have been cost competitive with or less costly than conventional upgrades. The Bureau recognizes that costs will decrease once these projects become more routine. Many of the pilot project costs included one time costs such as the development of outreach materials and standard drawings.

Figure 8: NE Siskiyou Vegetated Curb Extensions
Source: City of Portland – Bureau of Environmental Services

Table 8. Portland, OR - Green Street Pilot Projects

Location	Design	Year Completed	Cost
NE Siskiyou b/w NE 35th Pl. and NE 36th Ave	Stormwater curb extension	2003	$20,000
3 blocks of the Westmoreland Neighborhood	Permeable Pavers in parking lanes and curb to curb	2004	$412,000
SE Ankeny b/w SE 56th and SE 57th Ave.	Stormwater curb extensions	2004	$11,946
NE Fremont b/w NE 131st and 132nd Av	Stormwater curb extension	2005	$20,400
SW 12th Ave b/w SW Montgomery and Mill	Stormwater planters	2005	$34,850
East Holladay Park	Pervious paver parking lot	2005	$165,000
4 blocks of North Gay Avenue b/w N Wygant and N Sumner	Porous concrete in curb lanes and curb to curb; porous asphalt in curb lanes and curb to curb	2005	--
SW Texas	Stormwater wetlands and swales	2007	$2.3 million
Division St. – New Seasons Market	Stormwater planters and swales	--	--
SE Tibbetts and SE 21st Ave.	Stormwater curb extension and planters	--	--

Source: Portland Bureau of Environmental Services, 2008
http://www.portlandonline.com/bes/index.cfm?c=44463&

Each of the pilot projects have been well documented by BES. A consistent format has been used to describe pilot background, features, engineering design, landscaping, project costs, maintenance, monitoring, and, most importantly, lessons learned. These case studies as well as other Green Street documentation can be found on BES's Sustainable Stormwater webpage, http://www.portlandonline.com/BES/index.cfm?c=34598. Due to physical factors (drainage, slope, soil, existing utilities, multiple uses) and development factors (retrofit, redevelopment, and new construction), there will be many variations on Green Streets. As part of the program, a continually updated Green Street Profile Notebook will catalog the successful green street projects. Users can use the Notebook for permitting guidance, to identify green streets facilities appropriate for various factors, but the document is not a technical document with standard details.

The Green Streets Team

The City of Portland, OR is widely acknowledged for long term, forward thinking, and comprehensive transportation and environmental planning. Portland recognized the fact that 66% of the City's total runoff is collected from streets and the right-of-way.[25] The city also saw the potential for transportation corridors to meet multiple objectives, including:

- Comprehensively address numerous City goals for neighborhood livability, sustainable development, increased green spaces, stormwater management, and groundwater protection;
- Integrate infrastructure functions by creating "linear parks" along streets that provide both pedestrian/bike areas and stormwater management;
- Avoid the key impacts of unmanaged stormwater whereby surface waterbodies are degraded, and water quality suffers;
- Manage stormwater with investments citizens can support, participate in, and see;
- Manage stormwater as a resource, rather than a waste;
- Protect pipe infrastructure investments (extend the life of pipe infrastructure, limit the additional demand on the combined sewer system as development occurs);
- Protect wellhead areas by managing stormwater on the surface; and
- Provide increased neighborhood amenities and value.

In a two phased process from 2005 to 2007, the Green Streets Team, a cross agency and interdisciplinary team, developed a comprehensive green streets policy and a way forward for the green streets agenda. Phase 1 identified challenges and issues and began a process for addressing them. Barriers to the public initiation of green street projects included a code and standards that would disallow or discourage green street strategies, long term performance unknowns, and maintenance responsibilities. To address these barriers, the Green Streets Team organized into subgroups focusing on outreach, technical guidance, infrastructure, maintenance, and resources.

Phase 2 of the Green Streets project synthesized the opportunities and solutions identified in Phase 1 into a citywide Green Streets Program. The first priority for this phase was the drafting of a binding citywide policy. The resolution was adopted by the Portland City Council in March 2007.

Prior to the start of the Portland effort, 90% of implemented green street projects were issued by private permits rather than city initiated projects.

Six Approaches to Implementing Green Streets	
Pathway	**Implementation**
City-initiated street improvement projects	City designs, manages, maintains
City-initiated stormwater retrofits	City designs, manages, maintains
Neighborhood-initiated LIDs	
Developer-initiated subdivisions with public streets	Developer designs and builds via City permit and review process, then turns over new right of way to the City after warranty period
Developer-initiated subdivisions with private streets	Developer designs and builds via City permit and review process, and turns over to home-owner association
Developer-related initiated frontage improvements on existing public streets	Developer designs and builds new sidewalks and curbs via City permit and review process, usually because the City required it via a building permit or via a land division

Source: Portland Green Streets, Phase 1

Portland City Council Approved Green Streets Policy

Goal: City of Portland will promote and incorporate the use of green street facilities in public and private development.

City elected officials and staff will:

1. Infrastructure Projects in the Right of Way:

   a. Incorporate green street facilities into all City of Portland funded development, redevelopment or enhancement projects as required by the City's September 2004 (or updated) Stormwater Management Manual. Maintain these facilities according to the May 2006 (or updated) Green Streets Maintenance Policy.

   If a green street facility (infiltrating or flow through) is not incorporated into the Infrastructure Project, or only partial management is achieved, then an off site project or off site management fee will be required.

   b. Any City of Portland funded development, redevelopment or enhancement project, that does not trigger the Stormwater Manual but requires a street opening permit or occurs in the right of way, shall pay into a "% for Green" Street fund. The amount shall be 1% of the construction costs for the project.
   Exceptions: Emergency maintenance and repair projects, repair and replacement of sidewalks and driveways, pedestrian and trail replacement, tree planting, utility pole installation, street light poles, traffic, signal poles, traffic control signs, fire hydrants, where this use of funds would violate contracted or legal restrictions.

2. Project Planning and Design:

   a. Foster communication and coordination among City Bureaus to encourage consideration of watershed health and improved water quality through use of green street facilities as part of planning and design of Bureau projects.
   b. Coordinate Bureau work programs and projects to implement Green Streets as an integrated aspect of City infrastructure.
   c. Plan for large-scale use of Green Streets as a means of better connecting neighborhoods, better use of the right of way, and enhancing neighborhood livability.
   d. Strive to develop new and innovative means to cost-effectively construct new green street facilities.
   e. Develop standards and incentives (such as financial and technical resources, or facilitated permit review) for Green Streets projects that can be permitted and implemented by the private sector. These standards and incentives should be designed to encourage incorporation of green street facilities into private development, redevelopment and enhancement projects.

3. Project and Program Funding:

   a. Seek opportunities to leverage the work and associated funding of projects in the same geographic areas across Bureaus to create Green Street opportunities.
   b. Develop a predictable and sustainable means of funding implementation and maintenance of Green Street projects.

4. Outreach:

   a. Educate citizens, businesses, and the development community/industry about Green Streets and how they can serve as urban greenways to enhance, improve, and connect neighborhoods to encourage their support, demand and funding for these projects.
   b. Establish standard maintenance techniques and monitoring protocols for green street facilities across bureaus, and across groups within bureaus.

5. Project Evaluation:

   a. Conduct ongoing monitoring of green street facilities to evaluate facility effectiveness as well as performance in meeting multiple City objectives for:
   - Gallons managed;
   - Projects distributed geographically by watershed and by neighborhood; and

The second priority for Phase 2 was developing communication and planning procedures for incorporating multi-bureaus plans into the scheduled Portland DOT Capital Improvement Program (CIP). Three timeframes for green street project planning were recommended. In the short term, the CIP Planning Group, backed by the citywide policy directive, will shift to a focus on "identifying and evaluating opportunities to partner." For example, coordinating Water Bureau and BES pipe replacement projects with DOT maintenance, repair, and improvement projects. The mid-term approach is more proactive and involves forecasting potential green street projects using existing bureau data and GIS tools. As for the long term, green street objectives will be incorporated into the citywide systems plan which guides city bureaus for the next 20 years.

The Green Street Team methodology propelled Portland's early green street pilot projects into a comprehensive, citywide multi-bureau program. The program built on previous efforts by the Sustainable Infrastructure Committee as well as other efforts such as the 2005 Portland Watershed Management Plan, established a City Council mandated policy, and institutionalized green street development. The outcome of this approach is multi-agency buy-in and responsibility for the effort. For instance, because of their knowledge of plant maintenance, Portland Parks and Recreation is responsible for the maintenance of some DOT installations.

Chicago, IL: Green Alleys Program

The City of Chicago, Illinois has an alley system that is perhaps the largest in the world. These 13,000 publicly owned alleys result in 1,900 miles, or 3,500 acres, of impermeable surfaces in addition to the street network. Because the alley system was not originally paved, there are no sewer connections as part of the original design. Over time the alleys were paved and flooding in garages and basements began to occur as a result of unmanaged stormwater runoff. Since the city already spends $50 million each year to clean and upgrade 4,400 miles of sewer lines and 340,000 related structures, the preferred solution to the flooded alleys is one that doesn't put more stress on an already overburdened and expensive sewer system.[26]

In 2003, the Chicago Department of Transportation (CDOT) used permeable pavers and French drain pilot applications to remedy localized flooding problems in alleys in the 48th Ward.[27] These applications proved to be successful and by 2006, CDOT launched its Green Alley Program with the release of the Chicago Green Alley Handbook (Handbook).[28]

The Chicago Green Alley Program is unique because it marries green infrastructure practices in the public right-of-way with green infrastructure efforts on private property. The user-friendly Handbook, which describes both facets of the program including the design techniques and their benefits, is an award winning document. The American Society of Landscape Architects awarded the creators of the Handbook the 2007 Communications Honor Award for the clear graphics and simple, yet effective, message.[29] The Handbook explains to the residents why green infrastructure is important, how to be good stewards of the Green Alley in their neighborhood, and what sorts of "green" practices they can implement on their property to reduce waste, save water, and help manage stormwater wisely.

While the initial impetus behind the Green Alley Program was stormwater management, Chicago decided to use this opportunity to address other environmental concerns as well as reducing the urban heat island effect, recycling, energy conservation, and light pollution.

Green Infrastructure in the Right-of-Way

Chicago's Green Alley Program uses the following five techniques in the public right-of-way to "green" the alley:

1. Changing the grade of the alley to drain to the street rather than pond water in the alley or drain toward garages or private property.

2. Using permeable pavement that allows water to percolate into the ground rather than pond on the surface.

3. Using light colored paving material that reflects sunlight rather than adsorbing it, reducing urban heat island effect.

4. Incorporating recycled materials into the pavement mix to reduce the need for virgin materials and reduce the amount of waste going into the landfill.

5. Using energy efficient light fixtures that focus light downward, reducing light pollution.

Figure 9: Permeable Asphalt Installation Using Ground Tire Rubber.
Source: Chicago Department of Transportation, Sustainable Development Initiatives; Streetscape and Urban Design Program, CDOT Division of Project Development.

Four design approaches were created using these techniques. Based on the local conditions, the most appropriate approach is selected. In areas where soils are well-draining, permeable pavement is used. In areas where buildings come right up to the edge of pavement and infiltrated water could threaten foundations, impermeable pavement strips are used on the outside with a permeable pavement strip down the middle. In areas where soils do not provide much infiltration capacity, the alley is regraded to drain properly and impermeable pavement made with recycled materials is used. Another approach utilizes an infiltration trench down the middle of the alley. Light colored (high albedo) pavement, recycled materials, and energy efficient, glare reducing lights are a part of each design approach.

Green Infrastructure on Private Property
The Handbook also describes actions that property owners can take to "green" their own piece of Chicago. The Handbook describes the costs, benefits, and utility of the following practices:

- Recycling;
- Composting;
- Planting a tree;
- Using native landscape vegetation;
- Constructing a rain garden;
- Installing a rain barrel;
- Using permeable pavement for patios;
- Installing energy efficient lighting; and
- Utilizing natural detention.

By bringing this wide range of "green" practices to the attention of homeowners, the positive impacts of the Green Alley Program spread beyond the boundaries of the right-of-way, increasing awareness and providing practical resources to help community members be a part of the solution.

Chicago Green Alley Cost Considerations
When the program began in 2006, repaving the alleys with impermeable pavement ranged in cost from $120,000 to $150,000, whereas a total Green Alley reconstruction was more along the lines of $200,000 to $250,000.[30] While less expensive conventional rehabilitation options may seem more attractive, they don't provide a solution to the localized flooding issues or the combined sewer system overflow problems. Sewer system connections could be established to solve the localized flooding problem, but it would add to the already overburdened sewer system and increase the cost of the reconstruction to that of the impermeable alley option. Consequently, the higher priced Green Alley option proved to be the best investment as it has multiple benefits in addition to solving localized flooding and reducing flow into the combined sewer system. The additional benefits of the Green Alley Program include not only urban heat

island effect reduction, material recycling, energy conservation, and light pollution reduction, but also the creation of a new market.

In 2006, when the Green Alley Program began, the city paid about $145 per cubic yard of permeable concrete. Just one year later, the cost of permeable concrete had dropped to only $45 per cubic yard. Compared with the cost of ordinary concrete, $50 per cubic yard, permeable concrete may have seemed like an infeasible option in the past to customers wanting to purchase concrete.[31] After the city's initial investment in the local permeable concrete market, the product cost has come down making permeable concrete a more affordable option for other consumers besides the city. This has resulted in an increased application of permeable concrete throughout the region.

Figure 10: Permeable Pavers and Permeable Concrete Chicago Alleys
(Source: Abby Hall, US EPA)

The success of the Chicago Green Alley Program is evident. Not only are the alleys been "greened" as a result of the program, the surrounding properties and even the surrounding neighborhoods are experiencing the positive impacts of the program's implementation.

Conclusions and Recommendations

Incorporating green streets as a feature of urban stormwater management requires matching road function with environmental performance. Enhancing roads with green elements can improve their primary function as a transportation corridor while simultaneously mitigating their negative environmental impacts. In theory and practice many municipalities are not far removed from dedicated green streets programs. Street tree and other greenscaping programs are often identified and promoted along urban transportation corridors. Adapting them to become fully functional green streets requires minor design modifications and an evaluation of how to maximize the benefits of environmental systems.

Portland's green streets program demonstrates how common road and right-of-way elements (e.g., traffic calming curb extensions, tree boxes) can be modified and optimized to provide stormwater management in addition to other benefits. The curb cuts and design variations to allow runoff to enter the vegetated areas are subtle changes with a significant impact and demonstrate how stormwater can be managed successfully at the source. One of the biggest successes of the program was reassessing common design features and realizing that environmental performance can be improved by integrating stormwater management.

Where Portland used vegetation, Chicago's Green Alley Program similarly demonstrates that hardscape elements can be an integral part of a greening program. By incorporating permeable pavements that simulate natural infiltration, Chicago enhances the necessary transportation function of alleys while enhancing infrastructure and environmental management. Portland also contrasts the "soft" and "hard" elements of green streets by using both permeable pavements and vegetated elements. The green options available demonstrate the flexibility of green infrastructure to satisfy road function and environmental objectives and highlight why transportation corridors are well suited for green infrastructure.

Elements necessary for a successful green streets program:

- **Pilot projects are critical.** The most successful municipal green street programs to date all began with well documented and monitored pilot projects. These projects have often been at least partially grant funded and receive the participation of locally active watershed groups working with the city infrastructure programs. The pilot projects are necessary to demonstrate that green streets can work in the local environment, can be relied upon, and fit with existing infrastructure. Pilot projects will help to dispel myths and resolve concerns.
- **Leadership in sustainability from the top.** The cities with the strongest green streets programs are those with mayors and city councils that have fully bought into sustainable infrastructure. Council passed green policies and mayoral sustainability mandates or mission statements are needed to institutionalize green street approaches and bring it beyond the token green project.
- **Buy-in from all municipal infrastructure departments.** By their nature, green streets cross many municipal programs. Green street practices impact stormwater management, street design, underground utilities, public lighting, green space planning, public work maintenance, and budgeting. When developing green streets, all of the relevant agencies must be represented. Also, coordination between the agencies on project planning is important for keeping green infrastructure construction costs low. Superior green street design at less cost occurs when sewer and water line replacement projects can be done in tandem with street redevelopment. These types of coordination efforts must happen at the long-term planning stage.
- **Documentation.** Green street projects need to be documented on two levels, the design and construction level and on a citywide tracking level. Due to the different street types and siting conditions, green street designs will take on many variations. By documenting the costs, construction, and design, the costs of similar future projects can be minimized and construction or design problems can be avoided or addressed. Tracking green street practices across the city is crucial for managing maintenance and quantifying aggregate benefits.
- **Public outreach.** Traditional pollution prevention outreach goes hand in hand with green street programs. Properly disposing of litter, yard waste, and hazardous chemicals and appropriately applying yard chemicals will help prolong the life of green street practices. An information campaign should also give the public an understanding of how green infrastructure works and the benefits and trade offs. In many cases, remedial maintenance of green street practices will be performed by neighboring property owners; they need to know how to maintain the practices to keep them performing optimally.

As public spaces, roads are prime candidates for green infrastructure improvements. In addition to enabling legislation, and technical guidance, developing a green streets program requires an institutional re-evaluation of how right-of-ways are most effectively managed. This process typically includes:

- Assessing the necessary function of the road and selecting the minimum required street width to reduce impervious cover;
- Enhancing streetscaping elements to manage stormwater and exploring opportunities to integrate stormwater management into roadway design; and
- Integrating transportation and environmental planning to capitalize on economic benefits.

The use of green streets offers the capability of transforming a significant stormwater and pollutant source into an innovative treatment system. Green streets optimize the performance of public space easing maintenance concerns and allowing municipalities to coordinate the progression and implementation of stormwater control efforts. In addition, green streets optimize the performance of both the transportation and water infrastructure. Effectively incorporating green techniques into the transportation network provides significant opportunity to decrease infrastructure demands and pollutant transport.

---

[1] National Cooperative Highway Research Program, *Evaluation of Best Management Practices and Low Impact Development for Highway Runoff Control*, National Academy of Sciences – National Research Council, 2006.

[2] Lance Frazer, *Paving Paradise: The Peril of Impervious Cover*, Environmental Health Perspectives, Volume 113, Number 7, July 2005.

[3] See note 1.
[4] *Pollutants Commonly Found in Stormwater Runoff*, http://www.stormwaterauthority.org/pollutants/default.aspx (accessed July 2008).
[5] Context Sensitive Solutions in Designing Major Urban Thoroughfares for Walkable Communities*:* http://www.ite.org/css/ (Ch. 6, pages. 65-87)
[6] *Neighborhood Street Design Guidelines,* prepared by Neighborhood Streets Project Stakeholders. November 2000 http://www.oregon.gov/LCD/docs/publications/neighstreet.pdf (accessed June 2008)
[7] *Narrow Streets Database,* http://www.sonic.net/abcaia/narrow.htm (accessed July 2008).
[8] City of Seattle. Street Edge Alternatives Project http://www.ci.seattle.wa.us/util/About_SPU/Drainage_&_Sewer_System/Natural_Drainage_Systems/Street_Edge_Alternatives/index.asp
[9] City of Austin, Engineering Services Division. Standard Specifications and Details Website: http://www.ci.austin.tx.us/sd2/
[10] See note 9
[11] *Implementing Rainwater in Urban Stormwater Management* http://www.ci.maplewood.mn.us/index.asp?Type=B_BASIC&SEC=%7BF2C03470-D6B5-4572-98F0-F79819643C2A%7D (accessed July 2008).
[12] 2006 Stormwater Management Facilities Monitoring Report http://www.portlandonline.com/bes/index.cfm?c=36055 (accessed July 2008).
[13] City of Portland. Green Streets website. https://www.sustainableportland.org/BES/index.cfm?c=44407 (last accessed July, 2008).
[14] Prince George's County, MD. *Bioretention Design Specifications and Criteria*. http://www.co.pg.md.us/Government/AgencyIndex/DER/ESD/Bioretention/pdf/bioretention_design_manual.pdf (accessed July 2008).
[15] City of Olympia. *Memorandum: Traditional versus Pervious Concrete Sidewalk – Construction and Maintenance Costs*. Feb. 2005. http://www.ci.olympia.wa.us/cityutilities/stormwater/scienceandinnovations/porouspavement.htm.
[16] The Case for Trees, Casey Trees, Washington, D.C.: http://www.caseytrees.org/resources/casefortrees.html#EconGrowth
[17] Deep Root, LLC. http://www.deeproot.com
[18] Cornell University, Urban Horticulture Institute. http://www.hort.cornell.edu/UHI/
[19] City of Portland Bureau of Environmental Services, *CSO Program, http://www.portlandonline.com/BES/index.cfm?c=31030,* (accessed July 2008).
[20] City of Portland Sustainable Infrastructure Committee, *Sustainable Infrastructure Report*. December 2001. http://www.portlandonline.com/shared/cfm/image.cfm?id=82893 (last accessed July, 2008).
[21] City of Portland Sustainable Infrastructure Subcommittee, *Sustainable Infrastructure: Alternative Paving Materials*. Oct. 2003. http://www.portlandonline.com/shared/cfm/image.cfm?id=82898, (accessed July 2008).
[22] City of Portland Sustainable Infrastructure Subcommittee, *Sustainable Infrastructure: Streetscape Task Force*. Nov. 2003. http://www.portlandonline.com/shared/cfm/image.cfm?id=82897, (accessed July 2008).
[23] City of Portland Bureau of Environmental Services, *Flow Test Report: Siskiyou Curb Extension*. August 4, 2004. http://www.portlandonline.com/shared/cfm/image.cfm?id=63097 (accessed July 2008).
[24] City of Portland Bureau of Environmental Services, *Environmental Assessment: Innovative Wet Weather Program*, April 2004.
[25] Portland Stormwater Advisory Committee, 2004.
[26]Chicago Department of Transportation, Sustainable Development Initiatives; Streetscape and Urban Design Program, CDOT Division of Project Development: http://www.railvolution.com/rv2006_pdfs/rv2006_217c.pdf
[27] 48th Ward Green Initiatives: http://www.masmith48.org/greeniniatives/greeniniatives.html
[28] The Chicago Green Alley Handbook, Chicago Department of Transportation: http://egov.cityofchicago.org/webportal/COCWebPortal/COC_EDITORIAL/GreenAlleyHandbook.pdf
[29] American Society of Landscape Architects, 2007 Professional Awards: http://www.asla.org/awards/2007/07winners/212_hdg.html
[30] DeJong, Aaron, A Pilot Project Takes Off, Sustainable Urban Redevelopment: http://www.surmag.com/index.php?option=com_content&task=view&id=10&Itemid=2
[31] Saulny, Susan, In Miles of Alleys, Chicago Finds it's Next Environmental Frontier, *New York Times* November 26, 2007.

Appendix

J

Alternative Compliance Program

Appendix J Alternative Compliance Program

The MS4 Permit allows the Authority the discretion to develop an alternative compliance program for PDPs. Participation in this program would allow a PDP to implement flow-through BMPs onsite without completely fulfilling the pollutant control requirement in Chapter 5 of the Manual (retention and/or biofiltration to mitigate the full DCV). The portion of the DCV not retained onsite would then be mitigated via an offsite project.

J.1 Prerequisites to Program Development

Prior to the development of an alternative compliance program, the Watershed Management Area Analysis (WMAA) must be incorporated into the San Diego Bay WQIP, and the RWQCB must accept Water Quality Equivalency guidelines that provide a currency basis for demonstrating water quality benefit for offsite projects. These requirements are discussed below.

J.1.1 Watershed Management Area Analysis

A WMAA, as described in MS4 Permit Provision B.3.b(4)(a), was performed by the Copermittees and included in the San Diego Bay WQIP. As part of the WMAA, some Copermittees identified and compiled lists of candidate projects that could potentially be used as alternative compliance options for PDPs. These lists include opportunities such as:

(1) Stream or riparian area rehabilitation;
(2) Retrofitting existing infrastructure to incorporate storm water retention or treatment;
(3) Regional BMPs;
(4) Groundwater recharge projects;
(5) Water supply augmentation projects; and
(6) Land purchases to preserve floodplain functions.

At this time, the Authority has not developed a candidate project list for opportunities within the Authority's jurisdiction. A list may be developed as opportunities are identified, in which case the list will be included in the subsequent WQIP update. A PDP may independently propose a project for alternative compliance that is not on the candidate project list, as discussed in Section J.2.2.

J.1.2 Water Quality Equivalency

A Water Quality Equivalency Guidance Document was developed by the Copermittees and accepted by the RWQCB on December 17, 2015. This document provides the standards and guidance for PDPs to demonstrate that an alternative compliance project will provide a greater overall water quality benefit than the quantifiable water quality impact from the PDP. PDPs must utilize this document to show that the volume of storm water treated through an offsite project is equal to or greater than the deficit of treated storm water from the PDP. The steps to perform these water quality equivalency calculations include:

1) Quantifying the PDP storm water pollutant control impacts;
2) Determining the alternative compliance project storm water pollutant control benefits; and
3) Determining the storm water pollutant control credits (i.e., subtracting the PDP impacts from the alternative compliance project benefits and ensuring that the result is greater than or equal to zero).

The WQE Guidance Document is located on the Project Clean Water website (www.projectcleanwater.org) and provides detailed instructions for calculating water quality equivalency for the six project types listed in Section J.1.1.

J.2 Alternative Compliance Options

The details of the alternative compliance program options are not available at this time. However, the general framework of the program is described below. Section J.2.1 describes the requirements that apply to all alternative compliance projects. Section J.2.2 describes the process for applicant-initiated alternative compliance projects. Section J.2.3 describes an in-lieu fee and/or credit program for alternative compliance.

J.2.1 General Requirements

The alternative compliance program is available to a PDP only if the PDP applicant enters into a voluntary agreement with the Authority authorizing this arrangement. In addition to the voluntary agreement, relief from implementing structural BMPs onsite may be authorized by the Authority under the following conditions:

(1) The Authority must determine that implementation of the candidate project will have a greater overall water quality benefit for the WMA than fully complying with the onsite storm water pollutant control requirements;
(2) If a PDP applicant chooses to fully or partially fund a candidate project as described in Section J.2.2, then the in-lieu fee structure described in Provision E.3.c.(3)(d) must be followed;
(3) If the PDP applicant chooses to fully or partially fund a candidate project, then the Authority will ensure that the funds to be obtained from the PDP applicant are sufficient to mitigate for impacts caused by not fully implementing structural BMPs onsite, pursuant

to the performance requirements described in Section 5 of the Manual;

(4) If the PDP applicant chooses to implement a candidate project, then the Authority will ensure that pollutant control management within the candidate project is sufficient to mitigate for impacts caused by not implementing structural BMPs fully onsite, pursuant to the performance requirements described in Section 5 of the Manual;

(5) The voluntary agreement to fund, partially fund, or implement a candidate project must include reliable sources of funding for operation and maintenance of the candidate project;

(6) Design of the candidate project must be conducted under an appropriately qualified engineer, geologist, architect, landscape architect, or other professional, licenses where applicable, and competent and proficient in the fields pertinent to the candidate project design;

(7) The candidate project must be constructed as soon as possible, but no later than 4 years after the certificate of occupancy is granted for the first PDP that contributed funds toward the construction of the candidate project, unless a longer period of time is authorized by the RWQCB Executive Officer; and

(8) If the candidate project is constructed after the PDP is constructed, the Authority will require temporal mitigation for pollutant loads and altered flows that are discharged from the PDP.

J.2.2 Phase I

Under Phase I of the alternative compliance program, the Authority may allow a PDP applicant to propose and fund, contribute funds to, or implement an alternative compliance project not identified by the WMAA included in the San Diego Bay WQIP. The PDP applicant must demonstrate to the satisfaction of the EAD and FDD that implementation of the alternative compliance project will have a greater overall water quality benefit than fully complying with the performance requirements outlined in Section 5 of the Manual. This option is available to PDP applicants as of February 16, 2016.

J.2.3 Phase II

Under Phase II of the alternative compliance program, a PDP may be allowed to participate in alternative compliance through either an in-lieu fee or through compliance with a water quality credit system. Both options are currently under development and are not available to PDP applicants at this time. This Manual will be updated as the option for in-lieu fee or the credit system become available.

The Authority may allow a PDP applicant to fund, or partially fund a candidate project or an alternative compliance project through paying an in-lieu fee. The in-lieu fee structure may be developed by the Authority individually or with other Copermittees and/or entities, and will provide a framework for designing, developing, constructing, operating and maintaining offsite alternative compliance projects. The in-lieu fee must be transferred to the Authority (for capital projects) or an escrow account (for tenant projects) prior to the construction of the PDP.

The Authority may also develop and implement an alternative compliance water quality credit system option. A regional crediting system is currently under development; whether the Authority will participate in this regional effort or develop a jurisdiction-specific crediting system is still to be determined. Any credit system that is implemented will be submitted to the RWQCB for review and acceptance prior to its adoption by the Authority. The credit system will clearly exhibit that it will not allow discharges from the PDP to cause or contribute to a net impact over and above the impact provided that such a credit system clearly exhibits that it will not allow discharges from Priority Development Projects to cause or contribute to a net impact over and above the impact caused by projects meeting the onsite structural BMP performance requirements in Section 5 of the Manual.

This page intentionally left blank

Glossary of Key Terms

50% Rule Refers to an MS4 Permit standard for redevelopment PDPs (PDPs on previously developed sites) that defines whether the redevelopment PDP must meet storm water management requirements for the entire development or only for the newly created or replaced impervious surface. Refer to **Section 1.7**.

Aggregate Hard, durable material of mineral origin typically consisting of gravel, crushed stone, crushed quarry or mine rock. Gradation varies depending on application within a BMP as bedding, filter course, or storage.

Aggregate Storage Layer Layer within a BMP that serves to provide a conduit for conveyance, detention storage, infiltration storage, saturated storage, or a combination thereof.

Alternative Compliance Programs A program that allows PDPs to participate in an offsite mitigation project in lieu of implementing the onsite structural BMP performance requirements required under the MS4 Permit. Refer to **Section 1.8** for more information on alternative compliance programs.

Bed Sediment The part of the sediment load in channel flow that moves along the bed by sliding or saltation, and part of the suspended sediment load, that principally constitutes the channel bed.

Bedding Aggregate used to establish a foundation for structures such as pipes, manholes, and pavement.

Biodegradation Decomposition of pollutants by biological means.

Biofiltration BMPs Biofiltration BMPs are shallow basins filled with treatment media and drainage rock that treat storm water runoff by capturing and detaining inflows prior to controlled release through minimal incidental infiltration, evapotranspiration, or discharge via underdrain or surface outlet structure. Treatment is achieved through filtration, sedimentation, sorption, biochemical processes and/or vegetative uptake. These BMPs must be sized to:[a] Treat 1.5 times the DCV not reliably retained onsite, OR[b] Treat the DCV not reliably retained onsite with a flow-through design that has a total volume, including pore spaces and pre-filter detention volume, sized to hold at least 0.75 times the portion of the DCV not reliably retained onsite. (See **Section 5.5.3** and **Appendix B.5** for illustration and additional information).

Biofiltration Treatment Treatment from a BMP meeting the biofiltration standard.

Biofiltration with Partial Retention BMPs Biofiltration with partial retention BMPs are shallow basins filled with treatment media and drainage rock that manage storm water runoff through infiltration, evapotranspiration, and biofiltration. Partial retention is characterized by a subsurface stone infiltration storage zone in the bottom of the BMP below the elevation of the discharge from the underdrains. The discharge of biofiltered water from the underdrain occurs when the water level in the infiltration storage zone exceeds the elevation of the underdrain outlet. (See **Section 5.5.2.1** for illustration and additional information).

Bioretention BMPs Vegetated surface water systems that filter water through vegetation and soil, or engineered media prior to infiltrating into native soils. Bioretention BMPs in this manual retain the entire DCV prior to overflow to the downstream conveyance system. (See **Section 5.5.1.2** for illustration and additional information).

BMP A procedure or device designed to minimize the quantity of runoff pollutants and / or volumes that flow to downstream receiving water bodies. Refer to **Section 2.2.2.1**.

BMP Sizing Calculator An on-line tool that was developed under the 2007 MS4 Permit to facilitate the sizing factor method for designing flow control BMPs for hydromodification management. The BMP Sizing Calculator has been discontinued as of June 30, 2014.

Cistern A vessel for storing water. In this manual, a cistern is typically a rain barrel, tank, vault, or other artificial reservoir.

Coarse Sediment Yield Area A GLU with coarse-grained geologic material (material that is expected to produce greater than 50% sand when weathered). See the following terms modifying coarse sediment yield area: critical, potential critical.

Compact Biofiltration BMP A biofiltration BMP, either proprietary or non-proprietary in origin, that is designed to provide storm water pollutant control within a smaller footprint than a typical biofiltration BMP, usually through use of specialized media that is able to efficiently treat high storm water inflow rates.

Conditions of Approval Requirements a jurisdiction may adopt for a project in connection with a discretionary action (e.g., issuance of a use permit). COAs may include features to be incorporated into the final plans for the project and may also specify uses, activities, and operational measures that must be observed over the life of the project.

Contemporary Design Standards This term refers to design standards that are reasonably consistent with the current state of practice and are based on desired outcomes that are reasonably consistent with the context of the MS4 Permit and Model BMP Design Manual. For example, a detention basin that is designed solely to mitigate peak flow rates would not be considered a contemporary water quality BMP design because it is not consistent with the goal of water quality improvement. Current state of the practice recognizes that a drawdown time of 24 to 72 hour is typically needed to promote settling. For practical purposes, design standards can be considered "contemporary" if they have been published within the last 10 years, preferably in California or Washington State, and are specifically intended for storm water quality management.

Continuous Simulation Modeling A method of hydrological analysis in which a set of rainfall data (typically hourly for 30 years or more) is used as input, and a continuous runoff hydrograph is calculated over the same time period. Continuous simulation models typical track dynamic soil and storage conditions during and between storm events. The output is then analyzed statistically for the purposes of comparing runoff patterns under different conditions (for example, pre- and post-development-project).

Copermittees See Jurisdiction.

Critical Channel Flow (Qc) The channel flow that produces the critical shear stress that initiates bed movement or that erodes the toe of channel banks. When measuring Qc, it should be based on the weakest boundary material – either bed or bank.

Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Areas A GLU with coarse-grained geologic material and high relative sediment production, where the sediment produced is critical to the receiving stream (a source of bed material to the receiving stream). See also: potential critical coarse sediment yield area.

Critical Shear Stress The shear stress that initiates channel bed movement or that erodes the toe of channel banks. See also critical channel flow.

DCV A volume of storm water runoff produced from the 85th percentile, 24-hour storm event. See **Section 2.2.2.2**.

De Minimis DMA De minimis DMAs are very small areas that are not considered to be significant contributors of pollutants, and are considered not practicable to drain to a BMP. See **Section 5.2.2**.

Depth The distance from the top, or surface, to the bottom of a BMP component.

Detention Temporarily holding back storm water runoff via a designed outlet (e.g., underdrain, orifice) to provide flow rate and duration control.

Detention Storage Storage that provides detention as the outflow mechanism.

Development Footprint The limits of all grading and ground disturbance, including landscaping, associated with a project.

Development Project Construction, rehabilitation, redevelopment, or reconstruction of any public or private projects. Includes both new development and redevelopment. Also includes whole of the action as defined by CEQA. See **Section 1.3.**

Direct Discharge The connection of project site runoff to an exempt receiving water body, which could include an exempt river reach, reservoir or lagoon. To qualify as a direct discharge, the discharge elevation from the project site outfall must be at or below either the normal operating water surface elevation or the reservoir spillway elevation, and properly designed energy dissipation must be provided. "Direct discharge" may be more specifically defined by each municipality.

Direct Infiltration Infiltration via methods or devices, such as dry wells or infiltration trenches, designed to bypass the mantle of surface soils that is unsaturated and more organically active and transmit runoff directly to deeper subsurface soils.

DMAs See **Section 3.3.3**.

Drawdown Time The time required for a storm water detention or infiltration facility to drain and return to the dry-weather condition. For detention facilities, drawdown time is a function of basin volume and outlet orifice size. For infiltration facilities, drawdown time is a function of basin volume and infiltration rate.

Enclosed Embayments (Enclosed Bays) Enclosed bays are indentations along the coast that enclose an area of oceanic water within distinct headlands or harbor works. Enclosed bays include all bays where the narrowest distance between the headlands or outermost bay works is less than 75 percent of the greatest dimension of the enclosed portion of the bay. Enclosed bays do not include inland surface waters or ocean waters. In San Diego: Mission Bay and San Diego Bay.

Environmentally Sensitive Areas (ESAs) Areas that include but are not limited to all Clean Water Act Section 303(d) impaired water bodies; areas designated as Areas of Special Biological Significance by the State Water Board and SDRWQCB; State Water Quality Protected Areas; water bodies designated with the RARE beneficial use by the State Water Board and SDRWQCB; and any other equivalent environmentally sensitive areas which have been identified by the Copermittees.

Filter Course Aggregate used to prevent particle migration between two different materials when storm water runoff passes through.

Filter Fabric A permeable textile material, also termed a non-woven geotextile, that prevents particle migration between two different materials when storm water runoff passes through.

Filtration Controlled seepage of storm water runoff through media, vegetation, or aggregate to reduce pollutants via physical separation.

Flow Control Control of runoff rates and durations as required by the HMP.

Flow Control BMP A structural BMP designed to provide control of post-project runoff flow rates and durations for the purpose of hydromodification management.

Flow-through Treatment Treatment from a BMP meeting the flow-through treatment control standard.

Flow-Through Treatment BMPs Flow-through treatment control BMPs are structural, engineered facilities that are designed to remove pollutants from storm water runoff using treatment processes that do not incorporate significant biological methods. Flow-through BMPs include vegetated swales, media filters, sand filters, and dry extended detention basins. (See **Section 5.5.4** for illustration and additional information).

Forebay An initial storage area at the entrance to a structural BMP designed to trap and settle out solid pollutants such as sediment in a concentrated location, to provide pre-treatment within the structural BMP and facilitate removal of solid pollutants during maintenance operations.

Full Infiltration Infiltration of a storm water runoff volume equal to the DCV.

Geomorphic Assessment A quantification or measure of the changing properties of a stream channel.

Geomorphically Significant Flows Flows that have the potential to cause, or accelerate, stream channel erosion or other adverse impacts to beneficial stream uses. The range of geomorphically significant flows was determined as part of the development of the March 2011 Final HMP, and has not changed under the 2013 MS4 Permit. However, under the 2013 MS4 Permit, Q2 and Q10 must be based on the pre-development condition rather than the pre-project condition, meaning that no pre-project impervious area may be considered in the computation of pre-development Q2 and Q10.

GLUs Classifications that provide an estimate of sediment yield based upon three factors: geology, hillslope, and land cover. GLUs are developed based on the methodology presented in the SCCWRP Technical Report 605 titled "Hydromodification Screening Tools: GIS-Based Catchment Analyses of Potential Changes in Runoff and Sediment Discharge" (SCCWRP, 2010).

Gross Pollutants In storm water, generally litter (trash), organic debris (leaves, branches, seeds, twigs, grass clippings), and coarse sediments (inorganic breakdown products from soils, pavement, or building materials).

Harvest and Use BMP Harvest and use (aka rainwater harvesting) BMPs capture and store storm water runoff for later use. These BMPs are engineered to store a specified volume of water and have no design surface discharge until this volume is exceeded. (See **Section 5.5.1.1** for illustration and additional information).

HMP A plan implemented by the Copermittees so that post-project runoff shall not exceed estimated pre-development rates and/or durations by more than 10%, where increased runoff would result in increased potential for erosion or other adverse impacts to beneficial uses. The March 2011 Final HMP and the updated MS4 Permit are the basis of the flow control requirements of this manual.

Hungry Water Also known as "sediment-starved" water, "hungry" water refers to channel flow that is hungry for sediment from the channel bed or banks because it currently contains less bed material sediment than it is capable of conveying. The "hungry water" phenomenon occurs when the natural sediment load decreases and the erosive force of the runoff increases as a natural counterbalance, as described by Lane's Equation.

Hydraulic Head Energy represented as a difference in elevation, typically as the difference between the inlet and outlet water surface elevation for a BMP.

Hydraulic Residence Time The length of time between inflow and outflow that runoff remains in a BMP.

Hydrologic Soil Group Classification of soils by the Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS) into A, B, C, and D groups according to infiltration capacity.

Hydromodification The change in the natural watershed hydrologic processes and runoff characteristics (i.e., interception, infiltration, overland flow, interflow and groundwater flow) caused by urbanization or other land use changes that result in increased stream flows and sediment transport. In addition, alteration of stream and river channels, installation of dams and water impoundments, and excessive stream-bank and shoreline erosion are also considered hydromodification, due to their disruption of natural watershed hydrologic processes.

Hydromodification Management BMP A structural BMP for the purpose of hydromodification management, either for protection of critical coarse sediment yield areas or for flow control. See also flow control BMP.

Impervious Surface Any material that prevents or substantially reduces infiltration of water into the soil.

Infeasible As applied to BMPs, refers to condition in which a BMP approach is not practicable based on technical constraints specific to the site, including by not limited to physical constraints, risks of impacts to environmental resources, risks of harm to human health, or risk of loss or damage to property. Feasibility criteria are provided in this manual.

Infiltration In the context of LID, infiltration is defined as the percolation of water into the ground. Infiltration is often expressed as a rate (inches per hour), which is determined through an infiltration test. In the context of non-storm water, infiltration is water other than wastewater that enters a sewer system (including sewer service connections and foundation drains) from the ground through such means as defective pipes, pipe joints, connections, or manholes. Infiltration does not include, and is distinguished from, inflow [40 CFR 35.2005(20)].

Infiltration BMP Infiltration BMPs are structural measures that capture, store and infiltrate storm water runoff. These BMPs are engineered to store a specified volume of water and have no design surface discharge (underdrain or outlet structure) until this volume is exceeded. These types of BMPs may also support evapotranspiration processes, but are characterized by having their most dominant volume losses due to infiltration. (See **Section 5.5.1.2** for illustration and additional information).

Jurisdiction The term "jurisdiction" is used in this manual to refer to individual copermittees who have independent responsibility for implementing the requirements of the MS4 Permit.

LID A storm water management and land development strategy that emphasizes conservation and the use of onsite natural features integrated with engineered, small-scale hydrologic controls to more closely reflect pre-development hydrologic functions. See **Site Design**.

Lower Flow Threshold The lower limit of the range of flows to be controlled for hydromodification management. The lower flow threshold is the flow at which erosion of sediment from the stream bed or banks begins to occur. See also critical channel flow. For the San Diego region, the lower flow threshold shall be a fraction (0.1, 0.3, or 0.5) of the pre-development 2-year flow rate based on continuous simulation modeling (0.1Q2, 0.3Q2, or 0.5Q2).

Media	Storm water runoff pollutant treatment material, typically included as a permeable constructed bed or container (cartridge) within a BMP.
MEP	Refer to the definition in the MS4 Permit. [Appendix C, Definitions, Page C-6]
National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System	The national program for issuing, modifying, revoking and reissuing, terminating, monitoring and enforcing permits, and imposing and enforcing pretreatment requirements, under Sections 307, 318, 402, and 405 of the Clean Water Act.
New Development	Land disturbing activities; structural development, including construction or installation of a building or structure, the creation of impervious surfaces; and land subdivision.
O&M	Requirements in the MS4 Permit to inspect structural BMPs and verify the implementation of operational practices and preventative and corrective maintenance in perpetuity.
Partial Infiltration	Infiltration of a storm water runoff volume less than the DCV.
Partial Retention	Partial retention category is defined by structural measures that incorporate both infiltration (in the lower treatment zone) and biofiltration (in the upper treatment zone).
PDPs	As defined by the MS4 Permit provision E.3.b, land development projects that fall under the planning and building authority of the Copermittee for which the Copermittee must impose specific requirements in addition to those required of Standard Projects. Refer to **Section 1.4** to determine if your project is a PDP.
PDPs with only Pollutant Control Requirements	PDPs that need to meet Source Control, Site Design and Pollutant Control Requirements (but are exempt from Hydromodification Management Requirements).
PDPs with Pollutant Control and Hydromodification	PDPs that need to meet Source Control, Site Design, Pollutant Control and Hydromodification Management Requirements.

Management Requirements	
Point of Compliance	1. For channel screening and determination of low flow threshold: the point at which collected storm water from a development is delivered from a constructed or modified drainage system into a natural or un-lined channel. POC for channel screening may be located onsite or offsite, depending on where runoff from the project meets a natural or un-lined channel. 2. For flow control: the point at which pre-development and post-development flow rates and durations will be compared. POC for flow control is typically onsite. A project may have a different POC for channel screening vs. POC for flow control if runoff from the project site is conveyed in hardened systems from the project site boundary to the natural or un-lined channel.
Pollutant Control	Control of pollutants via physical, chemical or biological processes
Pollution Prevention	Pollution prevention is defined as practices and processes that reduce or eliminate the generation of pollutants, in contrast to source control BMPs, treatment control BMPs, or disposal.
Post-Project Hydrology Flows, Volumes	The peak runoff flows and runoff volume anticipated after the project has been constructed taking into account all permeable and impermeable surfaces, soil and vegetation types and conditions after landscaping is complete, detention or retention basins or other water storage elements incorporated into the site design, and any other site features that would affect runoff volumes and peak flows.
Potential Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Area	A GLU with coarse-grained geologic material and high relative sediment production, as defined in the Regional WMAA. The Regional WMAA identified GLUs as potential critical coarse sediment yield areas based on slope, geology, and land cover. GLU analysis does not determine whether the sediment produced is critical to the receiving stream (a source of bed material to the receiving stream) therefore the areas are designated as potential.
Pre-Development Runoff Conditions	Approximate flow rates and durations that exist or existed onsite before land development occurs. For new development projects, this equates to runoff conditions immediately before any new project disturbance or grading. For redevelopment projects, this equates to runoff conditions from the project footprint assuming infiltration characteristics of the underlying soil, and existing grade. Runoff

coefficients of concrete or asphalt must not be used. A redevelopment PDP must use available information pertaining to existing underlying soil type and onsite existing grade to estimate pre-development runoff conditions.

Pre-Project Condition The condition prior to any project work or the existing condition. Note that pre-project condition and pre-development condition will not be the same for redevelopment projects.

Pretreatment Removal of gross solids, including organic debris and coarse sediment, from runoff to minimize clogging and increase the effectiveness of BMPs.

Project Area All areas proposed by an applicant to be altered or developed, plus any additional areas that drain on to areas to be altered or developed. Also see **Section 1.3**.

Project Submittal Documents submitted to a jurisdiction or Copermittee in connection with an application for development approval and demonstrating compliance with MS4 Permit requirements for the project. Specific requirements vary from municipality to municipality.

Proprietary BMP BMP designed and marketed by private business for treatment of storm water. Check with EAD prior to proposing to use a proprietary BMP.

Receiving Waters See **Waters of the United States**.

Redevelopment The creation and/or replacement of impervious surface on an already developed site. Examples include the expansion of a building footprint, road widening, and the addition to or replacement of a structure. Replacement of impervious surfaces includes any activity where impervious material(s) are removed, exposing underlying soil during construction. Redevelopment does not include routine maintenance activities, such as trenching and resurfacing associated with utility work; pavement grinding; resurfacing existing roadways, sidewalks, pedestrian ramps, or bike lanes on existing roads; and routine replacement of damaged pavement, such as pothole repair.

Retrofitting Storm water management practice put into place after development has occurred in watersheds where the practices previously did not exist or are ineffective. Retrofitting of developed areas is intended to improve water quality, protect downstream channels, reduce flooding, or meet other specific objectives. Retrofitting developed areas may include, but is not limited to replacing roofs with green roofs, disconnecting downspouts or impervious surfaces to drain to pervious surfaces, replacing impervious surfaces with pervious surfaces, installing rain barrels, installing rain gardens, and trash area enclosures.

Regional Water Quality Control Board (SDRWQCB)	California RWQCBs are responsible for implementing pollution control provisions of the Clean Water Act and California Water Code within their jurisdiction. There are nine California RWQCBs.
Retention (Retention BMPs)	A category of BMP that does not have any service outlets that discharge to surface water or to a conveyance system that drains to surface waters for the design event (i.e. 85th percentile 24-hour). Mechanisms used for storm water retention include infiltration, evapotranspiration, and use of retained water for non-potable or potable purposes.
Saturated Storage	Storage that provides a permanent volume of water at the bottom of the BMP as an anaerobic zone to promote denitrification and/or thermal pollution control. Also known as internal water storage or a saturation zone.
Self-mitigating Areas	A natural, landscaped, or turf area that does not generate significant pollutants and drains directly offsite or to the public storm drain system without being treated by a structural BMP. See **Section 5.2.1**.
Self-retaining DMA via Qualifying Site Design BMPs	An area designed to retain runoff to fully eliminate storm water runoff from the 85th percentile 24 hours storm event; See **Section 5.2.3**.
SIC	A Federal government system for classifying industries by 4-digit code. It is being supplanted by the North American Industrial Classification System but SIC codes are still referenced by the Regional Water Board in identifying development sites subject to regulation under the National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System permit. Information and an SIC search function are available at https://www.osha.gov/pls/imis/sicsearch.html
Significant Redevelopment	Redevelopment that meets the definition of a "PDP" in this manual. See **Section 1.4**.

Site Design A storm water management and land development strategy that emphasizes conservation of natural features and the use of onsite natural features integrated with engineered, small-scale hydrologic controls to more closely reflect pre-development hydrologic functions.

Sizing Factor Method A method for designing flow control BMPs for hydromodification management using sizing factors developed from unit area continuous simulation models.

Sorption Physical and/or chemical process where pollutants are taken out of runoff through attachment to another substance.

Source Control Land use or site planning practices, or structures that aim to prevent runoff pollution by reducing the potential for contamination at the source of pollution. Source control BMPs minimizes the contact between pollutants and storm water runoff. Examples include roof structures over trash or material storage areas, and berms around fuel dispensing areas. Source control BMPs are described within this manual.

Standard Project Any development project that is not defined as a PDP by the MS4 Permit.

Storm Water Conveyance System A conveyance or system of conveyances (including roads with drainage systems, municipal streets, catch basins, curbs, gutters, ditches, man-made channels, or storm drains): (i) Owned or operated by a State, city, town, borough, county, parish, district, association, or other public body (created by or pursuant to State law) having jurisdiction over disposal of sewage, industrial wastes, storm water, or other wastes, including special districts under State law such as a sewer district, flood control district or drainage district, or similar entity, or an Indian tribe or an authorized Indian tribal organization, or designated and approved management agency under section 208 of the Clean Water Act that discharges to waters of the United States; (ii) Designated or used for collecting or conveying storm water; (iii) Which is not a combined sewer; (iv) Which is not part of the Publicly Owned Treatment Works as defined at 40 CFR 122.26.

Storm Water Pollutant Control BMP A category of storm water management requirements that includes treatment of storm water to remove pollutants by measures such as

	retention, biofiltration, and/or flow-through treatment control, as specified in this manual. Also called a Pollutant Control BMP.
Structural BMP	Throughout the manual, the term "structural BMP" is a general term that encompasses the pollutant control BMPs and hydromodification BMPs required for PDPs under the MS4 Permit. A structural BMP may be a pollutant control BMP, a hydromodification management BMP, or an integrated pollutant control and hydromodification management BMP. Structural BMPs as defined in the MS4 Permit are: a subset of BMPs which detains, retains, filters, removes, or prevents the release of pollutants to surface waters from development projects in perpetuity, after construction of a project is completed.
Subgrade	In-situ soil that lies underneath a BMP.
Tributary Area	The total surface area of land or hardscape that contributes runoff to the BMP; including any offsite or onsite areas that comingles with project runoff and drains to the BMP. Refer to **Section 3.3.3** for additional guidance Also termed the drainage area or catchment area.
Unified BMP Design Approach	This term refers to the standardized process for site and watershed investigation, BMP selection, BMP sizing, and BMP design that is outlined and described in this manual with associated appendices and templates. This approach is considered to be "unified" because it represents a pathway for compliance with MS4 Permit requirements that is anticipated to be reasonably consistent across the local jurisdictions in San Diego County. In contrast, applicants may choose to take an alternative approach where they demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Copermittee, in their submittal, compliance with applicable performance standards without necessarily following the process identified in this manual.
Upper Flow Threshold	The upper limit of the range of flows to be controlled for hydromodification management. For the San Diego region, the upper flow threshold shall be the pre-development 10-year flow rate (Q10) based on continuous simulation modeling.
Vactor	Refers to a sewer or storm drain cleaning truck equipped to remove materials from sewer or storm drain pipes or structures, including some storm water BMPs.

Vector An animal or insect capable of transmitting the causative agent of human disease. An example of a vector in San Diego County that is of concern in storm water management is a mosquito.

Water Quality Improvement Plan Copermittees are required to develop a Water Quality Improvement Plan for each Watershed Management Area in the San Diego Region. The purpose of the Water Quality Improvement Plans is to guide the Copermittees' jurisdictional runoff management programs towards achieving the outcome of improved water quality in MS4 discharges and receiving waters. WQIPs requirements are defined in the MS4 Permit provision B.

Waters of the United States Surface bodies of water, including naturally occurring wetlands, streams (perennial, intermittent, and ephemeral (exhibiting bed, bank, and ordinary high water mark)), creeks, rivers, reservoirs, lakes, lagoons, estuaries, harbors, bays and the Pacific Ocean which directly or indirectly receive discharges from storm water conveyance systems. The Copermittee shall determine the definition for wetlands and the limits thereof for the purposes of this definition, which shall be as protective as the Federal definition utilized by the United States Army Corps of Engineers and the United States Environmental Protection Agency. Constructed wetlands are not considered wetlands under this definition, unless the wetlands were constructed as mitigation for habitat loss. Other constructed BMPs are not considered receiving waters under this definition, unless the BMP was originally constructed within the boundaries of the receiving waters. Also see MS4 permit definition.

Watershed Management Area The ten areas defined by the SDRWQCB in Regional MS4 Permit provision B.1, Table B-1. Each Watershed Management Area is defined by one or more Hydrologic Unit, major surface water body, and responsible Copermittee.

Watershed Management Area Analysis For each Watershed Management Area, the Copermittees have the option to perform a WMAA for the purpose of developing watershed-specific requirements for structural BMP implementation. Each WMAA includes: GIS layers developed to provide physical characteristics of the watershed management area, a list of potential offsite alternative compliance projects, and areas exempt from hydromodification management requirements.